GEOL 001: INTRO TO PHYSICAL GEOLOGY



Tim Ellsworth
Coalinga College

LibreTexts™

Intro to Physical Geology

This text is disseminated via the Open Education Resource (OER) LibreTexts Project (https://LibreTexts.org) and like the thousands of other texts available within this powerful platform, it is freely available for reading, printing, and "consuming."

The LibreTexts mission is to bring together students, faculty, and scholars in a collaborative effort to provide an accessible, and comprehensive platform that empowers our community to develop, curate, adapt, and adopt openly licensed resources and technologies; through these efforts we can reduce the financial burden born from traditional educational resource costs, ensuring education is more accessible for students and communities worldwide.

Most, but not all, pages in the library have licenses that may allow individuals to make changes, save, and print this book. Carefully consult the applicable license(s) before pursuing such effects. Instructors can adopt existing LibreTexts texts or Remix them to quickly build course-specific resources to meet the needs of their students. Unlike traditional textbooks, LibreTexts' web based origins allow powerful integration of advanced features and new technologies to support learning.



LibreTexts is the adaptable, user-friendly non-profit open education resource platform that educators trust for creating, customizing, and sharing accessible, interactive textbooks, adaptive homework, and ancillary materials. We collaborate with individuals and organizations to champion open education initiatives, support institutional publishing programs, drive curriculum development projects, and more.

The LibreTexts libraries are Powered by NICE CXone Expert and was supported by the Department of Education Open Textbook Pilot Project, the California Education Learning Lab, the UC Davis Office of the Provost, the UC Davis Library, the California State University Affordable Learning Solutions Program, and Merlot. This material is based upon work supported by the National Science Foundation under Grant No. 1246120, 1525057, and 1413739.

Any opinions, findings, and conclusions or recommendations expressed in this material are those of the author(s) and do not necessarily reflect the views of the National Science Foundation nor the US Department of Education.

Have questions or comments? For information about adoptions or adaptions contact info@LibreTexts.org or visit our main website at https://LibreTexts.org.

This text was compiled on 03/21/2026

TABLE OF CONTENTS

Licensing

Chapter 1: Understanding Science

- Section 1.1: What is Science?
- Section 1.2: The Scientific Method
- Section 1.3: Early Scientific Thought
- Section 1.4: The Study of Geology
- Section 1.5: Earth Systems Overview
- Section 1.6: Science Denial and Evaluating Sources
- Section 1.7: Components of the Earth System
- Section 1.8: Components of Earth System- Relationships between human activities and Earth's spheres
- Section 1.S: Summary

Chapter 2: Plate Tectonics

- Section 2.1: Alfred Wegener’s Continental Drift Hypothesis
- Section 2.2: Layers of the Earth
- Section 2.3: Convergent Boundaries
- Section 2.4: Divergent Boundaries
- Section 2.5: Transform Boundaries
- Section 2.6: The Wilson Cycle
- Section 2.7: Hotspots
- Section 2.S: Summary

Chapter 3: Minerals

- Section 3.1: Chemistry of Minerals
- Section 3.2: Formation of Minerals
- Section 3.3: Silicate Minerals
- Section 3.4: Non-Silicate Minerals
- Section 3.5: Identifying Minerals
- Section 3.S: Summary

Chapter 4: Igneous Processes and Volcanoes

- Section 4.1: Classification of Igneous Rocks
- Section 4.2: Bowen’s Reaction Series
- Section 4.3: Magma Generation
- Section 4.4: Volcanism
- Section 4.5: Volcanic Structures
- Section 4.6: Volcanic Hazards and Monitoring
- Section 4.S: Summary

Chapter 5: Weathering, Erosion, and Sedimentary Rocks

- Section 5.1: The Unique Properties of Water
- Section 5.2: Weathering and Erosion
- Section 5.3: Sedimentary Rocks

- Section 5.4: Sedimentary Structures
- Section 5.5: Depositional Environments
- Section 5.S: Summary

Chapter 6: Metamorphic Rocks

- Section 6.1: Metamorphic Processes
- Section 6.2: Metamorphic Textures
- Section 6.3: Metamorphic Grade
- Section 6.4: Metamorphic Environments
- Section 6.S: Summary

Chapter 7: Geologic Time

- Section 7.1: Relative Dating
- Section 7.2: Absolute Dating
- Section 7.3: Fossils and Evolution
- Section 7.4: Correlation
- Section 7.5: Earth History
  - Section 7.5.1: Origin of the Universe
  - Section 7.5.2: Origin of the Solar System—The Nebular Hypothesis
  - Section 7.5.3: Hadean Eon
  - Section 7.5.4: Archean Eon
  - Section 7.5.5: Proterozoic Eon
  - Section 7.5.6: Paleozoic
  - Section 7.5.7: Mesozoic
  - Section 7.5.8: Cenozoic

Chapter 8: Crustal Deformation and Earthquakes

- Section 8.1: Stress and Strain
- Section 8.2: Deformation
- Section 8.3: Geological Maps
- Section 8.4: Folds
- Section 8.5: Faults
- Section 8.6: Earthquake Essentials
- Section 8.7: Measuring Earthquakes
- Section 8.8: Earthquake Risk
- Section 8.9: Case Studies
- Section 8.S: Summary

Chapter 9: Mass Wasting

- Section 9.1: Slope Strength
- Section 9.2: Mass-Wasting Triggers and Mitigation
- Section 9.3: Landslide Classification and Identification
- Section 9.4: Examples of Landslides
- Section 9.S: Summary

Chapter 10: Water

- Section 10.1: Prelude to Water
- Section 10.2: Properties of Water
- Section 10.3: Surface Water
- Section 10.4: Groundwater
- Section 10.5: Glaciers
  - Section 10.5.1: Prelude to Galciers
  - Section 10.5.2: Types of Glaciers
  - Section 10.5.3: Glacier Formation and Movement
  - Section 10.5.4: Glacial Budget
  - Section 10.5.5: Glacial Landforms
  - Section 10.5.6: Ice Age Glaciations
- Section 10.6: Waves and Wave Processes
- Section 10.7: Shoreline Features

Chapter 11: Deserts

- Section 11.1: Prelude to Deserts
- Section 11.2: The Origin of Deserts
- Section 11.3: Desert Weathering and Erosion
- Section 11.4: Desert Landforms

Chapter 12: Energy and Mineral Resources

- Section 12.1: Mining
- Section 12.2: Fossil Fuels
- Section 12.3: Mineral Resources
- Section 12.S: Summary

Index

Glossary

Detailed Licensing

Detailed Licensing

Licensing

*A detailed breakdown of this resource's licensing can be found in **Back Matter/Detailed Licensing**.*

CHAPTER OVERVIEW

Chapter 1: Understanding Science

Learning Objectives

- Contrast objective versus subjective observations, and quantitative versus qualitative observations.
- Identify a pseudoscience based on its lack of falsifiability.
- Contrast the methods used by Aristotle and Galileo to describe the natural environment.
- Explain the scientific method and apply it to a problem or question.
- Explain why studying geology is important.
- Describe the steps involved in a reputable scientific study.
- Explain rhetorical arguments used by science deniers.

Think of your favorite science fiction movie. What is it about? Maybe it's about spaceships going to distant planets, or people being cloned in laboratories, or undersea civilizations, or robots that walk among us. These entertaining imaginings are make-believe fantasies, that's why they're called science "fiction." They are not real. But why are they called "science" fiction?

The answer is that science uses a disciplined process to answer questions. In science, "disciplined" does not mean well-behaved. It means following orderly steps in order to come up with the best answers. Science involves observing, wondering, categorizing, communicating, calculating, analyzing, and much more. In order to convert creativity into reality, we need science. In order to travel beyond where anyone has gone before, we need science. In order to understand the world, make sense of it, and conserve it, we need science. In order to confirm our best guesses about the universe and the things in it, we need science. Science fiction stories extend and expand on all the ideas of science and technology in creative ways.

Source: https://en.wikibooks.org/wiki/High_School_Earth_Science/Nature_of_Science. **License**: CC BY-SA 4.0.

Section 1.1: What is Science?
Section 1.2: The Scientific Method
Section 1.3: Early Scientific Thought
Section 1.4: The Study of Geology
Section 1.5: Earth Systems Overview
Section 1.6: Science Denial and Evaluating Sources
Section 1.7: Components of the Earth System
Section 1.8: Components of Earth System- Relationships between human activities and Earth's spheres
Section 1.S: Summary

This page titled Chapter 1: Understanding Science is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Chris Johnson, Matthew D. Affolter, Paul Inkenbrandt, & Cam Mosher (OpenGeology) via source content that was edited to the style and standards of the LibreTexts platform.

Section 1.1: What is Science?

Scientists seek to understand the fundamental principles that explain natural patterns and processes. Science is more than just a body of knowledge; science provides a means to evaluate and create new knowledge without bias [1]. Scientists use objective evidence over subjective evidence, to reach sound and logical conclusions.

An **objective observation** is without personal bias and the same by all individuals. Humans are biased by nature, so they cannot be completely objective; the goal is to be as unbiased as possible. A **subjective observation** is based on a person's feelings and beliefs and is unique to that individual.



Figure *Section*1.1.1: The Grand Canyon of Yellowstone in Yellowstone National Park. An objective statement about this would be: "The picture is of a waterfall." A subjective statement would be: "The picture is beautiful," or "The waterfall is there because of erosion."

Another way scientists avoid bias is by using quantitative over qualitative measurements whenever possible. A **quantitative** measurement is expressed with a specific numerical value. **Qualitative** observations are general or relative descriptions. For example, describing a rock as red or heavy is a qualitative observation. Determining a rock's color by measuring wavelengths of reflected light or determining its density by measuring the proportions of minerals it contains is quantitative. Numerical values are more precise than general descriptions, and they can be analyzed using statistical calculations. This is why quantitative measurements are much more useful to scientists than qualitative observations.



Figure *Section*1.1.2: Canyons like this, carved in the deposit left by the May 18, 1980 eruption of Mt. St. Helens, are sometimes used by purveyors of pseudoscience as evidence for the Earth being very young. In reality, the unconsolidated and unlithified volcanic ash deposit is carved much more easily than other canyons like the Grand Canyon.

Establishing truth in science is difficult because all scientific claims are **falsifiable**, which means any initial hypothesis may be tested and proven false. Only after exhaustively eliminating false results, competing ideas, and possible variations does a hypothesis become regarded as a reliable scientific theory. This meticulous scrutiny reveals weaknesses or flaws in a hypothesis and is the strength that supports all scientific ideas and procedures. In fact, proving current ideas are wrong has been the driving force behind many scientific careers.

Falsifiability separates science from **pseudoscience**. Scientists are wary of explanations of natural phenomena that discourage or avoid falsifiability. An explanation that cannot be tested or does not meet scientific standards is not considered science, but pseudoscience. Pseudoscience is a collection of ideas that may appear scientific but does not use the scientific method. Astrology is an example of pseudoscience. It is a belief system that attributes the movement of celestial bodies to influencing human behavior. Astrologers rely on celestial observations, but their conclusions are not based on experimental evidence and their statements are not falsifiable. This is not to be confused with *astronomy* which is the scientific study of celestial bodies and the cosmos [2,3].



Figure *Section*1.1.3: Geologists share information by publishing, attending conferences, and even going on field trips, such as this trip to the Lake Owyhee Volcanic Field in Oregon by the Bureau of Land Management in 2019.

Science is also a social process. Scientists share their ideas with peers at conferences, seeking guidance and feedback. Research papers and data submitted for publication are rigorously reviewed by qualified peers, scientists who are experts in the same field. The scientific review process aims to weed out misinformation, invalid research results, and wild speculation. Thus, it is slow, cautious, and conservative. Scientists tend to wait until a hypothesis is supported by an overwhelming amount of evidence from many independent researchers before accepting it as a scientific theory [46].

Section 1.1.1 References

- 1. *Science literacy: concepts, contexts, and consequences*. (National Academies Press (US), 2016).
- 2. Shermer, M. What Is Pseudoscience? *Scientific American* (2011).
- 3. Popper, K. R. & Hudson, G. E. Conjectures and refutations. (1963).

- Grand Canyon of Yellowstone. **Authored by**: Grastel. **Located at**: https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Grand_Canyon_of_yellowstone.jpg. **License**: CC BY-SA 4.0
- Canyon in Mt St Helens ash. **Authored by**: Richard Droker. **Located at**: https://www.flickr.com/photos/wanderflechten/45816963911/. **License**: CC BY-NC-ND 2.0
- BLM geology hike. **Authored by**: Andrea Bowen. **Located at**: https://www.flickr.com/photos/blmoregon/32574208527/. **License**: CC BY 2.0.

This page titled Section 1.1: What is Science? is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Chris Johnson, Matthew D. Affolter, Paul Inkenbrandt, & Cam Mosher (OpenGeology) via source content that was edited to the style and standards of the LibreTexts platform.

- **1.1: What is Science?** by Chris Johnson, Matthew D. Affolter, Paul Inkenbrandt, & Cam Mosher is licensed CC BY-NC-SA 4.0. Original source: https://opengeology.org/textbook/.

Section 1.2: The Scientific Method

Modern science is based on the **scientific method**, a procedure that follows these steps:

- Formulate a question or observe a problem
- Apply objective experimentation and observation
- Analyze collected data and interpret results
- Devise an evidence-based theory
- Submit findings to peer review and/or publication

This has a long history in human thought but was first fully formed by Ibn al-Haytham over 1000 years ago. At the forefront of the scientific method are **conclusions** based on objective **evidence**, not opinion or hearsay [4].

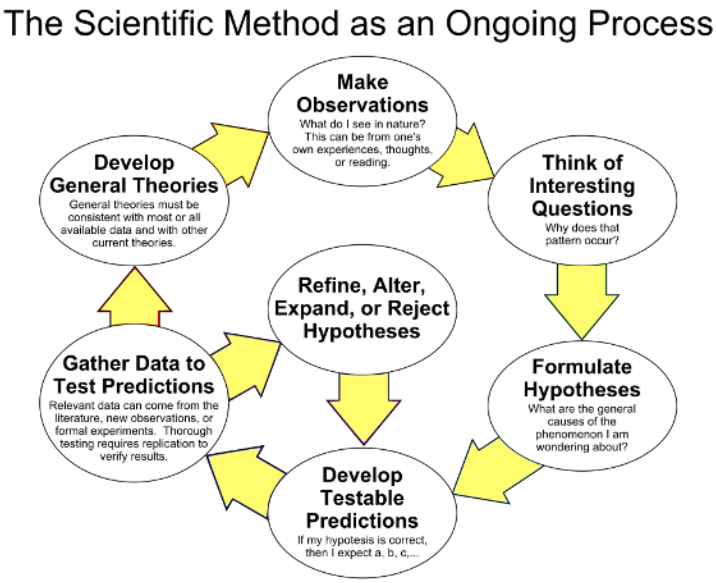


Figure *Section*1.2.1: Diagram of the cyclical nature of the scientific method.

Section 1.2.1 Step 1: Observation, Problem, or Research Question

The procedure begins with identifying a problem or research question, such as a geological phenomenon that is not well explained in the scientific community's collective knowledge. This step usually involves reviewing the scientific literature to understand previous studies that may be related to the question.

Section 1.2.2 Step 2: Hypothesis

Once the problem or question is well defined, the scientist proposes a possible answer, a **hypothesis**, before conducting an experiment or fieldwork. This hypothesis must be specific, falsifiable, and should be based on other scientific work. Geologists often develop multiple working hypotheses because they usually cannot impose strict experimental controls or have limited opportunities to visit a field location [5; 6; 7].

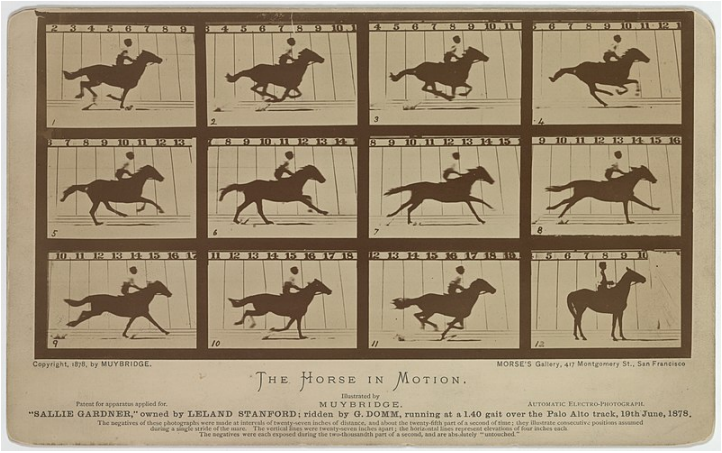


Figure ***Section*1.2.2**: A famous hypothesis: Leland Stanford wanted to know if a horse lifted all 4 legs off the ground during a gallop since the legs are too fast for the human eye to perceive it. This series of photographs by Eadweard Muybridge proved the horse, in fact, does have all four legs off the ground during the gallop.

Section 1.2.3 Step 3: Experiment and Hypothesis Revision

The next step is developing an **experiment** that either supports or refutes the hypothesis. Many people mistakenly think experiments are only done in a lab; however, an experiment can consist of observing natural processes in the field. Regardless of what form an experiment takes, it always includes the systematic gathering of objective **data**. This data is interpreted to determine whether it contradicts or supports the hypothesis, which may be revised and tested again. When a hypothesis holds up under experimentation, it is ready to be shared with other experts in the field.



Figure ***Section*1.2.3**: An experiment at the University of Queensland has been going on since 1927. A petroleum product called pitch, which is highly viscous, drips out of a funnel about once per decade. A 9-volt battery is shown for scale.

Section 1.2.4 Step 4: Peer Review, Publication, and Replication

Scientists share the results of their research by publishing articles in scientific journals, such as *Science* and *Nature*. Reputable journals and publishing houses will not publish an experimental study until they have determined its methods are scientifically rigorous and the conclusions are supported by evidence. Before an article is published, it undergoes a rigorous **peer review** by scientific experts who scrutinize the methods, results, and discussion. Once an article is published, other scientists may attempt to replicate the results. This **replication** is necessary to confirm the reliability of the study's reported results. A hypothesis that seemed compelling in one study might be proven false in studies conducted by other scientists. New technology can be applied to published studies, which can aid in confirming or rejecting once-accepted ideas and/or hypotheses.

Section 1.2.5 Step 5: Theory Development

In casual conversation, the word *theory* implies guesswork or speculation. In the language of science, an explanation or conclusion made in a **theory** carries much more weight because it is supported by experimental verification and widely accepted by the scientific community. After a hypothesis has been repeatedly tested for falsifiability through documented and independent studies, it eventually becomes accepted as a scientific theory.

While a hypothesis provides a tentative explanation *before* an experiment, a theory is the best explanation *after* being confirmed by multiple independent experiments. Confirmation of a theory may take years, or even longer. For example, the continental drift hypothesis first proposed by Alfred Wegener in 1912 was initially dismissed. After decades of additional evidence collection by other scientists using more advanced technology, Wegener's hypothesis was accepted and revised as the theory of plate tectonics.

The theory of evolution by natural selection is another example. Originating from the work of Charles Darwin in the mid-19th century, the theory of evolution has withstood generations of scientific testing for falsifiability. While it has been updated and revised to accommodate knowledge gained by using modern technologies, the theory of evolution continues to be supported by the latest evidence.



Figure ***Section*1.2.4**: Wegener later in his life, ca. 1924-1930.

Section 1.2.6 References

- 4. Sabra, A. I. & Others. *The optics of Ibn al-Haytham: Books I-III: On direct vision*. **1**, (Warburg Institute, University of London, 1989).
- 5. Railsback, B. L. T. C. Chamberlin's "Method of Multiple Working Hypotheses": An encapsulation for modern students. *Houston Geological Society Bulletin* **47**, 68–69 (2004).
- 6. Railsback, B. L. T. C. Chamberlin's 'Method of Multiple Working Hypotheses': An encapsulation for modern students. (1990). Available at: http://www.gly.uga.edu/railsback/r ailsback_chamberlin.html. (Accessed: 29th December 2016)
- 7. Chamberlin, T. C. The method of multiple working hypotheses. *Science* **15**, 92–96 (1890).
- The scientific method as an ongoing process. **Authored by**: ArchonMagnus. **Located at**: https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:The_Scientific_Method_as_an_Ongoing_Process.svg. **License**: CC BY-SA 4.0.
- Horse in motion. **Authored by**: Eadweard Muybridge. **Located at**: https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Eadweard_Muybridge-Sallie_Gardner_1878.jpg. **License**: Public Domain.
- Pitch drop experiment. **Authored by**: John Mainstone, Amada44. **Located at**: https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:University_of_Queensland_Pitch_drop_experiment-white_bg.jpg. **License**: CC BY-SA 3.0.
- Alfred Wegener. **Author**: unknown. **Located at**: https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Alfred_Wegener_ca.1924-30.jpg. **License**: Public Domain.

This page titled Section 1.2: The Scientific Method is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Chris Johnson, Matthew D. Affolter, Paul Inkenbrandt, & Cam Mosher (OpenGeology) via source content that was edited to the style and standards of the LibreTexts platform.

- **1.2: The Scientific Method** by Chris Johnson, Matthew D. Affolter, Paul Inkenbrandt, & Cam Mosher is licensed CC BY-NC-SA 4.0. Original source: https://opengeology.org/textbook/.

Section 1.3: Early Scientific Thought

Western scientific thought began in the ancient city of Athens, Greece [8]. Athens was governed as a democracy, which encouraged individuals to think independently, at a time when most civilizations were ruled by monarchies or military conquerors. Foremost among the early philosopher/scientists to use **empirical thinking** was Aristotle, born in 384 BCE. Empiricism emphasizes the value of evidence gained from experimentation and observation. Aristotle studied under Plato and tutored Alexander the Great. Alexander would later conquer the Persian Empire, and in the process spread Greek culture as far east as India.



Figure *Section*1.3.1: Fresco by Raphael of Plato (left) and Aristotle (right).

Aristotle applied an empirical method of analysis called **deductive reasoning**, which applies known principles of thought to establish new ideas or predict new outcomes. Deductive reasoning starts with generalized principles and logically extends them to new ideas or specific conclusions. If the initial principle is valid, then it is highly likely the conclusion is also valid. An example of deductive reasoning is if A=B, and B=C, then A=C. Another example is if all birds have feathers, and a sparrow is a bird, then a sparrow must also have feathers. The problem with deductive reasoning is if the initial principle is flawed, the conclusion will inherit that flaw. Here is an example of a flawed initial principle leading to the wrong conclusion: if all animals that fly are birds, and bats also fly, then bats must also be birds.

This type of empirical thinking contrasts with **inductive reasoning**, which begins from new observations and attempts to discern underlying generalized principles. A conclusion made through inductive reasoning comes from analyzing measurable evidence, rather than making a logical connection. For example, to determine whether bats are birds, a scientist might list various characteristics observed in birds--the presence of feathers, a toothless beak, hollow bones, lack of forelegs, and externally laid eggs. Next, the scientist would check whether bats share the same characteristics, and if they do not, draw the conclusion that bats are not birds.

Both types of reasoning are important in science because they emphasize the two most important aspects of science: **observation** and **inference**. Scientists test existing principles to see if they accurately infer or predict their observations. They also analyze new observations to determine if the inferred underlying principles still support them [9; 10].



Figure ***Section*1.3.2**: Drawing of Avicenna (Ibn Sina). He is among the first to link mountains to earthquakes and erosion.

Greek culture was spread by Alexander and then absorbed by the Romans, who help further extend Greek knowledge into Europe through their vast infrastructure of roads, bridges, and aqueducts [11]. After the fall of the Roman Empire in 476 CE, scientific progress in Europe stalled [8]. Scientific thinkers of medieval time had such high regard for Aristotle's wisdom and knowledge they faithfully followed his logical approach to understanding nature for centuries. By contrast, science in the Middle East flourished and grew between 800 and 1450 CE, along with culture and the arts.

Near the end of the medieval period, empirical experimentation became more common in Europe. During the Renaissance, which lasted from the 14th through 17th centuries, artistic and scientific thought experienced a great awakening [12; 13; 14]. European scholars began to criticize the traditional Aristotelian approach and by the end of the Renaissance period, empiricism was poised to become a key component of the scientific revolution that would arise in the 17th century [15].

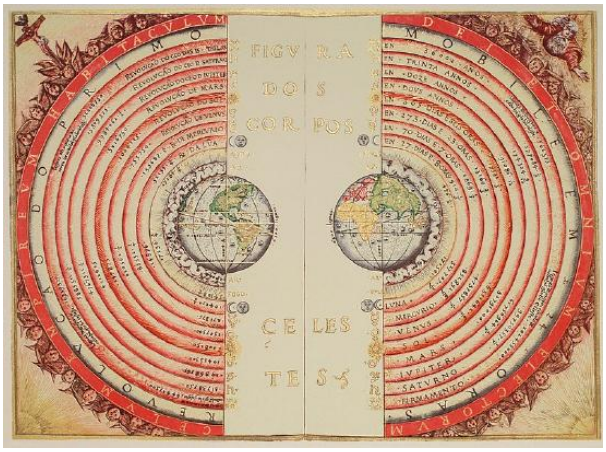


Figure ***Section*1.3.3**: Geocentric drawing by Bartolomeu Velho in 1568.

An early example of how Renaissance scientists began to apply a modern empirical approach is their study of the solar system. In the second century, the Greek astronomer Claudius Ptolemy observed the Sun, Moon, and stars moving across the sky. Applying Aristotelian logic to his astronomical calculations, he deductively reasoned all celestial bodies orbited around the Earth, which was located at the center of the universe. Ptolemy was a highly regarded mathematician, and his mathematical calculations were widely accepted by the scientific community. The view of the cosmos with Earth at its center is called the **geocentric model**. This geocentric model persisted until the Renaissance period, when some revolutionary thinkers challenged the centuries-old hypothesis.

By contrast, early Renaissance scholars such as astronomer Nicolaus Copernicus (1473-1543) proposed an alternative explanation for the perceived movement of the Sun, Moon, and stars. Sometime between 1507 and 1515, he provided a credible mathematical proof for a radically new model of the cosmos, one in which the Earth and other planets orbited around a centrally located Sun. After the invention of the telescope in 1608, scientists used their enhanced astronomical observations to support this **heliocentric**, Sun-centered, model [16; 17].

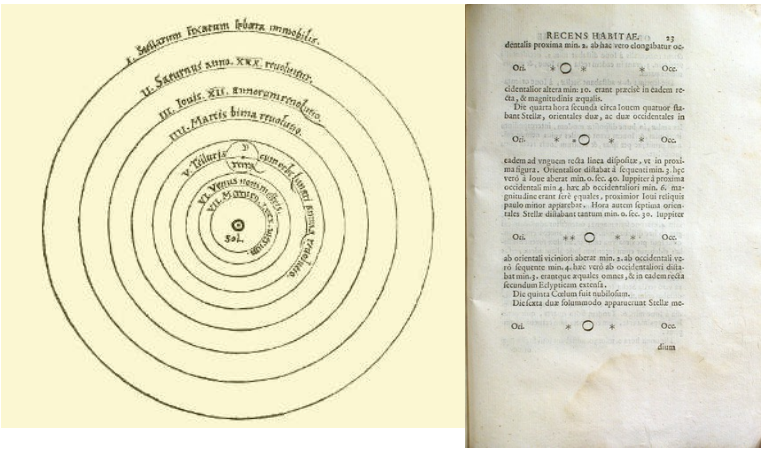


Figure ***Section*1.3.4**: Copernicus' heliocentric model (left). Galileo's first mention of the moons of Jupiter (right).

Two scientists, Johannes Kepler and Galileo Galilei, are credited with jump-starting the scientific revolution [15]. They accomplished this by building on Copernicus' work and challenging long-established ideas about nature and science.

Johannes Kepler (1571-1630) was a German mathematician and astronomer who expanded on the heliocentric model—improving Copernicus' original calculations and describing planetary motion as elliptical paths. Galileo Galilei (1564 – 1642) was an Italian astronomer who used the newly developed telescope to observe the four largest moons of Jupiter [18]. This was the first piece of direct evidence to contradict the geocentric model since moons orbiting Jupiter could not also be orbiting Earth.

Galileo strongly supported the heliocentric model and attacked the geocentric model, arguing for a more scientific approach to determine the credibility of an idea [19]. Because of this, he found himself at odds with prevailing scientific views and the Catholic Church. In 1633 he was found guilty of heresy and placed under house arrest, where he would remain until his death in 1642 [18; 19].

Galileo is regarded as the first modern scientist because he conducted experiments that would prove or disprove falsifiable ideas and based his conclusions on mathematical analysis of quantifiable evidence—a radical departure from the deductive thinking of Greek philosophers such as Aristotle [15; 18]. His methods marked the beginning of a major shift in how scientists studied the natural world, with an increasing number of them relying on evidence and experimentation to form their hypotheses. It was during this revolutionary time that geologists such as James Hutton and Nicolas Steno also made great advances in their scientific fields of study [15].

Section 1.3.1 References

- 8. Everitt, A. The Rise of Athens: The Story of the World's Greatest Civilization. (2016).
- 9. Martin, C. *Subverting Aristotle: Religion, History, and Philosophy in Early Modern Science*. (Baltimore : Johns Hopkins University Press., 2014).
- 10. Marshall, J. *A short history of Greek philosophy*. (Andrews UK Limited, 2010).
- 11. Goldsworthy, A. K. *The complete Roman army*. (Thames & Hudson, 2011).
- 12. Saliba, G. *Islamic science and the making of the European renaissance*. (MIT Press, 2007).
- 13. Hogendijk, J. P. & Sabra, A. I. *The Enterprise of Science in Islam: New Perspectives*. (MIT Press, 2003).
- 14. Beckwith, C. How western Europe developed a full scientific method. *Berfrois* (2013).
- 15. Cohen, H. F. *How modern science came into the world: Four civilizations, one 17th-century breakthrough*. (Amsterdam University Press, 2010).
- 16. Goldstein, B. R. Copernicus and the origin of his heliocentric system. *Journal for the History of Astronomy* **33**, 219–235 (2002).
- 17. Repcheck, J. *Copernicus' secret: How the scientific revolution began*. (Simon and Schuster, 2007).
- 18. Drake, S. *Galileo: Pioneer Scientist*. (University of Toronto Press, 1990).
- 19. Heilbron, J. L. *Galileo*. (Oxford University Press, 2012).
- The School of Athens by Raphael. **Authored by**: Raphael. **Located at**: https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Sanzio_01_Plato_Aristotle.jpg. **License**: Public Domain.

- Avicenna. **Authored by**: Beckwith. **Located at**: https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Avicenna.jpg. **License**: Public Domain.
- Geocentric drawing by Bartolomeu Velho. **Author**: Bartolomeu Velho. **Located at**: https://en.Wikipedia.org/wiki/File:Bartolomeu_Velho_1568.jpg. **License**: Public Domain.
- Copernicus' heliocentric model. **Authored by**: Copernicus. **Located at**: https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Copernican_heliocentrism_diagram.jpg. **License**: Public Domain.
- Galileo's moons of Jupiter. **Author**: Galileo Galilei. **Located at**: https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Sidereus_Nuncius_Medicean_Stars.jpg. **License**: Public Domain.

This page titled Section 1.3: Early Scientific Thought is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Chris Johnson, Matthew D. Affolter, Paul Inkenbrandt, & Cam Mosher (OpenGeology) via source content that was edited to the style and standards of the LibreTexts platform.

- **1.3: Early Scientific Thought** by Chris Johnson, Matthew D. Affolter, Paul Inkenbrandt, & Cam Mosher is licensed CC BY-NC-SA 4.0. Original source: https://opengeology.org/textbook/.

Section 1.4: The Study of Geology

Geologists apply the scientific method to learn about Earth's materials and processes. Geology plays an important role in society; its principles are essential to locating, extracting, and managing natural resources; evaluating environmental impacts of using or extracting these resources; as well as understanding and mitigating the effects of natural hazards.



Figure ***Section*1.4.1**: A class looks at rocks in Zion National Park.

Geology often applies information from physics and chemistry to the natural world, like understanding the physical forces in a landslide or the chemical interaction between water and rocks. The term comes from the Greek word *geo*, meaning Earth, and *logos*, meaning to think or reckon with.

Section 1.4.1 Why Study Geology?



Figure ***Section*1.4.2**: Hoover Dam provides hydroelectric energy and stores water for southern Nevada.

Geology plays a key role in how we use **natural resources**—any naturally occurring material that can be extracted from the Earth for economic gain. Our developed modern society, like all societies before it, is dependent on geologic resources. Geologists are involved in extracting fossil fuels, such as coal and petroleum; metals such as copper, aluminum, and iron; and water resources in streams and underground reservoirs inside soil and rocks. They can help conserve our planet's finite supply of **nonrenewable resources**, like petroleum, which are fixed in quantity and depleted by consumption. Geologists can also help manage **renewable resources** that can be replaced or regenerated, such as solar or wind energy, and timber.



Figure *Section*1.4.3: Coal power plant in Helper, Utah.

Resource extraction and usage impact our environment, which can negatively affect human health. For example, burning fossil fuels releases chemicals into the air that are unhealthy for humans, especially children. Mining activities can release toxic heavy metals, such as lead and mercury, into the soil and waterways. Our choices will have an effect on Earth's environment for the foreseeable future. Understanding the remaining quantity, extractability, and renewability of geologic resources will help us better sustainably manage those resources.



Figure *Section*1.4.4: Buildings toppled from liquefaction during a 7.5 magnitude earthquake in Japan.

Geologists also study natural hazards created by geologic processes. **Natural hazards** are phenomena that are potentially dangerous to human life or property. No place on Earth is completely free of natural hazards, so one of the best ways people can protect themselves is by understanding the geology. Geology can teach people about the natural hazards in an area and how to prepare for them. Geologic hazards include landslides, earthquakes, tsunamis, floods, volcanic eruptions, and sea-level rise.



Figure *Section*1.4.5: Oregon's Crater Lake was formed about 7700 years ago after the eruption of Mount Mazama.

Finally, geology is where other scientific disciplines intersect in the concept known as **Earth System Science**. In science, a **system** is a group of interactive objects and processes. Earth System Science views the entire planet as a combination of systems that interact with each other via complex relationships. This geology textbook provides an introduction to science in general and will often reference other scientific disciplines.

Earth System Science includes five basic systems (or spheres), the **geosphere** (the solid body of the Earth), the **atmosphere** (the gas envelope surrounding the Earth), the **hydrosphere** (water in all its forms at and near the surface of the Earth), the **cryosphere** (frozen water part of Earth), and the **biosphere** (life on Earth in all its forms and interactions, including humankind).

Rather than viewing geology as an isolated system, Earth system scientists study how geologic processes shape not only the world but all the spheres it contains. They study how these multidisciplinary spheres relate, interact, and change in response to natural cycles and human-driven forces. They use elements from physics, chemistry, biology, meteorology, environmental science, zoology, hydrology, and many other sciences.

Section 1.4.2 The Geologist's Tools



Figure ***Section*1.4.6**: Iconic Archaeopteryx lithographica fossil from Germany.

In its simplest form, a geologist's tool may be a rock hammer used for sampling a fresh surface of a rock. A basic toolset for fieldwork might also include:

- Magnifying lens for looking at mineralogical details
- Compass for measuring the orientation of geologic features
- Map for documenting the local distribution of rocks and minerals
- Magnet for identifying magnetic minerals like magnetite
- Dilute solution of hydrochloric acid to identify carbonate-containing minerals like calcite or limestone.

In the laboratory, geologists use optical microscopes to closely examine rocks and soil for mineral composition and grain size. Laser and mass spectrometers precisely measure the chemical composition and geological age of minerals. Seismographs record and locate earthquake activity, or when used in conjunction with ground-penetrating radar, locate objects buried beneath the surface of the earth. Scientists apply computer simulations to turn their collected data into testable, theoretical models. Hydrogeologists drill wells to sample and analyze underground water quality and availability. Geochemists use scanning electron microscopes to analyze minerals at the atomic level, via x-rays. Other geologists use gas chromatography to analyze liquids and gases trapped in glacial ice or rocks.

Technology provides new tools for scientific observation, which leads to new evidence that helps scientists revise and even refute old ideas. Because the ultimate technology will never be discovered, the ultimate observation will never be made. And this is the beauty of science—it is ever-advancing and always discovering something new.

Section 1.4.3 References

- Zion class. **Authored by**: Mason Chuang.
- Hoover Dam, Colorado River. **Authored by**: Ubergirl. **Located at**: https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File%3AHoover_Dam%2C_Colorado_River.JPG. **License**: CC BY-SA 3.0.

- Castle Gate Power Plant. **Authored by**: David Jolley. **Located at**: https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File%3ACastle_Gate_Power_Plant%2C_Utah_2007.jpg. **License**: CC BY-SA 3.0.
- Liquefaction at Niigata. **Authored by**: Ungtss. **Located at**: https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File%3ALiquefaction_at_Niigata.JPG. **License**: public domain.
- Crater Lake. **Authored by**: Zainubrazvi. **Located at**: https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Crater_lake_oregon.jpg. **License**: CC BY-SA 3.0.
- Archaeopteryx lithographica (Berlin specimen). **Authored by**: H. Raab. **Located at**: https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File%3AArchaeopteryx_lithographica_(Berlin_specimen).jpg . **License**: CC BY-SA 3.0.

This page titled Section 1.4: The Study of Geology is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Chris Johnson, Matthew D. Affolter, Paul Inkenbrandt, & Cam Mosher (OpenGeology) via source content that was edited to the style and standards of the LibreTexts platform.

- **1.5: The Study of Geology** by Chris Johnson, Matthew D. Affolter, Paul Inkenbrandt, & Cam Mosher is licensed CC BY-NC-SA 4.0. Original source: https://opengeology.org/textbook/.

Section 1.5: Earth Systems Overview



The Earth system is made up of four fundamental subsystems, or spheres. These are referred to as spheres due to the spherical shape of planet Earth, which results in a spherical distribution of the subsystem. The four major spheres are the atmosphere, hydrosphere, biosphere, and lithosphere/geosphere. In the diagram below and to the left, these are abbreviated. In a moment, we will explore an expanded view of these spheres that includes three additional subsystems.

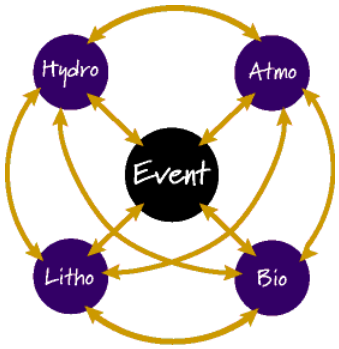


Figure ***Section*1.5.1**: Earth system interactions due to an "Event". Events can be a wide variety of things that trigger interactions, or forcings, within the Earth system. (Wheeling Jesuit University/NASA Classrooms of the Future; reproduced with permission.)

Events effect the Earth system as a whole, though they usually begin within a particular sphere. Let us explore a volcanic eruption as an example. When a volcanic eruption occurs, what happens?

- Ash and rock are blasted into the atmosphere;
- Gases are emitted into the atmosphere;
- Lava may run downslope;
- Pyroclastic flows, superheated ash, may rush downslope at great velocity;
- Lahars, or mudflows, may result from the rapid melting of snow and ice, bringing large amounts of debris downslope;
- Flora and fauna in the immediate vicinity of the volcano may be killed.

There are other effects associated with volcanic eruptions. If you were to place the eruption in the very center of this diagram and write some of these interactions along the golden arrows toward a sphere, where would you place them? These are direct effects on each sphere from the event.

These direct effects are not the end of the story. You can see that arrows also connect each sphere to every other sphere. What are some of the indirect interactions (forcings) that result from the eruption? For example, how is the biosphere affected by alterations in the lithosphere? Ultimately, understanding the interconnectedness of the Earth system is critical for gaining a holistic view of how our planet is affected by individual events. In the history of our planet, there are no shortage of such events!

Earth System Forcing Events

Types of forcing events and their effects on the lithosphere/geosphere, hydrosphere, atmosphere, and biosphere.

Forcing Event	Lithosphere/Geosphere	Hydrosphere	Atmosphere	Biosphere
Melting of Polar Ice	Direct - Isostatic adjustment as ice located on land melts	Direct - influx of freshwater into the marine realm affects thermohaline circulation. Change in planetary albedo leading to warmer seawater due to the loss of light-colored ice	Direct - Loss of sea ice leads to warming of oceans and changes in evaporation and weather patterns	Habitat fragmentation of organism ranges in polar regions
Stratovolcanic Eruption	Direct - Release of eruptive materials in the vicinity of the mountain and the creation of volcanic strata	Indirect via Atmosphere - influx of sulfur and carbon dioxide may lead to lower water pH	Direct - influx of ash, sulfur and carbon dioxide	Direct - Major effects on life in the vicinity of the volcano; Temporary regional or even global cooling affects some groups of organisms
Supervolcano Eruption	Direct - Major new volcanic deposits form over a large area. Vicinity of eruption subject to collapse.	Indirect via Atmosphere - surge of carbon and sulfur dioxide in atmosphere leads to lower pH in marine and freshwater environments.	Direct - Major influxes of volcanic gases and ash for extended periods of time.	Direct - Local, regional, and perhaps global extinctions due to deposits of massive amounts of volcanic material and extended global cooling
Deforestation	Indirect via Biosphere - Loss of vegetation leads to more mass wasting events	Indirect via Biosphere - Loss of vegetation affects regional transpiration, water storage, and drainage patterns	Direct - Loss of plant life leads to higher concentrations of carbon dioxide in the atmosphere	Direct - Habitat fragmentation and biodiversity loss. Possible localized or regional extinctions
Asteroid Impact	Direct - Major crater formed, ejecta deposits created over large area; high-pressure metamorphism in zone of impact; Seismic energy release	Direct - Vaporization of large amounts of surface and groundwater from a local to global level, depending upon size and composition of impactor	Direct - Frictional heating as impactor enters atmosphere; Heating as hot ejecta is thrown into atmosphere and exosphere that rains back down on Earth; Introduction of impact related particulate matter	Direct - local to global extinction event
Earthquake	Direct - Local to regional changes in landscape near fault	Indirect via Geosphere - Possible tsunamis or coastal landslides and turbidity currents	Indirect via Geosphere - Release of dust, debris, and toxic gases in some instances	Direct and Indirect - Depending on the species, building collapse and liquefaction can lead to death; Ecosystem changes are possible
Burning of Fossil Fuels	Indirect via Atmosphere - Addition of particulate matter and black carbon	Direct - Changes in regional evaporation rates due to warming;	Direct - addition of carbon dioxide warms the troposphere;	Direct - Climate warming leads to

Forcing Event	Lithosphere/Geosphere	Hydrosphere	Atmosphere	Biosphere
	to sedimentary deposits; Climate change leads to other downstream effects	Changes in hydrologic cycle	Changes in weather patterns	biodiversity loss, extinction, etc.
Viral Pandemic Among Human Population	Indirect - Social isolation and pause in economic activity leads to lower ambient seismic activity	Indirect - Reduction in pollution; Reduction in habitat disturbance from recreational boating	Indirect - Reduction in air pollution due to changes in economic activity and energy production	Direct - Widespread sickness and mortality among human species

This table lists a few examples of forcing events in the Earth system and some of their direct influences on one or more spheres. Some forcing events may not directly influence every sphere, rather only have an indirect secondary effect.

Earth Systems Interactions - Quiz



"Globe" by andrewasmith is licensed under CC BY-SA 2.0.

? Exercise *Section*1.5.1

A volcanic eruption emits sulfur dioxide gas.



a. Between event and hydrosphere

b. Between event and atmosphere

c. Between event and biosphere

d. Between event and lithosphere/geosphere

Answer

b. Between event and atmosphere

Exercise *Section*1.5.2

A volcanic eruption creates pyroclastic flows of super-heated gas and ash that rush downslope.



a. Between event and atmosphere

b. Between event and hydrosphere

c. Between event and lithosphere/geosphere

d. Between event and biosphere

Answer

d. Between event and biosphere

Exercise *Section*1.5.3

When volcanoes erupt, rapid melting of snow and ice can lead to lahars, or mudflows.



a. Event to Atmosphere

b. Event to Biosphere

c. Event to Hydrosphere

d. Event to Lithosphere/Geosphere

Answer

c. Event to Hydrosphere

Exercise *Section*1.5.4

Pyroclastic flows from a volcanic eruption event, in this case Mt. St. Helens in 1980, can have a downstream effect connecting the lithosphere/geosphere to...



a. Hydrosphere

b. Atmosphere

c. Biosphere

Answer

c. Biosphere

This page titled Section 1.5: Earth Systems Overview is shared under a CC BY-NC 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Callan Bentley, Karen Layou, Russ Kohrs, Shelley Jaye, Matt Affolter, and Brian Ricketts (OpenGeology) via source content that was edited to the style and standards of the LibreTexts platform.

- **3.2: Earth Systems Overview** by Callan Bentley, Karen Layou, Russ Kohrs, Shelley Jaye, Matt Affolter, and Brian Ricketts is licensed CC BY-NC 4.0. Original source: https://opengeology.org/historicalgeology/.

Section 1.6: Science Denial and Evaluating Sources

Introductory science courses usually deal with accepted scientific theory and do not include opposing ideas, even though these alternate ideas may be credible. This makes it easier for students to understand complex material. Advanced students will encounter more controversies as they continue to study their discipline.

Some groups of people argue that some established scientific theories are wrong, not based on their scientific merit but rather on the ideology of the group. This section focuses on how to identify evidence-based information and differentiate it from pseudoscience.



Figure *Section*1.6.1: Anti-Evolution League at the infamous Tennessee v. Scopes trial.

Section 1.6.1 Science Denial

Science denial happens when people argue that established scientific theories are wrong, not based on scientific merit but rather on subjective ideology—such as for social, political, or economic reasons. Organizations and people use science denial as a rhetorical argument against issues or ideas they oppose. Three examples of science denial versus science are:

1. Teaching evolution in public schools
2. Linking tobacco smoke to cancer
3. Linking human activity to climate change

Among these, denial of climate change is strongly connected with geology and Earth science. A climate denier specifically denies or doubts the objective conclusions of Earth scientists, geologists and climate scientists.



Figure *Section*1.6.2: 2017 March for Science in Washington, DC. This and other similar marches were in response to funding cuts and anti-science rhetoric.

Science denial generally uses three false arguments. The first argument tries to undermine the credibility of the scientific conclusion by claiming the research methods are flawed or the theory is not universally accepted—the science is unsettled. The

notion that scientific ideas are not absolute creates doubt for non-scientists; however, a lack of universal truths should not be confused with scientific uncertainty. Because science is based on falsifiability, scientists avoid claiming universal truths and use language that conveys uncertainty. This allows scientific ideas to change and evolve as more evidence is uncovered.

The second argument claims the researchers are not objective and are motivated by ideology or economic agenda. This is an ***ad hominem* argument** in which a person's character is attacked instead of the merit of their argument. They claim results have been manipulated so researchers can justify asking for more funding. They claim that because the researchers are funded by a federal grant, they are using their results to lobby for expanded government regulation.

The third argument is to demand a balanced view, equal time in media coverage and educational curricula, to engender the false illusion of two equally valid arguments. Science deniers frequently demand equal coverage of their proposals, even when there is little scientific evidence supporting their ideology. For example, science deniers might demand religious explanations to be taught as an alternative to the well-established theory of evolution [39; 40]. Or that all possible causes of climate change be discussed as equally probable, regardless of the body of evidence. Conclusions derived using the scientific method should not be confused with those based on ideologies.

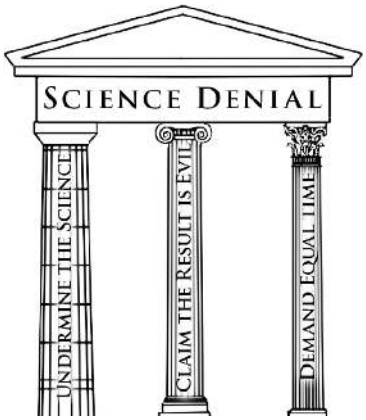


Figure ***Section*1.6.3**: Three false rhetorical arguments of science denial (Source: National Center for Science Education)

Furthermore, conclusions about nature derived from ideologies have no place in science research and education. For example, it would be inappropriate to teach the flat Earth model in a modern Earth science or geology course because this idea has been disproved by the scientific method. The formation of new conclusions based on the scientific method is the only way to change scientific conclusions. The fact that scientists avoid universal truths and change their ideas as more evidence is uncovered shouldn't be seen as meaning that the science is unsettled. Unfortunately, widespread scientific illiteracy allows these arguments to be used to suppress scientific knowledge and spread misinformation.

In a classic case of science denial, beginning in the 1960s and for the next three decades, the tobacco industry and their scientists used rhetorical arguments to deny a connection between tobacco usage and cancer. Once it became clear scientific studies overwhelmingly found that using tobacco dramatically increased a person's likelihood of getting cancer, their next strategy was to create a sense of doubt about the science. The tobacco industry suggested the results were not yet fully understood and more study was needed. They used this doubt to lobby for delaying legislative action that would warn consumers of the potential health hazards [39, 41]. This same tactic is currently being employed by those who deny the significance of human involvement in climate change.

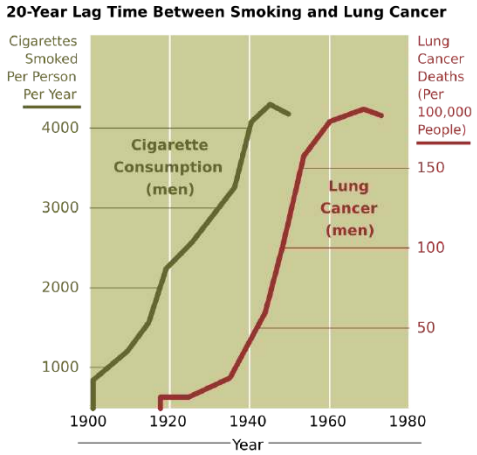


Figure *Section*1.6.4: The lag time between cancer after smoking, plus the ethics of running human trials, delayed the government in taking action against tobacco.

Section 1.6.2 Evaluating Sources of Information

In the age of the internet, information is plentiful. Geologists, scientists, or anyone exploring scientific inquiry must discern valid sources of information from pseudoscience and **misinformation**. This evaluation is especially important in scientific research because scientific knowledge is respected for its reliability [42]. Textbooks such as this one can aid this complex and crucial task. At its roots, quality information comes from the scientific method [43], beginning with the empirical thinking of Aristotle. The application of the scientific method helps produce **unbiased** results. A valid inference or interpretation is based on objective evidence or data. Credible data and inferences are clearly labeled, separated, and differentiated. Anyone looking over the data can understand how the author's conclusion was derived or come to an alternative conclusion. Scientific procedures are clearly defined so the investigation can be replicated to confirm the original results or expanded further to produce new results. These measures make a scientific inquiry valid and its use as a source reputable. Of course, substandard work occasionally slips through and retractions are published from time to time. An infamous article linking the MMR vaccine to autism appeared in the highly reputable journal *Lancet* in 1998. Journalists discovered the author had multiple conflicts of interest and fabricated data, and the article was retracted in 2010.

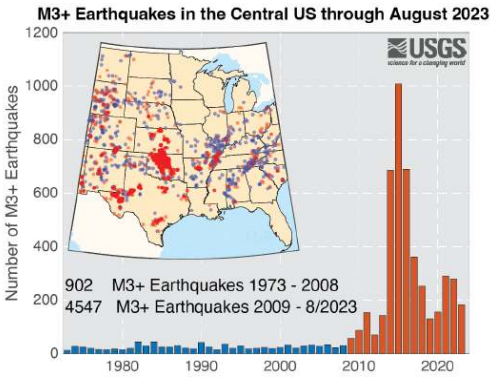


Figure *Section*1.6.5: This graph shows earthquake data. To call these earthquakes induced, due to fracking/drilling, is an interpretation. Since the USGS (a reputable institution) has interpreted these earthquakes as caused by humans, it is a more reliable interpretation.

In addition to methodology, data, and results, the author(s) of a study should be investigated [44]. An author's credibility is based on multiple factors, such as having a degree in a relevant topic or being funded from an unbiased source.

The same rigor should be applied to evaluating the publisher, ensuring the results reported come from an unbiased process [45]. The publisher should be easy to discover. Good publishers will show the latest papers in the journal and make their contact information and identification clear. Reputable journals show their peer review style. Some journals are predatory, where they use

unexplained and unnecessary fees to submit and access journals. Reputable journals have recognizable editorial boards. Often, a reliable journal will associate with a trade, association, or recognized open-source initiative.



Figure *Section*1.6.6: Logo for The Geological Society of America (GSA), one of the leading geoscience organizations. They also publish GSA Bulletin, a reputable geology journal.

One of the hallmarks of scientific research is peer review. Research should be transparent to peer review. This allows the scientific community to reproduce experimental results, correct and retract errors, and validate theories. This allows the reproduction of experimental results, corrections of errors, and proper justification of the research to experts.

Citation is not only imperative to avoid plagiarism, but also allows readers to investigate an author's line of thought and conclusions. When reading scientific works, it is important to confirm the citations are from reputable scientific research. Most often, scientific citations are used to reference paraphrasing rather than quotes. The number of times a work is cited is said to measure the influence an investigation has within the scientific community, although this technique is inherently biased [46].

Section 1.6.3 References

- 39. National Center for Science Education. Climate change denial. (2016). Available at: http://ncse.com/climate/denial. (Accessed: 6th April 2016)
- 40. Dreifus, C. Naomi Oreskes Imagines the Future History of Climate Change. *The New York Times* (2014).
- 41. Oreskes, N., Conway, E. & Cain, S. *Merchants of doubt: how a handful of scientists obscured the truth on issues from tobacco smoke to global warming*. (Bloomsbury Press, 2010).
- 42. Bocking, S. *Nature's experts: science, politics, and the environment*. (Rutgers University Press, 2004).
- 43. Alkin, M. C. *Evaluation Roots: Tracing theorists' views and influences*. (SAGE, 2004).
- 44. Krimsky, S. Do financial conflicts of interest bias research? An inquiry into the "funding effect" hypothesis. *Sci. Technol. Human Values* **38**, 566–587 (2013).
- 45. Spier, R. The history of the peer-review process. *Trends Biotechnol.* **20**, 357–358 (2002).
- 46. Moustafa, K. Aberration of the Citation. *Account. Res.* **23**, 230–244 (2016).
- Anti-Evolution League. **Author**: Mike Licht. **Located at**: https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Anti-EvolutionLeague.jpg. **License**: CC BY 2.0.
- March for Science in Washington, DC. **Author**: Becker1999. **Located at**: https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:March_for_Science,_Washington,_DC_(34168985286).jpg. **License**: CC BY 2.0.
- Pillars of science denial. **Author**: Josh Rosenau. **Located at**: https://ncse.ngo/pillars-climate-change-denial. **License**:
- Smoking and lung cancer correlation. **Author**: NIH. **Located at**: https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Cancer_smoking_lung_cancer_correlation_from_NIH.svg. **License**: Public Domain.
- Induced seismicity. **Author**: USGS. **Located at**: https://en.Wikipedia.org/wiki/File:Cumulative_induced_seismicity.png. **License**: Public Domain.
- Logo for the Geological Society of America. **Author**: GSA. **Located at**: https://www.geosociety.org/GSA/About/Who_We_Are/Society_Documents/GSA/About/logo_usage.aspx. **License**:

This page titled Section 1.6: Science Denial and Evaluating Sources is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Chris Johnson, Matthew D. Affolter, Paul Inkenbrandt, & Cam Mosher (OpenGeology) via source content that was edited to the style and standards of the LibreTexts platform.

- **1.6: Science Denial and Evaluating Sources** by Chris Johnson, Matthew D. Affolter, Paul Inkenbrandt, & Cam Mosher is licensed CC BY-NC-SA 4.0. Original source: https://opengeology.org/textbook/.

Section 1.7: Components of the Earth System

The following provides a brief overview of Earth's four major "spheres" as well as three additional components of the Earth system. In total, these are the:

- Exosphere
- Atmosphere
- Hydrosphere
- Cryosphere
- Lithosphere
- Biosphere
- Anthroposphere

Exosphere – Space Environment

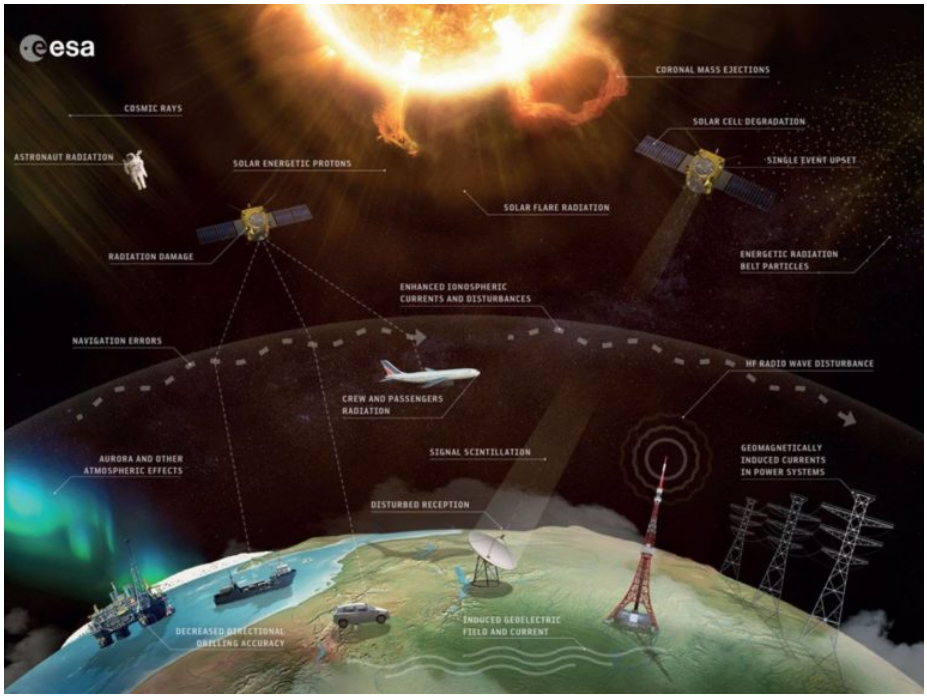


Figure ***Section*1.7.1**: The exosphere, or the space environment in which our planet resides, has many effects on our planet. (ESA)

The exosphere is the space environment. Thought of from the perspective of the Earth, it is the location of our planet in the solar system, around our particular star, as well as the location of our solar system within the Milky Way galaxy, and so forth. All of the energy that powers the other systems on our planet, with the exception of the geosphere, comes from the Sun – outside our planet. This solar radiation, ranging from gamma radiation through long-wave radio waves, is critical for the normal operation of the biosphere, atmosphere, and hydrosphere. The exosphere is also the source of dangerous radiation in the form of galactic cosmic rays and solar particle events. Ultimately, the exosphere is hostile to life, but paradoxically critical to life as well.

Atmosphere – Gaseous Earth (Troposphere, Greenhouse Gases, etc)

The atmosphere is the gaseous envelope that surrounds our planet. Our current atmosphere can be thought of as the third atmosphere our planet has had. The primordial atmosphere of the Hadean (a widely used term referring to the earliest 500 - 700 million years of Earth's history) and outgassing processes eventually gave way to one dominated by volcanic gases and rich in CO_2. Photosynthesis evolved around 3.8 Ga, after which the atmosphere increased in oxygen and nitrogen. Since about 600 Ma, the concentration of oxygen in the lower atmosphere (troposphere) has been pretty consistent with what we have today.

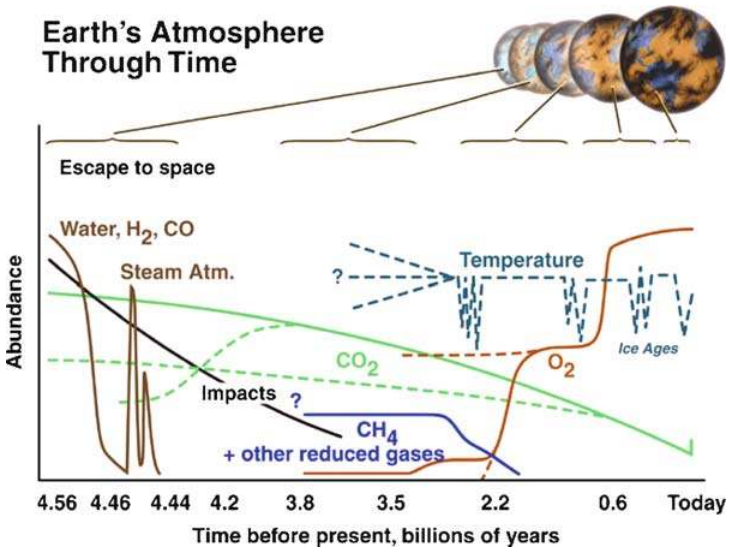


Figure ***Section*1.7.2**: Evolutionary history of the atmosphere over Earth history. (NASA)

Our atmosphere is layered, with the densest portion at the bottom. This bottom layer of the atmosphere, the troposphere, is where most of the action occurs. We refer to much of that activity as weather. It is also in this layer that human activity has the greatest impact. It is affected on a daily basis by the uneven heating of the Earth's surface on land and sea and the rotation of the Earth, creating what is called the planetary boundary layer. As Earth's surface absorbs solar radiation, it heats up, warming the air at the Earth surface. This warm air rises, creating turbulence. Above the troposphere is the stratosphere. In contrast to the troposphere, the temperature increases with elevation in the stratosphere, creating stability and minimizing turbulence. In the stratosphere, exospheric UV radiation is absorbed by photochemically produced ozone and diatomic oxygen. Ozone at this level of the atmosphere is critical for protecting terrestrial life. Human activity, through the release of chlorofluorocarbon compounds contained in hairspray, refrigerants, and more, destroyed stratospheric ozone molecules, resulting in an ozone-depleted region centered around the South Pole that was first measured in 1985. In 1987, the world came together to ratify the Montreal Protocol. This protocol banned these classes of chemicals and prevented stratospheric ozone from deteriorating to an even more dangerous state. These actions are subsequently resulting in a gradual reduction in the extent of the ozone hole.

Above the stratosphere lies the mesosphere (middle atmosphere) and thermosphere. As you ascend upward into the mesosphere, temperatures and pressure decrease. At the thermopause, the lower boundary of the thermosphere, pressure continues to drop but temperatures suddenly begin to rise sharply.

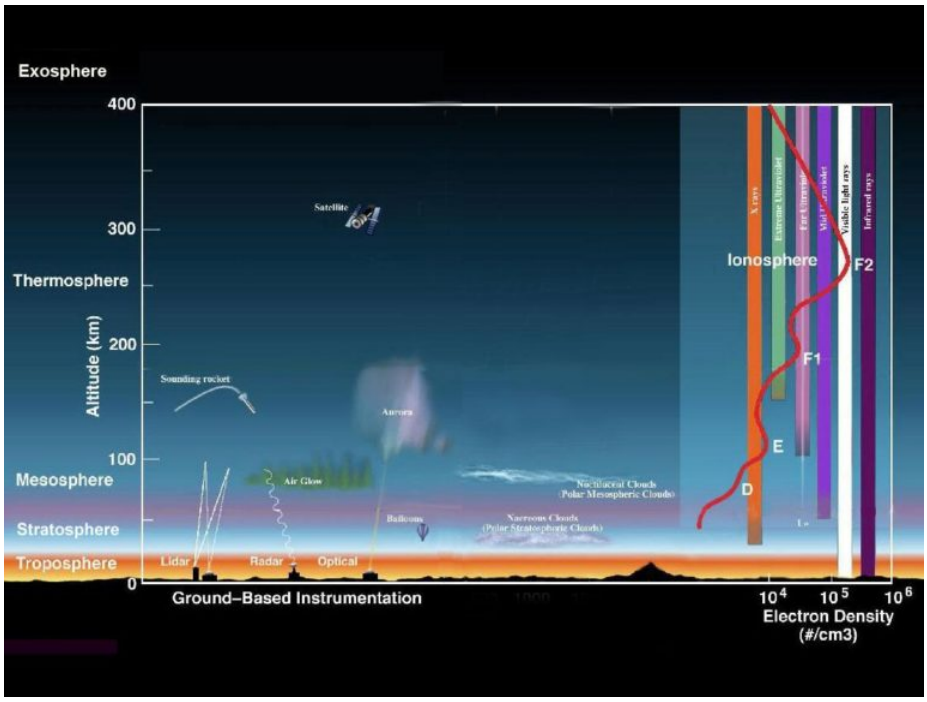


Figure ***Section*1.7.3**:The layers of our atmosphere also depicted with cloud tops and the penetrating ability of various portions of the electromagnetic spectrum. Visible light, some UV light, Infrared energy, and radio waves are the principle sources that reach the ground. (NASA)

The atmosphere regulates Earth's climate in several significant ways. The most important of these is the concentration of gases in the troposphere that trap heat and prevent it from escaping to the exosphere. Solar radiation, incoming primarily as UV (8%), shortwave infrared (49%), and visible light (42%) radiation, will warm the surface (land and water) and then be re-radiated as longwave radiation. The longwave radiation gets trapped by greenhouse gases like CO_2, CH_4, and NO_x. All of these gases are increasing in concentration due to human activity. This heat thus gets trapped in the atmosphere, which has a much lower specific heat capacity than water. Generally, this means that the hydrosphere ends up absorbing this heat in all of its uneven nature around the planet, leading to increases in evaporation in some places and precipitation in others. The trapped heat also generally warms the oceans and land surfaces, leading to higher ocean and land temperatures.



The uneven heating of the atmosphere is important for normal weather patterns. As identified in the figure below, there are three atmospheric convection cells between the equator and each of Earth's poles. Each cell has a rising limb with warm moist air and

descending limb with cool dry air. These cells play critical roles in atmospheric heat and moisture transfers. The rotation of the Earth produces the Coriolis Effect, which deflects the movement of air in these cells in an easterly direction at the poles (Polar Cell), westerly direction in the mid-latitudes (Ferrell Cell), and again in an easterly direction in the tropics (Hadley Cell). We will learn more about this in Chapter 4.

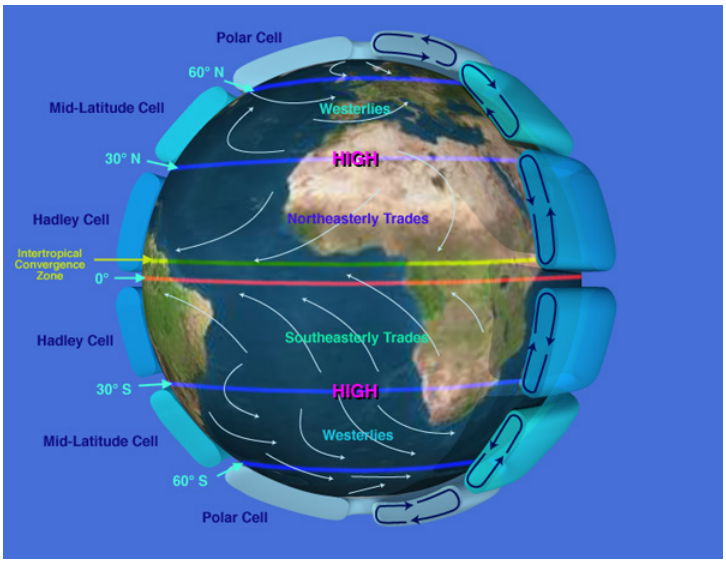


Figure *Section*1.7.4: Atmospheric circulation patterns at equinox position (Spring or Autumn). Note the positions of Hadley Cells through Polar Cells by latitude and their deflection due to the Coriolis Effect. (NASA)

These latitudinal variations drive our weather and lead to important gradients in the biosphere, called Latitudinal Biodiversity Gradients (LBG). Generally, biodiversity decreases from the tropics to the poles. This change in biodiversity is directly related to precipitation patterns and temperature changes with latitude...today. It is important to note here that today's LBG is not the norm for Earth's past. In fact, approximately 50 Ma, it is very likely that the temperate regions of the planet were the most diverse. This is because it was so much hotter in the tropics.

Hydrosphere – Earth's Water (Fresh, Marine, Ground, etc.)

The hydrosphere includes all water on earth, even that in the atmosphere as water vapor and clouds. It also consists of the oceans and freshwater in groundwater, lakes, rivers, and streams. While it is considered separately here, the cryosphere (e.g., glacial ice) is a critical element of the hydrosphere as it provides a significant storage sink for water.

Freshwater and marine systems have many similarities as well as many differences. The key feature of all water in the hydrosphere is its ability to regulate heat in various ways.

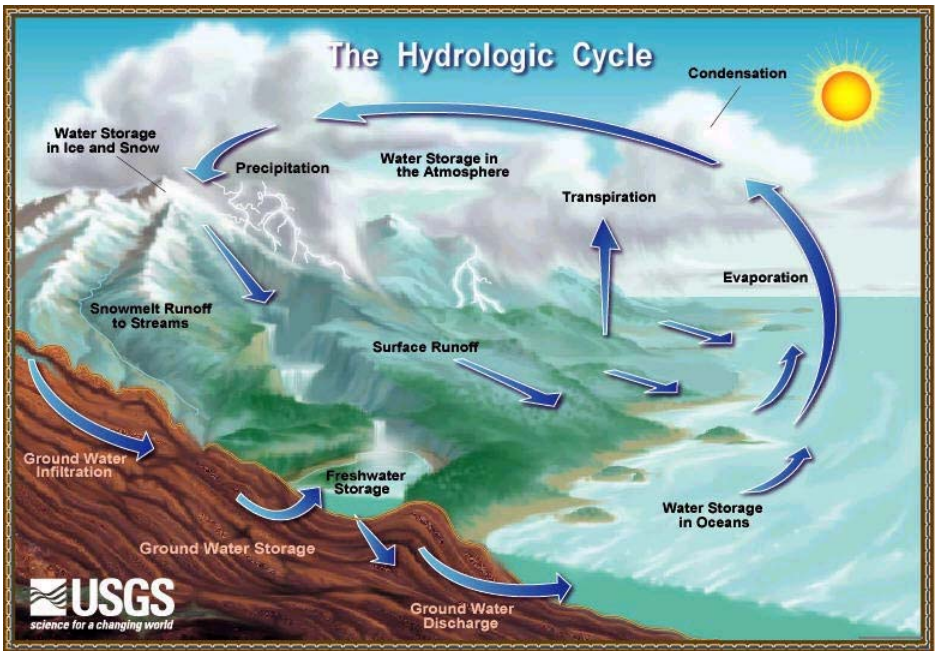


Figure ***Section*1.7.5**: The hydrologic cycle and hydrosphere. (USGS graphic)

Water has a high heat capacity (specific heat). That is, it will absorb a great deal of heat energy before it gets hot itself. It also requires considerable energy to convert liquid water to water vapor (i.e., the latent heat of evaporation). Thus, when water evaporates, it absorbs a significant amount of heat from the surrounding environment. This heat is stored in the water vapor and is not released until the vapor condenses back into liquid. When water vapor condenses into liquid water, it releases the stored latent heat of vaporization back into the atmosphere. This release of heat warms the surrounding air. Because of these properties, water is a critical regulator of energy on the planet. 1 kg of water has to absorb 4,184 J of energy for its temperature to rise 1 °C. By comparison with rock, in this case, only 385 J are needed to increase the temperature of 1 kg of copper one degree Celsius. Not only does the heat capacity of water make fish happy, it also means that excess heat from the atmosphere, the Sun, or the land during the day can be absorbed by water with little effect. Ultimately, while the hydrosphere is driven by the exchange of heat itself (the hydrologic cycle), it also regulates the planet's temperature in much the same way as sweat helps regulate your body temperature during a workout.

Another critical heat-regulating feature of the hydrosphere is ocean currents. Whether the continents are combined into a single supercontinent or split into what we have today, warm surface waters move and exchange with cool nutrient-rich bottom waters. This exchange, or convection, produces currents. These rivers in the ocean move heat around the planet. Temperature is not the only physical property in play when it comes to marine currents, as the salinity of marine water can vary enough to produce density-driven currents. The combined thermohaline circulation patterns in the ocean regulate our climate.



Cryosphere – Frozen portion of the hydrosphere

The cryosphere is the solid portion of the hydrosphere. It is worth discussing separately from the hydrosphere because of the particular importance of ice in exchanges of heat and light between Earth's systems. Like water, ice has a heat regulation effect.



Figure *Section*1.7.6: A view of the Antarctic cryosphere (NASA)

Polar ice caps provide an important counterweight to the extreme heat experienced in the mid-latitudes. The temperature differences between these regions drives the movement of air in the atmosphere, forming atmospheric convection cells (warm air rising and cool air descending) that, while deflected by the Earth's rotation and Coriolis Effect, drive our weather. Polar ice is also a critical water storage sink. As it melts, sea level rises and isostatic adjustment of continents occurs.

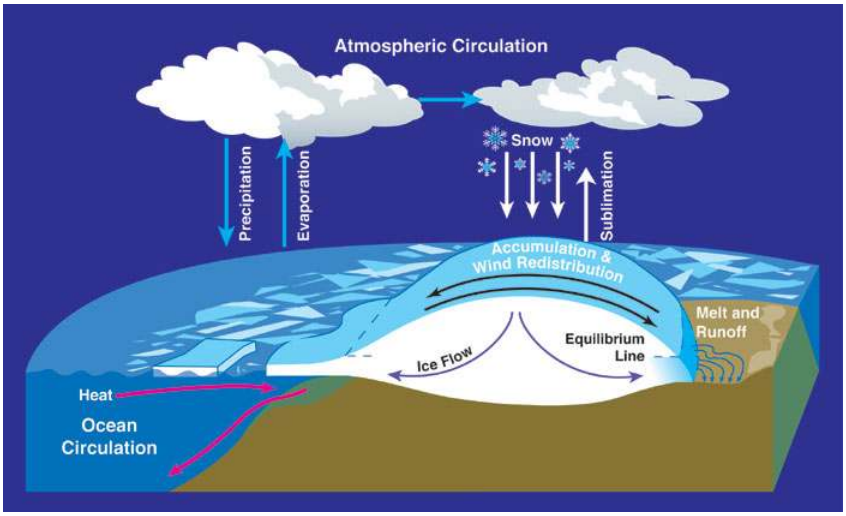


Figure *Section*1.7.7: Earth's Cryosphere (NASA)

The Earth has not always had polar ice. Just 40 Ma ago, the planet's climate was so warm that there was no ice at the poles. With the rising of the Himalayas and Andes came increased erosion and chemical weathering of silicate minerals. As mountains rise, this form of weathering results in a net depletion of carbon dioxide from the atmosphere and deposits the byproduct of that carbon into the oceans as bicarbonate ions. The removal of carbon dioxide from the atmosphere results in a general cooling of the planet. This eventually resulted in ice storage on land over Antarctica, as a continental glacier. Later, ice would form over the northern polar regions in the sea.

The polar ice caps are only part of the story of the cryosphere. The ebb and flow of continental glaciers in places like Greenland and valley glaciers all over the world provide us with important visual thermometers for global temperature changes.

As glaciers and sea ice retreat, there are changes in the color distribution on the Earth's surface. Albedo, a measure of this, is highest on ice and lowest on ocean water. When sunlight hits ice, it reflects nearly 100% of the energy. When sunlight hits water, water acts similar to a blackbody (an object that absorbs all radiation it receives). As the climate warms, ice recedes, and the climate warms more. We will return to this dynamic later in the textbook.

Lithosphere/Geosphere – Solid Earth (Rock, including molten rock)

The geosphere makes up the solid portion of the planet. If you have taken a course in Physical Geology, you know all about the rocks and minerals that make up the various layers of our planet from the inner core outward to the crust. Chapter 2 in this book will introduce you to the minerals and rocks of the geosphere.

Unique among the spheres, the geosphere produces its own energy. There are three sources. Radioactive decay of unstable elements within our planet's interior produces a great deal of heat energy. Another heat source comes from remnant primordial heat still yet to dissipate from the planet's formation. Finally, frictional heating plays a role, descending material rubs against other materials. Earth is hottest near the center and is cooler at the surface. This collective heat leads to the geothermal gradient, the increase in temperature as you descend further into the Earth. It also drives plate tectonics and resulting volcanism, earthquakes, and natural hazards.

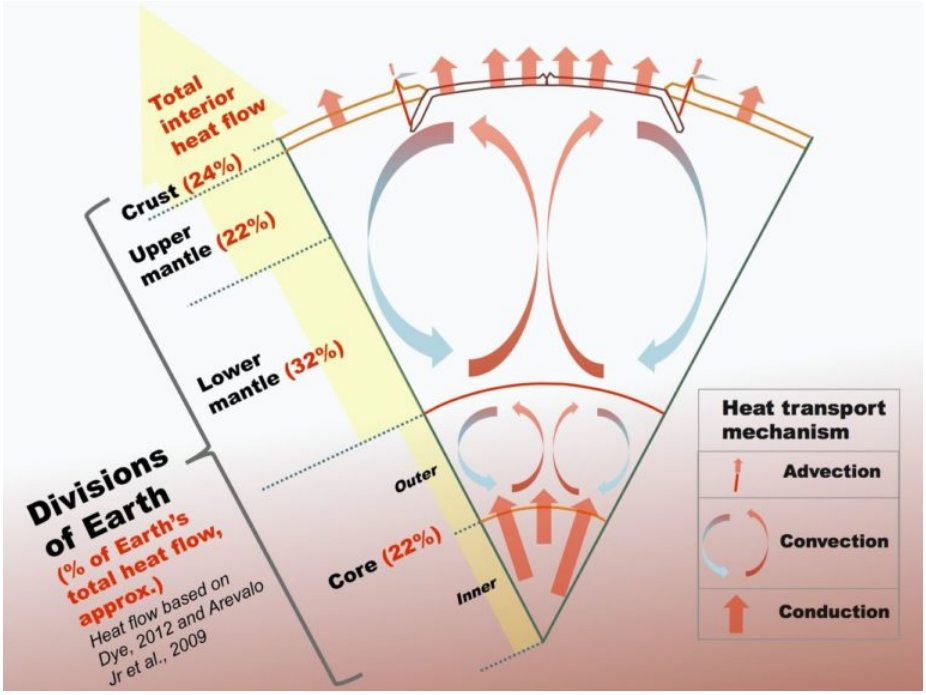


Figure ***Section*1.7.8**: Cross-section of the Earth showing its main divisions and their approximate contributions to Earth's total internal heat flow to the surface, and the dominant heat transport mechanisms within the Earth (Wikimedia, Bkilli[1])

Because of this independent heat energy, the solid Earth is much more dynamic than any other terrestrial planet we know of. Mercury, Venus, and Mars are very different places with differing amounts of interior activity. Some natural satellites in our solar system likely also produce their own interior heat. Examples may include Saturn's natural satellite Titan. Earth, because of plate tectonics, is a much more active planet and one where the rocks are constantly interacting with and having an effect on the liquid and gaseous portions of the planet.

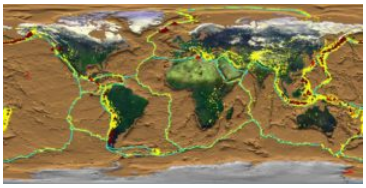


Figure ***Section*1.7.9**: Crustal dynamics in the Earth's geosphere. Red triangles indicate volcanoes and yellow dots indicate earthquake epicenters. Blue lines are plate boundaries. (NASA SVS)

It is hard to pin down the most important geosphere elements for driving climatic change on the Earth. Volcanism is very likely most important, due to the input of gases like SO_2 into the atmosphere, which can have a cooling effect due to its ability to reflect solar radiation back to space. There is also airborne dust, sometimes referred to as loess and measured as a component of particular matter. This airborne dust has the ability to absorb heat and heat the atmosphere, causing warming in places where dust is moved from elsewhere.

Biosphere – Life

Without a tectonically active geosphere, an atmosphere with the right concentration of gases, and a hydrosphere made up so heavily of liquid water, there would likely be little to no biosphere on Earth. Unique among planets in our solar system and perhaps

anywhere, Earth contains an amazing array of life. The origins of life on Earth are still somewhat elusive, but we do know that over time it has evolved to live in balance with the other spheres to the point where because the biosphere is such a critical influence on the other spheres, it can be considered on its own terms. Being located in the habitable zone (Goldilocks Zone) of a G-type star has its perks. Is Earth unique in this? A number of exoplanets have been identified that are located in the habitable zones around their stars, but as yet, no extraterrestrial life has been confirmed.

The video below provides a sense of life on Earth. You are viewing the ebb and flow of life forms in the oceans through the lens of chlorophyll from space, with data collected by the MODIS sensor. This data was collected by NASA between 2002 and 2010 and displays visually the intricate link between photosynthetic life and seasonality.



The biosphere plays a very important role in the climate, particularly when it comes to the regulation of greenhouse gases. Of course, the decomposition of organic matter is a major source of CH_4 and NO_x gases, aside from what humans contribute. But, the real effect is the planet-wide exchange of CO_2 and O_2 that is so critical to regulating temperature and providing breathable oxygen.

Check out the supercomputer simulation of CO_2, offered by NASA Goddard below. The red concentrations mostly represent CO_2, but you will see as the animation and narration progress that, during the southern hemisphere summer, CO concentrations from fires in Africa and South American increase significantly. As the animation progresses, note the role that the biosphere plays in the annual fluctuations of CO_2 in various places around the planet, but particularly in the Amazon and Congo basins.



3.8 Ba ago, the biosphere began to alter the Earth's atmosphere for its own purposes. The evolution of photosynthesis and the subsequent Great Oxygenation Event have left a long legacy that lives on today, in the form of algae and other plants that provide the base of the trophic levels so critical to our existence. Today, the biosphere is once again altering the Earth's atmosphere, but through the actions of a single species.

Anthroposphere – Human portion of the biosphere

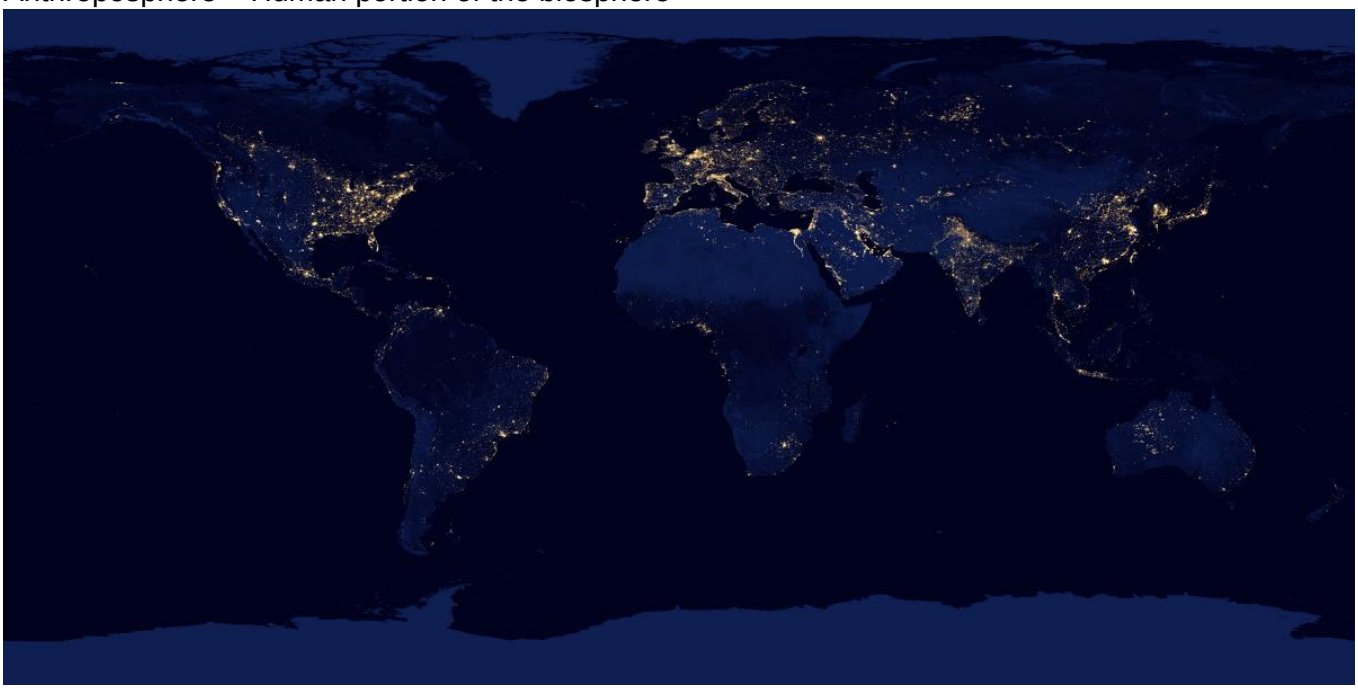


Figure ***Section*1.7.10**: Earth at night (NASA)

The anthroposphere has been suggested to account for human interactions with Earth's spheres. Humans are a force of nature. No single species in the history of life can claim such a mantle. Yet, humans are a part of the biosphere. Because of our outsized impact, it is useful and perhaps even appropriate to consider the human element of the planet independently from the other spheres. Thus, the anthroposphere. The human impact on the planet goes well beyond altering the atmosphere and climate, leading some scientists to argue that the Earth has entered a new geological epoch. However, the Subcommission on Quaternary Stratigraphy of the International Commission on Stratigraphy uniformly rejected this proposal in March 2024.

Did I Get It? - Quiz

? Exercise *Section*1.7.1

Which of the Earth's spheres encompasses frozen water?

a. Hydrosphere

b. Cryosphere

c. Lithosphere

Answer

b. Cryosphere

? Exercise *Section*1.7.2

Which of the Earth's spheres do you see interacting here?



a. Biosphere, Atmosphere, Hydrosphere

b. Biosphere, Anthroposphere, Lithosphere

c. Biosphere, Lithosphere, Atmosphere

Answer

c. Biosphere, Lithosphere, Atmosphere

This page titled Section 1.7: Components of the Earth System is shared under a CC BY-NC 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Callan Bentley, Karen Layou, Russ Kohrs, Shelley Jaye, Matt Affolter, and Brian Ricketts (OpenGeology) via source content that was edited to the style and standards of the LibreTexts platform.

- **3.3: The Symphony of the Spheres** by Callan Bentley, Karen Layou, Russ Kohrs, Shelley Jaye, Matt Affolter, and Brian Ricketts is licensed CC BY-NC 4.0. Original source: https://opengeology.org/historicalgeology/.

Section 1.8: Components of Earth System- Relationships between human activities and Earth's spheres

Human interactions with Earth's systems have profoundly altered the planet. The geosphere, comprising the solid Earth has been extensively modified by activities such as mining, construction, and agriculture. These activities alter the physical landscape and trigger processes like erosion and sedimentation, influencing the stability and composition of the Earth's surface. Moreover, the extraction of fossil fuels has led to significant geological changes, including mild earthquakes (from fracking), land subsidence, and the formation of artificial structures like quarries and landfills.

The hydrosphere, encompassing all water bodies on Earth, has also been significantly impacted by human activities. Freshwater resources are under pressure from over-extraction, pollution, and climate change. Rivers are dammed for hydroelectric power, altering their natural flow and affecting ecosystems both upstream and downstream. Industrial and agricultural runoff introduces pollutants into lakes, rivers, and oceans, leading to water quality degradation and the disruption of aquatic life. Additionally, climate change, driven by human-induced greenhouse gas emissions, is causing sea levels to rise and altering precipitation patterns, further stressing water resources.

Human activities have a profound impact on the atmosphere, the layer of gases surrounding the Earth. The burning of fossil fuels for energy and transportation releases large amounts of carbon dioxide and other greenhouse gases into the atmosphere, contributing to global warming and climate change. Air pollution from industrial processes, vehicle emissions, and deforestation leads to smog and acid rain, which harm human health, reduce air quality, and damage ecosystems. Efforts to mitigate these effects include transitioning to renewable energy sources, enhancing energy efficiency, and implementing stricter air quality regulations.



Figure 1.4.1 "Bathed in air pollution, Henan Province, China" by vtpoly is licensed under CC BY-NC-ND 2.0.

The biosphere, which includes all living organisms on Earth, is directly affected by human actions. Habitat destruction, overexploitation of resources, pollution, and the introduction of invasive species have led to significant biodiversity loss. Agricultural practices, urban expansion, and deforestation disrupt natural habitats, reducing the available space for wildlife and altering ecosystems. Conservation efforts, such as protecting endangered species, restoring habitats, and promoting sustainable practices, are essential to preserve biodiversity and maintain the balance of ecosystems.

Human interactions with Earth's four spheres are interconnected and complex, with each sphere influencing and being influenced by the others. Understanding these interactions is crucial for developing sustainable practices that minimize negative impacts and enhance the resilience of Earth's systems. By recognizing the importance of each sphere and their interdependencies, we can make informed decisions to protect and sustain our planet for future generations.

The following subsections provide two examples of these interactions.

Attributions:

OpenAI. (2024). ChatGPT (4o) [Large language model]. https://chatgpt.com provided a first draft of this page, which Tim Ellsworth modified.

Section 1.8: Components of Earth System- Relationships between human activities and Earth's spheres is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

Section 1.S: Summary

Science is a process, with no beginning and no end. Science is never finished because a full truth can never be known. However, science and the scientific method are the best way to understand the universe we live in. Scientists draw conclusions based on objective evidence; they consolidate these conclusions into unifying models. Geologists likewise understand studying the Earth is an ongoing process, beginning with James Hutton who declared the Earth has "…no vestige of a beginning, no prospect of an end." Geologists explore the 4.5 billion-year history of Earth, its resources, and its many hazards. From a larger viewpoint, earth science can teach people how to develop credible conclusions, as well as identify and stop misinformation.

Section 1.S: Summary is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

CHAPTER OVERVIEW

Chapter 2: Plate Tectonics

Learning Objectives

By the end of this chapter, students should be able to:

- Describe how the ideas behind plate tectonics started with Alfred Wegener's hypothesis of continental drift.
- Describe the physical and chemical layers of the Earth and how they affect plate movement.
- Explain how movement at the three types of plate boundaries causes earthquakes, volcanoes, and mountain building.
- Identify convergent boundaries, including subduction and collisions, as places where plates come together.
- Identify divergent boundaries, including rifts and mid-ocean ridges, as places where plates separate.
- Explain transform boundaries as places where adjacent plates shear past each other.
- Describe the Wilson Cycle, beginning with continental rifting, ocean basin creation, plate subduction, and ending with ocean basin closure.
- Explain how the tracks of hotspots, places that have continually rising magma, is used to calculate plate motion.

Revolution is a word usually reserved for significant political or social changes. Several of these idea revolutions forced scientists to re-examine their entire field, triggering a paradigm shift that shook up their conventionally held knowledge. Charles Darwin's book on evolution, *On the Origin of Species*, published in 1859; Gregor Mendel's discovery of the genetic principles of inheritance in 1866; and James Watson, Francis Crick, and Rosalind Franklin's model for the structure of DNA in 1953 did that for biology. Albert Einstein's relativity and quantum mechanics concepts in the early twentieth century did the same for Newtonian physics.

The concept of plate tectonics was just as revolutionary for geology. The theory of plate tectonics attributes the movement of massive sections of the Earth's outer layers with creating earthquakes, mountains, and volcanoes. Many earth processes make more sense when viewed through the lens of plate tectonics. Because it is so important in understanding how the world works, plate tectonics is the first topic of discussion in this textbook.

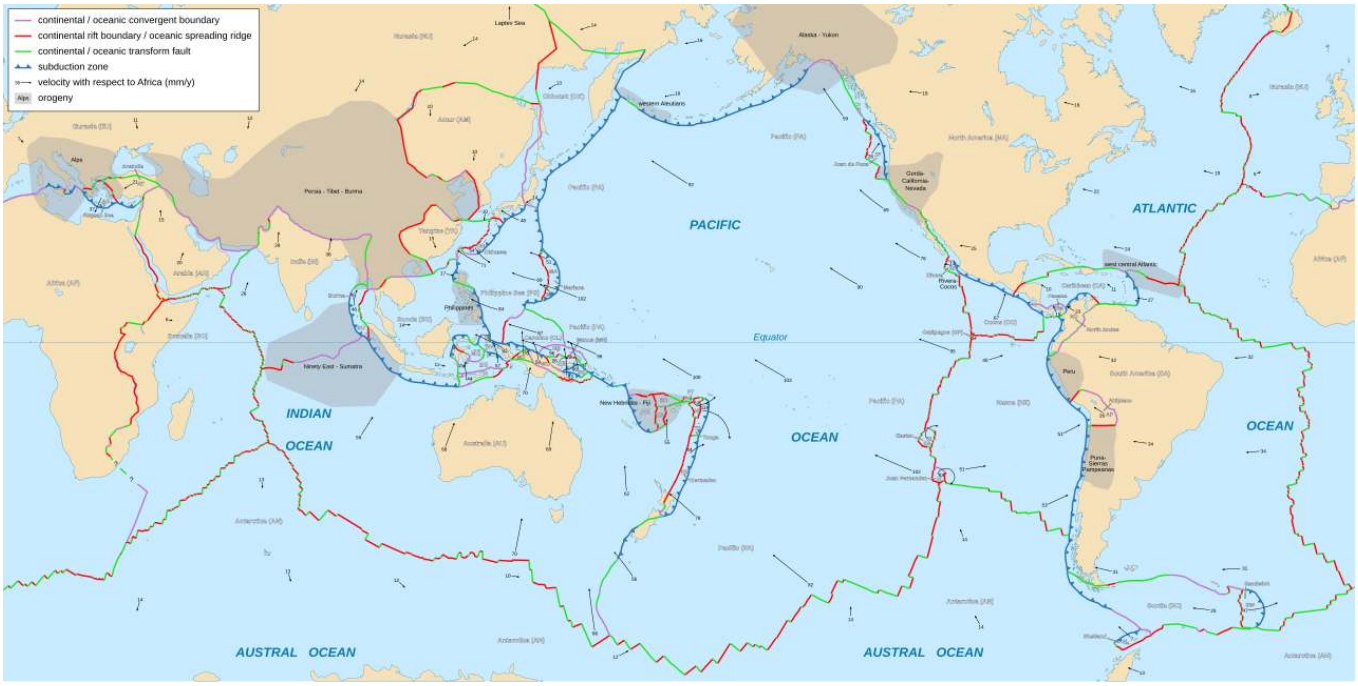


Figure *Chapter2.1*: Detailed map of all known plates, their boundaries, and movements. (By Eric Gaba; CC BY-SA 2.5 via Wikimedia Commons.)

Section 2.1: Alfred Wegener’s Continental Drift Hypothesis
Section 2.2: Layers of the Earth
Section 2.3: Convergent Boundaries
Section 2.4: Divergent Boundaries
Section 2.5: Transform Boundaries
Section 2.6: The Wilson Cycle
Section 2.7: Hotspots
Section 2.S: Summary

This page titled Chapter 2: Plate Tectonics is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Chris Johnson, Matthew D. Affolter, Paul Inkenbrandt, & Cam Mosher (OpenGeology) via source content that was edited to the style and standards of the LibreTexts platform.

Section 2.1: Alfred Wegener's Continental Drift Hypothesis

Alfred Wegener (1880-1930) was a German scientist who specialized in meteorology and climatology. His knack for questioning accepted ideas started in 1910 when he disagreed with the explanation that the Bering Land Bridge was formed by isostasy and that similar land bridges once connected the continents [1]. After reviewing the scientific literature, he published a hypothesis stating the continents were originally connected and then drifted apart. While he did not have the precise mechanism worked out, his hypothesis was backed up by a long list of evidence.



Figure *Section*2.1.1: Wegener later in his life, ca. 1924-1930. (By unknown; public domain via Wikimedia Commons.)

Section 2.1.1 Early Evidence for the Continental Drift Hypothesis

Wegener's first piece of evidence was that the coastlines of some continents fit together like pieces of a jigsaw puzzle. People noticed the similarities in the coastlines of South America and Africa on the first world maps, and some suggested the continents had been ripped apart [3]. Antonio Snider-Pellegrini did preliminary work on continental separation and matching fossils in 1858.

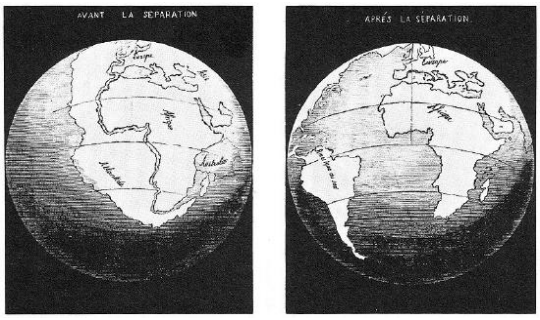


Figure *Section*2.1.2: Snider-Pellegrini's map showing the continental fit and separation, 1858. (By Antonio Snider-Pellegrini; public domain via Wikimedia Commons.)

What Wegener did differently was synthesize a large amount of data in one place. He used the true edges of the continents, based on the shapes of the **continental shelves** [4]. This resulted in a better fit than previous efforts that traced the existing coastlines [5].

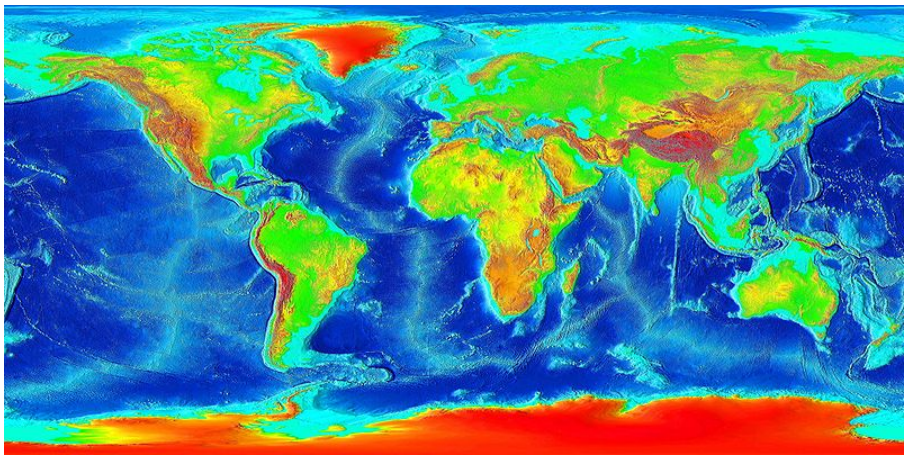


Figure *Section*2.1.3: Map of world elevations. Note the light blue, which are continental shelves flooded by shallow ocean water. These show the true shapes of the continents. (By Tahaisik; CC BY-SA 3.0 via Wikimedia Commons.)

Wegener also compiled evidence by comparing similar rocks, mountains, fossils, and glacial formations across oceans. For example, the fossils of the primitive aquatic reptile *Mesosaurus* were found on the separate coastlines of Africa and South America. Fossils of another reptile, *Lystrosaurus*, were found in Africa, India, and Antarctica. He pointed out these land-dwelling creatures could not have swum across an entire ocean.

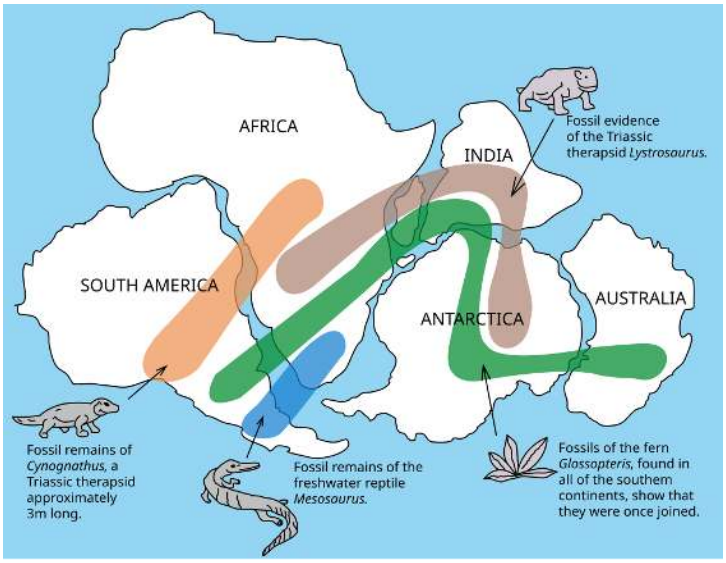


Figure *Section*2.1.4: Image showing fossils that connect the continents of Gondwana (the southern continents of Pangea). (By Osvaldocangaspadilla; public domain via Wikimedia Commons.)

Opponents of **continental drift** insisted trans-oceanic land bridges allowed animals and plants to move between continents [6]. The land bridges eventually eroded away, leaving the continents permanently separated. The problem with this hypothesis is the improbability of a land bridge being tall and long enough to stretch across a broad, deep ocean.

More support for continental drift came from the puzzling evidence that glaciers once existed in normally very warm areas in southern Africa, India, Australia, and Arabia. These climate anomalies could not be explained by land bridges. Wegener found similar evidence when he discovered tropical plant fossils in the frozen region of the Arctic Circle. As Wegener collected more data, he realized the explanation that best fit all the climate, rock, and fossil observations involved moving continents.

Section 2.1.2 Proposed Mechanism for Continental Drift

Wegener's work was considered a fringe science theory for his entire life. One of the biggest flaws in his hypothesis was the inability to provide a mechanism for how the continents moved. Obviously, the continents did not appear to move, and changing the conservative minds of the scientific community would require exceptional evidence that supported a credible mechanism. Other pro-continental drift followers used expansion, contraction, or even the Moon's origin to explain how the continents moved.

Wegener used centrifugal forces and precession, but this model was proven wrong [7]. He also speculated about seafloor spreading, with hints of **convection**, but could not substantiate these proposals [8]. As it turns out, current scientific knowledge revealed convection as the major force in driving plate movements.

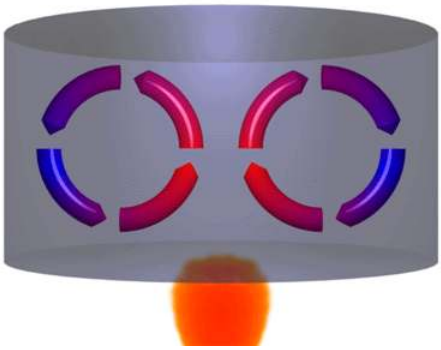


Figure *Section*2.1.5: Animation of the basic idea of convection: an uneven heat source in a fluid causes rising material next to the heat and sinking material far from the heat. (By Oni Lukos; CC BY-SA 3.0 via Wikimedia Commons.)

Section 2.1.3 Development of Plate Tectonic Theory

Wegener died in 1930 on an expedition in Greenland. Poorly respected in his lifetime, Wegener and his ideas about moving continents seemed destined to be lost in history as fringe science. However, in the 1950s, evidence started to trickle in that made continental drift a more viable idea. By the 1960s, scientists had amassed enough evidence to support the missing mechanism—namely, seafloor spreading—for Wegener's hypothesis of continental drift to be accepted as the **theory of plate tectonics**. Ongoing GPS and earthquake data analyses continue to support this theory. The next section provides the pieces of evidence that helped transform one man's wild notion into a scientific theory.

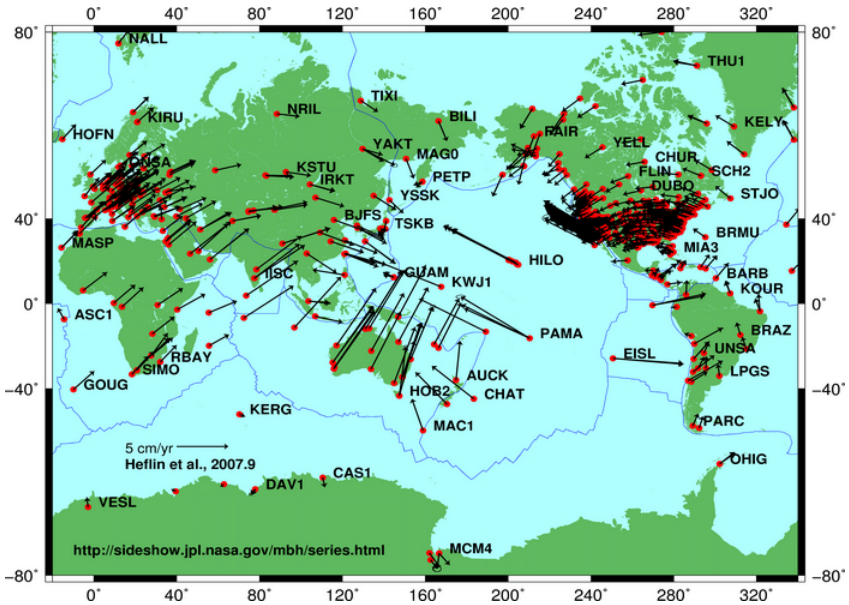


Figure *Section*2.1.6: GPS measurements of plate motions. Black arrows point in the direction of motion and the length represents the amount of movement per year. (By NASA; public domain via Wikimedia Commons.)

Section 2.1.3.0.1 Mapping of the Ocean Floors

In 1947 researchers started using an adaptation of SONAR to map a region in the middle of the Atlantic Ocean with poorly-understood topographic and thermal properties [9]. Using this information, Bruce Heezen and Marie Tharp created the first detailed map of the ocean floor to reveal the **Mid-Atlantic Ridge** [10], a basaltic mountain range that spanned the length of the Atlantic Ocean, with rock chemistry and dimensions unlike the mountains found on the continents. Initially, scientists thought the ridge was part of a mechanism that explained the expanding Earth or ocean-basin growth hypotheses [11; 12]. In 1959, Harry Hess proposed the hypothesis of **seafloor spreading** – that the **mid-ocean ridges** represented tectonic plate factories, where a new **oceanic plate**

was being created from these long volcanic ridges. Scientists later included transform faults perpendicular to the ridges to better account for varying rates of movement between the newly formed plates [13]. When earthquake epicenters were discovered along the ridges, the idea that earthquakes were linked to plate movement took hold [14].

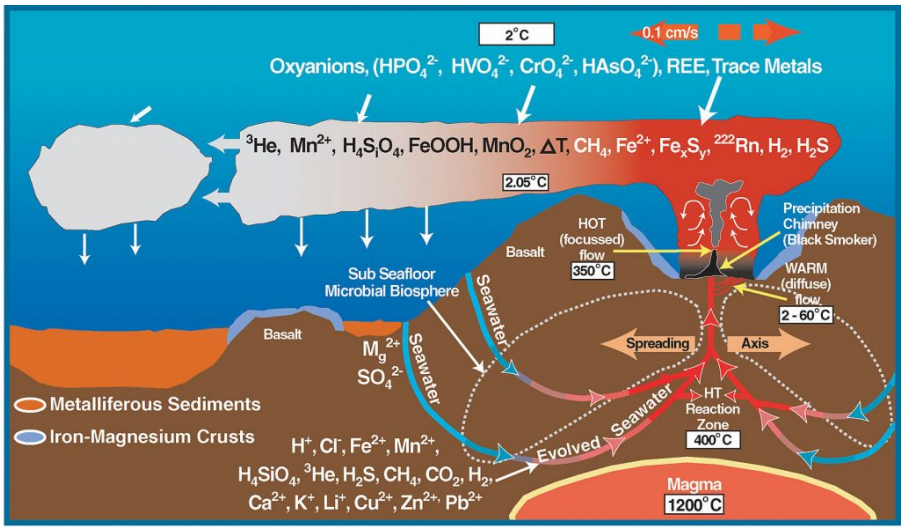


Figure *Section*2.1.7: The complex chemistry around mid-ocean ridges. (By NOAA; public domain via Wikimedia Commons.)

Seafloor sediment, measured by dredging and drilling, provided another clue. Scientists once believed sediment accumulated on the ocean floors over a very long time in a static environment. When some studies showed less sediment than expected, these results were initially used to argue against the continental movement [15; 16]. With more time, researchers discovered these thinner sediment layers were located close to mid-ocean ridges, indicating the ridges were younger than the surrounding ocean floor. This finding supported the idea that the seafloor was not fixed in one place [17].

Section 2.1.3.0.1 Paleomagnetism

Paleomagnetism is the study of magnetic fields frozen within rocks, basically a fossilized compass. In fact, the first hard evidence to support plate motion came from paleomagnetism.

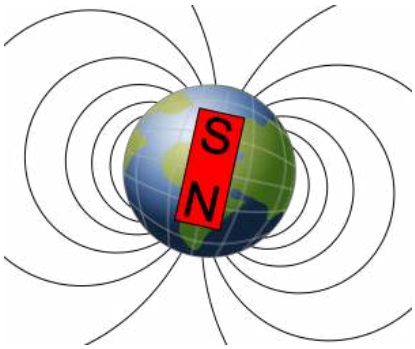


Figure *Section*2.1.8: The magnetic field of Earth, simplified as a bar magnet. Note that Earth's North Pole is actually the south pole of Earth's magnetic field. (By Zureks; public domain via Wikimedia Commons.)

Igneous rocks containing magnetic minerals like magnetite typically provide the most useful data. In their liquid state as magma or lava, the magnetic poles of the minerals align themselves with the Earth's magnetic field. When the rock cools and solidifies, this alignment is frozen into place, creating a permanent paleomagnetic record that includes magnetic inclination, which is related to global latitude, and declination, which is related to magnetic north.

The seafloor was mapped magnetically. Scientists had long known of strange **magnetic anomalies** that formed a striped pattern of symmetrical rows on both sides of mid-oceanic ridges. What made these features unusual was that the north and south magnetic poles within each stripe were reversed in alternating rows [18]. By 1963, Harry Hess and other scientists used these magnetic reversal patterns to support their model for seafloor spreading [19] (see also Lawrence W. Morley [20]).

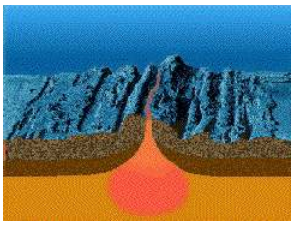


Figure *Section*2.1.9: The iron in the solidifying rock preserves the current magnetic polarity as new oceanic crust forms at mid-ocean ridges. The red and green stripes represent periods of normal and reverse polarity that are mirrored on opposite sides of the ridge. (By USGS; public domain via Wikimedia Commons.)

Scientists had noticed for some time the alignment of magnetic north in many rocks was nowhere close to the Earth's current magnetic north. Some explained this as part of the normal movement of Earth's magnetic north pole. Eventually, scientists realized adding the idea of continental movement explained the data better than the pole movement alone [21].

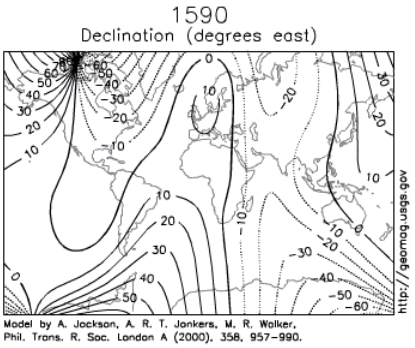


Figure *Section*2.1.10: This animation shows how the magnetic poles have moved over 400 years. As the years pass, the lines show the change in the magnetic declination (the angle between magnetic north and true north) by location. (By USGS; public domain via Wikimedia Commons.)

Section 2.1.3.0.1 Wadati-Benioff Zones

Around the same time mid-ocean ridges were being investigated, other scientists linked the creation of ocean trenches and island arcs to seismic activity and tectonic plate movement [22]. Several independent research groups recognized earthquake hypocenters traced the shapes of oceanic plates sinking into the mantle. These deep earthquake zones congregated in planes that started near the surface around ocean trenches and angled beneath the continents and island arcs [23]. Today these earthquake zones called **Wadati-Benioff zones**.

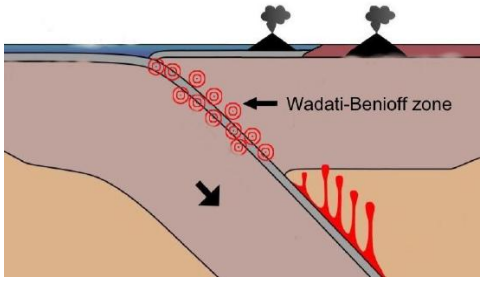


Figure *Section*2.1.11: The Wadati-Benioff zone, showing earthquakes following the subducting slab down. (By Gord-c-lupis; CC BY-SA 3.0 via Wikimedia Commons.)

Based on the mounting evidence, the theory plate tectonics continued to take shape. J. Tuzo Wilson was the first scientist to put the entire picture together by proposing the opening and closing of the ocean basins [24]. Before long, scientists proposed other models showing plates moving with respect to each other, with clear boundaries between them [25]. Others started piecing together complicated histories of tectonic plate movement [26]. The plate tectonic revolution had taken hold.

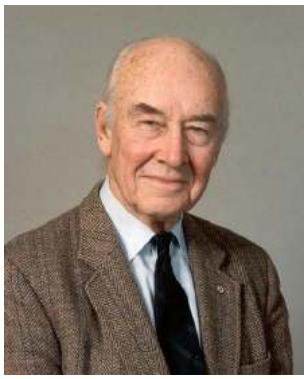


Figure *Section*2.1.12: J. Tuzo Wilson. (By Smorris123 at English Wikipedia; CC BY-SA 3.0 via Wikimedia Commons.)

Section 2.1.4 References

- 1. Fluegel, von H. W. Wegener-Ampferer-Schwinner. Ein Beitrag zur Geschichte der Geologie in Österreich. *Mitt. Oesterr. Geol. Ges.* **73**, 237–254 (1980).
- 3. Bacon, F. & Montagu, B. *The Works of Francis Bacon, Lord Chancellor of England: With a Life of the Author*. (Parry & McMillan, 1848).
- 4. Drake, E. T. Alfred Wegener's reconstruction of Pangea. *Geology* **4**, 41–44 (1976).
- 5. Mantovani, R. Les fractures de l'écorce terrestre et la théorie de Laplace. *Bull. Soc. Sc. et Arts Réunion* 41–53 (1889).
- 6. Wells, H. G., Huxley, J. & Wells, G. P. The Science of Life. *Philosophy* **6**, 506–507 (1931).
- 7. Scheidegger, A. E. Examination of the physics of theories of orogenesis. *Geol. Soc. Am. Bull.* **64**, 127–150 (1953).
- 8. Jacoby, W. R. Modern concepts of Earth dynamics anticipated by Alfred Wegener in 1912. *Geology* **9**, 25–27 (1981).
- 9. Tolstoy, I. & Ewing, M. North Atlantic hydrography and the Mid-Atlantic Ridge. *Geol. Soc. Am. Bull.* **60**, 1527–1540 (1949).
- 10. Heezen, B. C., Tharp, M. & Ewing, M. The Floors of the Oceans I. The North Atlantic. *Geological Society of America Special Papers* **65**, 1–126 (1959).
- 11. Heezen, B. C. The Rift in the Ocean Floor. *Sci. Am.* **203**, 98–110 (1960).
- 12. Dietz, R. S. Continent and ocean basin evolution by spreading of the seafloor. *Nature* **190**, 854–857 (1961).
- 13. Wilson, J. T. A new class of faults and their bearing on continental drift. *Nature* (1965).
- 14. Heezen, B. C. & Tharp, M. Tectonic Fabric of the Atlantic and Indian Oceans and Continental Drift. *Philosophical Transactions of the Royal Society of London A: Mathematical, Physical and Engineering Sciences* **258**, 90–106 (1965).
- 15. Ewing, M., Ewing, J. I. & Talwani, M. Sediment distribution in the oceans: The Mid-Atlantic Ridge. *Geol. Soc. Am. Bull.* **75**, 17–36 (1964).
- 16. Saito, T., Ewing, M. & Burckle, L. H. Tertiary sediment from the mid-atlantic ridge. *Science* **151**, 1075–1079 (1966).
- 17. Ewing, M., Houtz, R. & Ewing, J. South Pacific sediment distribution. *J. Geophys. Res.* **74**, 2477–2493 (1969).
- 18. Mason, R. G. A magnetic survey off the west coast of the United-States between latitudes 32-degrees-N and 36-degrees-N longitudes 121-degrees-W and 128-degrees-W. *Geophysical Journal of the Royal Astronomical Society* **1**, 320 (1958).
- 19. Vine, F. J. & Matthews, D. H. Magnetic anomalies over oceanic ridges. *Nature* **199**, 947–949 (1963).
- 20. Frankel, H. The Development, Reception, and Acceptance of the Vine-Matthews-Morley Hypothesis. *Hist. Stud. Phys. Biol. Sci.* **13**, 1–39 (1982).
- 21. Irving, E. Palaeomagnetic and palaeoclimatological aspects of polar wandering. *Geofis. pura appl.* **33**, 23–41 (1956).
- 22. Coats, R. R. Magma type and crustal structure in the Aleutian Arc. in *The Crust of the Pacific Basin* 92–109 (American Geophysical Union, 1962). doi:10.1029/GM006p0092
- 23. Wadati, K. On the activity of deep-focus earthquakes in the Japan Islands and neighbourhoods. *Geophys. Mag.* **8**, 305–325 (1935).
- 24. Wilson, J. T. *Did the Atlantic close and then re-open?* (Nature, 1966).
- 25. McKenzie, D. P. & Parker, R. L. The North Pacific: an Example of Tectonics on a Sphere. *Nature* **216**, 1276–1280 (1967).
- 26. Atwater, T. Implications of Plate Tectonics for the Cenozoic Tectonic Evolution of Western North America. *Geol. Soc. Am. Bull.* **81**, 3513–3536 (1970).

This page titled Section 2.1: Alfred Wegener's Continental Drift Hypothesis is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Chris Johnson, Matthew D. Affolter, Paul Inkenbrandt, & Cam Mosher (OpenGeology) via source content that was edited to the style and standards of the LibreTexts platform.

- **2.1: Alfred Wegener's Continental Drift Hypothesis** by Chris Johnson, Matthew D. Affolter, Paul Inkenbrandt, & Cam Mosher is licensed CC BY-NC-SA 4.0. Original source: https://opengeology.org/textbook/.

Section 2.2: Layers of the Earth

In order to understand the details of plate tectonics, it is essential to first understand the layers of the Earth. Firsthand information about what is below the surface is very limited; most of what we know is pieced together from hypothetical models, and analyzing seismic wave data and meteorite materials. In general, the Earth can be divided into layers based on chemical composition and physical characteristics.

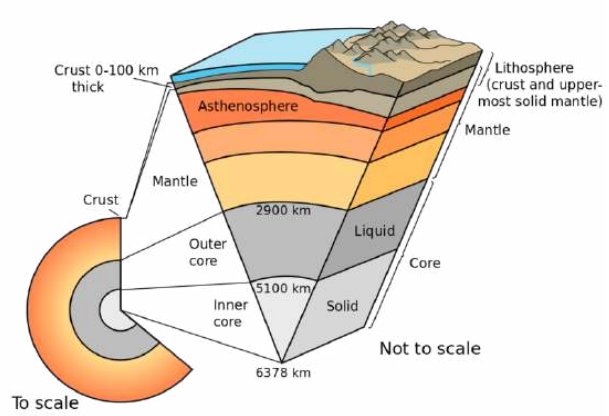


Figure *Section*2.2.1: The layers of the Earth. Physical layers include the lithosphere and asthenosphere; chemical layers are crust, mantle, and core. (By Drlauraguertin; CC BY-SA 3.0 via SEG Wiki.)

Section 2.2.1 Chemical Layers

Certainly, the Earth is composed of countless combinations of **elements**. Regardless of what elements are involved, two major factors—temperature and pressure—are responsible for creating three distinct chemical layers.

Section 2.2.1.0.1 Crust

The outermost chemical layer and the one we currently reside on is the **crust**. There are two types of crust. **Continental crust** has a relatively low density and composition similar to granite. **Oceanic crust** has a relatively high density, especially when cold and old, and composition similar to basalt. The surface levels of crust are relatively **brittle**. The deeper parts of the crust are subjected to higher temperatures and pressure, which makes them more **ductile**. Ductile materials are like soft plastics or putty, and they move under force. Brittle materials are like solid glass or pottery, and they break under force, especially when it is applied quickly. Earthquakes, generally occur in the upper crust and are caused by the rapid movement of relatively brittle materials.

The base of the crust is characterized by a large increase in **seismic velocity**, which is a measure of how fast earthquake waves travel through solid matter. Called the Mohorovičić Discontinuity, or **Moho** for short, this zone was discovered by Andrija Mohorovičić (pronounced mo-ho-ro-vee-cheech; audio pronunciation) in 1909 after studying earthquake wave paths in his native Croatia [27]. The change in wave direction and speed is caused by dramatic chemical differences between the crust and mantle. Underneath the oceans, the Moho is found roughly 5 km below the ocean floor. Under the continents, it is located about 30-40 km below the surface. Near certain large mountain-building events known as orogenies, the continental Moho depth is doubled [28].

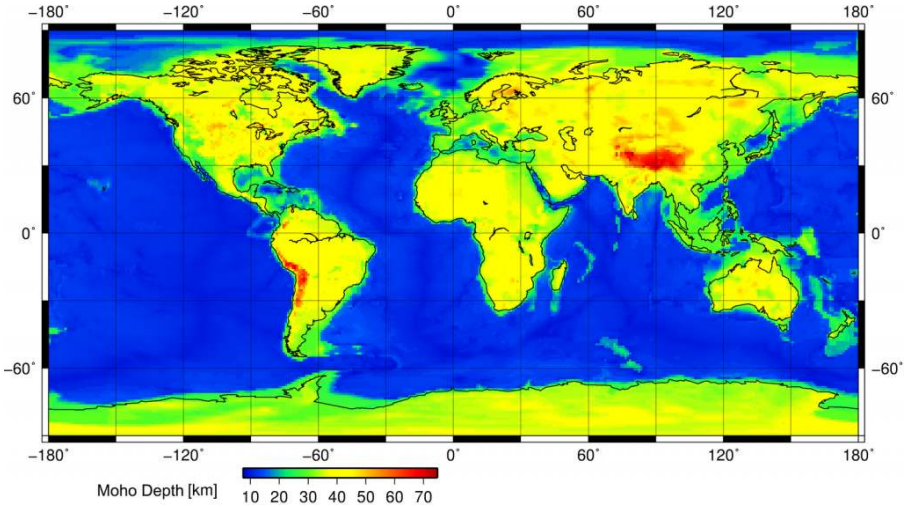


Figure *Section*2.2.2: The global map of the depth of the Moho. (By AllenMcC; CC BY-SA 3.0 via Wikimedia Commons.)

Section 2.2.1.0.1 Mantle

The **mantle** sits below the crust and above the core. It is the largest chemical layer by volume, extending from the base of the crust to a depth of about 2900 km [29]. Most of what we know about the mantle comes from seismic wave analysis, though the information is gathered by studying ophiolites and xenoliths. **Ophiolites** are pieces of the mantle that have risen through the crust until they are exposed as part of the ocean floor. **Xenoliths** are carried within magma and brought to the Earth's surface by volcanic eruptions. Most xenoliths are made of **peridotite**, an ultramafic class of igneous rock. Because of this, scientists hypothesize most of the mantle is made of peridotite [30].



Figure *Section*2.2.3: This mantle xenolith containing olivine (green) is chemically weathering by hydrolysis and oxidation into the brown pseudo-mineral iddingsite, which is a complex of water, clay, and iron oxides. The more altered side of the rock has been exposed to the environment longer. (By Matt Affolter; CC BY-SA 3.0 via Wikimedia Commons.)

Section 2.2.1.0.1 Core

The **core** of the Earth has both liquid and solid layers, and consists mostly of iron, nickel, and possibly some oxygen [31]. Scientists looking at seismic data first discovered this innermost chemical layer in 1906 [32]. Through a union of hypothetical modeling, astronomical insight, and hard seismic data, they concluded the core is mostly metallic iron [33]. Scientists studying meteorites, which typically contain more iron than surface rocks, have proposed the Earth was formed from meteoric material. They believe the liquid component of the core was created as the iron and nickel sank into the center of the planet, where it was liquefied by intense pressure [34].



Figure *Section*2.2.4: A polished fragment of the iron-rich Toluca Meteorite, with octahedral Widmanstätten Pattern. (By H. Raab; CC BY-SA 3.0 via Wikimedia Commons.)

Section 2.2.2 Physical Layers

The Earth can also be broken down into five distinct physical layers based on how each layer responds to stress. While there is some overlap in the chemical and physical designations of layers, specifically the **core-mantle** boundary, there are significant differences between the two systems.

Section 2.2.2.0.1 Lithosphere

Lithos is Greek for stone, and the **lithosphere** is the outermost physical layer of the Earth. It is grouped into two types: oceanic and continental. **Oceanic lithosphere** is thin and relatively rigid. It ranges in thickness from nearly zero in new plates found around mid-ocean ridges, to an average of 140 km in most other locations. **Continental lithosphere** is generally thicker and considerably more plastic, especially at the deeper levels. Its thickness ranges from 40 to 280 km [35]. The lithosphere is not continuous. It is broken into segments called **plates**. A **plate boundary** is where two plates meet and move relative to each other. Plate boundaries are where we see plate tectonics in action—building mountains, triggering earthquakes, and generating volcanic activity.

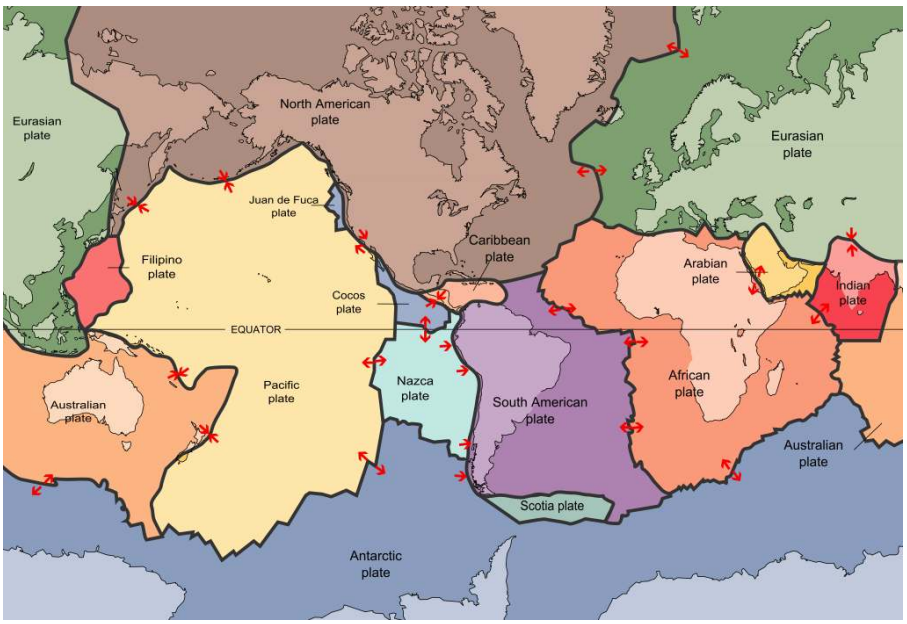


Figure *Section*2.2.5: Map of the major plates with the direction of motion along boundaries indicated with red arrows. (By USGS; public domain via Wikimedia Commons.)

Section 2.2.2.0.1 Asthenosphere

The **asthenosphere** is the layer below the lithosphere. *Astheno-* means lacking strength, and the most distinctive property of the asthenosphere is movement. Because it is mechanically weak, this layer moves and flows due to convection currents created by heat coming from the Earth's core [33]. Unlike the lithosphere that consists of multiple plates, the asthenosphere is relatively unbroken. Scientists have determined this by analyzing seismic waves that pass through the layer. The depth at which the

asthenosphere is found is temperature-dependent [36]. It tends to lie closer to the Earth's surface around mid-ocean ridges and much deeper underneath mountains and the centers of lithospheric plates.

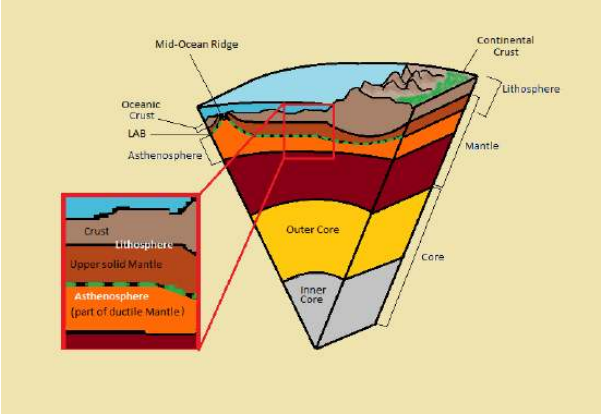


Figure *Section*2.2.5: The lithosphere-asthenosphere boundary changes with certain tectonic situations. (By NealeyS at English Wikipedia; CC BY-SA 3.0 via Wikimedia Commons.)

Section 2.2.2.0.1 Mesosphere

The **mesosphere**, sometimes known as the lower mantle, is more rigid and immobile than the asthenosphere. Located at a depth of approximately 410 and 660 km below the Earth's surface, the mesosphere is subjected to very high pressures and temperatures. These extreme conditions create a transition zone in the upper mesosphere where minerals continuously change into various forms or pseudomorphs [37]. Scientists identify this zone by changes in seismic velocity and sometimes physical barriers to movement [38]. Below this transitional zone, the mesosphere is relatively uniform until it reaches the core.

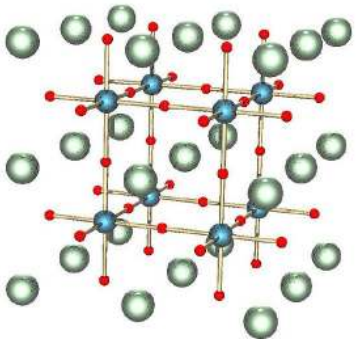


Figure *Section*2.2.6: General perovskite structure. Perovskite silicates (e.g. Bridgmenite, (Mg, Fe)SiO_3) are thought to be the main component of the lower mantle, making it the most common mineral in or on Earth. (By Cadmium at English Wikipedia; public domain via Wikimedia Commons.)

Section 2.2.2.0.1 Inner and Outer Core

The **outer core** is the only entirely liquid layer within the Earth. It starts at a depth of 2890 km and extends to 5150 km, making it about 2300 km thick. In 1936, the Danish geophysicist Inge Lehmann analyzed seismic data and was the first to prove a solid **inner core** existed within a liquid outer core [39]. The solid inner core is about 1220 km thick, and the outer core is about 2300 km thick [40].



Figure *Section*2.2.7: Lehmann in 1932. (By Even Neuhaus; public domain via Wikimedia Commons.)

It seems like a contradiction that the hottest part of the Earth is solid, as the minerals making up the core should be liquified or vaporized at this temperature. Immense pressure keeps the minerals of the inner core in a solid phase [41]. The inner core grows slowly from the lower outer core solidifying as heat escapes the interior of the Earth and is dispersed to the outer layers [42].

The Earth's liquid outer core is critically important in maintaining a breathable atmosphere and other environmental conditions favorable for life. Scientists believe the Earth's magnetic field is generated by the circulation of molten iron and nickel within the outer core [43]. If the outer core were to stop circulating or become solid, the loss of the magnetic field would result in Earth getting stripped of life-supporting gases and water. This is what happened, and continues to happen, on Mars [44].

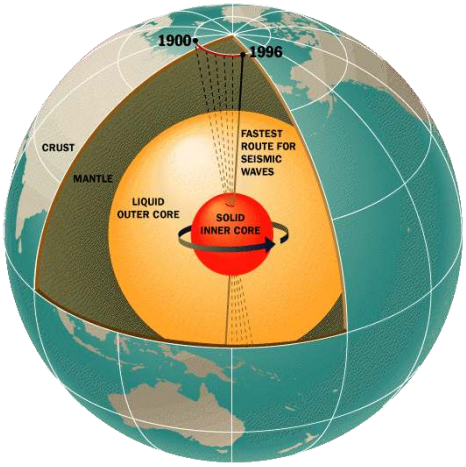


Figure *Section*2.2.8: The outer core's spin most likely generates our protective magnetic field. (By NASA; public domain via Wikimedia Commons.)

Section 2.2.3 Plate Tectonic Boundaries

At **passive margins**, the plates don't move—the continental lithosphere transitions into the oceanic lithosphere and forms plates made of both types. A tectonic plate may be made of both oceanic and continental lithosphere connected by a passive margin. North and South America's eastern coastlines are examples of passive margins. **Active margins** are places where the oceanic and continental lithospheric tectonic plates meet and move relative to each other, such as the western coasts of North and South America. This movement is caused by frictional drag created between the plates and differences in plate densities. The majority of mountain-building events, earthquake activity and active volcanism on the Earth's surface can be attributed to tectonic plate movement at active margins.

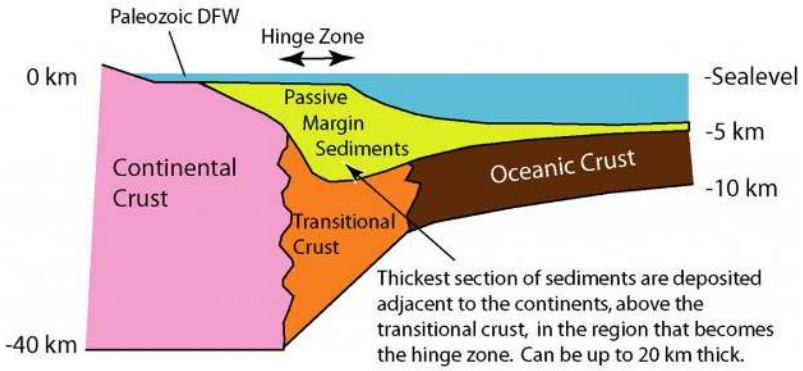


Figure ***Section*2.2.9**: Passive Margin. (By Joshua Doubek; CC BY-SA 3.0 via Wikimedia Commons.)

In a simplified model, there are three categories of tectonic plate boundaries. Convergent boundaries are places where plates move toward each other. At divergent boundaries, the plates move apart. At transform boundaries, the plates slide past each other.

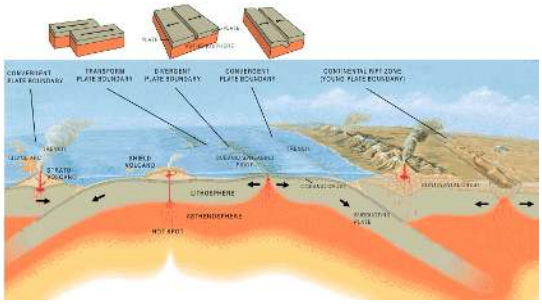


Figure ***Section*2.2.10**: Schematic of plate boundary types. (By Jose F. Vigil, USGS; public domain via Wikimedia Commons.)

Section 2.2.4 References

- 27. Herak, D. & Herak, M. Andrija Mohorovičić (1857-1936)—On the occasion of the 150th anniversary of his birth. *Seismol. Res. Lett.* **78**, 671–674 (2007).
- 28. Fernandez, L. M. & Careaga, J. The thickness of the crust in central United States and La Paz, Bolivia, from the spectrum of longitudinal seismic waves. *Bull. Seismol. Soc. Am.* **58**, 711–741 (1968).
- 29. Birch, F. Elasticity and constitution of the Earth's interior. *J. Geophys. Res.* **57**, 227–286 (1952).
- 30. Wyllie, P. J. Ultramafic rocks and the upper mantle. in *Fiftieth anniversary symposia: Mineralogy and petrology of the Upper Mantle; Sulfides; Mineralogy and geochemistry of non-marine evaporites* (ed. Morgan, B. A.) 3–32 (Mineralogical Society of America, 1970).
- 31. Alfe, D., Gillan, M. J. & Price, G. D. Composition and temperature of the Earth's core constrained by combining ab initio calculations and seismic data. *Earth Planet. Sci. Lett.* **195**, 91–98 (2002).
- 32. Oldham, R. D. The constitution of the interior of the Earth, as revealed by earthquakes. *Q. J. Geol. Soc. London* **62**, 456–475 (1906).
- 33. Birch, F. Density and composition of mantle and core. *J. Geophys. Res.* **69**, 4377–4388 (1964).
- 34. Hanks, T. C. & Anderson, D. L. The early thermal history of the earth. *Phys. Earth Planet. Inter.* **2**, 19–29 (1969).
- 35. Pasyanos, M. E. Lithospheric thickness modeled from long-period surface wave dispersion. *Tectonophysics* **481**, 38–50 (2010).
- 36. Forsyth, D. W. The Early Structural Evolution and Anisotropy of the Oceanic Upper Mantle. *Geophys. J. Int.* **43**, 103–162 (1975).
- 37. Ito, E. & Takahashi, E. Postspinel transformations in the system Mg2SiO4-Fe2SiO4 and some geophysical implications. *J. Geophys. Res. [Solid Earth]* **94**, 10637–10646 (1989).
- 38. Fukao, Y. & Obayashi, M. Subducted slabs stagnant above, penetrating through, and trapped below the 660 km discontinuity. *J. Geophys. Res. [Solid Earth]* **118**, 2013JB010466 (2013).
- 39. Lehmann, I. P', Publ. *Bur. Centr. Seism. Internat. Serie A* **14**, 87–115 (1936).

- 40. Engdahl, E. R., Flynn, E. A. & Masse, R. P. Differential PkiKP travel times and the radius of the core. *Geophysical J Royal Astro Soc* **40**, 457–463 (1974).
- 41. Aitta, A. Iron melting curve with a tricritical point. *J. Stat. Mech.* **2006**, P12015 (2006).
- 42. Waszek, L., Irving, J. & Deuss, A. Reconciling the hemispherical structure of Earth/'s inner core with its super-rotation. *Nat. Geosci.* **4**, 264–267 (2011).
- 43. de Wijs, G. A. *et al.* The viscosity of liquid iron at the physical conditions of the Earth's core. *Nature* **392**, 805–807 (1998).
- 44. Jakosky, B. M. *et al.* MAVEN observations of the response of Mars to an interplanetary coronal mass ejection. *Science* **350**, aad0210 (2015).

This page titled Section 2.2: Layers of the Earth is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Chris Johnson, Matthew D. Affolter, Paul Inkenbrandt, & Cam Mosher (OpenGeology) via source content that was edited to the style and standards of the LibreTexts platform.

- **2.2: Layers of the Earth** by Chris Johnson, Matthew D. Affolter, Paul Inkenbrandt, & Cam Mosher is licensed CC BY-NC-SA 4.0. Original source: https://opengeology.org/textbook/.

Section 2.3: Convergent Boundaries

Convergent boundaries, also called **destructive boundaries**, are places where two or more plates move toward each other. Convergent boundary movement is divided into two types, subduction and collision, depending on the density of the involved plates. Continental lithosphere is of lower density and thus more buoyant than the underlying asthenosphere. Oceanic lithosphere is denser than continental lithosphere, and, when old and cold, may even be denser than asthenosphere.

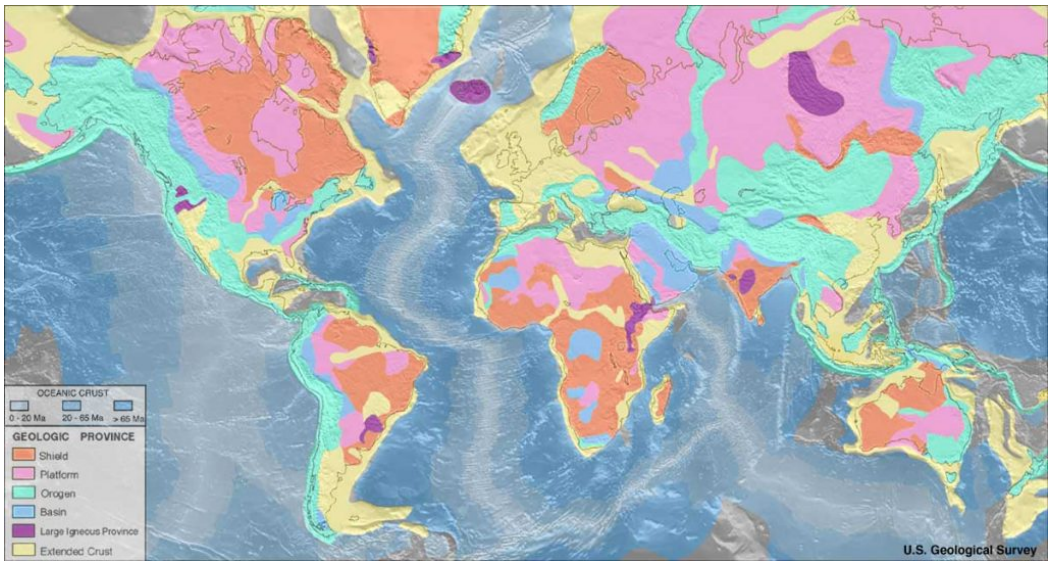


Figure *Section*2.3.1: Geologic provinces of Earth. Shields (orange) and platform (pink) comprise cratons, the stable interior of continents. Orogenies are labeled light blue. (By USGS; public domain via Wikimedia Commons.)

When plates of different densities converge, the higher density plate is pushed beneath the more buoyant plate in a process called subduction. When continental plates converge without subduction occurring, this process is called collision.

Section 2.3.1 Subduction

Subduction occurs when a dense oceanic plate meets a more buoyant plate, like a continental plate or warmer/younger oceanic plate, and descends into the mantle [45]. The worldwide average rate of oceanic plate subduction is 25 miles per million years, which is about a half-inch per year [46]. As an oceanic plate descends, it pulls the ocean floor down into a **trench**. These trenches can be more than twice as deep as the average depth of the adjacent ocean basin, which is usually 3 to 4 km. The Mariana Trench, for example, approaches a staggering 11 km [47].

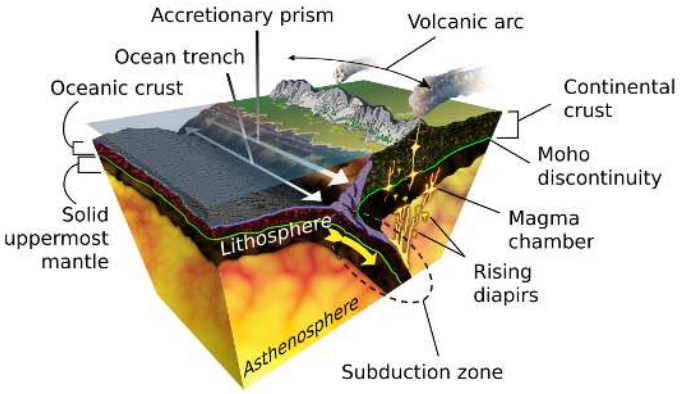


Figure *Section*2.3.2: Diagram of ocean-continent subduction. (By KDS4444; CC BY-SA 4.0 via Wikimedia Commons.)

Within the trench, ocean floor sediments are scraped together and compressed between the subducting and overriding plates. This feature is called the **accretionary wedge**, **mélange**, or **accretionary prism**. Fragments of continental material, including

microcontinents, riding atop the subducting plate may become sutured to the accretionary wedge and accumulate into a large area of land called a **terrane** [48]. Vast portions of California are comprised of accreted terranes [49].

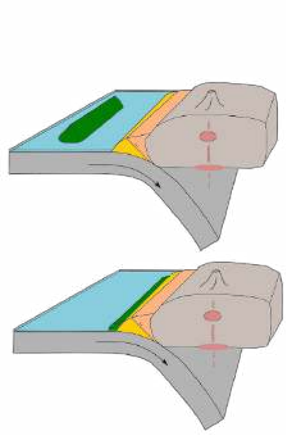


Figure *Section*2.3.3: Microcontinents can become part of the accretionary prism of a subduction zone. (By Paul Inkenbrandt.)

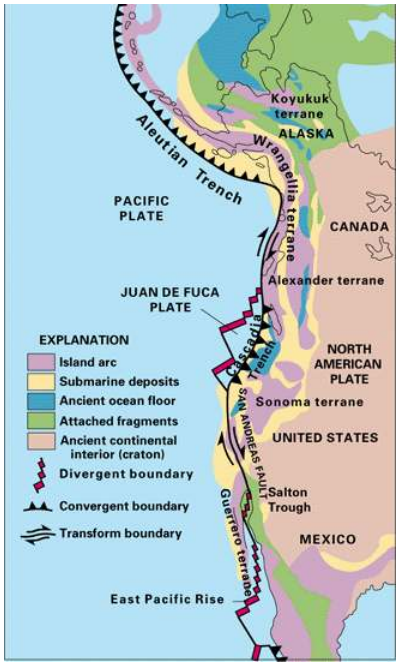


Figure *Section*2.3.4: Accreted terranes of western North America. Everything that is not the "Ancient continental interior (craton)" has been smeared onto the side of the continent by accretion from subduction. (Modified from illustration provided by Oceanus Magazine; original figure by Jack Cook, Woods Hole Oceanographic Institution; adapted by USGS. Used under fair use.)

When the subducting oceanic plate, or **slab**, sinks into the mantle, the immense heat and pressure push volatile materials like water and carbon dioxide into an area below the continental plate and above the descending plate called the **mantle wedge**. The volatiles are released mostly by hydrated minerals that revert to non-hydrated minerals in these higher temperatures and pressure conditions. When mixed with asthenospheric material above the plate, the volatiles lower the melting point of the mantle wedge, and through a process called **flux melting** it becomes liquid magma. The molten magma is more buoyant than the lithospheric plate above it and migrates to the Earth's surface where it emerges as volcanism. The resulting volcanoes frequently appear as curved mountain chains, volcanic arcs, due to the curvature of the Earth. Both oceanic and continental plates can contain volcanic arcs.

How subduction is initiated is still a matter of scientific debate [50]. It is generally accepted that subduction zones start as passive margins, where oceanic and continental plates come together, and then gravity initiates subduction and converts the passive margin into an active one [51]. One hypothesis is gravity pulls the denser oceanic plate down [52] or the plate can start to flow ductility at a low angle [53]. Scientists seeking to answer this question have collected evidence that suggests a new subduction zone is forming off the coast of Portugal [54]. Some scientists have proposed large earthquakes like the 1755 Lisbon earthquake may even have

something to do with this process of creating a subduction zone [55], although the evidence is not definitive. Another hypothesis proposes subduction happens at transform boundaries involving plates of different densities [56].

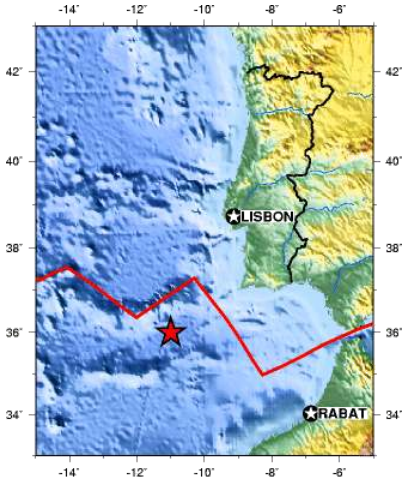


Figure *Section*2.3.5: Location of the large (Mw 8.5-9.0) 1755 Lisbon Earthquake. (By USGS; public domain via Wikimedia Commons.)

Some plate boundaries look like they should be active, but show no evidence of subduction. The oceanic lithospheric plates on either side of the Atlantic Ocean for example, are denser than the underlying asthenosphere and are not subducting beneath the continental plates. One hypothesis is the bond holding the oceanic and continental plates together is stronger than the downward force created by the difference in plate densities.

Subduction zones are known for having the largest earthquakes and tsunamis; they are the only places with fault surfaces large enough to create magnitude-9 earthquakes. These subduction-zone earthquakes not only are very large but also are very deep. When a subducting slab becomes stuck and cannot descend, a massive amount of energy builds up between the stuck plates. If this energy is not gradually dispersed, it may force the plates to suddenly move and release energy along several hundred kilometers of the subduction zone [57]. Because subduction-zone faults are located on the ocean floor, this massive amount of movement can generate giant tsunamis such as those that followed the 2004 Indian Ocean Earthquake and 2011 Tōhoku Earthquake in Japan.

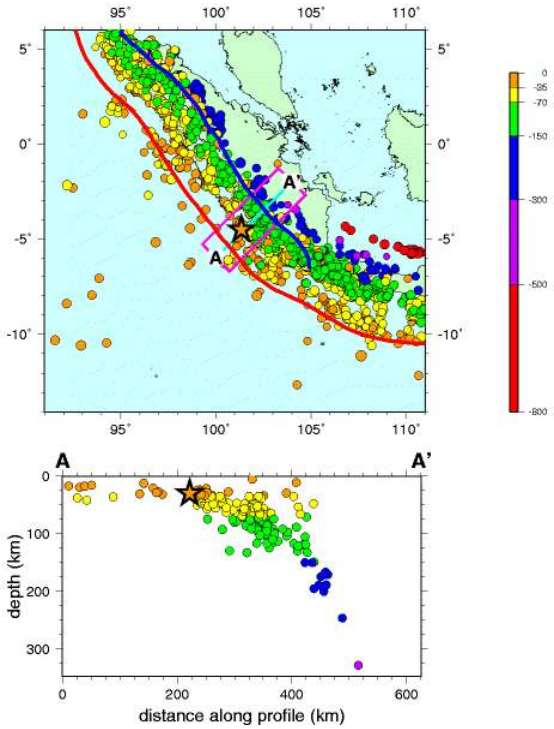


Figure ***Section*2.3.6**: Earthquakes along the Sunda megathrust subduction zone, along the island of Sumatra, showing the 2006 Mw 9.1-9.3 Indian Ocean earthquake as a star. (By USGS; public domain via Wikimedia Commons.)

All subduction zones have a **forearc basin**, a feature of the overriding plate found between the **volcanic arc** and oceanic trench. The forearc basin experiences a lot of faulting and deformation activity, particularly within the accretionary wedge [58].

In some subduction zones, **tensional forces** working on the continental plate create a **back-arc basin** on the interior side of the volcanic arc. Some scientists have proposed a subduction mechanism called **oceanic slab rollback** creates **extension faults** in the overriding plates [59]. In this model, the descending oceanic slab does not slide directly under the overriding plate but instead rolls back, pulling the overlying plate seaward. The continental plate behind the volcanic arc gets stretched like pizza dough until the surface cracks and collapses to form a back-arc basin. If the extension activity is extensive and deep enough, a back-arc basin can develop into a **continental rifting zone**. These continental divergent boundaries may be less symmetrical than their mid-ocean ridge counterparts [60].

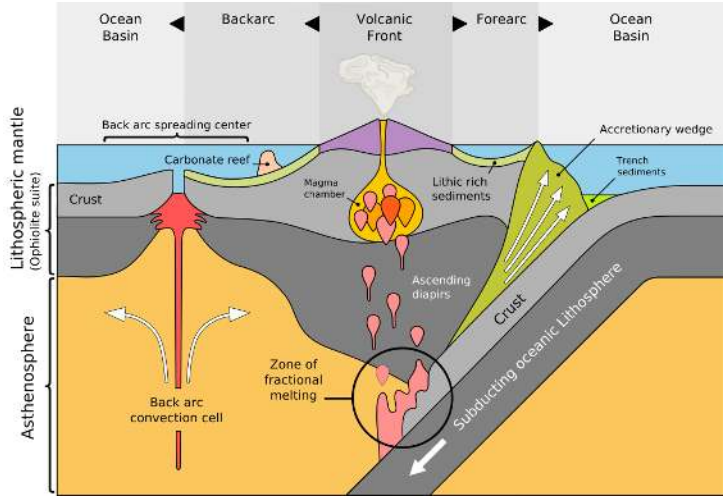


Figure ***Section*2.3.7**: Various parts of a subduction zone. This subduction zone is ocean-ocean subduction, though the same features can apply to continent-ocean subduction. (By MagentaGreen; CC BY-SA 3.0 via Wikimedia Commons.)

In places where numerous young buoyant oceanic plates are converging and subducting at a relatively high velocity, they may force the overlying continental plate to buckle and crack [61]. This is called **back-arc faulting**. Extensional back-arc faults pull rocks

and chunks of plates apart. Compressional back-arc faults, also known as **thrust faults**, push them together.

The dual spines of the Andes Mountain range include a example of compressional thrust faulting. The western spine is part of a volcanic arc. Thrust faults have deformed the non-volcanic eastern spine, pushing rocks and pieces of a continental plate on top of each other.

There are two styles of thrust fault deformation: **thin-skinned faults** that occur in superficial rocks lying on top of the continental plate and **thick-skinned faults** that reach deeper into the crust. The Sevier Orogeny in the western U.S. is a notable thin-skinned type of deformation created during the Cretaceous Period. The Laramide Orogeny, a thick-skinned type of deformation, occurred near the end of and slightly after the Sevier Orogeny in the same region.

Flat-slab, or shallow, subduction caused the Laramide Orogeny. When the descending slab subducts at a low angle, there is more contact between the slab and the overlying continental plate than in a typical subduction zone. The shallowly-subducting slab pushes against the overriding plate and creates an area of deformation on the overriding plate many kilometers away from the subduction zone [62].

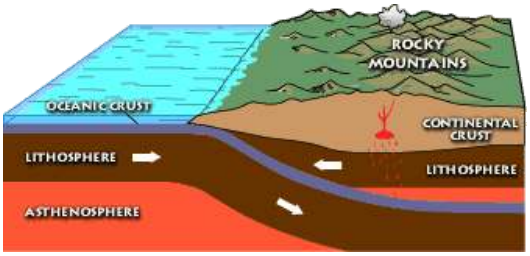


Figure ***Section*2.3.8**: Shallow subduction during the Laramide Orogeny. (By USGS; public domain via Wikimedia Commons.)

Section 2.3.1.0.1 Oceanic-Continental Subduction

Oceanic-continental subduction occurs when an oceanic plate dives below a continental plate. This convergent boundary has a trench and mantle wedge and frequently, a volcanic arc. Well-known examples of continental volcanic arcs are the Cascade Mountains in the Pacific Northwest [63] and the Western Andes Mountains in South America [64].

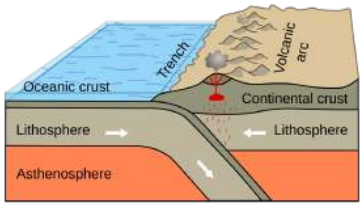


Figure ***Section*2.3.9**: Subduction of an oceanic plate beneath a continental plate, forming a trench and volcanic arc. (By Booyabazooka from USGS; public domain via Wikimedia Commons.)

Section 2.3.1.0.1 Oceanic-Oceanic Subduction

The boundaries of **oceanic-oceanic subduction** zones show very different activity from those involving oceanic-continental plates. Since both plates are made of oceanic lithosphere, it is usually the older plate that subducts because it is colder and denser. The volcanism on the overlying oceanic plate may remain hidden underwater.. If the volcanoes rise high enough the reach the ocean surface, the chain of volcanism forms an island arc. Examples of these island arcs include the Aleutian Islands in the northern Pacific Ocean, Lesser Antilles in the Caribbean Sea, and numerous island chains scattered throughout the western Pacific Ocean [65].

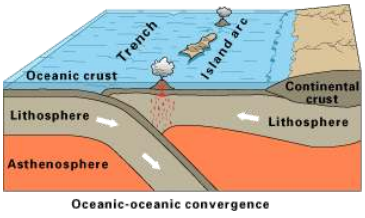


Figure ***Section*2.3.10**: Subduction of an oceanic plate beneath another oceanic plate, forming a trench and an island arc. (By USGS; public domain via Wikimedia Commons.)

Section 2.3.2 Collisions

When continental plates converge, during the closing of an ocean basin, for example, subduction is not possible between the equally buoyant plates. Instead of one plate descending beneath another, the two masses of continental lithosphere slam together in a process known as **collision** [66]. Without subduction, there is no magma formation and no volcanism. Collision zones are characterized by tall, non-volcanic mountains; a broad zone of frequent, large earthquakes; and very little volcanism.

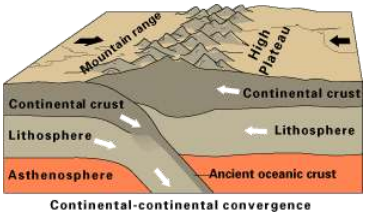


Figure *Section*2.3.11: Two continental plates colliding. (By USGS; public domain via Wikimedia Commons.)

When oceanic crust connected by a passive margin to continental crust completely subducts beneath a continent, an ocean basin closes, and continental collision begins. Eventually, as ocean basins close, continents join together to form a massive accumulation of continents called a **supercontinent**, a process that has taken place in ~500 million-year-old cycles over Earth's history.

The process of collision created **Pangea**, the supercontinent envisioned by Wegener as the key component of his continental drift hypothesis. Geologists now have evidence that continental plates have been continuously converging into supercontinents and splitting into smaller basin-separated continents throughout Earth's existence, calling this process the **supercontinent cycle**, a process that takes place in approximately 500 million years. For example, they estimate Pangea began separating 200 million years ago. Pangea was preceded by earlier supercontinents, one of which being **Rodinia**, which existed 1.1 billion years ago and started breaking apart 800 million to 600 million years ago.

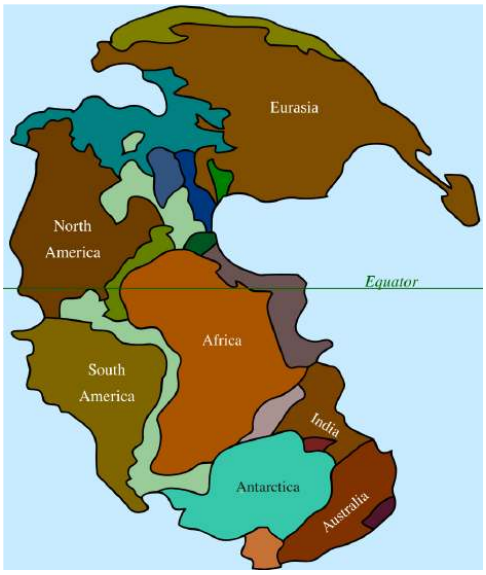


Figure *Section*2.3.12: A reconstruction of the supercontinent Pangea, showing approximate positions of modern continents. (By Astroskiandhike; CC BY-SA 4.0 via Wikimedia Commons.)

A **foreland basin** is a feature that develops near mountain belts, as the combined mass of the mountains forms a depression in the lithospheric plate. While foreland basins may occur at subduction zones, they are most commonly found at collision boundaries. The Persian Gulf is possibly the best modern example, created entirely by the weight of the nearby Zagros Mountains.

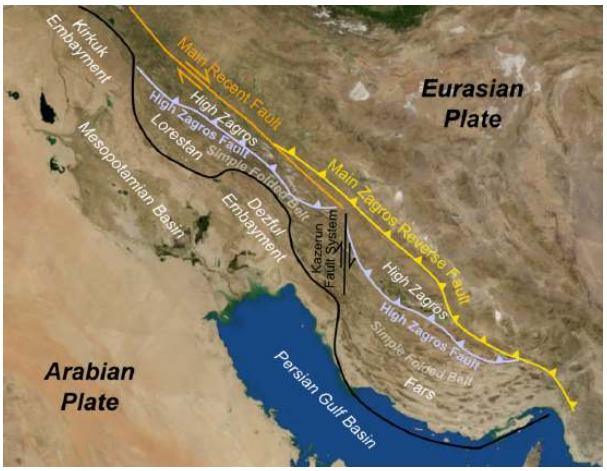


Figure ***Section*2.3.13**: The tectonics of the Zagros Mountains. Note the Persian Gulf foreland basin. (By Mikenorton; CC BY-SA 3.0 via Wikimedia Commons.)

If continental and oceanic lithosphere are fused on the same plate, it can partially subduct but its buoyancy prevents it from fully descending. In very rare cases, part of a continental plate may become trapped beneath a descending oceanic plate in a process called **obduction** [67]. When a portion of the continental crust is driven down into the subduction zone, due to its buoyancy it returns to the surface relatively quickly.

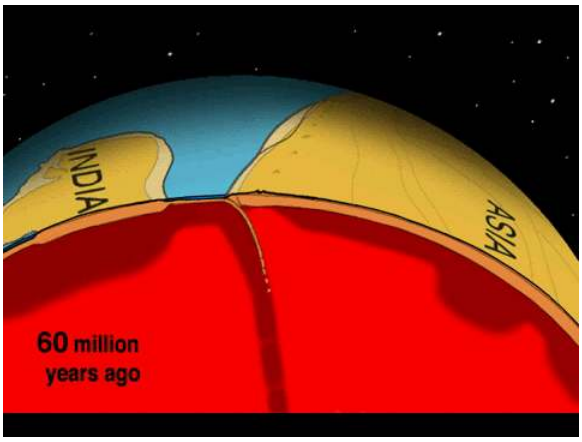
As pieces of the continental lithosphere break loose and migrate upward through the obduction zone, they bring along bits of the mantle and ocean floor and append them on top of the continental plate. Rocks composed of this mantle and ocean-floor material are called ophiolites and they provide valuable information about the composition of the mantle.



Figure ***Section*2.3.14**: Pillow lavas, which only form underwater, from an ophiolite in the Apennine Mountains of central Italy. (By Matt Affolter; CC BY-SA 3.0 via Wikimedia Commons.)

The area of collision-zone deformation and seismic activity usually covers a broader area because the continental lithosphere is plastic and malleable. Unlike subduction-zone earthquakes, which tend to be located along a narrow swath near the convergent boundary, collision-zone earthquakes may occur hundreds of kilometers from the boundary between the plates.

The Eurasian continent has many examples of collision-zone deformations covering vast areas. The Pyrenees mountains begin in the Iberian Peninsula and cross into France. Also, there are the Alps stretching from Italy to central Europe; the Zagros mountains from Arabia to Iran; and Himalaya mountains from the Indian subcontinent to central Asia.



Animation of India colliding with Asia. (By Raynaldi rji from Tanya Atwater and Peter Molnar; CC BY-SA 4.0 via Wikimedia Commons.)

Section 2.3.3 References

- 45. Stern, R. J. A subduction primer for instructors of introductory geology courses and authors of introductory-geology textbooks. *J. Geosci. Educ.* **46**, 221 (1998).
- 46. Tatsumi, Y. The subduction factory: how it operates in the evolving Earth. *GSA Today* **15**, 4 (2005).
- 47. Todo, Y., Kitazato, H., Hashimoto, J. & Gooday, A. J. Simple foraminifera flourish at the ocean's deepest point. *Science* **307**, 689 (2005).
- 48. Schermer, E. R., Howell, D. G. & Jones, D. L. THE ORIGIN OF ALLOCHTHONOUS TERRANES: Perspectives on the Growth and shaping of Continents. *Annual Review of Earth and Planetary Sciences* **12**, 107 (1984).
- 49. Moores, E. M., Sloan, D. & Stout, D. L. *Classic Cordilleran Concepts: A View from California*. (Geological Society of America, 1999).
- 50. Stern, R. J. Subduction initiation: spontaneous and induced. *Earth Planet. Sci. Lett.* **226**, 275–292 (2004).
- 51. Mueller, S. & Phillips, R. J. On the initiation of subduction. *J. Geophys. Res. [Solid Earth]* **96**, 651–665 (1991).
- 52. Mart, Y. *et al*. Analogue modelling of the initiation of subduction. *Geophys. J. Int.* **160**, 1081–1091 (2005).
- 53. Goren, L., Aharonov, E., Mulugeta, G., Koyi, H. A. & Mart, Y. Ductile deformation of passive margins: A new mechanism for subduction initiation. *J. Geophys. Res.* **113**, B08411 (2008).
- 54. Duarte, J., Schellart, W. & Rosas, F. The future of Earth's oceans: consequences of subduction initiation in the Atlantic and implications for supercontinent formation. in **17**, (adsabs.harvard.edu, 2015).
- 55. Stich, D., Mancilla, F. de L., Pondrelli, S. & Morales, J. Source analysis of the February 12th 2007, Mw 6.0 Horseshoe earthquake: Implications for the 1755 Lisbon earthquake. *Geophys. Res. Lett.* **34**, L12308 (2007).
- 56. Casey, J. F. & Dewey, J. F. Initiation of subduction zones along transform and accreting plate boundaries, triple-junction evolution, and forearc spreading centres—implications for ophiolitic geology and obduction. *Geological Society, London, Special Publications* **13**, 269–290 (1984).
- 57. Satake, K. & Atwater, B. F. Long-term perspectives on giant earthquakes and tsunamis at subduction zones*. *Annu. Rev. Earth Planet. Sci.* **35**, 349–374 (2007).
- 58. Fuller, C. W., Willett, S. D. & Brandon, M. T. Formation of forearc basins and their influence on subduction zone earthquakes. *Geology* **34**, 65–68 (2006).
- 59. Uyeda, S. Subduction zones: Their diversity, mechanism and human impacts. *GeoJournal* **8**, 381–406 (1984).
- 60. Deschamps, A. & Fujiwara, T. Asymmetric accretion along the slow-spreading Mariana Ridge. *Geochem. Geophys. Geosyst.* (2003).
- 61. Molnar, P. & Atwater, T. Interarc spreading and Cordilleran tectonics as alternates related to the age of subducted oceanic lithosphere. *Earth Planet. Sci. Lett.* **41**, 330–340 (1978).
- 62. Li, Z.-X. & Li, X.-H. Formation of the 1300-km-wide intracontinental orogen and postorogenic magmatic province in Mesozoic South China: A flat-slab subduction model. *Geology* **35**, 179–182 (2007).
- 63. Geller, D. Cascadia subduction zone volcanism in British Columbia. *academic.emporia.edu* (2008).
- 64. De Silva, S. L. & Francis, P. W. *Volcanoes of the central Andes*. (Springer, 1991).

- 65. Smith, A. L. & Roobol, M. J. Mt. Pelée, Martinique; A Study of an Active Island-arc Volcano. *Geological Society of America Memoirs* **175**, 1–110 (1990).
- 66. O'Brien, P. J. Subduction followed by collision: Alpine and Himalayan examples. *Phys. Earth Planet. Inter.* **127**, 277–291 (2001).
- 67. Ernst, W. G. Preservation/exhumation of ultrahigh-pressure subduction complexes. *Lithos* **92**, 321–335 (2006).

This page titled Section 2.3: Convergent Boundaries is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Chris Johnson, Matthew D. Affolter, Paul Inkenbrandt, & Cam Mosher (OpenGeology) via source content that was edited to the style and standards of the LibreTexts platform.

- **2.3: Convergent Boundaries** by Chris Johnson, Matthew D. Affolter, Paul Inkenbrandt, & Cam Mosher is licensed CC BY-NC-SA 4.0. Original source: https://opengeology.org/textbook/.

Section 2.4: Divergent Boundaries

At **divergent boundaries**, sometimes called **constructive boundaries**, lithospheric plates move away from each other. There are two types of divergent boundaries, categorized by where they occur: **continental rift zones** and **mid-ocean ridges**. Continental rift zones occur in weak spots in the continental lithospheric plate. A mid-ocean ridge usually originates in a continental plate as a rift zone that expands to the point of splitting the plate apart, with seawater filling in the gap. The separate pieces continue to drift apart and become individual continents. This process is known as **rift-to-drift**.

Section 2.4.1 Continental Rifting

In places where the continental plates are very thick, they reflect so much heat back into the mantle it develops strong convection currents that push super-heated mantle material up against the overlying plate, softening it. Tensional forces created by this convective upwelling begin to pull the weakened plate apart. As it stretches, it becomes thinner and develops deep cracks called extension or **normal faults**. Eventually, plate sections located between large faults drop into deep depressions known as **rift valleys**, which often contain keystone-shaped blocks of down-dropped crust known as **grabens**. The shoulders of these grabens are called **horsts**. If only one side of a section drops, it is called a **half-graben**. Depending on the conditions, rifts can grow into very large lakes and even oceans.

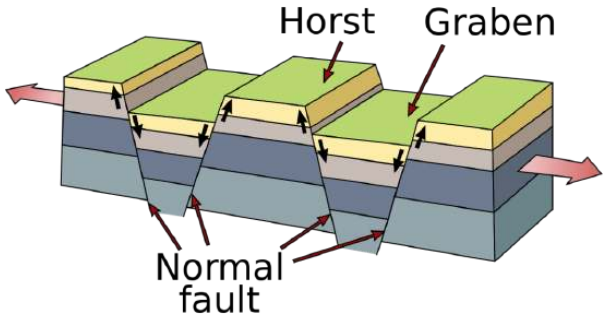


Figure *Section*2.4.1: Normal faults that occur at divergent boundaries can result in horsts and grabens. (By Gregors from USGS; public domain via Wikimedia Commons.)

While seemingly occurring at random, rifting is dictated by two factors. Rifting does not occur in continents with older and more stable interiors, known as **cratons**. When continental rifting does occur, the break-up pattern resembles the seams of a soccer ball, also called a truncated icosahedron. This is the most common surface-fracture pattern to develop on an evenly expanding sphere because it uses the least amount of energy [68].

Using the soccer ball model, rifting tends to lengthen and expand along a particular seam while fizzling out in the other directions. These seams with little or no tectonic activity are called **failed rift arms**. A failed rift arm is still a weak spot in the continental plate; even without the presence of active extension faults, it may develop into a depression called an **aulacogen**. One example of a failed rift arm is the Mississippi Valley Embayment, a depression through which the upper end of the Mississippi River flows. Occasionally connected rift arms do develop concurrently, creating multiple boundaries of active rifting. In places where the rift arms do not fail, for example the Afar Triangle, three divergent boundaries can develop near each other forming a triple junction.



Figure *Section*2.4.2: The Afar Triangle (center) has the Red Sea ridge (center to upper left), Gulf of Aden ridge (center to right), and East African Rift (center to lower left) form a triple junction that are about 120° apart. (By Koba-chan; CC BY-SA 3.0 via Wikimedia Commons.)

Rifts come in two types: narrow and broad. **Narrow rifts** are characterized by a high density of highly active divergent boundaries. The East African Rift Zone, where the horn of Africa is pulling away from the mainland, is an excellent example of an active narrow rift. Lake Baikal in Russia is another. **Broad rifts** also have numerous fault zones, but they are distributed over wide areas of deformation. The Basin and Range region located in the western United States is a type of broad rift. The Wasatch Fault, which also created the Wasatch Mountain Range in the state of Utah, forms the eastern divergent boundary of this broad rift (Animation 1 and Animation 2).



Figure *Section*2.4.3: NASA image of the Basin and Range horsts and grabens across central Nevada. (By NASA; public domain via Wikimedia Commons.)

Rifts have earthquakes, although not of the magnitude and frequency of other boundaries. They may also exhibit volcanism. Unlike the flux-melted magma found in subduction zones, rift-zone magma is created by **decompression melting**. As the continental plates are pulled apart, they create a region of low pressure that melts the lithosphere and draws it upwards. When this molten magma reaches the weakened and fault-riddled rift zone, it migrates to the surface by breaking through the plate or escaping via an open fault. Examples of young rift volcanoes dot the Basin and Range region in the United States. Rift-zone activity is responsible for generating some unique volcanism, such as the Ol Doinyo Lengai in Tanzania. This volcano erupts lava consisting largely of carbonatite, a relatively cold, liquid carbonate mineral [69].

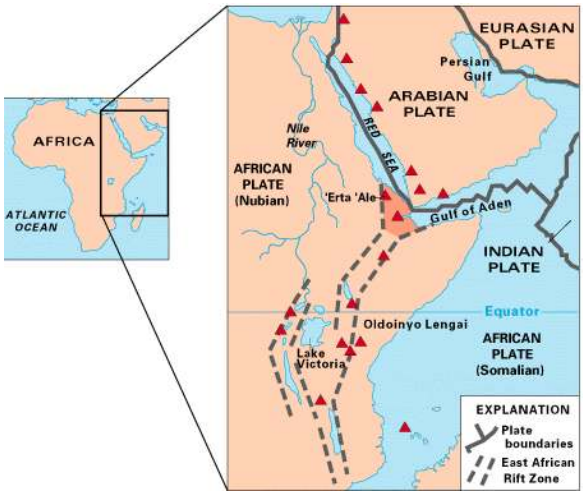


Figure *Section*2.4.4: The narrow East African Rift is dotted with volcanoes, shown as red triangles. (By USGS; public domain via Wikimedia Commons.)

Section 2.4.2 Mid-Ocean Ridges

As rifting and volcanic activity progress, the continental lithosphere becomes more mafic (see Chapter 4) and thinner, with the eventual result transforming the plate under the rifting area into the oceanic lithosphere. This is the process that gives birth to a new ocean, much like the narrow Red Sea emerged with the movement of Arabia away from Africa. As the oceanic lithosphere continues to diverge, a mid-ocean ridge is formed.

Mid-ocean ridges, also known as **spreading centers**, have several distinctive features. They are the only places on Earth that create new oceanic lithosphere. Decompression melting in the rift zone changes asthenosphere material into new lithosphere (magma), which oozes up through cracks in the oceanic plate. The amount of new lithosphere being created at mid-ocean ridges is highly significant. These undersea rift volcanoes produce more lava than all other types of volcanism combined. Despite this, most mid-oceanic ridge volcanism remains unmapped because the volcanoes are located deep on the ocean floor.

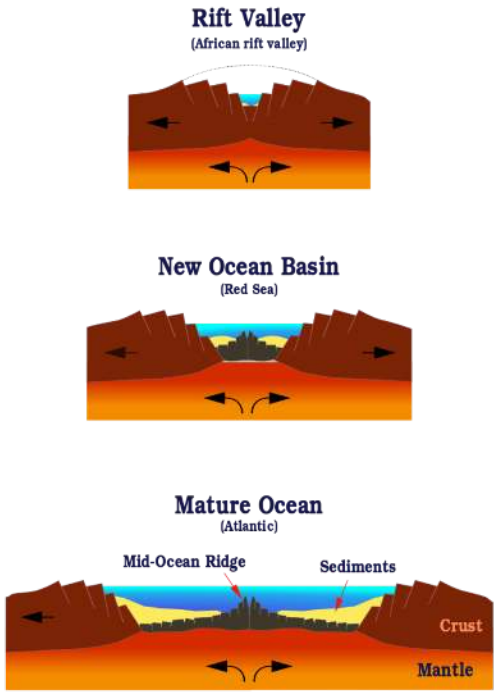


Figure *Section*2.4.5: Progression from rift to mid-ocean ridge. (By Lichtspiel from Hannes Grobe, Alfred Wegener Institute for Polar and Marine Research; CC BY-SA 2.5 via Wikimedia Commons.)

In rare cases, such as a few locations in Iceland, rift zones display the type of volcanism, spreading, and ridge formation found on the ocean floor.

The ridge feature is created by the accumulation of hot lithosphere material, which is lighter than the dense underlying asthenosphere. This chunk of isostatically buoyant lithosphere sits partially submerged and partially exposed to the asthenosphere, like an ice cube floating in a glass of water.

As the ridge continues to spread, the lithosphere material is pulled away from the area of volcanism and becomes colder and denser. As it continues to spread and cool, the lithosphere settles into wide swathes of relatively featureless topography called abyssal plains with lower topography [70].

This model of ridge formation suggests the sections of the lithosphere furthest away from the mid-ocean ridges will be the oldest. Scientists have tested this idea by comparing the age of rocks located in various locations on the ocean floor. Rocks found near ridges are younger than those found far away from any ridges. Sediment accumulation patterns also confirm the idea of **seafloor spreading**. Sediment layers tend to be thinner near mid-ocean ridges, indicating it has had less time to build up.

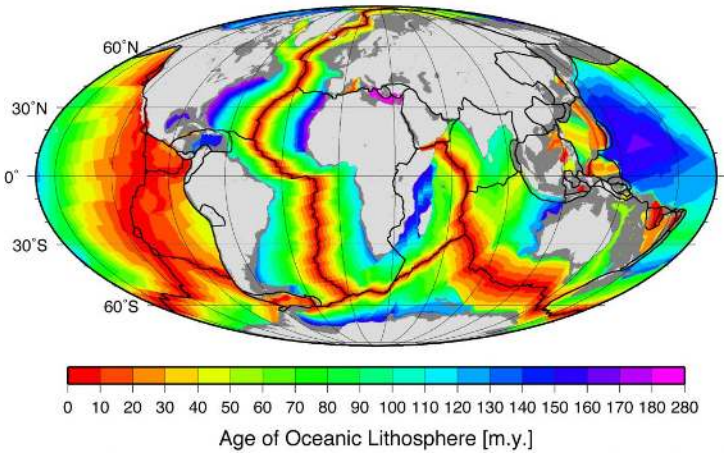


Figure *Section*2.4.6: Age of oceanic lithosphere, in millions of years [m.y.]. Notice the age differences in the Atlantic Ocean along the coasts of the continents. (By Muller, R.D., M. Sdrolias, C. Gaina, W.R. Roest; CC BY-SA 3.0 via Wikimedia Commons.)

As mentioned in the section on paleomagnetism and the development of plate tectonic theory, scientists noticed mid-ocean ridges contained unique magnetic anomalies that show up as symmetrical striping on both sides of the ridge. The Vine-Matthews-Morley hypothesis [20] proposes these alternating reversals are created by the Earth's magnetic field being imprinted into magma after it emerges from the ridge [71]. Very hot magma has no magnetic field. As the oceanic plates get pulled apart, the magma cools below the **Curie point**, the temperature below which a magnetic field gets locked into magnetic minerals. The alternating magnetic reversals in the rocks reflect the periodic swapping of Earth's magnetic north and south poles. This paleomagnetic pattern provides a great historical record of ocean-floor movement, and is used to reconstruct past tectonic activity and determine rates of ridge spreading [72].

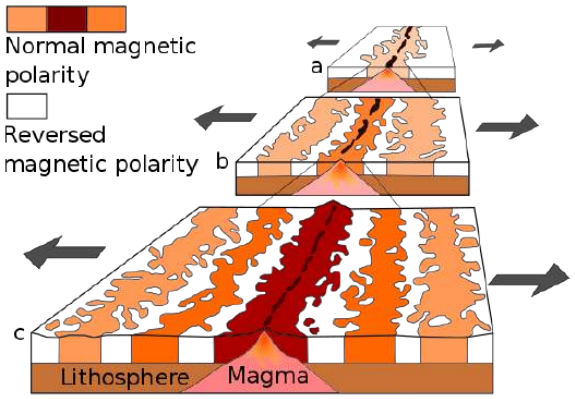


Figure *Section*2.4.7: A time progression (with "a" being oldest and "c" being youngest) showing a spreading center getting wider while recording changes in the magnetic field of the Earth. (By Chmee2 from USGS; public domain via Wikimedia Commons.)

Thanks to their distinctive geology, mid-ocean ridges are home to some of the most unique ecosystems ever discovered. The ridges are often studded with **hydrothermal vents**, deep fissures that allow seawater to circulate through the upper portions of the oceanic plate and interact with hot rock. The super-heated seawater rises back up to the surface of the plate, carrying dissolved gases and minerals, and small particulates. The resulting emitted hydrothermal water looks like black underwater smoke.

Scientists had known about these geothermal areas on the ocean floor for some time. However, it was not until 1977, when scientists piloting a deep-submergence vehicle, the Alvin, discovered a thriving community of organisms clustered around these hydrothermal vents [73]. These unique organisms, which include 10-foot-long tube worms taller than people, live in the complete darkness of the ocean floor deprived of oxygen and sunlight. They use the geothermal energy provided by the vents and a process called bacterial chemosynthesis to feed on sulfur compounds. Before this discovery, scientists believed life on Earth could not exist without photosynthesis, a process that requires sunlight. Some scientists suggest this type of environment could have been the origin of life on Earth [74], and perhaps even extraterrestrial life elsewhere in the galaxy, such as on Jupiter's moon Europa [75].

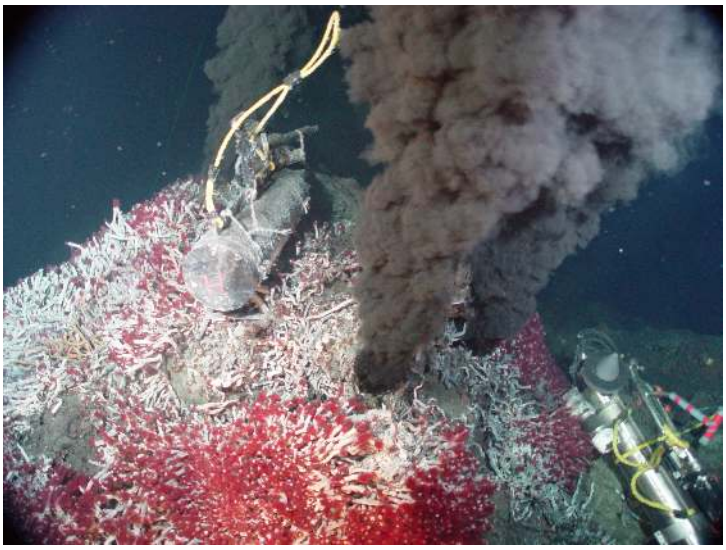


Figure *Section*2.4.8: Black smoker hydrothermal vent with a colony of giant tube worms. (By NOAA; public domain.)

Section 2.4.3 References

- 20. Frankel, H. The Development, Reception, and Acceptance of the Vine-Matthews-Morley Hypothesis. *Hist. Stud. Phys. Biol. Sci.* **13**, 1–39 (1982).
- 68. Sears, J. W., St. George, G. M. & Winne, J. C. Continental rift systems and anorogenic magmatism. *Lithos* **80**, 147–154 (2005).
- 69. Dawson, J. B., Pinkerton, H., Norton, G. E. & Pyle, D. M. Physicochemical properties of alkali carbonatite lavas:Data from the 1988 eruption of Oldoinyo Lengai, Tanzania. *Geology* **18**, 260–263 (1990).
- 70. Davis, E. E. & Lister, C. R. B. Fundamentals of ridge crest topography. *Earth Planet. Sci. Lett.* **21**, 405–413 (1974).
- 71. Cox, A., Doell, R. R. & Dalrymple, G. B. Reversals of the Earth's Magnetic Field. *Science* **144**, 1537–1543 (1964).
- 72. Atwater, T. & Molnar, P. Relative motion of the Pacific and North American plates deduced from sea-floor spreading in the Atlantic, Indian, and South Pacific Oceans. in **13**, 136–148 (Stanford University Publication of …, 1973).
- 73. Corliss, J. B. *et al.* Submarine thermal springs on the Galapagos Rift. *Science* **203**, 107321083 (1979).
- 74. Wächtershäuser, G. Evolution of the first metabolic cycles. *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. U. S. A.* **87**, 200–204 (1990).
- 75. McCollom, T. M. Methanogenesis as a potential source of chemical energy for primary biomass production by autotrophic organisms in hydrothermal systems on Europa. *J. Geophys. Res.* **104**, 30729–30742 (1999).

This page titled Section 2.4: Divergent Boundaries is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Chris Johnson, Matthew D. Affolter, Paul Inkenbrandt, & Cam Mosher (OpenGeology) via source content that was edited to the style and standards of the LibreTexts platform.

- **2.4: Divergent Boundaries** by Chris Johnson, Matthew D. Affolter, Paul Inkenbrandt, & Cam Mosher is licensed CC BY-NC-SA 4.0. Original source: https://opengeology.org/textbook/.

Section 2.5: Transform Boundaries

A **transform boundary**, sometimes called a **strike-slip** or **conservative boundary**, is where the lithospheric plates slide past each other in the horizontal plane. This movement is described based on the perspective of an observer standing on one of the plates, looking across the boundary at the opposing plate. **Dextral** movement, also known as right-handed or **right-lateral**, describes the opposing plate moving to the right. **Sinistral** movement, also known as left-handed or **left-lateral**, describes the opposing plate moving to the left.

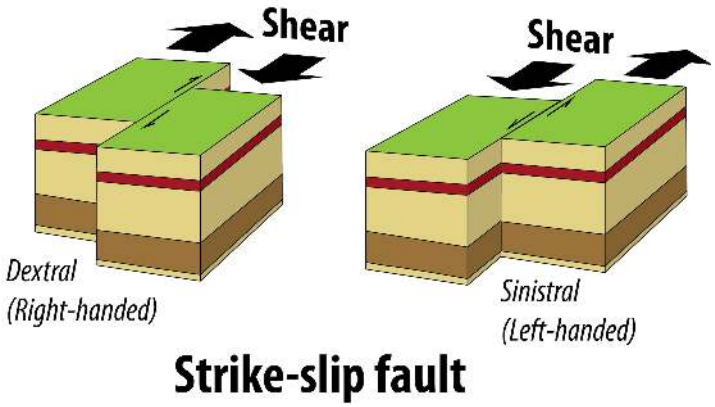


Figure *Section*2.5.1: The two types of transform or strike-slip faults. (By Karla Panchuk; CC BY 4.0 via Physical Geology.)

Most transform boundaries are found on the ocean floor, around mid-ocean ridges. These boundaries form **aseismic fracture zones**, filled with earthquake-free transform faults, to accommodate different rates of spreading occurring at the ridge.

Some transform boundaries produce significant **seismic activity**, primarily as earthquakes, with very little mountain-building or volcanism. This type of transform boundary may contain a single fault or series of faults, which develop in places where plate tectonic stresses are transferred to the surface. As with other types of active boundaries, if the plates are unable to **shear** past each other, the tectonic forces will continue to build up. If the built-up energy between the plates is suddenly released, the result is an **earthquake**.

In the eyes of humanity, the most significant **transform faults** occur within continental plates and have a shearing motion that frequently produces moderate-to-large magnitude earthquakes. Notable examples include the San Andreas Fault in California, Northern and Eastern Anatolian Faults in Turkey, Altyn Tagh Fault in Central Asia, and Alpine Fault in New Zealand.

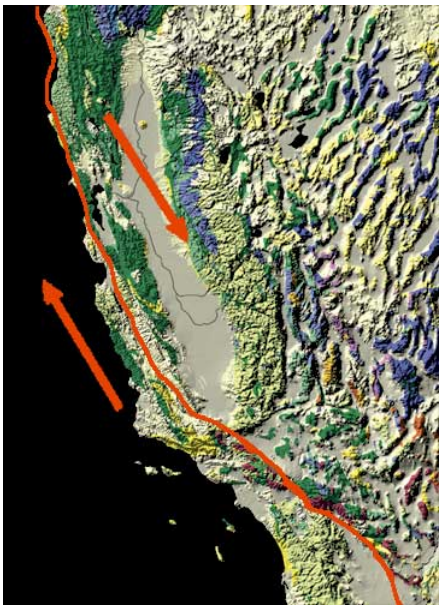


Figure *Section*2.5.2: Map of the San Andreas fault, showing relative motion. (By Kate Barton, David Howell and Joe Vigil for USGS; public domain via Wikimedia Commons.)

Section 2.5.1 Transpression and Transtension

Bends along transform faults may create compressional or extensional forces that cause secondary faulting zones. **Transpression** occurs where there is a component of compression in addition to the shearing motion. These forces build up around the area of the bend, where the opposing plates are restricted from sliding past each other. As the forces continue to build up, they create mountains in the **restraining bend** around the fault. The Big Bend area, located in the southern part of the San Andreas Fault includes a large area of transpression where many mountains have been built, moved, and even rotated [76].

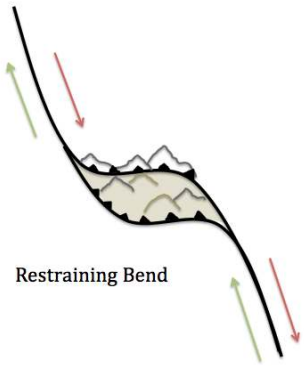


Figure *Section*2.5.3: A transpressional strike-slip fault, causing uplift in the area called a restraining bend. (By GeoAsh; CC BY-SA 4.0 via Wikimedia Commons.)

Transtension zones require a fault that includes a **releasing bend**, where the plates are being pulled apart by extensional forces. Depressions and sometimes volcanism develop in the releasing bend along the fault. The Dead Sea found between Israel and Jordan, and the Salton Sea of California are examples of basins formed by transtensional forces.



Figure *Section*2.5.4: A transtensional strike-slip fault, resulting in a releasing bend. In the center of the fault, the opposite sides are being pulled apart, which would create a depression. (By K. Martin; CC BY-SA 3.0 via Wikimedia Commons.)

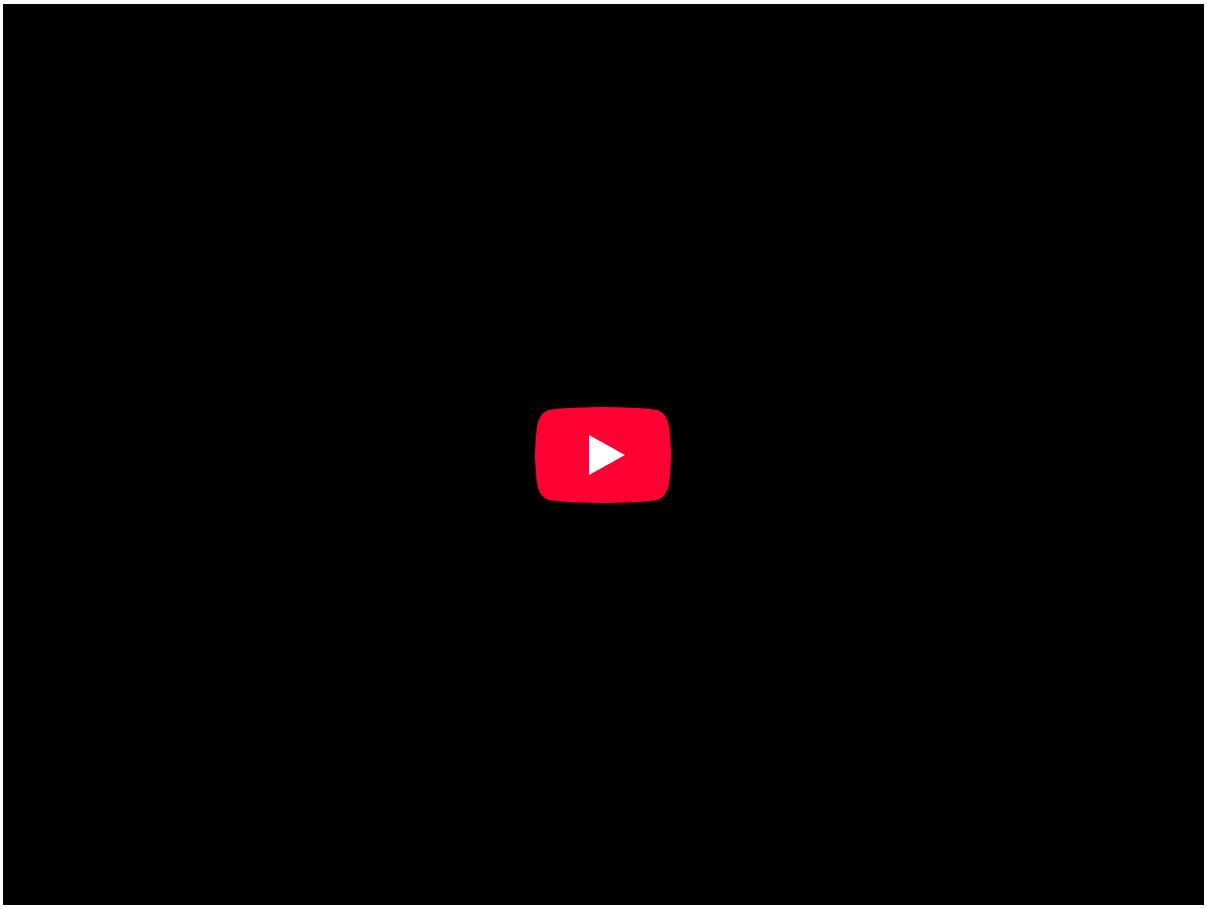
Section 2.5.2 Piercing Points

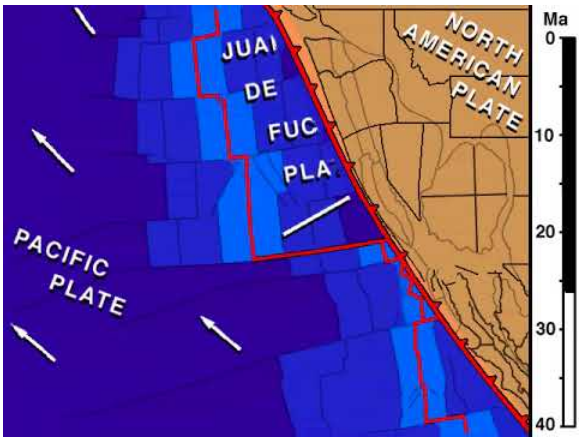
When a geological feature is cut by a fault, it is called a **piercing point**. Piercing points are very useful for recreating past fault movement, especially along transform boundaries. Transform faults are unique because their horizontal motion keeps a geological feature relatively intact, preserving the record of what happened. Other types of faults—normal and reverse —tend to be more destructive, obscuring or destroying these features. The best type of piercing point includes unique patterns that are used to match the parts of a geological feature separated by fault movement. Detailed studies of piercing points show the San Andreas Fault has experienced over 225 km of movement in the last 20 million years, and this movement occurred at three different fault traces.



Figure *Section*2.5.5: Left: Wallace (dry) Creek on the Carrizo Plain, California. As the creek flows from the northern mountainous part of the image, it takes a sharp right (as viewed from the flow of water), then a sharp left. This is caused by the San Andreas Fault cutting roughly perpendicular to the creek, and shifting the location of the creek over time. The fault can be seen about halfway down, trending left to right, as a change in the topography. (By Robert E. Wallace for USGS; public domain via Wikimedia Commons.) Right: The same photo showing the offset in Wallace Creek by the San Andreas Fault. (By IRIS; CC BY 4.0 via EarthScope Consortium.)

Watch the video of the origin of the San Andreas fault. As the mid-ocean ridge subducts, the relative motion between the remaining plates become transform, forming the fault system. Note that because the motion of the plates is not exactly parallel to the fault, it causes divergent motion in the interior of North America.





Section 2.5.3 References

- 76. Ingersoll, R. V. & Rumelhart, P. E. Three-stage evolution of the Los Angeles basin, southern California. *Geology* **27**, 593–596 (1999).

This page titled Section 2.5: Transform Boundaries is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Chris Johnson, Matthew D. Affolter, Paul Inkenbrandt, & Cam Mosher (OpenGeology) via source content that was edited to the style and standards of the LibreTexts platform.

- **2.5: Transform Boudaries** by Chris Johnson, Matthew D. Affolter, Paul Inkenbrandt, & Cam Mosher is licensed CC BY-NC-SA 4.0. Original source: https://opengeology.org/textbook/.

Section 2.6: The Wilson Cycle

The **Wilson Cycle** is named for J. Tuzo Wilson who first described it in 1966 [24], and it outlines the ongoing origin and breakup of supercontinents, such as Pangea and Rodinia [77]. Scientists have determined this cycle has been operating for at least three billion years and possibly earlier.

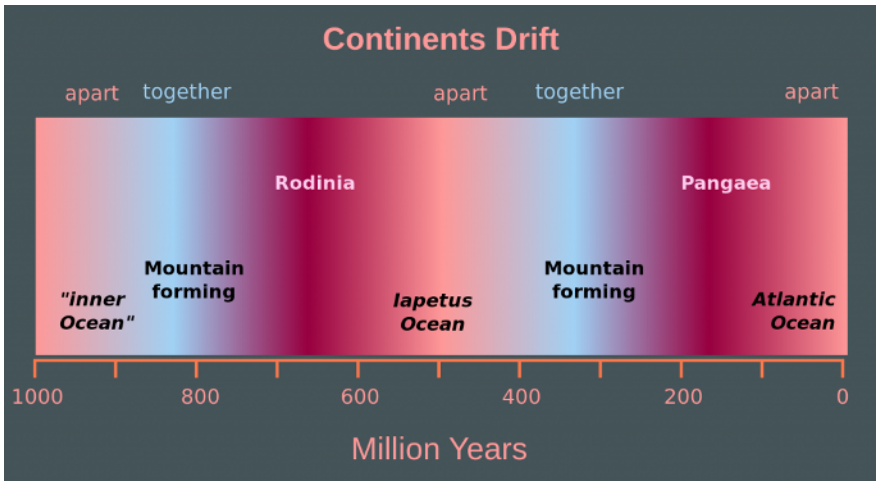


Figure *Section*2.6.1: Diagram of the Wilson Cycle, showing rifting and collision phases. (By Hannes Grobe; CC BY-SA 2.5 via Wikimedia Commons.)

There are a number of hypotheses about how the Wilson Cycle works. One mechanism proposes that rifting happens because continental plates reflect the heat much better than oceanic plates [78]. When continents congregate together, they reflect more of the Earth's heat back into the mantle, generating more vigorous convection currents that then start the continental rifting process [79]. Some geologists believe **mantle plumes** are remnants of these periods of increased mantle temperature and convection upwelling and study them for clues about the origin of continental rifting.

The mechanism behind how supercontinents are created is still largely a mystery. There are three schools of thought about what continues to drive the continents further apart and eventually bring them together. The **ridge-push** hypothesis suggests after the initial rifting event, plates continue to be pushed apart by mid-ocean spreading centers and their underlying convection currents. **Slab-pull** proposes the plates are pulled apart by descending slabs in the subduction zones of the oceanic-continental margins [80]. A third idea, **gravitational sliding**, attributes the movement to gravitational forces pulling the lithospheric plates down from the elevated mid-ocean ridges and across the underlying asthenosphere [81]. Current evidence seems to support slab pull more than ridge push or gravitational sliding.

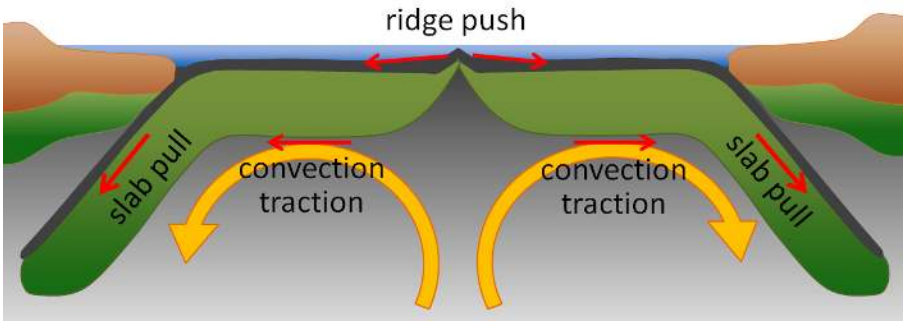


Figure *Section*2.6.2: In this model, there are three forces working to move the plates. Ridge-push forces cause two plates to pull apart on the surface. Slab-pull forces pull the plates down. This movement of out-and-down is also encouraged by convection traction, or clockwise and counterclockwise currents that are present beneath the plates. (By Steven Earle; CC BY 4.0 via Physical Geology.)

Section 2.6.1 References

- 24. Wilson, J. T. *Did the Atlantic close and then re-open?* (Nature, 1966).

- 77. Zhao, G., Cawood, P. A., Wilde, S. A. & Sun, M. Review of global 2.1–1.8 Ga orogens: implications for a pre-Rodinia supercontinent. *Earth-Sci. Rev.* **59**, 125–162 (2002).
- 78. Pollack, H. N., Hurter, S. J. & Johnson, J. R. Heat flow from the Earth's interior: Analysis of the global data set. *Rev. Geophys.* **31**, 267–280 (1993).
- 79. Li, Z. X., Li, X. H., Kinny, P. D. & Wang, J. The breakup of Rodinia: did it start with a mantle plume beneath South China? *Earth Planet. Sci. Lett.* **173**, 171–181 (1999).
- 80. Conrad, C. P. & Lithgow-Bertelloni, C. How mantle slabs drive plate tectonics. *Science* **298**, 207–209 (2002).
- 81. Spence, W. Slab pull and the seismotectonics of subducting lithosphere. *Rev. Geophys.* **25**, 55–69 (1987).

This page titled Section 2.6: The Wilson Cycle is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Chris Johnson, Matthew D. Affolter, Paul Inkenbrandt, & Cam Mosher (OpenGeology) via source content that was edited to the style and standards of the LibreTexts platform.

- **2.6: The Wilson Cycle** by Chris Johnson, Matthew D. Affolter, Paul Inkenbrandt, & Cam Mosher is licensed CC BY-NC-SA 4.0. Original source: https://opengeology.org/textbook/.

Section 2.7: Hotspots

The Wilson Cycle provides a broad overview of tectonic plate movement. To analyze plate movement more precisely, scientists study **hotspots**. First postulated by J. Tuzo Wilson in 1963, a hotspot is an area in the lithospheric plate where molten magma breaks through and creates a volcanic center, such as volcanic islands in the ocean and volcanoes on land [82]. As the plate moves across the hotspot, the volcanic center becomes extinct because it is no longer over an active magma source. Instead, the magma emerges through another area in the plate to create a new active volcano. Over time, the combination of a moving plate and a stationary hotspot creates a chain of islands or mountains. The classic definition of hotspots states they do not move, although recent evidence suggests that there may be exceptions [83].

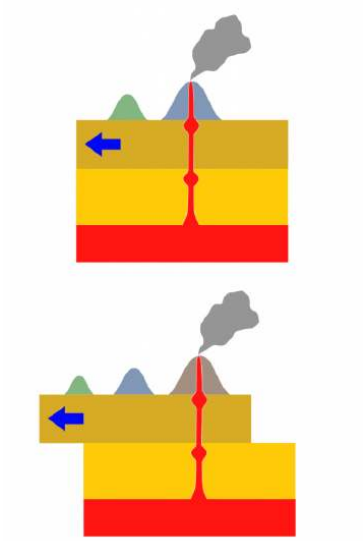


Figure *Section*2.7.1: Diagram showing a non-moving source of magma (mantle plume) and a moving overriding plate. (By Los688; public domain via Wikimedia Commons.)

Hotspots are the only types of volcanism not associated with subduction or rifting zones at plate boundaries; they seem totally disconnected from any plate tectonics processes, such as tectonic earthquakes. However, there are relationships between hotspots and plate tectonics. There are several hotspots, current and former, that are believed to have begun at the time of rifting. Also, scientists use the age of volcanic eruptions and shape of the chain to quantify the rate and direction of plate movements relative to the hotspot.

Scientists are divided over how magma is generated in hotspots. Some suggest that hotspots originate from super-heated material from as deep as the core that reaches the Earth's crust as a mantle plume [84]. Others argue the molten material that feeds hotspots is sourced from the mantle [85]. Of course, it is difficult to collect data from these deep-Earth features due to the extremely high pressure and temperature [86].

How hotspots are initiated is another highly debated subject. The prevailing mechanism has hotspots starting in divergent boundaries during supercontinent rifting [87]. Scientists have identified a number of current and past hotspots believed to have begun this way. Subducting slabs have also been named as causing mantle plumes and hotspot volcanism [88]. Some geologists have suggested another geological process not involving plate tectonics may be involved, such as large space objects crashing into the Earth [89]. Regardless of how they are formed, dozens of hotspots are on the Earth. Some well-known hotspot locations include the Tahiti Islands, Afar Triangle, Easter Island, Iceland, Galapagos Islands, and the Samoan Islands. The United States is home to two of the largest and best-studied hotspots: Hawaii and Yellowstone.

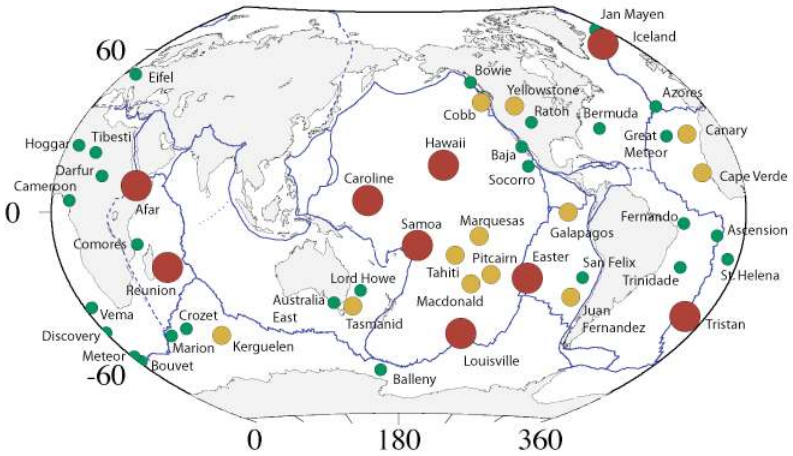


Figure *Section*2.7.2: Map of world hotspots. Large red circles represent possible core-mantle-boundary origin hotspots. Medium yellow circles represent possible upper-mantle origin hotspots. Small green circles represent possible lithospheric origin hotspots. (By Foulger; public domain via Wikimedia Commons.)

Section 2.7.1 Hawaiian Hotspot

The active volcanoes in Hawaii represent one of the most active hotspot sites on Earth. Scientific evidence indicates the **Hawaiian hotspot** is at least 80 million years old [90]. Geologists believe it is actually much older. However, any rocks with proof of this have been subducted under the ocean floor. The big island of Hawaii sits atop a large mantle plume that marks the active hotspot. Kilauea volcano is the main vent for this hotspot and has been actively erupting since 1983.

This enormous volcanic island chain, much of which is underwater, stretches across the Pacific for almost 6000 km. The seamount chain's most striking feature is a sharp 60° bend located at the midpoint, which marks a significant change in plate movement direction that occurred 50 million years ago. The change in direction has been more often linked to a plate reconfiguration [91], but also to other things like plume migration [83].

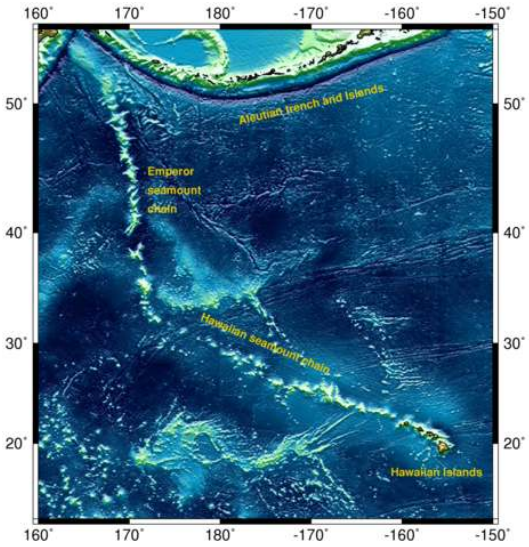


Figure *Section*2.7.3: The Hawaii-Emperor seamount and island chain. (By Ingo Wolbern; public domain via Wikimedia Commons.)

In an attempt to map the Hawaiian mantle plume as far down as the lower mantle [92], scientists have used **tomography**, a type of three-dimensional seismic imaging. This information—along with other evidence gathered from rock ages, vegetation types, and island size—indicates the oldest islands in the chain are located the furthest away from the active hotspot.

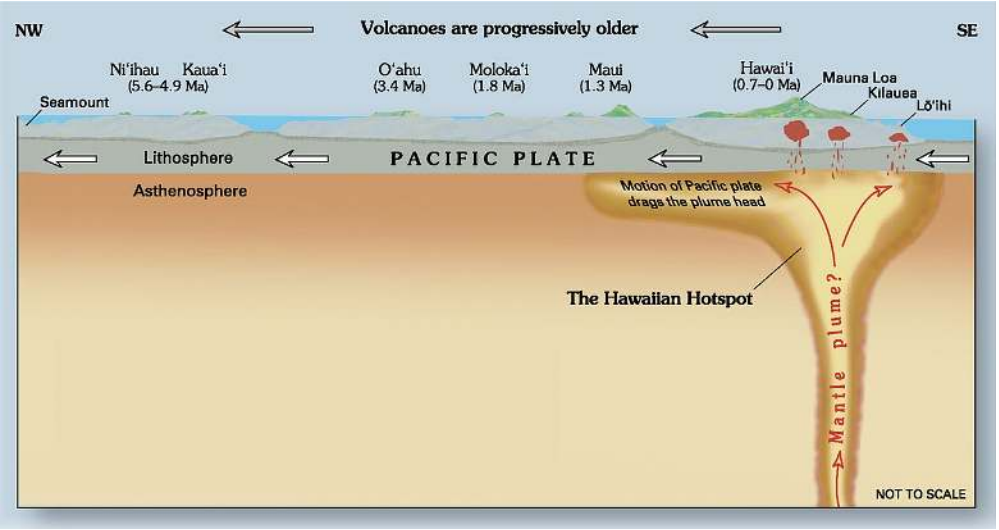


Figure *Section*2.7.4:: Diagram of the Hawaiian hotspot and islands that it formed. (By Joel E Robinson for USGS; public domain via Wikimedia Commons.)

Section 2.7.2 Yellowstone Hotspot

Like the Hawaiian version, the **Yellowstone hotspot** is formed by magma rising through the lithosphere. What makes it different is this hotspot is located under a thick, continental plate. Hawaii sits on a thin oceanic plate, which is easily breached by magma coming to the surface. At Yellowstone, the thick continental plate presents a much more difficult barrier for magma to penetrate. When it does emerge, the eruptions are generally much more violent. Thankfully they are also less frequent.

Over 15 million years of eruptions by this hotspot have carved a curved path across the western United States. It has been suggested the Yellowstone hotspot is connected to the much older Columbia River flood basalts [93] and even to 70 million-year-old volcanism found in the Yukon region of Canada [94].

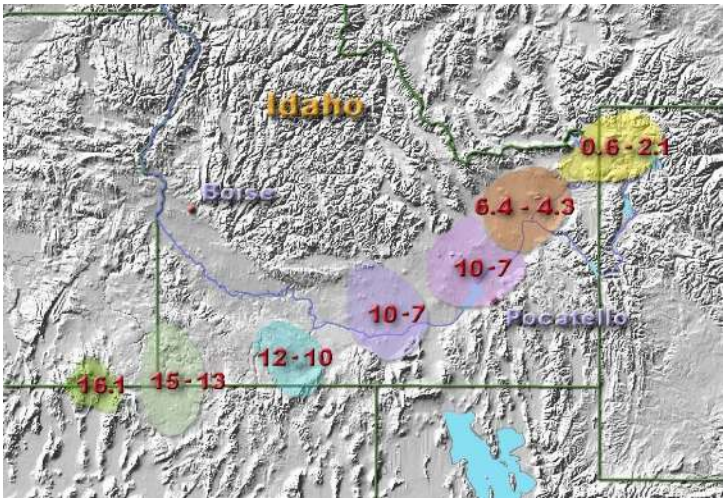


Figure *Section*2.7.5:: The track of the Yellowstone hotspot which shows the age of different eruptions millions of years ago. (By Kelvin Case at English Wikipedia; CC BY 3.0 via Wikimedia Commons.)

The most recent major eruption of this hotspot created the Yellowstone Caldera and Lava Creek tuff formation approximately 631,000 years ago [95]. The eruption threw 1000 cubic kilometers of ash and magma into the atmosphere, some of which was found as far away as Mississippi. Should the hotspot erupt again, scientists predict it will be another massive event. This would be a calamity reaching far beyond the western United States. These super volcanic eruptions fill the Earth's atmosphere with so much gas and ash, they block sunlight from reaching the Earth. Not only would this drastically alter climates and environments around the globe, but it could also affect worldwide food production.

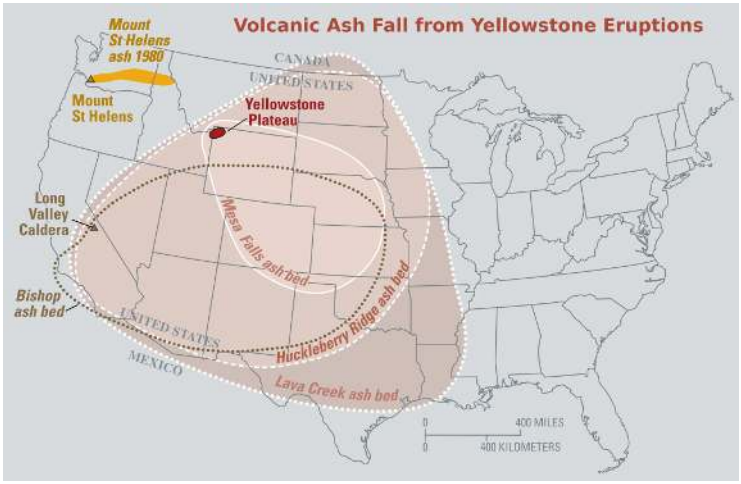


Figure ***Section*2.7.6**:: Several prominent ash beds found in North America, including three Yellowstone eruptions which are shaded pink (Mesa Falls, Huckleberry Ridge, and Lava Creek), the Bishop Tuff ash bed (brown dashed line), and the modern May 18, 1980 Mt. St. Helens ash fall (yellow). (By USGS; public domain via Wikimedia Commons.)

Section 2.7.3 References

- 82. Wilson, J. T. A possible origin of the Hawaiian Islands. *Can. J. Phys.* **41**, 863–870 (1963).
- 83. Tarduno, J. A. *et al.* The Emperor Seamounts: southward motion of the Hawaiian hotspot plume in Earth's mantle. *Science* **301**, 1064–1069 (2003).
- 84. Morgan, W. J. Convection Plumes in the Lower Mantle. **230**, 42–43 (1971).
- 85. Courtillot, V., Davaille, A., Besse, J. & Stock, J. Three distinct types of hotspots in the Earth's mantle. *Earth Planet. Sci. Lett.* **205**, 295–308 (2003).
- 86. Foulger, G. R. *et al.* Caveats on tomographic images. *Terra Nova* **25**, 259–281 (2013).
- 87. Kerr, R. A. Rising plumes in Earth's mantle: phantom or real? *Science* **313**, 1726 (2006).
- 88. James, D. E., Fouch, M. J., Carlson, R. W. & Roth, J. B. Slab fragmentation, edge flow and the origin of the Yellowstone hotspot track. *Earth Planet. Sci. Lett.* **311**, 124–135 (2011).
- 89. Hagstrum, J. T. Antipodal hotspots and bipolar catastrophes: Were oceanic large-body impacts the cause? *Earth Planet. Sci. Lett.* **236**, 13–27 (2005).
- 90. Dalrymple, G. B., Silver, E. A. & Jackson, E. D. Origin of the Hawaiian Islands: Recent studies indicate that the Hawaiian volcanic chain is a result of relative motion between the Pacific plate and a melting spot in the Earth's mantle. *Am. Sci.* **61**, 294–308 (1973).
- 91. Whittaker, J. M. *et al.* Major Australian-Antarctic plate reorganization at Hawaiian-Emperor bend time. *Science* **318**, 83–86 (2007).
- 92. Ji, Y. & Nataf, H.-C. Detection of mantle plumes in the lower mantle by diffraction tomography: Hawaii. *Earth Planet. Sci. Lett.* **159**, 99–115 (1998).
- 93. Geist, D. & Richards, M. Origin of the Columbia Plateau and Snake River plain: Deflection of the Yellowstone plume. *Geology* **21**, 789–792 (1993).
- 94. Johnston, S. T. *et al.* Yellowstone in Yukon: The Late Cretaceous Carmacks Group. *Geology* **24**, 997–1000 (1996).
- 95. Matthews, N. E., Vazquez, J. A. & Calvert, A. T. Age of the Lava Creek supereruption and magma chamber assembly at Yellowstone based on 40Ar/39Ar and U-Pb dating of sanidine and zircon crystals. *Geochem. Geophys. Geosyst.* **16**, 2508–2528 (2015).

This page titled Section 2.7: Hotspots is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Chris Johnson, Matthew D. Affolter, Paul Inkenbrandt, & Cam Mosher (OpenGeology) via source content that was edited to the style and standards of the LibreTexts platform.

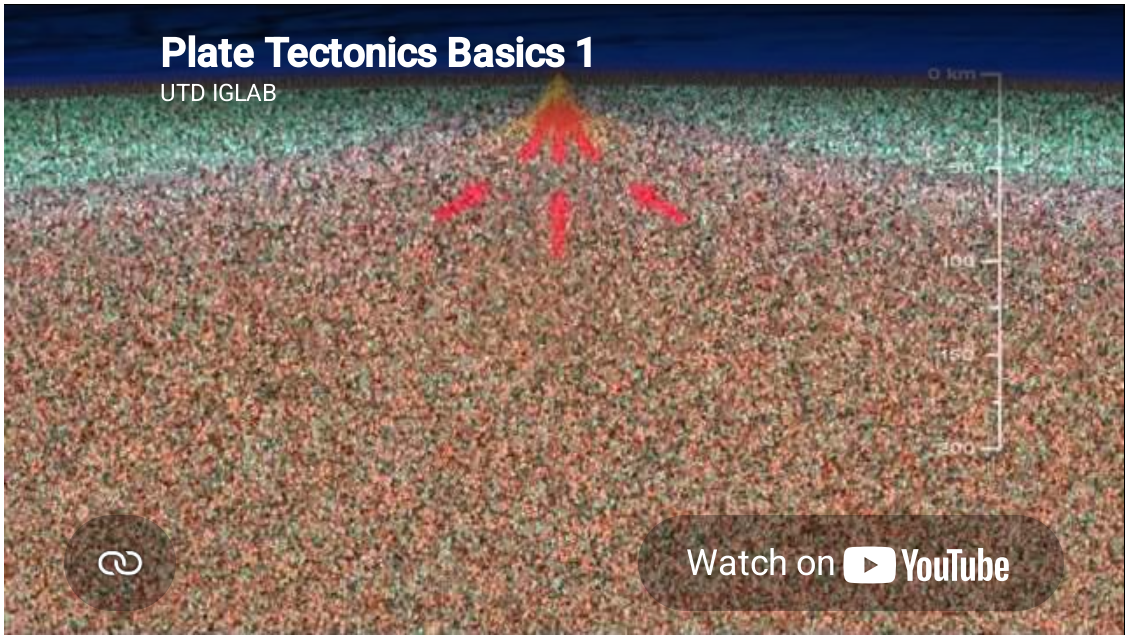
- **2.7: Hotspots** by Chris Johnson, Matthew D. Affolter, Paul Inkenbrandt, & Cam Mosher is licensed CC BY-NC-SA 4.0. Original source: https://opengeology.org/textbook/.

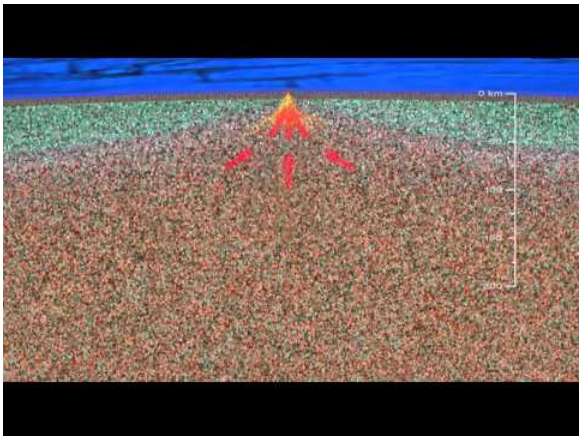
Section 2.S: Summary

Section 2.S.1 Summary

Plate tectonics is a unifying theory; it explains nearly all of the major geologic processes on Earth. Since its early inception in the 1950s and 1960s, geologists have been guided by this revolutionary perception of the world. The theory of plate tectonics states the surface layer of the Earth is broken into a network of solid, relatively brittle plates. Underneath the plates is a much hotter and more ductile layer that contains zones of convective upwelling generated by the interior heat of Earth. These convection currents move the surface plates around—bringing them together, pulling them apart, and shearing them side-by-side. Earthquakes and volcanoes form at the boundaries where the plates interact, with the exception of volcanic hotspots, which are not caused by plate movement.

Watch this video for the basics on plate tectonics.





Section 2.S: Summary is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

CHAPTER OVERVIEW

Chapter 3: Minerals

Learning Objectives

- Define mineral.
- Describe the basic structure of the atom.
- Derive basic atomic information from the Periodic Table of Elements.
- Describe chemical bonding related to minerals.
- Describe the main ways minerals form.
- Describe the silicon-oxygen tetrahedron and how it forms common silicate minerals.
- List common non-silicate minerals in oxide, sulfide, sulfate, and carbonate groups.
- Identify minerals using physical properties and identification tables.



Figure *Chapter*3.1: These selenite (gypsum) crystals, found in The Cave of the Crystals in Naica, Mexico, are some of the largest minerals ever found. The largest crystal found here is 39 feet (12 meters) and 55 tons. Note the person for scale. (By Alexander Van Driessche; CC BY 3.0 via Wikimedia Commons.)

The term “minerals” as used in nutrition labels and pharmaceutical products is not the same as a mineral in a geological sense. In geology, the classic definition of a **mineral** is:

1. Naturally occurring
2. Inorganic
3. Solid at room temperature
4. Regular crystal structure
5. Defined chemical composition

Some natural substances technically should not be considered minerals, but are included by exception. For example, water and mercury are liquid at room temperature. Both are considered minerals because they were classified before the room-temperature rule was accepted as part of the definition. Calcite is quite often formed by organic processes but is considered a mineral because it is widely found and geologically important. Because of these discrepancies, the International Mineralogical Association in 1985 amended the definition to: “A mineral is an element or chemical compound that is normally crystalline and that has been formed as a result of geological processes.” This means that the calcite in the shell of a clam is not considered a mineral. But once that clamshell undergoes burial, diagenesis, or other geological processes, then the calcite is considered a mineral. Typically, substances like coal, pearl, opal, or obsidian that do not fit the definition of a mineral are called **mineraloids**.

A **rock** is a substance that contains one or more minerals or mineraloids. As is discussed in later chapters, there are three types of rocks composed of minerals: igneous (rocks crystallizing from molten material), sedimentary (rocks made of products of

mechanical weathering (sand, gravel, etc.), or chemical weathering (things precipitated from solution)), and metamorphic (rocks produced by alteration of other rocks by heat and pressure).

Section 3.1: Chemistry of Minerals
Section 3.2: Formation of Minerals
Section 3.3: Silicate Minerals
Section 3.4: Non-Silicate Minerals
Section 3.5: Identifying Minerals
Section 3.S: Summary

This page titled Chapter 3: Minerals is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Chris Johnson, Matthew D. Affolter, Paul Inkenbrandt, & Cam Mosher (OpenGeology) via source content that was edited to the style and standards of the LibreTexts platform.

Section 3.1: Chemistry of Minerals

Rocks are composed of minerals that have a specific chemical composition. To understand mineral chemistry, it is essential to examine the fundamental unit of all matter, the **atom**.

Section 3.1.1 The Atom

Matter is made of atoms. Atoms consist of subatomic particles—protons, neutrons, and electrons. A simple model of the atom has a central **nucleus** composed of **protons**, which have positive charges, and **neutrons** which have no charge. A cloud of negatively charged **electrons** surrounds the nucleus, the number of electrons equaling the number of protons thus balancing the positive charge of the protons for a neutral atom. Protons and neutrons each have a **mass number** of 1. The mass of an electron is less than $1/1000^{th}$ that of a proton or neutron, meaning most of the atom's mass is in the nucleus.

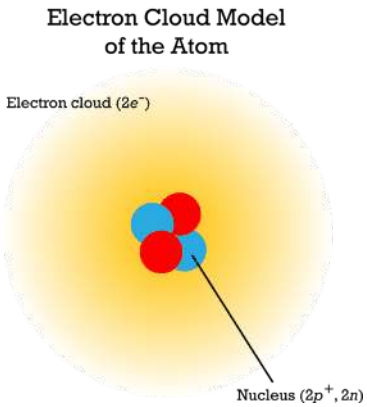


Figure *Section*3.1.1: Electron cloud model of the atom. (By Christopher AuYeung; CC BY-NC 3.0 via CK-12 Foundation.)

Section 3.1.2 Periodic Table of the Elements

Matter is composed of **elements** which are atoms that have a specific number of protons in the nucleus. This number of protons is called the **atomic number** for the element. For example, an oxygen atom has 8 protons and an iron atom has 26 protons. An element cannot be broken down chemically into a simpler form and retains unique chemical and physical properties. Each element behaves in a unique manner in nature. This uniqueness led scientists to develop a **periodic table of the elements**, a tabular arrangement of all known elements listed in order of their atomic number.

Periodic Table of Elements

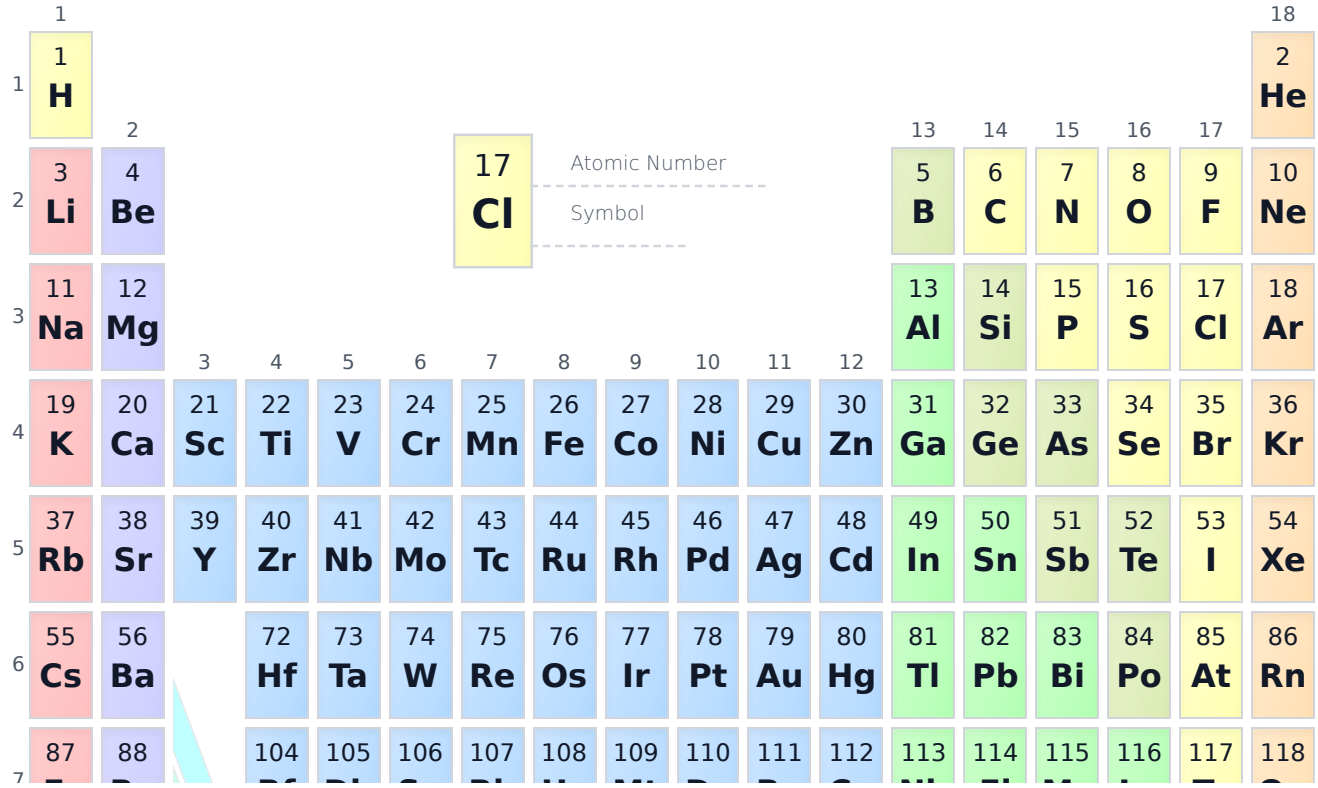


Figure *Section*3.1.2: The Periodic Table of the Elements

The first arrangement of elements into a periodic table was done by Dmitri Mendeleev in 1869 using the elements known at the time [1]. In the periodic table, each element has a chemical symbol, name, atomic number, and atomic mass. The **chemical symbol** is an abbreviation for the element, often derived from a Latin or Greek name for the substance [2]. The atomic number is the number of protons in the nucleus. The **atomic mass** is the number of protons and neutrons in the nucleus, each with a mass number of one. Since the mass of electrons is so much less than the protons and neutrons, the atomic mass is effectively the number of protons plus neutrons.

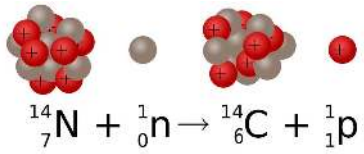


Figure *Section*3.1.3: Formation of carbon-14 from nitrogen-14. (By NikNaks from Sgbeer; CC BY-SA 3.0 via Wikimedia Commons.)

The atomic mass of natural elements represents an average mass of the atoms comprising that substance in nature and is usually not a whole number as seen on the periodic table, meaning that an element exists in nature with atoms having different numbers of neutrons. The differing number of neutrons affects the mass of an element in nature and the atomic mass number represents this average. This gives rise to the concept of isotope. **Isotopes** are forms of an element with the same number of protons but different numbers of neutrons. There are usually several isotopes for a particular element. For example, 98.9% of carbon atoms have 6 protons and 6 neutrons. This isotope of carbon is called carbon-12 (^{12}C). A few carbon atoms, carbon-13 (^{13}C), have 6 protons and 7 neutrons. A trace amount of carbon atoms, carbon-14 (^{14}C), has 6 protons and 8 neutrons.

Among the 118 known elements, the heaviest are fleeting human creations known only in high energy particle accelerators, and they decay rapidly. The heaviest naturally occurring element is uranium, with atomic number 92. The eight most abundant elements in Earth's continental crust are shown in Table ***Section*3.1.1**: [3; 4]. These elements are found in the most common rock-forming minerals.

Table ***Section*3.1.1**:: Eight Most Abundant Elements in the Earth's Continental Crust % by weight (Source: USGS). All other elements are less than 1%..

Element	Symbol	Abundance %
Oxygen	O	47%
Silicon	Si	28%
Aluminum	Al	8%
Iron	Fe	5%
Calcium	Ca	4%
Sodium	Na	3%
Potassium	K	3%
Magnesium	Mg	2%

Section 3.1.3 Chemical Bonding

Most substances on Earth are compounds containing multiple elements. **Chemical bonding** describes how these atoms attach with each other to form compounds, such as sodium and chlorine combining to form NaCl, common table salt. Compounds that are held together by chemical bonds are called **molecules**. Water is a compound of hydrogen and oxygen in which two hydrogen atoms are covalently bonded with one oxygen making the water molecule. The oxygen we breathe is formed when one oxygen atom covalently bonds with another oxygen atom to make the molecule O_2. The subscript 2 in the chemical formula indicates the molecule contains two atoms of oxygen.

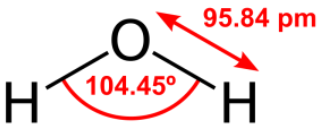


Figure ***Section*3.1.4**: A model of a water molecule, showing the bonds between the hydrogen and oxygen. (By Dan Craggs; public domain via Wikimedia Commons.)

Most minerals are also compounds of more than one element. The common mineral calcite has the chemical formula $\mathbf{CaCO_3}$ indicating the molecule consists of one calcium, one carbon, and three oxygen atoms. In calcite, one carbon and three oxygen atoms are held together by covalent bonds to form a molecular ion, called carbonate, which has a negative charge. Calcium as an ion has a positive charge of plus two. The two oppositely charged ions attract each other and combine to form the mineral calcite, $\mathbf{CaCO_3}$. The name of the **chemical compound** is calcium carbonate, where calcium is **Ca** and carbonate refers to the molecular ion $\mathbf{CO_3^{2-}}$.

The mineral olivine has the chemical formula $(Mg,Fe)_2SiO_4$, in which one silicon and four oxygen atoms are bonded with two atoms of either magnesium or iron. The comma between iron (Fe) and magnesium (Mg) indicates the two elements can occupy the same location in the crystal structure and substitute for one another.

Section 3.1.3.1 Valence and Charge

The electrons around the atom's nucleus are located in **shells** representing different energy levels. The outermost shell is called the **valence shell**. Electrons in the valence shell are involved in chemical bonding. In 1913, Niels Bohr proposed a simple model of the atom that states atoms are more stable when their outermost shell is full [5; 6]. Atoms of most elements thus tend to gain or lose electrons so the outermost or valence shell is full. In Bohr's model, the innermost shell can have a maximum of two electrons and the second and third shells can have a maximum of eight electrons. When the innermost shell is the valence shell, as in the case of

hydrogen and helium, it obeys the **octet rule** when it is full with two electrons. For elements in higher rows, the octet rule of eight electrons in the valence shell applies.

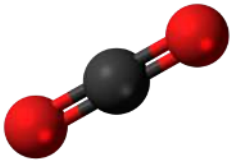


Figure *Section*3.1.5: The carbon dioxide molecule. Since Oxygen is -2 and Carbon is +4, the two oxygens bond to the carbon to form a neutral molecule. (By Jynto; public domain via Wikimedia Commons.)

The rows in the periodic table present the elements in order of atomic number and the columns organize elements with similar characteristics, such as the same number of electrons in their valence shells. Columns are often labeled from left to right with Roman numerals I to VIII, and Arabic numerals 1 through 18. The elements in columns I and II have 1 and 2 electrons in their respective valence shells and the elements in columns VI and VII have 6 and 7 electrons in their respective valence shells.

In row 3 and column I, sodium (Na) has 11 protons in the nucleus and 11 electrons in three shells—2 electrons in the inner shell, 8 electrons in the second shell, and 1 electron in the valence shell. To maintain a full outer shell of 8 electrons per the octet rule, sodium readily gives up that 1 electron so there are 10 total electrons. With 11 positively charged protons in the nucleus and 10 negatively charged electrons in two shells, sodium when forming chemical bonds is an ion with an overall net charge of +1.

All elements in column I have a single electron in their valence shell and a valence of 1. The other column I elements also readily give up this single valence electron and thus become ions with a +1 charge. Elements in column II readily give up 2 electrons and end up as ions with a charge of +2. Note that elements in columns I and II which readily give up their valence electrons, often form bonds with elements in columns VI and VII which readily take up these electrons. Elements in columns 3 through 15 are usually involved in covalent bonding. The last column 18 (VIII) contains the **noble gases**. These elements are chemically inert because their valence shell is already full with 8 electrons, so they do not gain or lose electrons. An example is the noble gas helium which has 2 valence electrons in the first shell. Its valence shell is therefore full. All elements in column VIII possess full valence shells and do not form bonds with other elements.

As seen above, an atom with a net positive or negative charge as a result of gaining or losing electrons is called an **ion**. In general, the elements on the left side of the table lose electrons and become positive ions, called **cations** because they are attracted to the cathode in an electrical device. The elements on the right side tend to gain electrons. These are called **anions** because they are attracted to the anode in an electrical device. The elements in the center of the periodic table, columns 3 through 15, do not consistently follow the octet rule. These are called **transition elements**. A common example is iron, which has a +2 or +3 charge depending on the oxidation state of the element. Oxidized Fe^{3+} carries a +3 charge and reduced Fe^{2+} is +2. These two different oxidation states of iron often impart dramatic colors to rocks containing their minerals—the oxidized form producing red colors and the reduced form producing green.

Section 3.1.3.2 Ionic Bonding

Ionic bonds, also called **electron-transfer bonds**, are formed by the electrostatic attraction between atoms having opposite charges. Atoms of two opposite charges attract each other electrostatically and form an ionic bond in which the positive ion transfers its electron (or electrons) to the negative ion which takes them up. Through this transfer both atoms thus achieve a full valence shell. For example one atom of sodium (Na^+) and one atom of chlorine (Cl^-) form an ionic bond to make the compound sodium chloride (NaCl). This is also known as the mineral halite or common table salt. Another example is calcium (Ca^{2+}) and chlorine (Cl^-) combining to make the compound calcium chloride ($CaCl_2$). The subscript 2 indicates two atoms of chlorine are ionically bonded to one atom of calcium.

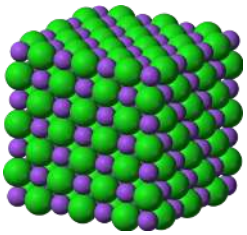


Figure *Section*3.1.6: Cubic arrangement of Na and Cl ions in halite. (By Benjah-bmm27; public domain via Wikimedia Commons.)

Section 3.1.3.3 Covalent Bonding

Ionic bonds are usually formed between a metal and a nonmetal. Another type, called a **covalent** or **electron-sharing bond**, commonly occurs between nonmetals. Covalent bonds share electrons between ions to complete their valence shells. For example, oxygen (atomic number 8) has 8 electrons—2 in the inner shell and 6 in the valence shell. Gases like oxygen often form diatomic molecules by sharing valence electrons. In the case of oxygen, two atoms attach to each other and share 2 electrons to fill their valence shells to become the common oxygen molecule we breathe (O_2). Methane (CH_4) is another covalently bonded gas. The carbon atom needs 4 electrons and each hydrogen needs 1. Each hydrogen shares its electron with the carbon to form a molecule as shown in the figure.

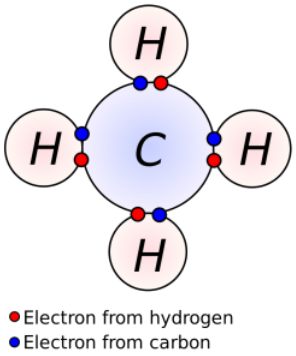


Figure *Section*3.1.7: Methane molecule. (By DynaBlast; CC BY-SA 2.5 via Wikimedia Commons.)

Section 3.1.4 References

- Mendeleev, D. The relation between the properties and atomic weights of the elements. *Journal of the Russian Chemical Society* **1**, 60–77 (1869).
- Scerri, E. R. *The Periodic Table: Its Story and Its Significance*. (Oxford University Press, USA, 2007).
- Clarke, F. W. H. S. W. *The Composition of the Earth's Crust*. **127**, (United States Geological Survey, 1927).
- Hans Wedepohl, K. The composition of the continental crust. *Geochim. Cosmochim. Acta* **59**, 1217–1232 (1995).
- *Science literacy: concepts, contexts, and consequences*. (National Academies Press (US), 2016).
- Bohr, N. On the constitution of atoms and molecules. *Philos. Mag.* **26**, 1–24 (1913).

This page titled Section 3.1: Chemistry of Minerals is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Chris Johnson, Matthew D. Affolter, Paul Inkenbrandt, & Cam Mosher (OpenGeology) via source content that was edited to the style and standards of the LibreTexts platform.

- **3.2: Chemistry of Minerals** by Chris Johnson, Matthew D. Affolter, Paul Inkenbrandt, & Cam Mosher is licensed CC BY-NC-SA 4.0. Original source: https://opengeology.org/textbook/.

Section 3.2: Formation of Minerals

Minerals form when atoms bond together in a crystalline arrangement. Three main ways this occurs in nature are:

1. Precipitation directly from an aqueous (water) solution with a temperature change
2. Crystallization from a magma with a temperature change
3. Biological precipitation by the action of organisms

Section 3.2.1 Precipitation from Aqueous Solution

Solutions consist of ions or molecules, known as **solutes**, dissolved in a medium or **solvent**. In nature, this solvent is usually water. Many minerals can be dissolved in water, such as halite or table salt, which has the composition sodium chloride, NaCl. The Na^+ and Cl^- ions separate and disperse into the solution.

Precipitation is the reverse process, in which ions in solution come together to form solid minerals. Precipitation is dependent on the concentration of ions in solution and other factors such as temperature and pressure. The point at which a solvent cannot hold any more solute is called **saturation**. Precipitation can occur when the temperature of the solution falls, when the solvent evaporates, or with changing chemical conditions in the solution. An example of precipitation in our homes is when water evaporates and leaves behind a rind of minerals on faucets, shower heads, and drinking glasses.



Figure *Section*3.2.1: Calcium carbonate deposits from hard water on a faucet. (By Bbypnda; CC BY-SA 3.0 via Wikimedia Commons.)

In nature, changes in environmental conditions may cause the minerals dissolved in water to form bonds and grow into crystals or may cement grains of sediment together. In Utah, deposits of tufa formed from mineral-rich springs that emerged into the ice age Lake Bonneville. Now exposed in dry valleys, this porous tufa was used by pioneers when building their homes as natural insulation to protect against summer heat and winter cold. The travertine terraces at Mammoth Hot Springs in Yellowstone National Park were similarly formed by calcite precipitation at the edges of the shallow spring-fed ponds.



Figure *Section*3.2.2: The Bonneville Salt Flats of Utah. (By BLM; CC BY 2.0 via Wikimedia Commons.)

Another example of precipitation occurs in the Great Salt Lake, Utah, where the concentration of sodium chloride and other salts is nearly eight times greater than in the world's oceans [7]. Streams carry salt ions into the lake from the surrounding mountains. With no other outlet, the water in the lake evaporates and the concentration of salt increases until saturation is reached and the minerals

precipitate out as sediments. Similar salt deposits include halite and other precipitates, and occur in other lakes like Mono Lake in California and the Dead Sea.

Section 3.2.2 Crystallization from Magma

Heat is energy that causes atoms in substances to vibrate. **Temperature** is a measure of the intensity of the vibration. If the vibrations are violent enough, chemical bonds are broken and the crystals melt, releasing the ions into the melt. **Magma** is molten rock with freely moving ions. When magma is emplaced at depth or extruded onto the surface (then called **lava**), it starts to cool and mineral crystals can form.



Figure ***Section*3.2.3**: Lava, which is magma at the Earth's surface. (By USGS; public domain via Wikimedia Commons.)

Section 3.2.3 Precipitation by Organisms

Many organisms build bones, shells, and body coverings by extracting ions from water and precipitating minerals biologically. The most common mineral precipitated by organisms is **calcite**, or calcium carbonate ($CaCO_3$). Calcite is often precipitated by organisms as a polymorph called **aragonite**. **Polymorphs** are crystals with the same chemical formula but different crystal structures. Marine invertebrates such as corals and clams precipitate aragonite or calcite for their shells and structures. Upon death, their hard parts accumulate on the ocean floor as sediments and eventually may become the sedimentary rock **limestone**. Though limestone can form inorganically, the vast majority is formed by this biological process.



Figure ***Section*3.2.4**: Fossilized ammonite shell made of calcium carbonate. (By ; CC BY-SA 3.0, via Wikimedia Commons.)

Another example is marine organisms called **radiolaria**, which are zooplankton that precipitate silica for their microscopic external shells. When the organisms die, the shells accumulate on the ocean floor and can form the sedimentary rock **chert**. An example of biologic precipitation from the vertebrate world is bone, which is composed mostly of a type of **apatite**, a mineral in the phosphate group. The apatite found in bones contains calcium and water in its structure and is called hydroxycarbonate apatite, $Ca_5(PO_4, CO_3)_3(OH)$. As mentioned above, such substances are not technically minerals until the organism dies and these hard parts become fossils.

Section 3.2.4 References

- 7. Utah Geological Survey. Commonly Asked Questions About Utah's Great Salt Lake & Lake Bonneville. (2017). Available at: http://geology.utah.gov/popular/general-geology/great-salt-lake/commonly-asked-questions-about-utahs-great-salt-lake-lake-bonneville/. (Accessed: 26th February 2017)

This page titled Section 3.2: Formation of Minerals is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Chris Johnson, Matthew D. Affolter, Paul Inkenbrandt, & Cam Mosher (OpenGeology) via source content that was edited to the style and standards of the LibreTexts platform.

- **3.3: Formation of Minerals** by Chris Johnson, Matthew D. Affolter, Paul Inkenbrandt, & Cam Mosher is licensed CC BY-NC-SA 4.0. Original source: https://opengeology.org/textbook/.

Section 3.3: Silicate Minerals

Minerals are categorized based on their composition and structure. **Silicate minerals** are built around a molecular ion called the **silicon-oxygen tetrahedron**. A tetrahedron has a pyramid-like shape with four sides and four corners. Silicate minerals form the largest group of minerals on Earth, comprising the vast majority of the Earth's mantle and crust. Of the nearly 4,000 known minerals on Earth, most are rare. There are only a few that make up most of the rocks likely to be encountered by surface-dwelling creatures like us. These are generally called the **rock-forming minerals**.

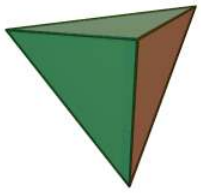


Figure *Section*3.3.1: Rotating animation of a tetrahedron. (By Cyp; CC BY-SA 3.0 via Wikimedia Commons.)

The silicon-oxygen tetrahedron (SiO_4) consists of a single silicon atom and four oxygen atoms located at the four corners of the tetrahedron. The silicon ion is much smaller than the oxygen ions and fits in the space in the center of the oxygen ions. Each oxygen ion has a -2 charge and the silicon ion has a +4 charge. The silicon ion shares one of its four valence electrons with each of the four oxygen ions in a covalent bond to create a symmetrical four-sided pyramid figure. Only half of the oxygen's valence electrons are shared, giving the silicon-oxygen tetrahedron an ionic charge of -4. Because only one of the valence electrons of the corner oxygens is shared, the silicon-oxygen tetrahedron has chemically active corners available to form bonds with other silicate tetrahedra or other positively charged ions such as Al^{3+}, $Fe^{2+,3+}$, Mg^{2+}, K^{+}, Na^{+}, and Ca^{2+}. Depending on many factors, such as the original magma chemistry, silicon-oxygen tetrahedra can combine with other tetrahedra in several different configurations. For example, tetrahedra can be isolated, attached in chains, sheets, or three-dimensional structures. These combinations and others create the unique chemical compositions forming the large group of silicate minerals.

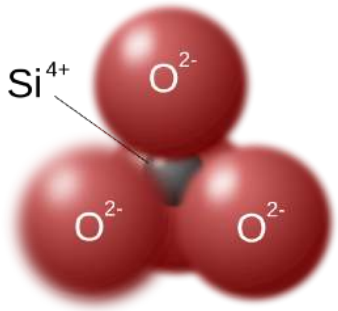


Figure *Section*3.3.2: Silicon-oxygen tetrahedron. (By Helgi; CC BY-SA 3.0 via Wikimedia Commons.)

Section 3.3.1 The Dark Ferromagnesian Silicates

Section 3.3.1.1 Olivine Family

Olivine is the primary mineral component in mantle rock such as peridotite and basalt. It is characteristically green when not weathered. The chemical formula is $(Fe,Mg)_2SiO_4$. As previously described, the comma between iron (Fe) and magnesium (Mg) indicates these two elements occur in a **solid solution**. Not to be confused with a liquid solution, a solid solution occurs when two or more elements have similar properties and can freely substitute for each other in the same location in the crystal structure. Chemically, olivine is mostly silicate, iron, and magnesium and therefore is grouped among the **dark-colored ferromagnesian** (iron=ferro, magnesium=magnesian) or **mafic minerals**, a contraction of their chemical symbols Ma and Fe. Ferromagnesian silicates tend to be more dense than non-ferromagnesian silicates. This difference in density ends up being important in controlling the behavior of the igneous rocks that are built from these minerals: whether a tectonic plate subducts or not is largely governed by the density of its rocks, which are in turn controlled by the density of the minerals that comprise them.



Figure *Section*3.3.3: Green olivine in basalt. (By Vsmith; CC BY-SA 3.0, via Wikimedia Commons.)

Olivine is referred to as a **mineral family** because of the ability of iron and magnesium to substitute for each other. The iron and magnesium ions in the solid solution are about the same size and charge, so either atom can fit into the same location in the growing crystals. Within the cooling magma, the mineral crystals continue to grow until they solidify into igneous rock. The relative amounts of iron and magnesium in the parent magma determine which minerals in the series form. Olivine can form crystals of all iron as one end member (called **fayalite**), all magnesium as the other end member (called **forsterite**), and mixtures of iron and magnesium in between. Different mineral names are applied to compositions between the end members. Other rarer elements with similar properties to iron or magnesium, like manganese (Mn), can substitute into the olivine crystalline structure in small amounts. Such ionic substitutions in mineral crystals give rise to the great variety of minerals and are often responsible for differences in color and other properties within a group or family of minerals.

The crystal structure of olivine is built from independent silicate tetrahedra. Minerals with independent tetrahedral structures are called **neosilicates** (or **orthosilicates**). In addition to olivine, other common neosilicate minerals include garnet, topaz, kyanite, and zircon.

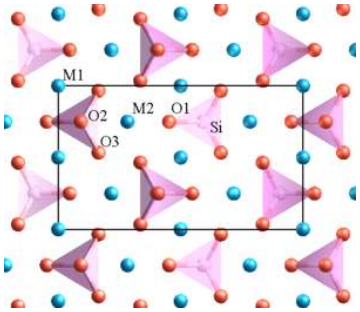


Figure *Section*3.3.4: Tetrahedral structure of olivine. (By Matanya; public domain via Wikimedia Commons.)

Two other similar arrangements of tetrahedra are close in structure to the neosilicates and grade toward the next group of minerals, the pyroxenes. In a variation on independent tetrahedra called **sorosilicates**, there are minerals that share one oxygen between two tetrahedra and include minerals like pistachio-green epidote, a gemstone. Another variation are the **cyclosilicates**, which as the name suggests, consist of tetrahedral rings, and include gemstones such as beryl, emerald, aquamarine, and tourmaline.

Section 3.3.1.2 Pyroxene Family

Pyroxene is another family of dark ferromagnesian minerals, typically black or dark green in color. Members of the pyroxene family have a complex chemical composition that includes iron, magnesium, aluminum, and other elements bonded to polymerized silicate tetrahedra. **Polymers** are chains, sheets, or three-dimensional structures, and are formed by multiple tetrahedra covalently bonded via their corner oxygen atoms. Pyroxenes are commonly found in mafic igneous rocks such as peridotite, basalt, and gabbro, as well as metamorphic rocks like eclogite and blue-schist.



Figure *Section*3.3.5: Crystals of diopside, a member of the pyroxene family. (By Robert M. Lavinsky, iRocks.com; CC BY-SA 3.0, via Wikimedia Commons.)

Pyroxenes are built from long, single chains of polymerized silicate tetrahedra in which tetrahedra share two corner oxygens. The silicate chains are bonded together into the crystal structures by metal cations. A common member of the pyroxene family is **augite**, which forms in several solid solution series with a complex chemical formula $(Ca,Na)(Mg,Fe,Al,Ti)(Al,Si)_2O_6$ that gives rise to a number of individual mineral names.

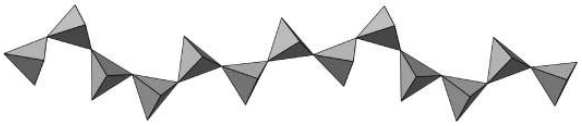


Figure *Section*3.3.6: Single chain tetrahedral structure in pyroxene. (By Bubenik; CC BY-SA 3.0 via Wikimedia Commons.)

This single-chain crystalline structure bonds with many elements, which can also freely substitute for each other. The generalized chemical composition for pyroxene is $XZ(Al,Si)_2O_6$. X represents the ions Na, Ca, Mg, or Fe, and Z represents Mg, Fe, or Al. These ions have similar ionic sizes, which allows many possible substitutions among them. Although the cations may freely substitute for each other in the crystal, they carry different ionic charges that must be balanced out in the final crystalline structure. For example, Na has a charge of +1, but Ca has a charge of +2. If a Na^+ ion substitutes for a Ca^{2+} ion, it creates an unequal charge that must be balanced by other ionic substitutions elsewhere in the crystal. Note that ionic size is more important than ionic charge for substitutions to occur in solid solution series in crystals.

Section 3.3.1.3 Amphibole Family

Amphibole minerals are built from polymerized double silicate chains and they are also referred to as **inosilicates**. Imagine two pyroxene chains that connect together by sharing the third oxygen on each tetrahedron. Amphiboles are usually found in igneous and metamorphic rocks and typically have a long-bladed crystal habit. The most common amphibole, **hornblende**, is usually black; however, they come in a variety of colors depending on their chemical composition. The metamorphic rock, amphibolite, is primarily composed of amphibole minerals.

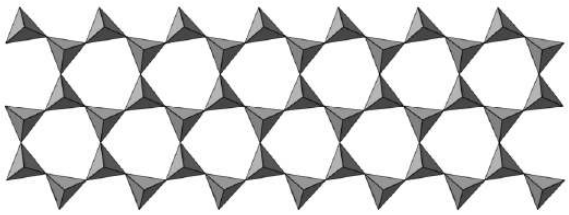


Figure *Section*3.3.7: Double chain structure of inosilicates. (By Bubenik; CC BY-SA 3.0 via Wikimedia Commons.)

Amphiboles are composed of iron, magnesium, aluminum, and other cations bonded with silicate tetrahedra. These dark ferromagnesian minerals are commonly found in gabbro, basalt, diorite, and often form the black specks in granite. Their chemical formula is very complex and generally written as $(RSi_4O_{11})_2$, where R represents many different cations. For example, it can also be written more exactly as $AX_2Z_5((Si,Al,Ti)_8O_{22})(OH,F,Cl,O)_2$. In this formula A may be Ca, Na, K, Pb, or blank; X can be Li, Na, Mg, Fe, Mn, or Ca; and Z can be Li, Na, Mg, Fe, Mn, Zn, Co, Ni, Al, Cr, Mn, V, Ti, or Zr. The substitutions create a wide variety of colors such as green, black, colorless, white, yellow, blue, or brown. Amphibole crystals can also include **hydroxide ions** (OH^-), which occur from an interaction between the growing minerals and water dissolved in the magma.



Figure *Section*3.3.8: Left: Hornblende crystals. (By USGS; public domain via Wikimedia Commons.) Right: Elongated crystals of hornblende in orthoclase. (By Dave Dyet; public domain via Wikimedia Commons.)

Section 3.3.2 Sheet Silicates

Sheet silicates are built from tetrahedra which share all three of their bottom corner oxygens thus forming sheets of tetrahedra with their top corners available for bonding with other atoms. **Micas** and **clays** are common types of sheet silicates, also known as **phyllosilicates**. Mica minerals are usually found in igneous and metamorphic rocks, while clay minerals are more often found in sedimentary rocks. Two frequently found micas are dark-colored **biotite**, frequently found in granite, and light-colored **muscovite**, found in the metamorphic rock called schist.



Figure *Section*3.3.9: Left: Crystal of biotite mica. (By Fred Kruijen; CC BY-SA 3.0 NL via Wikimedia Commons.) Right: A stack of sheets of muscovite mica. (By USGS; public domain via Wikimedia Commons.)

Chemically, sheet silicates usually contain silicon and oxygen in a 2:5 ratio (Si_4O_{10}). Micas contain mostly silicate, aluminum, and potassium. Biotite mica has more iron and magnesium and is considered a ferromagnesian silicate mineral. Muscovite micas belong to the felsic silicate minerals. **Felsic** is a contraction formed from feldspar, the dominant mineral in felsic rocks, and silicate.

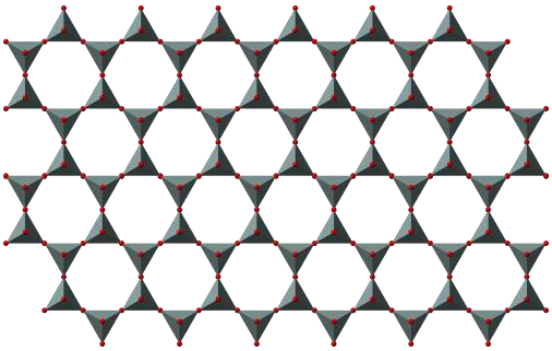
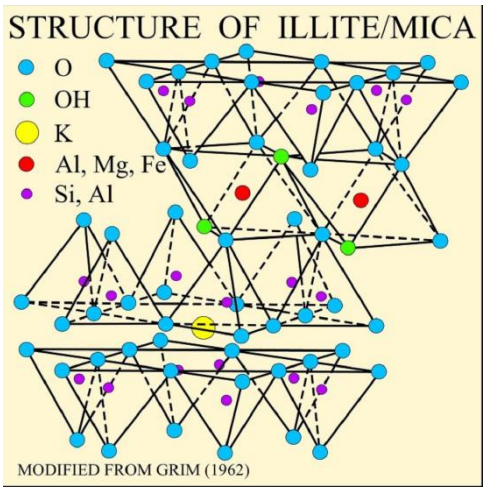


Figure *Section*3.3.10: Sheet structure of mica, view perpendicular to the sheets. (By Benjah-bmm27; public domain via Wikimedia Commons.)

The illustration of the crystalline structure of mica shows the corner oxygen atoms (O) bonded with K, Al, Mg, Fe, and Si atoms, forming polymerized sheets of linked tetrahedra, with an octahedral layer of Fe, Mg, or Al, between them. The yellow potassium ions form **Van der Waals bonds** (attraction and repulsion between atoms, molecules, and surfaces) and hold the sheets together. Van der Waals bonds differ from covalent and ionic bonds, and exist here between the sandwiches, holding them together into a stack of sandwiches. The Van der Waals bonds are weak compared to the bonds within the sheets, allowing the sandwiches to be separated along the potassium layers. This gives mica its characteristic property of easily cleaving into sheets.



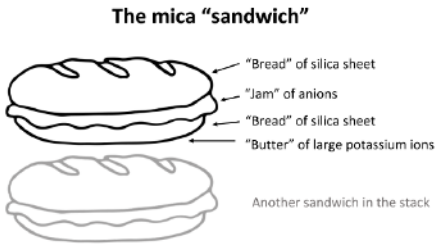


Figure ***Section*3.3.11**: Left: Crystal structure of a mica, view parallel to the sheets. (By USGS; public domain via Wikimedia Commons.) Right: Mica silicate "sandwich" structure. (By Kindred Grey from Sandwich by Alex Muravev; CC BY 4.0 via Introduction to Earth Science.)

Clays minerals occur in sediments formed by the weathering of rocks and are another family of silicate minerals with a tetrahedral sheet structure. Clay minerals form a complex family and are an important component of many sedimentary rocks. Other sheet silicates include **serpentine** and **chlorite**, found in metamorphic rocks.

Clay minerals are composed of hydrous aluminum silicates. One type of clay, **kaolinite**, has a structure like an open-faced sandwich, with the bread being a single layer of silicon-oxygen tetrahedra and a layer of aluminum as the spread in an octahedral configuration with the top oxygens of the sheets.

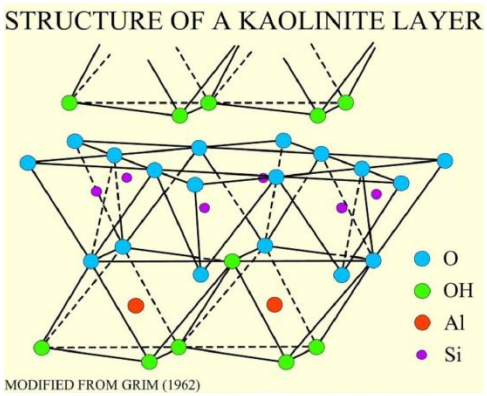


Figure ***Section*3.3.12**: Structure of kaolinite. (By USGS; public domain)

Section 3.3.3 Framework Silicates

Quartz and **feldspar** are the two most abundant minerals in the continental crust. There are two types of feldspar: one containing potassium and abundant in felsic rocks of the continental crust, and the other with sodium and calcium and abundant in the mafic rocks of oceanic crust. Together with quartz, these minerals are classified as **framework silicates**. They are built with a three-dimensional framework of silicate tetrahedra in which all four corner oxygens are shared with adjacent tetrahedra. Framework silicates are called **tectosilicates** and also include the alkali metal-rich feldspathoids and zeolites.



Figure *Section*3.3.13: Pink orthoclase feldspar crystals. (By Didier Descouens; CC BY-SA 4.0, via Wikimedia Commons.)

Quartz is a felsic mineral composed of pure **silica**, SiO_2 with the tetrahedra arranged in a three-dimensional framework. Impurities consisting of atoms within this framework give rise to many varieties of quartz among which are gemstones like amethyst, rose quartz, and citrine.



Figure *Section*3.3.14: Freely growing quartz crystals showing crystal faces. (By Didier Descouens; CC BY-SA 4.0 via Wikimedia Commons.)

Feldspars are mostly silica with aluminum, potassium, sodium, and calcium. The silica tetrahedra framework has holes and spaces into which other ions like aluminum, potassium, sodium, and calcium can fit, giving rise to a variety of mineral compositions and mineral names. Aluminum, which has a similar ionic size to silicon, can substitute for silicon inside the tetrahedra. Because potassium ions are so much larger than sodium and calcium ions, which are very similar in size, the inability of the crystal lattice to accommodate both potassium and sodium/calcium gives rise to the two families of feldspar: **orthoclase** and **plagioclase** respectively. Orthoclase feldspar ($KAlSi_3O_8$), also called **potassium feldspar** or **K-spar,** is made of silica, aluminum, and potassium. In plagioclase feldspar, $(Ca,Na)AlSi_3O_8$, the solid solution (Ca,Na) indicates a series of minerals, one end with calcium $CaAl_2Si_2O_8$, called **anorthite**, and the other end with sodium $NaAlSi_3O_8$, called **albite**.

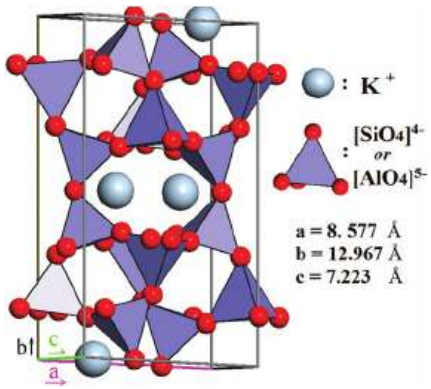


Figure *Section*3.3.15: Crystal structure of potassium feldspar. (By Taisiya Skorina, Antoine Allanore; CC BY 3.0 via Research Gate.)

Feldspars are usually found in igneous rocks, such as granite, rhyolite, and basalt as well as metamorphic rocks and detrital sedimentary rocks. Detrital sedimentary rocks are composed of mechanically weathered rock particles, like sand and gravel. Quartz is especially abundant in detrital sedimentary rocks because it is very resistant to disintegration by weathering. While quartz is the

most abundant mineral on the Earth's surface due to its durability, the feldspar minerals are the most abundant minerals in the Earth's crust, comprising roughly 50% of the total minerals that make up the crust.

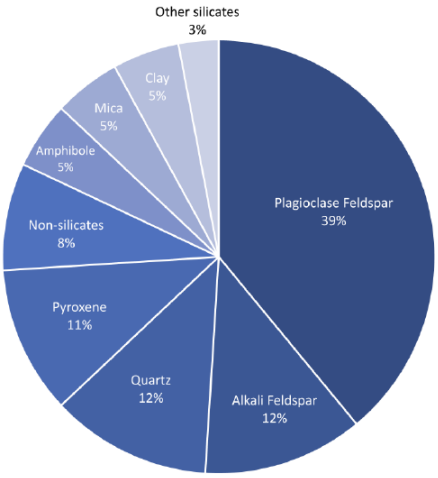


Figure *Section*3.3.16: Pie chart of mineral abundance in Earth's crust. (By Kindred Grey; CC BY 4.0 via Introduction to Earth Science.)

This page titled Section 3.3: Silicate Minerals is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Chris Johnson, Matthew D. Affolter, Paul Inkenbrandt, & Cam Mosher (OpenGeology) via source content that was edited to the style and standards of the LibreTexts platform.

- **3.4: Silicate Minerals** by Chris Johnson, Matthew D. Affolter, Paul Inkenbrandt, & Cam Mosher is licensed CC BY-NC-SA 4.0. Original source: https://opengeology.org/textbook/.

Section 3.4: Non-Silicate Minerals

The crystal structure of **non-silicate minerals** (see table) does not contain silicon-oxygen tetrahedra. Many non-silicate minerals are economically important and provide **metallic** resources such as copper, lead, and iron. They also include valuable **non-metallic** products such as salt, construction materials, and fertilizer.

Table *Section*3.4.1: Common non-silicate mineral groups.

Mineral Group	Examples	Formula	Uses
Native elements	gold, silver, copper	Au, Ag, Cu	Jewelry, coins, industry
Carbonates	calcite, dolomite	$CaCO_3$, $CaMg(CO_3)_2$	Lime, Portland cement
Oxides	hematite, magnetite, bauxite	Fe_2O_3, Fe_3O_4, a mixture of aluminum oxides	Ores of iron & aluminum, pigments
Halides	halite, sylvite	NaCl, KCl	Table salt, fertilizer
Sulfides	galena, chalcopyrite, cinnabar	PbS, $CuFeS_2$, HgS	Ores of lead, copper, mercury
Sulphates	gypsum, epsom salts	$CaSo_4{\cdot}2H_2O$, $MgSO_4{\cdot}7H_2O$	Sheetrock, therapeutic soak
Phosphates	apatite	$Ca_5(PO_4)_3(F,Cl,OH)$	Fertilizer, teeth, bones

Section 3.4.1 Carbonates

Calcite ($CaCO_3$) and **dolomite** ($CaMg(CO_3)_2$) are the two most frequently occurring **carbonate minerals**, and usually occur in sedimentary rocks, such as limestone and dolostone rocks, respectively. Some carbonate minerals, such as calcite and dolomite, are formed via evaporation and precipitation. However, most carbonate-rich rocks, such as limestone, are created by the lithification of fossilized marine organisms. These organisms, including those we can see and many microscopic organisms, have shells or exoskeletons consisting of calcium carbonate ($CaCO_3$). When these organisms die, their remains accumulate on the floor of the water body in which they lived and the soft body parts decompose and dissolve away. The calcium carbonate hard parts become included in the sediments, eventually becoming the sedimentary rock called **limestone**. While limestone may contain large, easy to see fossils, most limestones contain the remains of microscopic creatures and thus originate from biological processes.



Figure *Section*3.4.1: Limestone full of small fossils. (By Jim Stuby; public domain via Wikimedia Commons.)

Calcite crystals show an interesting property called **birefringence**, meaning they polarize light into two wave components vibrating at right angles to each other. As the two light waves pass through the crystal, they travel at different velocities and are separated by refraction into two different travel paths. In other words, the crystal produces a double image of objects viewed through it. Because they polarize light, calcite crystals are used in special petrographic microscopes for studying minerals and rocks.



Figure *Section*3.4.2: Calcite crystal in the shape of a rhombohedron. Note the double-refracted word “calcite” in the center of the figure due to birefringence. (By Alkivar; public domain via Wikimedia Commons.)

The figure shows the crystal structure of calcite ($CaCO_3$). Like silicon, carbon has four valence electrons. The carbonate unit consists of carbon atoms (tiny white spheres) covalently bonded to three oxygen atoms (red), one oxygen sharing two valence electrons with the carbon and the other two sharing one valence electron each with the carbon, thus creating triangular units with a charge of -2. The negatively charged carbonate unit forms an ionic bond with the Ca ion (blue), which as a charge of +2.

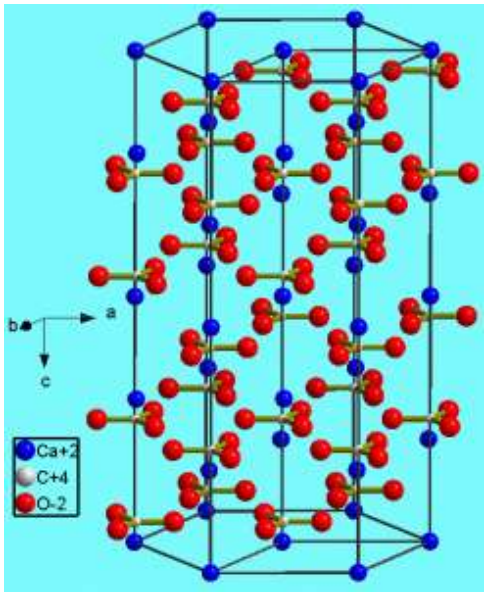


Figure *Section*3.4.3: Crystal structure of calcite. (By Materialscientist at English Wikipedia; CC BY-SA 3.0 via Wikimedia Commons.)

Many non-silicate minerals are referred to as salts. The term **salts** used here refers to compounds made by replacing the hydrogen in natural acids. The most abundant natural acid is **carbonic acid** that forms by the solution of carbon dioxide in water ($CO_2 + H_2O \rightarrow H_2CO_3$). Carbonate minerals are salts built around the carbonate ion (CO_3^{2-}) where calcium and/or magnesium replace the hydrogen in carbonic acid (such as calcite, $CaCO_3$). Calcite and closely-related polymorph **aragonite** are secreted by organisms to form shells and physical structures like corals. Many such creatures draw both calcium and carbonate from dissolved bicarbonate ions (HCO_3^-) in ocean water. As seen in the mineral identification section, calcite is easily dissolved in acid and thus effervesces in dilute **hydrochloric acid** (HCl). Small dropper bottles of dilute hydrochloric acid are often carried by geologists in the field as well as used in mineral identification labs.

Other salts include halite (NaCl) in which sodium replaces the hydrogen in hydrochloric acid, and gypsum ($Ca[SO_4] \cdot 2\ H_2O$) in which calcium replaces the hydrogen in sulfuric acid (H_2SO_4). Note that some water molecules are also included in the gypsum crystal. Salts are often formed by evaporation and are called **evaporite minerals**.

Section 3.4.2 Oxides, Halides, and Sulfides

After carbonates, the next most common non-silicate minerals are the oxides, halides, and sulfides.

Oxides consist of metal ions covalently bonded with oxygen. The most familiar oxide is **rust**, which is a combination of iron oxides (Fe_2O_3) and hydrated oxides. **Hydrated oxides** form when the iron is exposed to oxygen and water. Iron oxides are important for producing metallic iron. When iron oxide or ore is smelted, it produces carbon dioxide (CO_2) and metallic iron.



Figure ***Section*3.4.4**: Limonite, a hydrated oxide of iron. (By USGS; public domain via Wikimedia Commons.)

The red color in rocks is usually due to the presence of iron oxides. For example, the red sandstone cliffs in Zion National Park and throughout southern Utah consist of white or colorless grains of quartz coated with iron oxide which serve as cementing agents holding the grains together.

Other iron oxides include limonite, magnetite, and hematite. **Hematite** occurs in many different crystal forms. The massive form shows no external structure. Botryoidal hematite shows large concentric blobs. Specular hematite looks like a mass of shiny metallic crystals. Oolitic hematite looks like a mass of dull red fish eggs. These different forms of hematite are polymorphs and all have the same formula, Fe_2O_3.



Figure ***Section*3.4.5**: Oolitic hematite. (By Dave Dyet; public domain via Wikimedia Commons.)

Other common oxide minerals include:

- Ice (H_2O), an oxide of hydrogen
- Bauxite ($Al_2H_2O_4$), hydrated oxides of aluminum, an ore for producing metallic aluminum
- Corundum (Al_2O_3), which includes ruby and sapphire gemstones

The **halides** consist of halogens in column VII, usually fluorine or chlorine, ionically bonded with sodium or other cations. These include **halite** or sodium chloride (NaCl), common table salt; **sylvite** or potassium chloride (KCl); and **fluorite** or calcium fluoride (CaF_2).

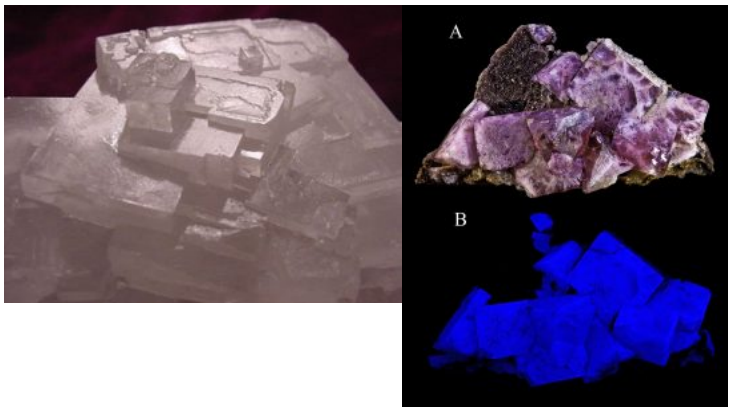


Figure *Section*3.4.6: Left: Halite crystal showing cubic habit. (By USGS; public domain via Wikimedia Commons.) Right: Fluorite. B shows fluorescence of fluorite under UV light. (By Didier Descouens; CC BY-SA 4.0 via Wikimedia Commons.)

Halide minerals usually form from the evaporation of seawater or other isolated bodies of water. A well-known example of halide mineral deposits created by evaporation is the Bonneville Salt Flats, located west of the Great Salt Lake in Utah (see figure).



Figure *Section*3.4.7: Salt crystals at the Bonneville Salt Flats. (By Famartin; CC BY-SA 4.0 via Wikimedia Commons.)

Many important metal ores are **sulfides,** in which metals are bonded to sulfur. Significant examples include **galena** (lead sulfide, PbS), **sphalerite** (zinc sulfide, ZnS), **pyrite** (iron sulfide, FeS_2, sometimes called "fool's gold"), and **chalcopyrite** (copper-iron sulfide, $CuFeS_2$). Sulfides are well known for being important ore minerals. For example, galena is the main source of lead, sphalerite is the main source of zinc, and chalcopyrite is the main copper ore mineral mined in porphyry deposits like the Bingham mine. The largest sources of nickel, antimony, molybdenum, arsenic, and mercury are also sulfides.



Figure *Section*3.4.8: Cubic crystals of pyrite. (By CarlesMillan; CC BY-SA 3.0, via Wikimedia Commons.)

Section 3.4.3 Sulfates

Sulfate minerals contain a metal ion, such as calcium, bonded to a sulfate ion. The **sulfate ion** is a combination of sulfur and oxygen (SO_4^{2-}). The sulfate mineral **gypsum** ($CaSO_4{\cdot}2H_2O$) is used in construction materials such as plaster and drywall. Gypsum is often formed from evaporating water and usually contains water molecules in its crystalline structure. The $\cdot 2H_2O$ in the formula indicates the water molecules are whole H_2O. This is different from minerals like amphibole, which contain a hydroxide ion (OH^-)

that is derived from water but is missing a hydrogen ion (H^+). The calcium sulfate without water is a different mineral than gypsum called **anhydrite** ($CaSO_4$).



Figure *Section*3.4.9: Gypsum crystal. (By USGS; public domain via Wikimedia Commons.)

Section 3.4.4 Phosphates

Phosphate minerals have a tetrahedral **phosphate ion** (PO_4^{3-}) combined with various anions and cations. In some cases arsenic or vanadium can substitute for phosphorus. Phosphates are an important ingredient of fertilizers as well as detergents, paint, and other products. The best known phosphate mineral is **apatite**, $Ca_5(PO_4)_3(F,Cl,OH)$, variations of which are found in teeth and bones. The gemstone **turquoise** [$CuAl_6(PO_4)_4(OH)_8{\cdot}4H_2O$] is a copper-rich phosphate mineral that, like gypsum, contains water molecules.



Figure *Section*3.4.10: Apatite crystal on calcite. (By Didier Descouens; CC BY-SA 4.0 via Wikimedia Commons.)

Section 3.4.5 Native Element Minerals

Native element minerals, usually metals, occur in nature in a pure or nearly pure state. **Gold** is an example of a native element mineral; it is not very reactive and rarely bonds with other elements so it is usually found in an isolated or pure state. The non-metallic and poorly-reactive mineral carbon is often found as a native element, such as **graphite** and **diamonds**. Mildly reactive metals like silver, copper, platinum, mercury, and sulfur sometimes occur as native element minerals. Reactive metals such as iron, lead, and aluminum almost always bond to other elements and are rarely found in a native state.



Figure *Section*3.4.11: Left: Native copper. (By Jonathan Zander; CC BY-SA 3.0 via Wikimedia Commons.) Right: Native sulfur deposited around a volcanic fumarole. (By Brisk g; public domain via Wikimedia Commons.)

This page titled Section 3.4: Non-Silicate Minerals is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Chris Johnson, Matthew D. Affolter, Paul Inkenbrandt, & Cam Mosher (OpenGeology) via source content that was edited to the style and

standards of the LibreTexts platform.

- **3.5: Non-Silicate Minerals** by Chris Johnson, Matthew D. Affolter, Paul Inkenbrandt, & Cam Mosher is licensed CC BY-NC-SA 4.0. Original source: https://opengeology.org/textbook/.

Section 3.5: Identifying Minerals

Geologists identify minerals by their **physical properties**. In the field, where geologists may have limited access to advanced technology and powerful machines, they can still identify minerals by testing several physical properties: luster and color, streak, hardness, crystal habit, cleavage and fracture, and some special properties. Only a few common minerals make up the majority of Earth's rocks and are usually seen as small grains in rocks. Of the several properties used for identifying minerals, it is good to consider which will be most useful for identifying them in small grains surrounded by other minerals.

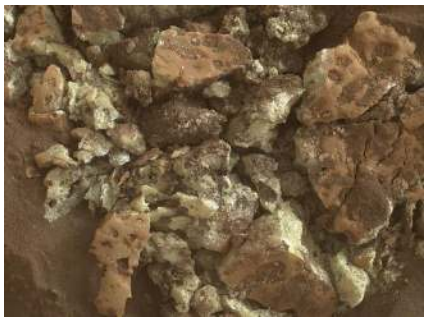


Figure *Section*3.5.1: The rover Curiosity ran over this rock on Mars, and discovered the presence of mineral crystals of elemental sulfur on Mars. (By NASA/JPL-Caltech/MSSS; public domain via JPL.)

Section 3.5.1 Luster and Color

The first thing to notice about a mineral is its surface appearance, specifically luster and color. **Luster** describes how the mineral looks. **Metallic luster** looks like a shiny metal such as chrome, steel, silver, or gold. **Submetallic luster** has a duller appearance. Pewter, for example, shows submetallic luster.

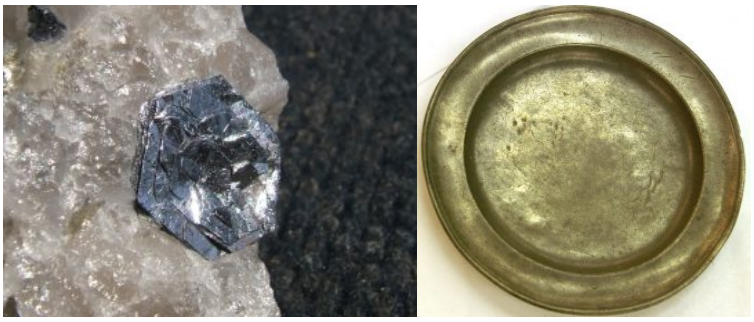


Figure *Section*3.5.2: Left: 15 mm metallic luster hexagonal molybdenite crystal from Quebec. (By John Chapman; CC BY-SA 4.0 via Wikimedia Commons.) Right: Submetallic luster shown on an antique pewter plate. (By unknown; public domain via Wikimedia Commons.)

Nonmetallic luster doesn't look like metal and may be described as **vitreous** (glassy), **earthy**, **silky**, **pearly**, and other surface qualities. Nonmetallic minerals may be shiny, although their vitreous shine is different from metallic luster. See the table for descriptions and examples of nonmetallic luster.

Table *Section*3.5.1: Nonmetallic luster descriptions and examples.

Luster	Image	Description
Vitreous/glassy	 Quartz crystals showing vitreous luster (By Didier Descouens; CC BY-SA 4.0, via Wikimedia Commons.)	Surface is shiny like glass
Earthy/dull	 Kaolin specimen showing dull or earthy luster (By USGS; public domain via Wikimedia Commons.)	Dull, like dried mud or clay
Silky	 Gypsum specimen showing silky luster (By Ra'ike; CC-BY-SA-3.0 via Wikimedia Commons.)	Soft shine like silk fabric
Pearly	 Mica specimen showing pearly luster (By Luis Miguel Bugallo Sanchez; CC-BY-SA-3.0 via Wikimedia Commons.)	Like the inside of a clam shell or mother-of-pearl
Submetallic		Has the appearance of dull metal, like pewter. These minerals would usually still be considered metallic. Submetallic appearance can occur in metallic minerals because of weathering.

	Submetallic luster on sphalerite (By Andreas Früh; CC-BY-SA-3.0 via Wikimedia Commons.)	

Surface **color** may be helpful in identifying minerals, although it can be quite variable within the same mineral family. Mineral colors are affected by the main elements as well as impurities in the crystals. These impurities may be rare elements—like manganese, titanium, chromium, or lithium—even other molecules that are not normally part of the mineral formula. For example, the incorporation of water molecules gives quartz, which is normally clear, a milky color.

Some minerals predominantly show a single color. Malachite and azurite are green and blue, respectively, because of their copper content. Other minerals have a predictable range of colors due to elemental substitutions, usually via a solid solution. Feldspars, the most abundant minerals in the Earth's crust, are complex, have solid solution series, and are present in several colors including pink, white, green, gray and others. Other minerals also come in several colors, influenced by trace amounts of several elements. The same element may show up as different colors in different minerals. With notable exceptions, color is usually not a definitive property of minerals. For identifying many minerals, a more reliable indicator is streak, which is the color of the powdered mineral.



Figure ***Section*3.5.3**: Azurite is ALWAYS a dark blue color and has been used for centuries for blue pigment. (By Graeme Churchard; CC BY 2.0 via Wikimedia Commons.)

Section 3.5.2 Streak

Streak is the color of a powdered mineral and can be seen when a mineral sample is scratched or scraped on an unglazed porcelain streak plate. A paper page in a field notebook may also be used for the streak of some minerals. Minerals that are harder than the streak plate will not show streak but will scratch the porcelain. For these minerals, a streak test can be obtained by powdering the mineral with a hammer and smearing the powder across a streak plate or notebook paper.

While mineral surface colors and appearances may vary, their streak colors can be diagnostically useful. An example of this property is seen in the iron-oxide mineral hematite. Hematite occurs in a variety of forms, colors, lusters (from shiny metallic silver to earthy red-brown), and different physical appearances. A hematite streak is consistently reddish-brown, no matter what the original specimen looks like. Iron sulfide, or pyrite, is a brassy metallic yellow. Commonly named fool's gold, pyrite has a characteristic black to greenish-black streak.



Figure ***Section*3.5.4**: Some minerals have different streaks than their visual color. (By ; CC BY-SA 3.0 via Wikimedia Commons.)

Section 3.5.3 Hardness

Hardness measures the ability of a mineral to scratch other substances. The **Mohs Hardness Scale** gives a number showing the relative scratch-resistance of minerals when compared to a standardized set of minerals of increasing hardness. The Mohs scale was developed by German geologist Fredrick Mohs in the early 20th century, although the idea of identifying minerals by hardness goes back thousands of years. Mohs hardness values are determined by the strength of a mineral's atomic bonds.

The figure shows the minerals associated with specific hardness values, together with some common items readily available for use in field testing and mineral identification. The hardness values run from 1 to 10, with 10 being the hardest; however, the scale is not linear. Diamond defines a hardness of 10 and is actually about four times harder than corundum, which is 9. A steel pocketknife blade, which has a hardness value of 5.5, separates between hard and soft minerals on many mineral identification keys.

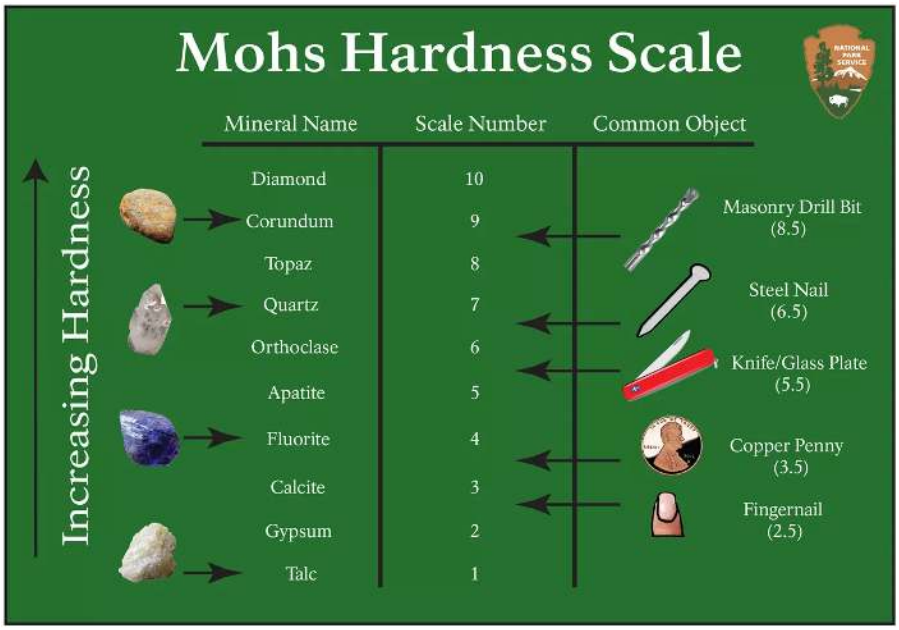
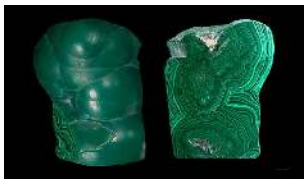


Figure *Section*3.5.5: Mohs Hardness Scale. (By Heather Walborn; public doman via NPS.)

Section 3.5.4 Crystal Habit

Minerals can be identified by **crystal habit**, how their crystals grow and appear in rocks. Crystal shapes are determined by the arrangement of the atoms within the crystal structure. For example, a cubic arrangement of atoms gives rise to a cubic-shaped mineral crystal. Crystal habit refers to typically observed shapes and characteristics; however, they can be affected by other minerals crystallizing in the same rock. When minerals are constrained so they do not develop their typical crystal habit, they are called **anhedral**. **Subhedral** crystals are partially formed shapes. For some minerals, characteristic crystal habit is to grow crystal faces even when surrounded by other crystals in the rock. An example is garnet. Minerals grow freely where the crystals are unconstrained and can take characteristic shapes often form crystal faces. A **euhedral** crystal has a perfectly formed, unconstrained shape. Some minerals crystallize in such tiny crystals, they do not show a specific crystal habit to the naked eye. Other minerals, like pyrite, can have an array of different crystal habits, including cubic, dodecahedral, octahedral, and massive. The table lists typical crystal habits of various minerals.

Table *Section*3.5.2: Typical crystal habits of various minerals.

Habit	Image	Examples
Bladed long and flat crystals	 Bladed kyanite (By Aelwyn; CC-BY-SA-3.0 via Wikimedia Commons.)	kyanite, amphibole, gypsum
Botryoidal/mammillary blobby, circular crystals	 Malachite from the Congo (By Didier Descouens; CC BY-SA 3.0 via Wikimedia Commons.)	hematite, malachite, smithsonite
Coating/laminae/druse crystals that are small and coat surfaces	 Quartz (var. amethyst) in a geode (By Juppi66; public domain via Wikimedia Commons.)	quartz, calcite, malachite, azurite
Cubic cube-shaped crystals	 Cubic crystals of halite (By Robert M. Lavinsky, iRocks.com; CC BY-SA 3.0 via Wikimedia Commons.)	pyrite, galena, halite
Dodecahedral 12-sided polygon shapes	 Pyrite crystals with dodecahedral habit (By Didier Descouens; CC BY-SA 4.0 via Wikimedia Commons.)	garnet, pyrite

Dendritic branching crystals	 Manganese dendrites, scale in mm (By Mark A. Wilson; public domain via Wikimedia Commons.)	Mn-oxides, copper, gold
Equant crystals that do not have a long direction	 Olivine crystal (By S kitahashi; CC-BY-SA-3.0 via Wikimedia Commons.)	olivine, garnet, pyroxene
Fibrous thin, very long crystals	 Tremolite, a type of amphibole (By Didier Descouens; CC BY-SA 4.0, via Wikimedia Commons.)	serpentine, amphibole, zeolite
Layered, sheets stacked, very thin, flat crystals	 Sheet crystals of muscovite (By Rob Lavinsky, iRocks.com; CC BY-SA 3.0 via Wikimedia Commons.)	mica (biotite, muscovite, etc.)
Lenticular/platy crystals that are plate-like	 Orange wulfenite on calcite (By Rob Lavinsky, iRocks.com; CC BY-SA 3.0 via Wikimedia Commons.)	selenite roses, wulfenite, calcite

Hexagonal crystals with six sides	 Hexagonal hanksite (By Matt Affolter; CC BY-SA 3.0 via Wikimedia Commons.)	quartz, hanksite, corundum
Massive/granular Crystals with no obvious shape, microscopic crystals	 Limonite, a hydrated oxide of iron (By USGS; public domain via Wikimedia Commons.)	limonite, pyrite, azurite, bornite
Octahedral 4-sided double pyramid crystals	 Octahedral fluorite (By Ryan Salsbury; CC-BY-SA-3.0 via Wikimedia Commons.)	diamond, fluorite, magnetite, pyrite
Prismatic/columnar very long, cylindrical crystals	 Columnar tourmaline (By Rob Lavinsky, iRocks.com; CC BY-SA 3.0 via Wikimedia Commons.)	tourmaline, beryl, barite
Radiating crystals that grow from a point and fan-out		pyrite “suns”, pyrophyllite

	Pyrophyllite (By Rob Lavinsky, iRocks.com; CC BY-SA 3.0 via Wikimedia Commons.)	
Rhombohedral crystals shaped like slanted cubes	 Calcite crystal in shape of rhombohedron (By Alkivar; public domain via Wikimedia Commons.)	calcite, dolomite
Tabular/blocky/stubby sharp-sided crystals with no long direction	 Crystals of diopside, a member of the pyroxene family (By Rob Lavinsky, iRocks.com; CC BY-SA 3.0 via Wikimedia Commons.)	feldspar, pyroxene, calcite
Tetrahedral three-sided, pyramid-shaped crystals	 Tetrahedrite (By Rob Lavinsky, iRocks.com; CC BY-SA 3.0 via Wikimedia Commons.)	magnetite, spinel, tetrahedrite

Another crystal habit that may be used to identify minerals is **twinning,** which occurs when the crystal structure replicates in mirror images along certain directions in the crystal. **Striations,** which are dark and light parallel lines on a crystal face are also used in identifying minerals. Striations and twinning are related properties in some minerals including plagioclase feldspar. Striations are optical lines on a cleavage surface. Because of twinning in the crystal, striations show up on one of the two cleavage faces of the plagioclase crystal.



Figure *Section*3.5.6: Left: Twinned staurolite (By Helgi; CC BY-SA 3.0 via Wikimedia Commons.) Right: Striations on plagioclase due to twinning. (By Mike Beauregard; CC BY 2.0, via Wikimedia Commons.)

Section 3.5.5 Cleavage and Fracture

Minerals often show characteristic patterns of breaking along specific cleavage planes or show characteristic fracture patterns. **Cleavage planes** are smooth, flat, parallel planes within the crystal. The cleavage planes may show as reflective surfaces on the crystal, as parallel cracks that penetrate into the crystal, or show on the edge or side of the crystal as a series of steps. Cleavage arises in crystals where the atomic bonds between atomic layers are weaker along some directions than others, meaning they will break preferentially along these planes. Because they develop on atomic surfaces in the crystal, cleavage planes are optically smooth and reflect light, although the actual break on the crystal may appear jagged or uneven. In such cleavages, the cleavage surface may appear like rice terraces on a mountainside that all reflect sunlight from a particular sun angle.

Graphite has its carbon atoms arranged into layers with relatively strong bonds within the layer and very weak bonds between the layers. Thus graphite cleaves readily between the layers and the layers slide easily over one another giving graphite its lubricating quality. Graphite is also used to make pencil lead.

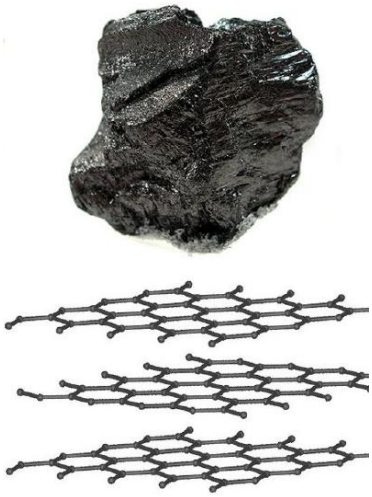


Figure *Section*3.5.7: Graphite and atomic structure showing layers of carbon atoms separated by a gap with weak bonds holding the layers together. (By ltub; CC BY-SA 3.0 via Wikimedia Commons.)

Some minerals have strong cleavage, some minerals only have weak cleavage and some do not typically demonstrate cleavage. For example, quartz and olivine rarely show cleavage and typically break into conchoidal **fracture** patterns. Mineral fracture surfaces may be rough, uneven, or show a conchoidal fracture. Uneven fracture patterns are described as **irregular**, **splintery**, or **fibrous**. A **conchoidal fracture** has a smooth, curved surface like a shallow bowl or conch shell, often with curved ridges. Natural volcanic glass, called obsidian, breaks with this characteristic conchoidal pattern.



Figure *Section*3.5.8: Obsidian showing conchoidal fracture. (By Siim Sepp; CC BY-SA 2.5 via Wikimedia Commons.)

To work with cleavage, it is important to remember that cleavage is a result of bonds separating along planes of atoms in the crystal structure. On some minerals, cleavage planes may be confused with crystal faces. This will usually not be an issue for crystals of minerals that grew together within rocks. The act of breaking the rock to expose a fresh face will most likely break the crystals along cleavage planes. Some cleavage planes are parallel with crystal faces but many are not. Cleavage planes are smooth, flat, parallel planes within the crystal. The cleavage planes may show as parallel cracks that penetrate into the crystal (see amphibole below), or show on the edge or side of the crystal as a series of steps like rice terraces. For some minerals, characteristic crystal habit is to grow crystal faces even when surrounded by other crystals in rock. An example is garnet. Minerals grow freely where the crystals are unconstrained and can take characteristic shapes often form crystal faces (see quartz below).



Figure *Section*3.5.9: Freely growing quartz crystals showing crystal faces, not to be mistaken as cleavage. (By JJ Harrison; CC BY-SA 2.5 via Wikimedia Commons.)

In some minerals, distinguishing cleavage planes from crystal faces may be challenging for the student. Understanding the nature of cleavage and referring to the number of cleavage planes and cleavage angles on identification keys should provide the student with enough information to distinguish cleavages from crystal faces. Cleavage planes may show as multiple parallel cracks or flat surfaces on the crystal. Cleavage planes may be expressed as a series of steps like terraced rice paddies. See the cleavage surfaces on galena or wollastonite below. Cleavage planes arise from the tendency of mineral crystals to break along specific planes of weakness within the crystal favored by atomic arrangements. The number of cleavage planes, the quality of the cleavage surfaces, and the angles between them are diagnostic for many minerals and cleavage is one of the most useful properties for identifying minerals. Learning to recognize cleavage is an especially important and useful skill in studying minerals.

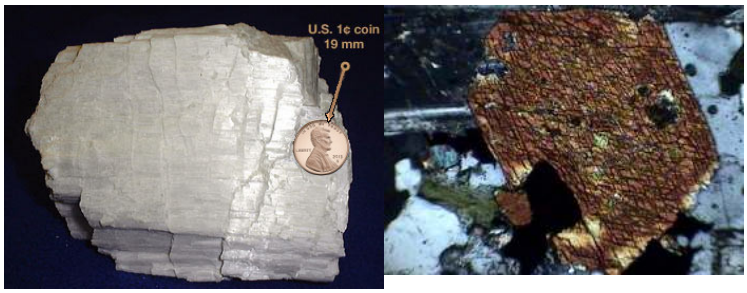


Figure *Section*3.5.10: Left: Steps of cleavage along the same cleavage direction on wollastonite. (By USGS; public domain via Wikimedia Commons.) Right: Photomicrograph showing 120°/60° cleavage within a grain of amphibole. (By Miguel Vera Leon; CC BY 2.0 via Wikimedia Commons.)

As an identification property of minerals, cleavage is usually given in terms of the quality of the cleavage (**perfect**, **imperfect**, or **none**), the number of cleavage surfaces, and the angles between the surfaces. The most common number of cleavage plane directions in the common rock-forming minerals are **one perfect cleavage** (as in mica), **two cleavage planes** (as in feldspar, pyroxene, and amphibole), and **three cleavage planes** (as in halite, calcite, and galena). One perfect cleavage (as in mica) develops on the top and bottom of the mineral specimen with many parallel cracks showing on the sides but no angle of intersection. Two cleavage planes intersect at an angle. Common cleavage angles are 60°, 75°, 90°, and 120°. Amphibole has two cleavage planes at 60° and 120°. Galena and halite have three cleavage planes at 90° (cubic cleavage). Calcite cleaves readily in three directions producing a cleavage figure called a rhomb that looks like a cube squashed over toward one corner giving rise to the approximately 75° cleavage angles. Pyroxene has an imperfect cleavage with two planes at nearly 90°.

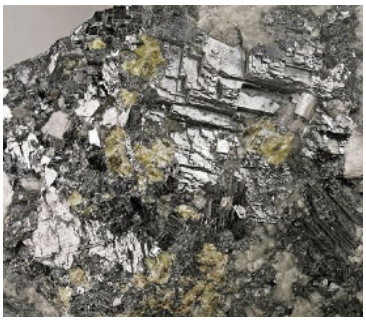


Figure ***Section*3.5.11**: Cubic cleavage of galena; note how the cleavage surfaces show up as different but parallel layers in the crystal. (By Modris Baum; public domain via Wikimedia Commons.)

Section 3.5.5.1 Cleavages on Common Rock-Forming Minerals

- Quartz—none (conchoidal fracture)
- Olivine—none (conchoidal fracture)
- Mica—1 perfect
- Feldspar—2 perfect at 90°
- Pyroxene—2 imperfect at nearly 90°
- Amphibole—2 perfect at 60°/120°
- Calcite—3 perfect at approximately 75°
- Halite, galena, pyrite—3 perfect at 90°

Section 3.5.6 Special Properties

Special properties are unique and identifiable characteristics used to identify minerals or that allow some minerals to be used for special purposes. Ulexite has a fiber-optic property that can project images through the crystal like a high-definition television screen. A simple identifying special property is **taste**, such as the salty flavor of halite or common table salt (NaCl). Sylvite is potassium chloride (KCl) and has a more bitter taste.



Figure ***Section*3.5.12**: A demonstration of ulexite's image projection property. (By Zeichner; public domain via Wikimedia Commons.)

Another property geologists may use to identify minerals is a property related to density called **specific gravity**. Specific gravity measures the weight of a mineral specimen relative to the weight of an equal volume of water. The value is expressed as a ratio between the mineral and water weights. To measure specific gravity, a mineral specimen is first weighed in grams then submerged

in a graduated cylinder filled with pure water at room temperature. The rise in water level is noted using the cylinder's graduated scale. Since the weight of water at room temperature is 1 gram per cubic centimeter, the ratio of the two weight numbers gives the specific gravity. Specific gravity is easy to measure in the laboratory but is less useful for mineral identification in the field than other more easily observed properties, except in a few rare cases such as the very dense galena or native gold. The high density of these minerals gives rise to a qualitative property called "**heft**." Experienced geologists can roughly assess specific gravity by heft, a subjective quality of how heavy the specimen feels in one's hand relative to its size.



Figure *Section*3.5.13: Native gold has one of the highest specific gravities. (By Gump Stump; CC BY-SA 3.0, via Wikimedia Commons.)

A simple test for identifying calcite and dolomite is to drop a bit of dilute hydrochloric acid (10-15% HCl) on the specimen. If the acid drop **effervesces** or fizzes on the surface of the rock, the specimen is calcite. If it does not, the specimen is scratched to produce a small amount of powder and test with acid again. If the acid drop fizzes slowly on the powdered mineral, the specimen is dolomite. The difference between these two minerals can be seen in the video (https://youtu.be/DX6ZMPbA09U). Geologists who work with carbonate rocks carry a small dropper bottle of dilute HCl in their field kit. Vinegar, which contains acetic acid, can be used for this test and is used to distinguish non-calcite fossils from limestone. While acidic, vinegar produces less of a fizzing reaction because acetic acid is a weaker acid.

Some iron-oxide minerals are **magnetic** and are attracted to magnets. A common name for naturally magnetic iron oxide is **lodestone**. Others include magnetite (Fe_3O_4) and ilmenite ($FeTiO_3$). Magnetite is strongly attracted to magnets and can be magnetized. Ilmenite and some types of hematite are weakly magnetic.



Figure *Section*3.5.14: Paperclips attracted to lodestone (magnetite). (By Ryan Somma; CC BY-SA 2.0, via Wikimedia Commons.)

Some minerals and mineraloids scatter light via a phenomenon called **iridescence**. This property occurs in labradorite (a variety of plagioclase) and opal. It is also seen in biologically created substances like pearls and seashells. Cut diamonds show iridescence and the jeweler's diamond cut is designed to maximize this property.

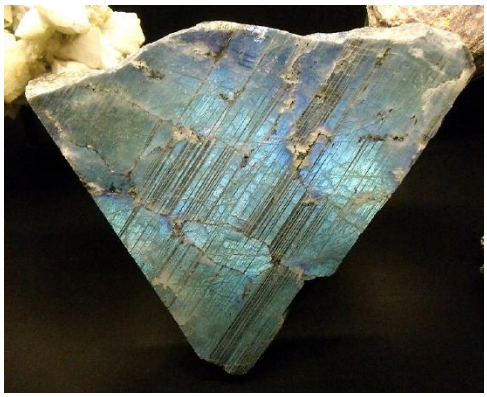


Figure *Section*3.5.15: Iridescence on plagioclase; also showing striations on the cleavage surface. (By Mike Beauregard; CC BY 2.0, via Wikimedia Commons.)

Striations on mineral cleavage faces are an optical property that can be used to separate plagioclase feldspar from potassium feldspar (orthoclase). A process called twinning creates parallel zones in the crystal that are repeating mirror images. The actual cleavage angle in plagioclase is slightly different than 90^{o} and the alternating mirror images in these twinned zones produce a series of parallel lines on one of plagioclase's two cleavage faces. Light reflects off these twinned lines at slightly different angles which then appear as light and dark lines called striations on the cleavage surface. Potassium feldspar does not exhibit twinning or striations but may show linear features called **exsolution lamellae**, also known as **perthitic lineation** or simply **perthite**. Because sodium and potassium do not fit into the same feldspar crystal structure, the lines are created by small amounts of sodium feldspar (albite) separating from the dominant potassium feldspar (orthoclase) within the crystal structure. The two different feldspars crystallize out into roughly parallel zones within the crystal, which are seen as these linear markings.

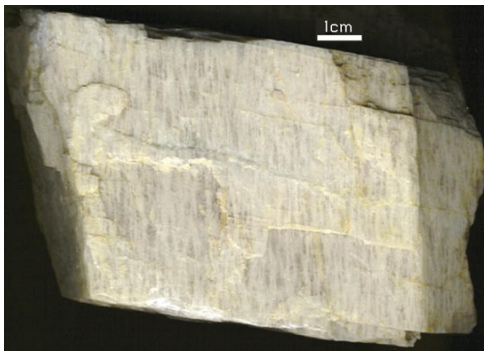


Figure *Section*3.5.16: Exsolution lamellae or perthitic lineations within potassium feldspar. (By Jstuby; public domain via Wikimedia Commons.)

One of the most interesting special mineral properties is **fluorescence**. Certain minerals, or trace elements within them, give off visible light when exposed to ultraviolet radiation or black light. Many mineral exhibits have a fluorescence room equipped with black lights so this property can be observed. An even rarer optical property is phosphorescence. **Phosphorescent** minerals absorb light and then slowly release it, much like a glow-in-the-dark sticker.

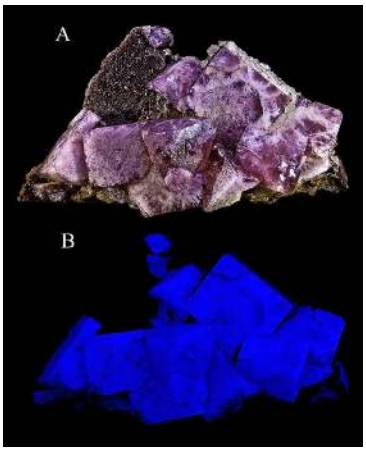


Figure *Section*3.5.17: Fluorite. Lower image shows fluorescence of fluorite under UV light. (By Didier Descouens; CC BY-SA 4.0 via Wikimedia Commons.)

This page titled Section 3.5: Identifying Minerals is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Chris Johnson, Matthew D. Affolter, Paul Inkenbrandt, & Cam Mosher (OpenGeology) via source content that was edited to the style and standards of the LibreTexts platform.

- **3.6: Identifying Minerals** by Chris Johnson, Matthew D. Affolter, Paul Inkenbrandt, & Cam Mosher is licensed CC BY-NC-SA 4.0. Original source: https://opengeology.org/textbook/.

Section 3.S: Summary

Minerals are the building blocks of rocks and essential to understanding geology. Mineral properties are determined by their atomic bonds. Most minerals begin in a fluid, and either crystallize out of cooling magma or precipitate as ions and molecules out of a saturated solution. The silicates are largest group of minerals on Earth, by number of varieties and relative quantity, making up a large portion of the crust and mantle. Based on the silicon-oxygen tetrahedra, the crystal structure of silicates reflects the fact that silicon and oxygen are the top two of Earth's most abundant elements. Non-silicate minerals are also economically important, providing many types of construction and manufacturing materials. Minerals are identified by their unique physical properties, including luster, color, streak, hardness, crystal habit, fracture, cleavage, and special properties.

Section 3.S: Summary is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

- **3.S: Summary** is licensed CC BY-NC-SA 4.0.

CHAPTER OVERVIEW

Chapter 4: Igneous Processes and Volcanoes

Learning Objectives

- Explain the origin of magma it relates to plate tectonics.
- Describe how the Bowen's Reaction Series relates mineral crystallization and melting temperatures.
- Explain how cooling of magma leads to rock compositions and textures, and how these are used to classify igneous rocks.
- Analyze the features of common igneous landforms and how they relate to their origin.
- Describe how silica content affects magma viscosity and eruptive style of volcanoes.
- Describe volcano types, eruptive styles, composition, and their plate tectonic settings.
- Describe volcanic hazards.

Igneous rock is formed when liquid rock freezes into solid rock. This molten material is called **magma** when it is in the ground and **lava** when it is on the surface. Only the Earth's outer core is liquid; the Earth's mantle and crust are naturally solid. However, there are a few minor pockets of magma that form near the surface where geologic processes cause melting. It is this magma that becomes the source for volcanoes and igneous rocks. This chapter will describe the classification of igneous rocks, the unique processes that form magmas, types of volcanoes and volcanic processes, volcanic hazards, and igneous landforms.



Figure *Chapter*4.1: Lava flow in Hawaii

Lava cools quickly on the surface of the Earth and forms tiny microscopic crystals. These are known as fine-grained **extrusive**, or **volcanic**, igneous rocks. Extrusive rocks are often **vesicular**, filled with holes from escaping gas bubbles. **Volcanism** is the process in which lava has erupted. Depending on the properties of the lava that is erupted, the volcanism can be drastically different, from smooth and gentle to dangerous and explosive. This leads to different types of volcanoes and different volcanic hazards.



Figure *Chapter*4.2: Half Dome, a massive intrusive igneous rock in Yosemite National Park, now exposed by erosion.

In contrast, magma that cools slowly below the Earth's surface forms larger crystals which can be seen with the naked eye. These are known as coarse-grained **intrusive**, or **plutonic**, igneous rocks. This relationship between cooling rates and grain sizes of the solidified minerals in igneous rocks is important for interpreting the rock's geologic history.

Section 4.1: Classification of Igneous Rocks

Section 4.2: Bowen’s Reaction Series
Section 4.3: Magma Generation
Section 4.4: Volcanism
Section 4.5: Volcanic Structures
Section 4.6: Volcanic Hazards and Monitoring
Section 4.S: Summary

This page titled Chapter 4: Igneous Processes and Volcanoes is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Chris Johnson, Matthew D. Affolter, Paul Inkenbrandt, & Cam Mosher (OpenGeology) via source content that was edited to the style and standards of the LibreTexts platform.

Section 4.1: Classification of Igneous Rocks

Igneous rocks are classified based on texture and composition. **Texture** describes the physical characteristics of the minerals, such as grain size. This relates to the cooling history of the molten magma from which it came. Composition refers to the rock's specific mineralogy and chemical composition. Cooling history is also related to changes that can occur to the composition of igneous rocks.

Section 4.1.1 Texture

If magma cools slowly, deep within the crust, the resulting rock is called **intrusive** or **plutonic**. The slow cooling process allows crystals to grow large, giving the intrusive igneous rock a **coarse-grained** or **phaneritic** texture. The individual crystals in phaneritic texture are readily visible to the unaided eye.

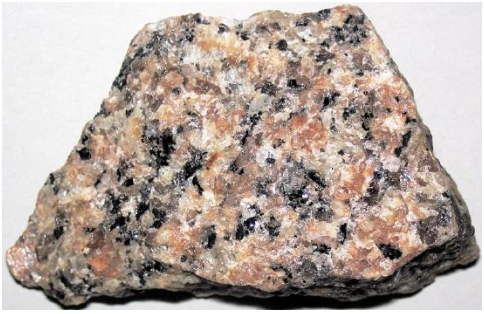


Figure ***Section*4.1.1**: Granite is a classic coarse-grained (phaneritic) intrusive igneous rock. The different colors are unique minerals. The black colors are likely two or three different minerals. (By James St. John; CC BY 2.0 via Wikimedia Commons.)

When lava is extruded onto the surface, or intruded into shallow fissures near the surface and cools, the resulting igneous rock is called **extrusive** or **volcanic**. Extrusive igneous rocks have a **fine-grained** or **aphanitic** texture, in which the grains are too small to see with the unaided eye. The fine-grained texture indicates the quickly cooling lava did not have time to grow large crystals. These tiny crystals can be viewed under a petrographic microscope [1]. In some cases, extrusive lava cools so rapidly it does not develop crystals at all. This non-crystalline material is not classified as minerals but as **volcanic glass**. This is a common component of volcanic ash and rocks like obsidian.



Figure ***Section*4.1.2**: Basalt is a classic fine-grained (aphanitic) extrusive igneous rock. (By James St. John; CC BY 2.0 via Wikimedia Commons.)

Some igneous rocks have a mix of coarse-grained minerals surrounded by a **matrix** of fine-grained material in a texture called **porphyritic**. The large crystals are called **phenocrysts** and the fine-grained matrix is called the **groundmass**. Porphyritic texture indicates the magma body underwent a multi-stage cooling history, cooling slowly while deep under the surface and later rising to a shallower depth or the surface where it cooled more quickly.

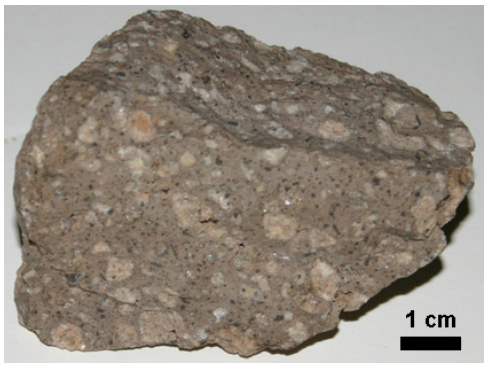


Figure *Section*4.1.3: Porphyritic texture.

Residual molten material expelled from igneous intrusions may form veins or masses containing very large crystals of minerals like feldspar, quartz, beryl, tourmaline, and mica. This texture, which indicates a very slow crystallization, is called **pegmatitic**. A rock that chiefly consists of pegmatitic texture is known as a **pegmatite**. To give an example of how large these crystals can get, transparent cleavage sheets of pegmatitic muscovite mica were used as windows during the Middle Ages.



Figure *Section*4.1.4: Pegmatitic texture.

All magmas contain **volatiles**, which are gases dissolved in a solution. As the magma rises to the surface, the drop in pressure causes the dissolved volatiles to come bubbling out of solution, like the fizz in an opened bottle of soda. The gas bubbles become trapped in the solidifying lava to create a **vesicular** texture, with the holes specifically called **vesicles**. A volcanic rock with vesicles is called **scoria.**



Figure *Section*4.1.5: Scoria, a vesicular extrusive igneous rock.

An extreme version of scoria occurs when volatile-rich lava is very quickly quenched and becomes a meringue-like froth of glass called **pumice**. Some pumice is so full of vesicles that the density of the rock drops low enough that it will float.



Figure *Section*4.1.6: Pumice.

Lava that cools extremely quickly may not form crystals at all, even microscopic ones. The resulting rock is called volcanic glass. **Obsidian** is a rock consisting of volcanic glass. Obsidian as a glassy rock often shows conchoidal fracture similar to the mineral quartz.

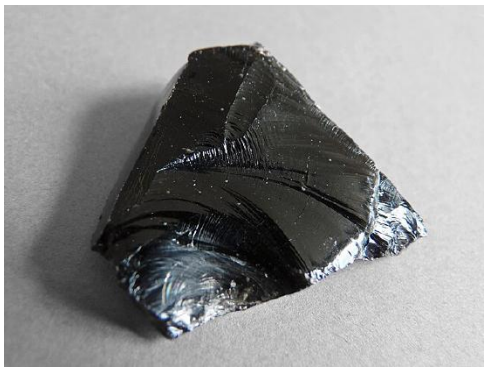


Figure *Section*4.1.7: Obsidian (volcanic glass). Note the conchoidal fracture.

When volcanoes erupt explosively, vast amounts of lava, rock, ash, and gases are thrown into the atmosphere. The solid parts, called **tephra**, settle back to Earth and cool into rocks with **pyroclastic** textures. *Pyro*, meaning fire, refers to the igneous source of the tephra and *clastic* refers to the rock fragments. Tephra fragments are named based on size—**ash** (<2 mm), **lapilli** (2-64 mm), and **bombs or blocks** (>64 mm). Pyroclastic texture is usually recognized by the chaotic mix of crystals, angular glass shards, and rock fragments. Rock formed from large deposits of tephra fragments is called **tuff**. If the fragments accumulate while still hot, the heat may deform the crystals and weld the mass together, forming a **welded tuff**.



Figure *Section*4.1.8: This tuff has crystals, rock fragments, and bedrock mixed together.

Section 4.1.2 Composition

Composition refers to a rock's chemical and mineral make-up. For igneous rocks, composition is divided into four groups: felsic, intermediate, mafic, and ultramafic. These groups refer to differing amounts of silica, iron, and magnesium found in the minerals that make up the rocks. It is important to realize these groups do not have sharp boundaries in nature, but rather lie on a continuous spectrum with many transitional compositions and names that refer to specific quantities of minerals. As an example, granite is a commonly-used term but has a very specific definition which includes exact quantities of minerals like feldspar and quartz. Rocks labeled as 'granite' in laymen applications can be several other rocks, including syenite, tonalite, and monzonite. To avoid these complications, the following figure presents a simplified version of igneous rock nomenclature focusing on the four main groups, which is adequate for an introductory student.

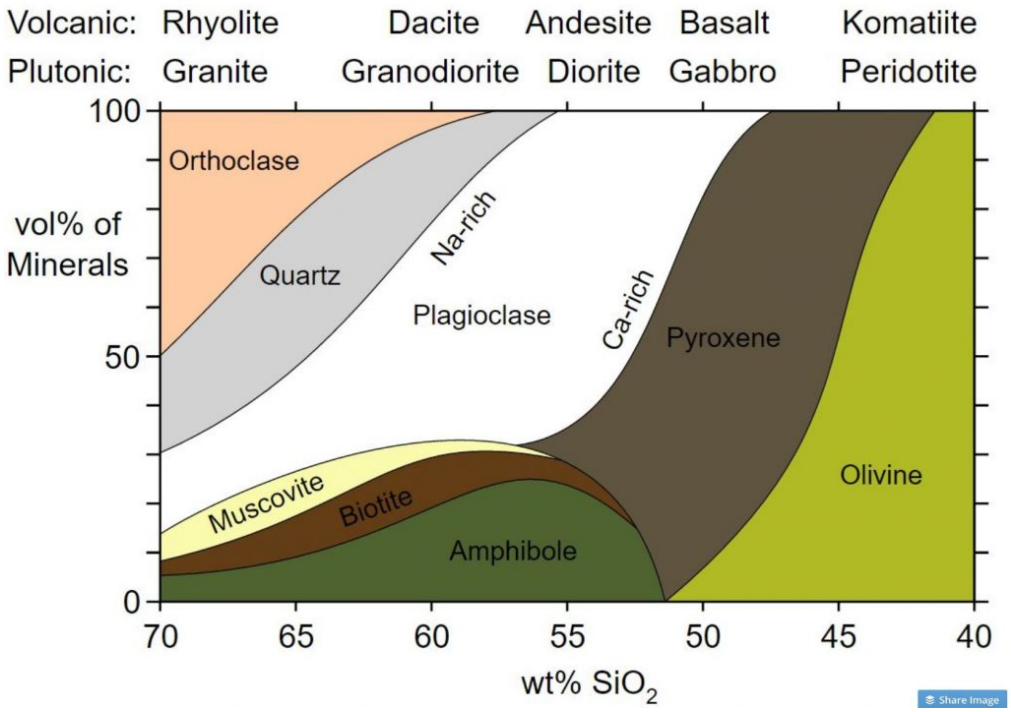


Figure *Section*4.1.9: Mineral composition of common igneous rocks. The percentage of minerals is shown on the vertical axis. The percentage of silica is shown on the horizontal axis. Rock names at the top include a continuous spectrum of compositions grading from one into another.

- **Felsic** refers to a predominance of the light-colored (felsic) minerals feldspar and silica in the form of quartz. These light-colored minerals have more silica as a proportion of their overall chemical formula. Minor amounts of dark-colored (mafic) minerals like amphibole and biotite mica may be present as well. Felsic igneous rocks are rich in silica (in the 65-75% range, meaning the rock would be 65-75% weight percent SiO_2) and poor in iron and magnesium.
- **Intermediate** is a composition between felsic and mafic. It usually contains roughly equal amounts of light and dark minerals, including light grains of plagioclase feldspar and dark minerals like amphibole. It is intermediate in silica in the 55-60% range.
- **Mafic** refers to an abundance of ferromagnesian minerals (with magnesium and iron, chemical symbols Mg and Fe) plus plagioclase feldspar. It is mostly made of dark minerals like pyroxene and olivine, which are rich in iron and magnesium and relatively poor in silica. Mafic rocks are low in silica, in the 45-50% range.
- **Ultramafic** refers to the extremely mafic rocks composed of mostly olivine and some pyroxene which have even more magnesium and iron and even less silica. These rocks are rare on the surface, but make up peridotite, the rock of the upper mantle. It is poor in silica, in the 40% or less range.

On the figure above, the top row has both plutonic and volcanic igneous rocks arranged in a continuous spectrum from felsic on the left to intermediate, mafic, and ultramafic toward the right. **Rhyolite** refers to the volcanic and felsic igneous rocks and **granite** refer to intrusive and felsic igneous rocks. **Andesite** and **diorite** likewise refer to extrusive and intrusive intermediate rocks (with dacite and granodiorite applying to those rocks with composition between felsic and intermediate). **Basalt** and **gabbro** are the extrusive and intrusive names for mafic igneous rocks, and **peridotite** is ultramafic, with **komatiite** as the fine-grained extrusive

equivalent. Komatiite is a rare rock because volcanic material that comes directly from the mantle is not common, although some examples can be found in ancient Archean rocks [2]. Nature rarely has sharp boundaries and the classification and naming of rocks often impose what appears to be sharp boundary names onto a continuous spectrum.

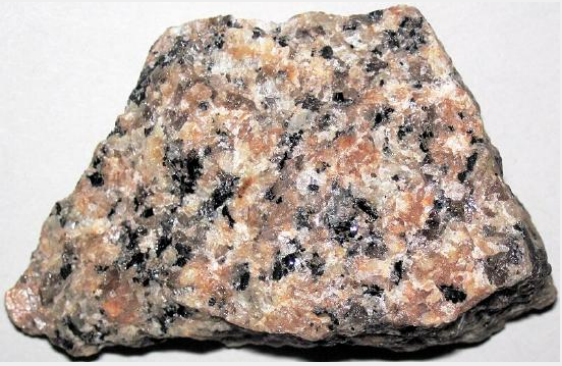
To identify a rock, match the texture (below) with the composition (right)

Texture	Composition: Felsic (• >10% quartz • >50% feldspar • <15% mafic minerals)	Intermediate (• >10% quartz • >50% plagioclase • >10% orthoclase • <50% mafic minerals)	Mafic (• 20–85% plagioclase • 15–50% pyroxene • >35% olivine)	Ultramafic (Olivine & pyroxene)
Phaneritic Coarse grained	**Granite**	**Diorite**	**Gabbro**	**Peridotite**
Aphanitic Fine grained	**Rhyolite**	**Andesite**	**Basalt**	X
Porphyritic Large crystals in a fine matrix	**Porphyritic rhyolite**	**Porphyritic andesite**	**Porphyritic basalt**	X
Vesicular Bubbly or frothy	**Pumice**	X	**Scoria**	X
Glassy	**Obsidian**	X	X	X
Pyroclastic Fragmental	**Rhyolitic tuff or volcanic breccia**	**Andesitic tuff or volcanic breccia**	**Basaltic tuff or volcanic breccia**	X

Figure *Section*4.1.10: Igneous rock classification table with composition as vertical columns and texture as horizontal rows. (By Kindred Grey; CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 via Introduction to Earth Science.)

Section 4.1.2.0.1 Aphanitic/Phaneritic Rock Types with Images

Felsic Composition



Granite

Granite is a coarse-crystalline felsic intrusive rock. The presence of quartz is a good indicator of granite. Granite commonly has large amounts of salmon pink potassium feldspar and white plagioclase crystals that have visible cleavage planes. Granite is a good approximation for the continental crust, both in density and composition.



Rhyolite

Rhyolite is a fine-crystalline felsic extrusive rock. Rhyolite is commonly pink and will often have glassy quartz phenocrysts. Because felsic lavas are thick and less mobile, rhyolite is less common than granite since the magma may cool and crystallize before reaching the surface and erupting. Examples of rhyolite include several lava flows in Yellowstone National Park and the altered rhyolite that makes up the Grand Canyon of the Yellowstone.

Intermediate Composition



Diorite

Diorite is a coarse-crystalline intermediate intrusive igneous rock. Diorite is identifiable by its Dalmatian-like appearance of black hornblende and biotite and white plagioclase feldspar. It is found in the Andes Mountains as well as the Henry and Abajo mountains of Utah.



Andesite

Andesite is a fine crystalline intermediate extrusive rock. It is commonly gray and porphyritic. It can be found in the Andes Mountains and in some island arcs. It is the fine-grained compositional equivalent of diorite.

Mafic Composition



Gabbro



Vesicular Basalt

Gabbro is a coarse-grained mafic igneous rock, made with mainly mafic minerals like pyroxene and only minor plagioclase. Because mafic lava is more mobile and can more easily reach the surface and erupt (instead of cooling below the surface), gabbro is less common than basalt. Gabbro is a major component of the lower oceanic crust.	Basalt is a fine-grained mafic igneous rock. It is commonly vesicular and aphanitic. When porphyritic, it often has either olivine or plagioclase phenocrysts. Basalt is the main rock which is formed at mid-ocean ridges, and is therefore the most common rock on the Earth's surface, making up the entirety of the ocean floor (except where covered by sediment).

Section 4.1.3 Igneous Rock Bodies

Igneous rocks are common in the geologic record, but surprisingly, it is the intrusive rocks that are more common. Extrusive rocks, because of their small crystals and glass, are less durable. Plus, they are, by definition, exposed to the elements of erosion immediately. Intrusive rocks, forming underground with larger, stronger crystals, are more likely to last. Therefore, most landforms and rock groups that owe their origin to igneous rocks were formed as intrusive bodies. A significant exception to this is active volcanoes, which are discussed in a later section on volcanism. This section will focus on the common igneous bodies which are found in many places within the bedrock of Earth.

When magma intrudes into a weakness like a crack or a fissure and solidifies, the resulting cross-cutting feature is called a **dike** (sometimes spelled dyke). Because of this, dikes are often vertical or at an angle relative to the pre-existing rock layers that they intersect. Dikes are therefore **discordant intrusions**, not following any layering that was present. Dikes are important to geologists, not only for the study of igneous rocks themselves but also for dating rock sequences and interpreting the geologic history of an area. The dike is younger than the rocks it cuts across and may be used to assign actual numeric ages to sedimentary sequences, which are notoriously difficult to age date.



Figure *Section*4.1.11: Dike of olivine gabbro cuts across Baffin Island in the Canadian Arctic.

Sills are another type of intrusive structure. A sill is a **concordant intrusion** that runs parallel to the sedimentary layers in the country rock. They are formed when magma exploits a weakness between these layers, shouldering them apart and squeezing

between them. As with dikes, sills are younger than the surrounding layers and may be radioactively dated to study the age of sedimentary strata.



Figure *Section*4.1.12: Igneous sill intruding between Paleozoic strata in Nova Scotia.

A **magma chamber** is a large underground reservoir of molten rock. A body of rising magma is called a **diapir**. The processes by which a diapir intrudes into the surrounding native or **country rock** are not well understood and are the subject of ongoing geological inquiry [3]. For example, it is not known what happens to the pre-existing country rock as the diapir intrudes. One theory is the overriding rock gets shouldered aside, displaced by the increased volume of magma. Another is the native rock is melted and consumed into the rising magma or broken into pieces that settle into the magma, a process known as **stoping**. It has also been proposed that diapirs are not a real phenomenon, but just a series of dikes that blend into each other. The dikes may be intruding over millions of years, but since they may be made of similar material, they would be appearing to be formed at the same time. Regardless, when a diapir cools, it forms a mass of intrusive rock called a **pluton**. Plutons can have irregular shapes, but can often be somewhat round.



Figure *Section*4.1.13: Butte Quartz Monzonite in the Boulder Batholith in Montana. (By James St. John; CC BY 2.0 via Wikimedia Commons.)

When many plutons merge together in an extensive single feature, it is called a **batholith**. Batholiths are found in the cores of many mountain ranges, including the granite formations of Yosemite National Park in the Sierra Nevada of California. They are typically more than 100 km^2 in area, associated with subduction zones, and mostly felsic in composition. A **stock** is a type of pluton with less surface exposure than a batholith and may represent a narrower neck of material emerging from the top of a batholith. Batholiths and stocks are discordant intrusions that cut across and through surrounding country rock.

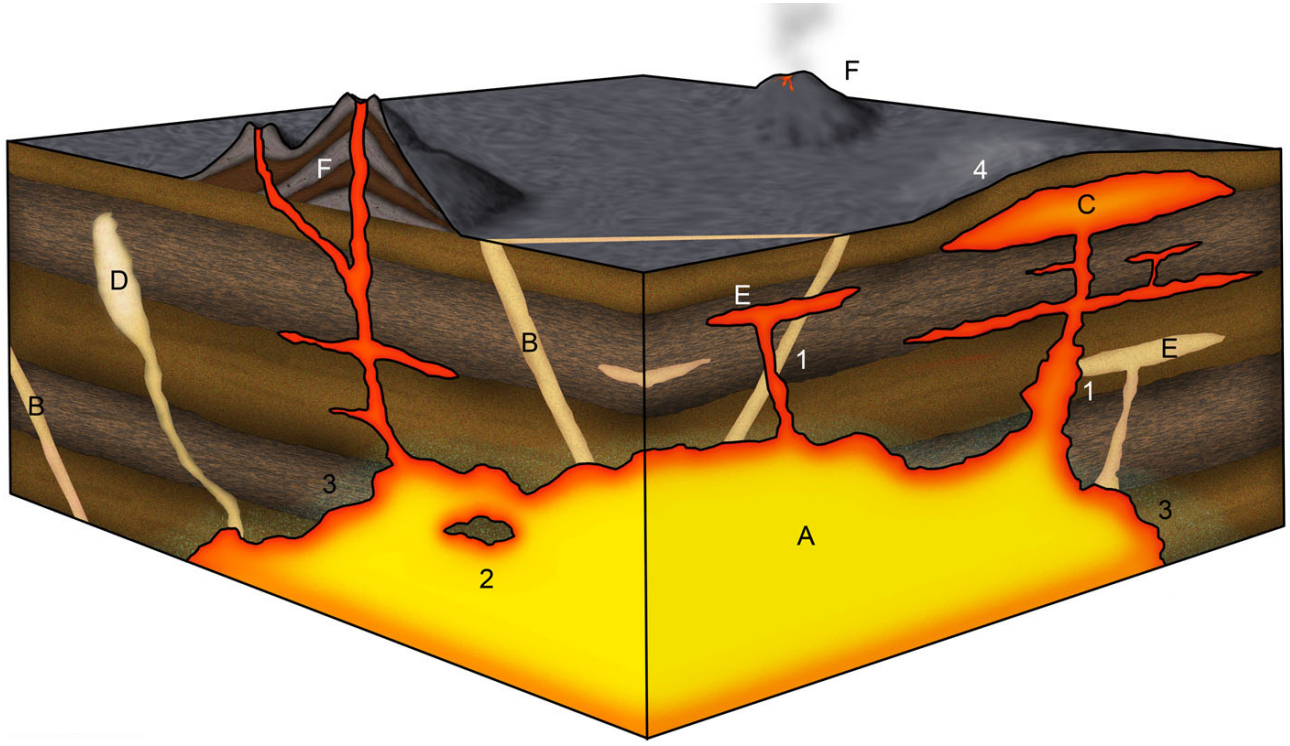


Figure *Section*4.1.14: Half Dome in Yosemite National Park, California, is a part of the Sierra Nevada batholith which is mostly made of granite.

Laccoliths are blister-like, concordant intrusions of magma that form between sedimentary layers. The Henry Mountains of Utah are a famous topographic landform formed by this process. Laccoliths bulge upwards; a similar downward-bulging intrusion is called a **lopolith**.



Figure *Section*4.1.15: Left: A laccolith forms as a blister in between sedimentary strata. Right: The Henry Mountains in Utah are interpreted to be a laccolith, exposed by erosion of the overlying layers.



Guide for Igneous Structures Image (shown above)

Number/Letter	Description
1	Young, emerging subvolcanic intrusion cutting through older one
2	**Xenolith** (solid rock of high melting temperature which has been transported within the magma from deep below) or **roof pendant** (fragment of the roof of the magma chamber that has detached from the roof and sunk into the melt)
3	**Contact metamorphism** in the country rock adjacent to the magma chamber (caused by the heat of the magma)
4	Uplift at the surface due to laccolith emplacement in the near sub-ground
A	Active magma chamber (called pluton when cooled and entirely crystallized; a batholith is a large rock body composed of several plutonic intrusions)
B	Old magmatic dikes
C	Emerging laccolith
D	Old pegmatite (late-magmatic dike formed by aggressive and highly mobile residual melts of a magma chamber)
E	Old and emerging magmatic sills
F	Stratovolcano

Section 4.1.4 References

1. Peacock, M. A. Classification of Igneous Rock Series. *The Journal of Geology* **39**, 54–67 (1931).

2. Arndt, N. T. Chapter 1 Archean Komatiites. in *Developments in Precambrian Geology* (ed. K.C. Condie) **11**, 11–44 (Elsevier, 1994).

3. Glazner, A. F., Bartley, J. M., Coleman, D. S., Gray, W. & Taylor, R. Z. Are plutons assembled over

---

This page titled Section 4.1: Classification of Igneous Rocks is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Chris Johnson, Matthew D. Affolter, Paul Inkenbrandt, & Cam Mosher (OpenGeology) via source content that was edited to the style and standards of the LibreTexts platform.

- **4.1: Classification of Igneous Rocks** by Chris Johnson, Matthew D. Affolter, Paul Inkenbrandt, & Cam Mosher is licensed CC BY-NC-SA 4.0. Original source: https://opengeology.org/textbook/.

Section 4.2: Bowen's Reaction Series

Bowen's Reaction Series describes the temperature at which minerals crystallize when cooled, or melt when heated. The low end of the temperature scale where all minerals crystallize into solid rock is approximately 700°C (1292°F). The upper end of the range where all minerals exist in a molten state is approximately 1250°C (2282°F) [4]. These numbers reference minerals that crystallize at standard sea-level pressure, 1 bar. The values will be different for minerals located deep below the Earth's surface due to the increased pressure, which affects crystallization and melting temperatures. However, the order and relationships are maintained.

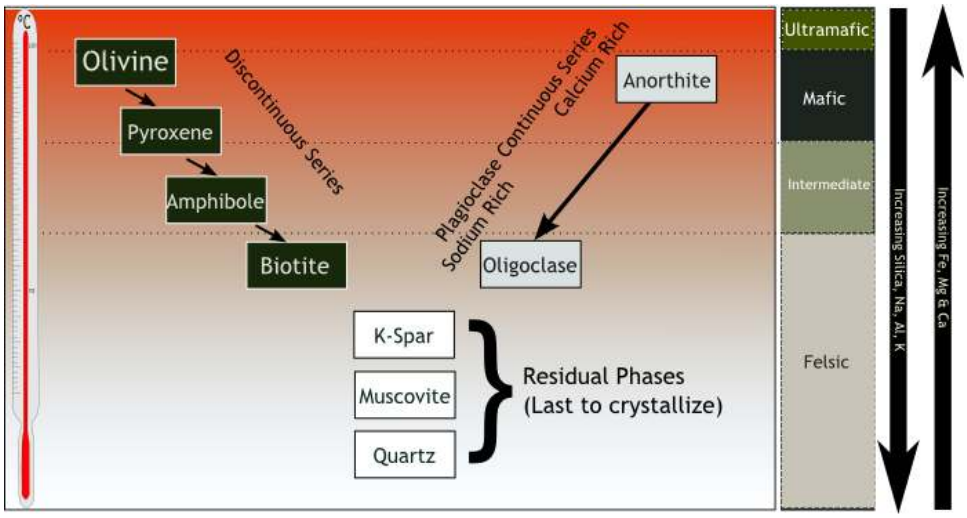


Figure *Section*4.2.1: Bowen's Reaction Series. Minerals that crystallize at higher temperatures are at the top (olivine) and minerals that crystallize at lower temperatures are at the bottom (quartz). (Source Colivine, modified from Bowen, 1922)

In the figure, the righthand column lists the four groups of igneous rock from top to bottom: ultramafic, mafic, intermediate, and felsic. The down-pointing arrow on the far right shows increasing amounts of silica, sodium, aluminum, and potassium as the mineral composition goes from ultramafic to felsic. The up-pointing arrow shows increasing ferromagnesian components, specifically iron, magnesium, and calcium. To the far left of the diagram is a temperature scale. Minerals near the top of the diagram, such as olivine and anorthite (a type of plagioclase), crystallize at higher temperatures. Minerals near the bottom, such as quartz and muscovite, crystallize at lower temperatures.



Figure *Section*4.2.2: Olivine, the first mineral to crystallize in a melt.

The most important aspect of Bowen's Reaction Series is to notice the relationships between minerals and temperature. Norman L. Bowen (1887-1956) was an early 20th century geologist who studied igneous rocks. He noticed that in igneous rocks, certain minerals always occur together and these mineral assemblages exclude other minerals. Curious as to why, and with the hypothesis in mind that it had to do with the temperature at which the rocks cooled, he set about conducting experiments on igneous rocks in the early 1900s. He conducted experiments on igneous rocks—grinding combinations of rocks into powder, sealing the powders into metal capsules, heating them to various temperatures, and then cooling them.



Figure *Section*4.2.3: Normal L. Bowen

When he opened the quenched capsules, he found a glass surrounding mineral crystals that he could identify under his petrographic microscope. The results of many of these experiments, conducted at different temperatures over a period of several years, showed that the common igneous minerals crystallize from magma at different temperatures. He also saw that minerals occur together in rocks with others that crystallize within similar temperature ranges, and never crystallize with other minerals. This relationship can explain the main difference between mafic and felsic igneous rocks. Mafic igneous rocks contain more mafic minerals, and therefore, crystallize at higher temperatures than felsic igneous rocks. This is even seen in lava flows, with felsic lavas erupting hundreds of degrees cooler than their mafic counterparts. Bowen's work laid the foundation for understanding igneous **petrology** (the study of rocks) and resulted in his book, *The Evolution of the Igneous Rocks* in 1928 [5].



Figure *Section*4.2.4: Norman L. Bowen working with his petrographic microscope.

Section 4.2.1 References

4. Boehler, R. Melting temperatures of the Earth's mantle and core: Earth's thermal structure. *Annual Review of Earth and Planetary Sciences* **24**, 15–40 (1996).

5. Bowen, N. L. *The evolution of the igneous rocks*. (Dover Publications, 1928).

This page titled Section 4.2: Bowen's Reaction Series is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Chris Johnson, Matthew D. Affolter, Paul Inkenbrandt, & Cam Mosher (OpenGeology) via source content that was edited to the style and standards of the LibreTexts platform.

- **4.2: Bowen's Reaction Series** by Chris Johnson, Matthew D. Affolter, Paul Inkenbrandt, & Cam Mosher is licensed CC BY-NC-SA 4.0. Original source: https://opengeology.org/textbook/.

Section 4.3: Magma Generation

Magma and lava contain three components: melt, solids, and volatiles. The **melt** is made of ions from minerals that have liquefied. The **solids** are made of crystallized minerals floating in the liquid melt. These may be minerals that have already cooled. **Volatiles** are gaseous components—such as water vapor, carbon dioxide, sulfur, and chlorine—dissolved in the magma [6]. The presence and amount of these three components affect the physical behavior of the magma and will be discussed more below.

Section 4.3.1 Geothermal Gradient

Below the surface, the temperature of the Earth rises. This heat is caused by residual heat left from the formation of Earth and ongoing radioactive decay. The rate at which temperature increases with depth is called the **geothermal gradient**. The average geothermal gradient in the upper 100 km (62 mi) of the crust is about 25°C per kilometer of depth. So for every kilometer of depth, the temperature increases by about 25°C.

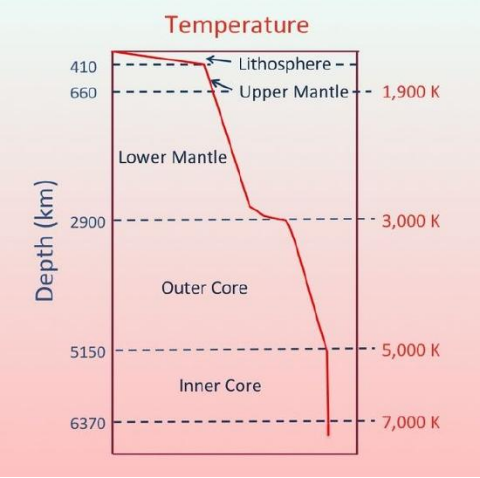


Figure ***Section*4.3.1**: Geothermal gradient.

The depth-temperature graph (see figure below) illustrates the relationship between the geothermal gradient (geotherm, red line) and the start of rock melting (**solidus**, green line). The geothermal gradient changes with depth (which has a direct relationship to pressure) through the crust into the upper mantle. The area to the left of the green line includes solid components; to the right is where liquid components start to form. The increasing temperature with depth makes the depth of about 125 kilometers (78 miles) where the natural geothermal gradient is closest to the solidus.

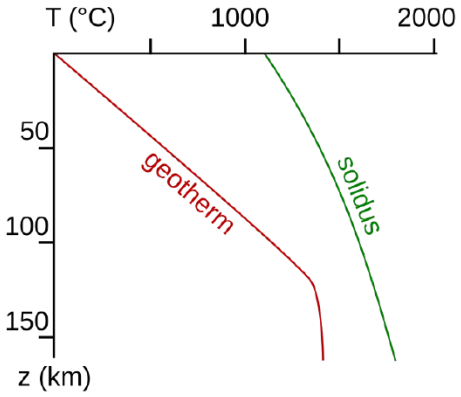


Figure ***Section*4.3.2**: Pressure-temperature diagram showing temperature in degrees Celsius on the x-axis and depth below the surface in kilometers (km) on the y-axis. The red line is the geothermal gradient and the green solidus line represents the temperature and pressure regime at which melting begins. Rocks at pressures and temperatures left of the green line are solid. If pressure/temperature conditions change so that rocks pass to the right of the green line, then they will start to melt. (Source: Woudloper)

The temperature at 100 km (62 mi) deep is about 1200°C (2192°F). At the bottom of the crust, 35 km (22 mi) deep, the pressure is about 10,000 bars [7]. A **bar** is a measure of pressure, with 1 bar being normal atmospheric pressure at sea level. At these pressures and temperatures, the crust and mantle are solid. To a depth of 150 km (93 mi), the geothermal gradient line stays to the left of the solidus line. This relationship continues through the mantle to the core-mantle boundary, at 2880 km (1790 mi).

The solidus line slopes to the right because the melting temperature of any substance depends on pressure. The higher pressure created at greater depth increases the temperature needed to melt rock. In another example, at sea level with an atmospheric pressure close to 1 bar, water boils at 100°C. But if the pressure is lowered, as shown in the video, water boils at a much lower temperature.





There are three principal ways rock behavior crosses to the right of the green solidus line to create molten magma: 1) **decompression melting** caused by lowering the pressure, 2) **flux melting** caused by adding volatiles, and 3) heat-induced melting caused by increasing the temperature. The Bowen's Reaction Series shows that minerals melt at different temperatures. Since magma is a mixture of different minerals, the solidus boundary is more of a fuzzy zone rather than a well-defined line; some minerals are melted and some remain solid. This type of rock behavior is called **partial melting** and represents real-world magmas, which typically contain solid, liquid, and volatile components.

Section 4.3.2 References

6. Wallace, P. J. Volatiles in subduction zone magmas: concentrations and fluxes based on melt inclusion and volcanic gas data. *Journal of Volcanology and Geothermal Research* **140**, 217–240 (2005).

7. Petrini & Podladchikov. Lithospheric pressure–depth relationship in compressive regions of thickened crust. *Journal of Metamorphic Geology* **18**, 67–77 (2000).

This page titled Section 4.3: Magma Generation is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Chris Johnson, Matthew D. Affolter, Paul Inkenbrandt, & Cam Mosher (OpenGeology) via source content that was edited to the style and standards of the LibreTexts platform.

- **4.3: Magma Generation** by Chris Johnson, Matthew D. Affolter, Paul Inkenbrandt, & Cam Mosher is licensed CC BY-NC-SA 4.0. Original source: https://opengeology.org/textbook/.

Section 4.4: Volcanism

When magma emerges onto the Earth's surface, the molten rock is called lava. A **volcano** is a type of land formation created when lava solidifies into rock. Volcanoes have been an important part of human society for centuries, and studying them has greatly increased as our understanding of plate tectonics and has made them less mysterious. The next sections describe volcano location, type, hazards, and monitoring.

Section 4.4.1 Distribution and Tectonics

Most volcanoes are interplate volcanoes. **Interplate volcanoes** are located at active plate boundaries created by volcanism at mid-ocean ridges, subduction zones, and continental rifts. The prefix "*inter-*" means between, such as between tectonic plates. Some volcanoes are **intraplate volcanoes**. The prefix "*intra-*" means within, and intraplate volcanoes are located within tectonic plates, far removed from plate boundaries. Many intraplate volcanoes are formed by hotspots.

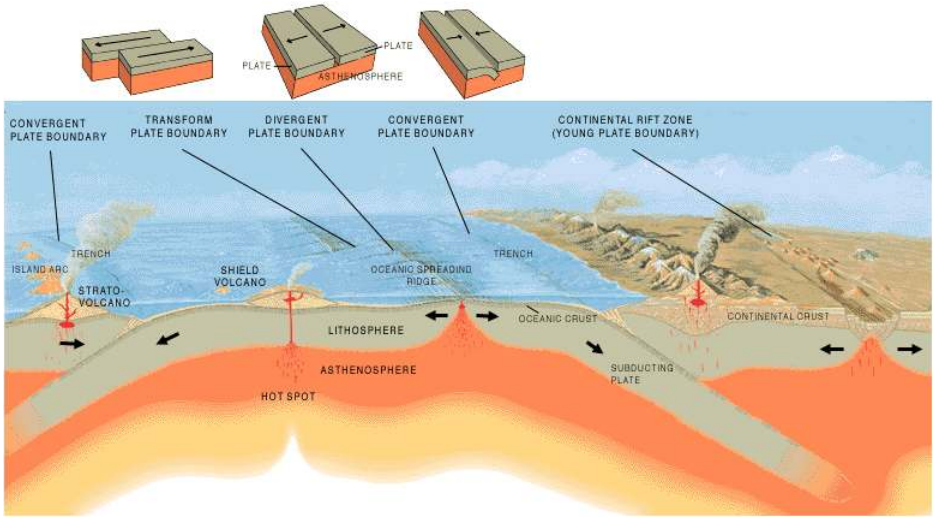


Figure *Section*4.4.1: Association of volcanoes with plate boundaries

Section 4.4.1.1 Volcanoes at Mid-Ocean Ridges

Most volcanism on Earth occurs on the ocean floor along **mid-ocean ridges**, a type of divergent plate boundary. These interplate volcanoes are also the least observed and famous since most of them are located under 3000-4500 m (10,000-15,000 ft) of the ocean and the eruptions are slow, gentle, and oozing. One exception is the interplate volcanoes of Iceland. The diverging and thinning oceanic plates allow hot mantle rock to rise, releasing pressure and causing decompression melting. Ultramafic mantle rock, consisting largely of peridotite, partially melts and generates magma that is basaltic. Because of this, almost all volcanoes on the ocean floor are basaltic. In fact, most oceanic lithosphere is basaltic near the surface, with phaneritic gabbro and ultramafic peridotite underneath [10].

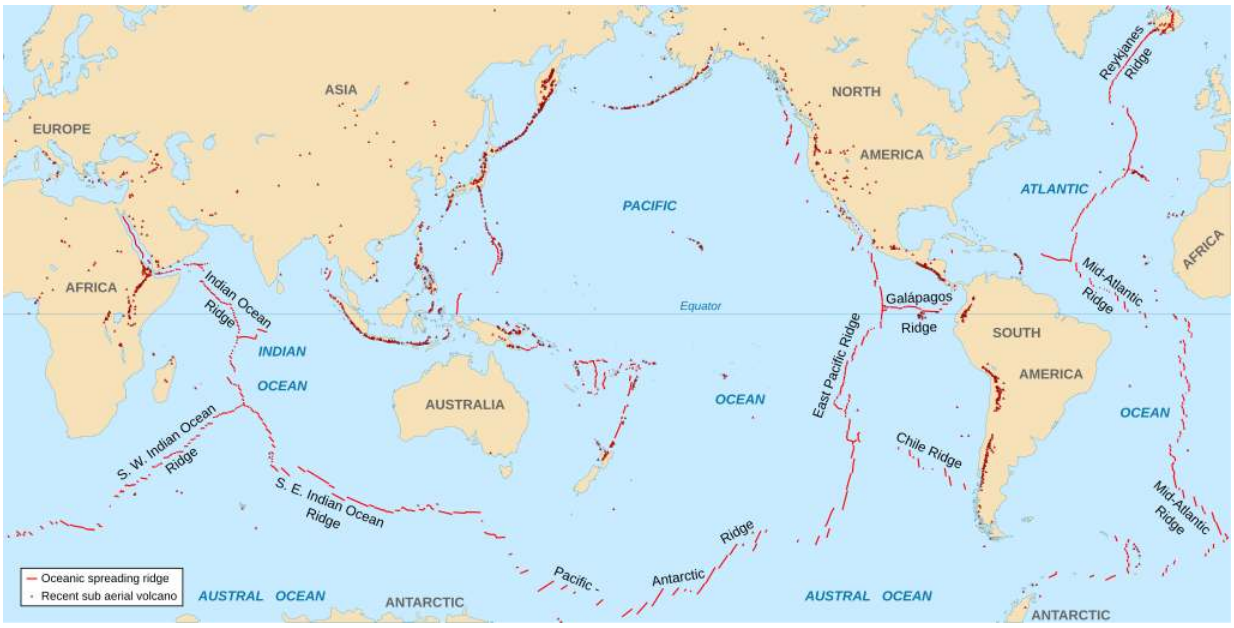


Figure *Section*4.4.2: Map of mid-ocean ridges throughout the world.

When basaltic lava erupts underwater it emerges in small explosions and/or forms pillow-shaped structures called **pillow basalts**. These seafloor eruptions enable entire underwater ecosystems to thrive in the deep ocean around mid-ocean ridges. This ecosystem exists around tall vents emitting black, hot mineral-rich water called deep-sea **hydrothermal vents**, also known as **black smokers**.

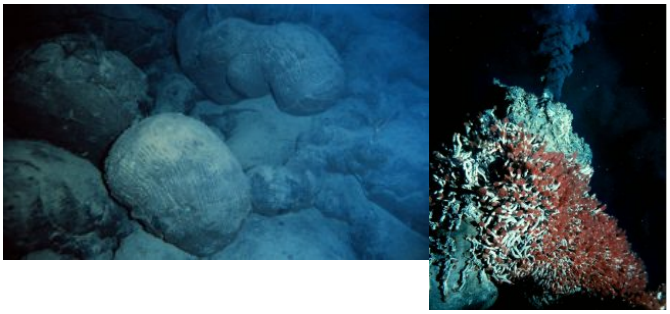


Figure *Section*4.4.3: Left: Pillow basalt on the seafloor near Hawaii. Right: Black smoker hydrothermal vent with a colony of giant (6 feet) tube worms.

Without sunlight to support photosynthesis, these organisms instead utilize a process called **chemosynthesis**. Certain bacteria are able to turn hydrogen sulfide (H_2S), a gas that smells like rotten eggs, into life-supporting nutrients and water. Larger organisms may eat these bacteria or absorb nutrients and water produced by bacteria living symbiotically inside their bodies [11].

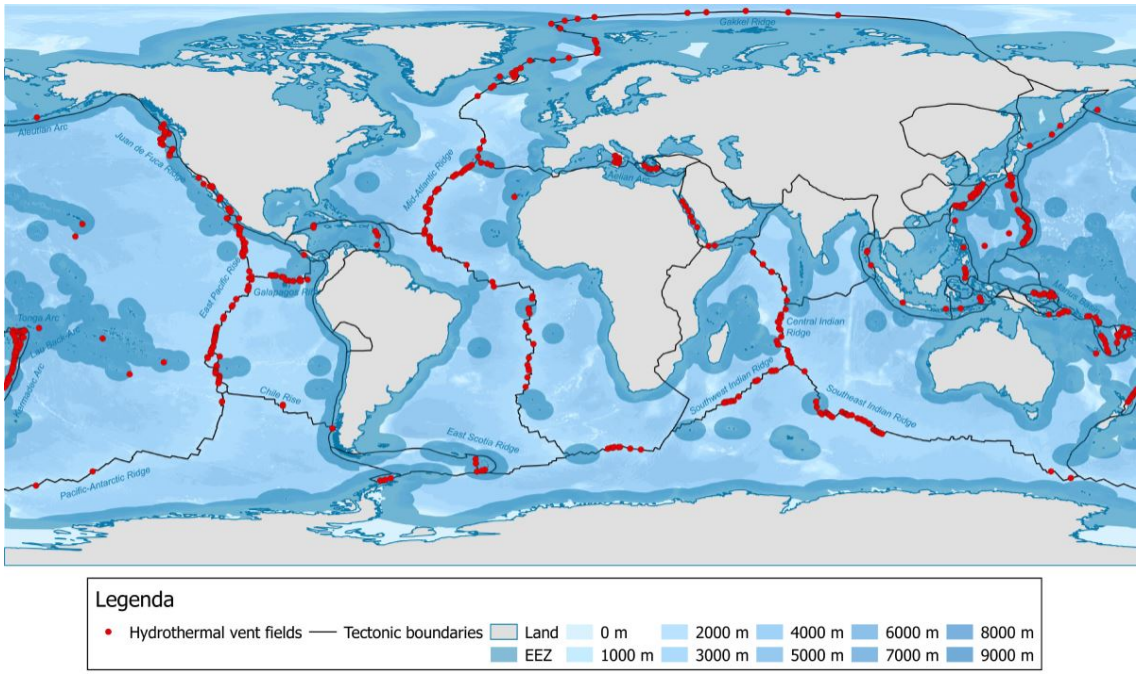
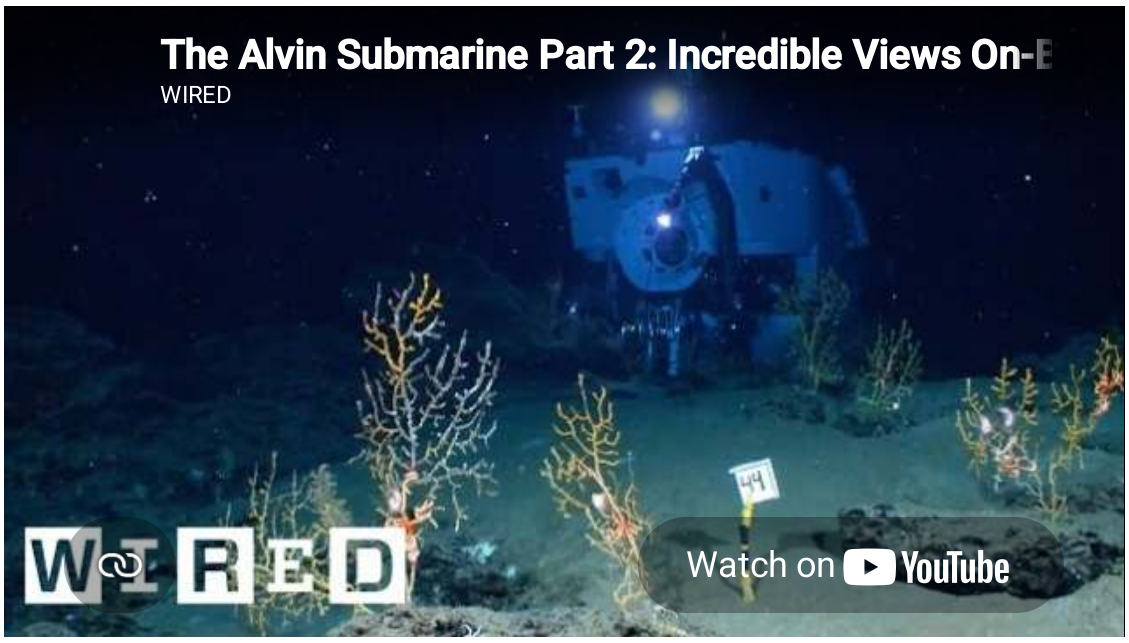


Figure *Section*4.4.4: Distribution of hydrothermal vent fields.

The video shows some of the ecosystems found around deep-sea hydrothermal vents.





Section 4.4.1.2 Volcanoes at Subduction Zones

The second most commonly found location for volcanism is adjacent to **subduction zones**, a type of convergent plate boundary. The process of subduction expels water from hydrated minerals in the descending slab, which causes flux melting in the overlying mantle rock. Because subduction volcanism occurs in a volcanic arc, the thickened crust promotes partial melting and magma differentiation. These evolve the mafic magma from the mantle into more silica-rich magma. The **Ring of Fire** surrounding the Pacific Ocean, for example, is dominated by subduction-generated eruptions of mostly silica-rich lava; the volcanoes and plutons consist largely of intermediate-to-felsic rock such as andesite, rhyolite, pumice, and tuff.

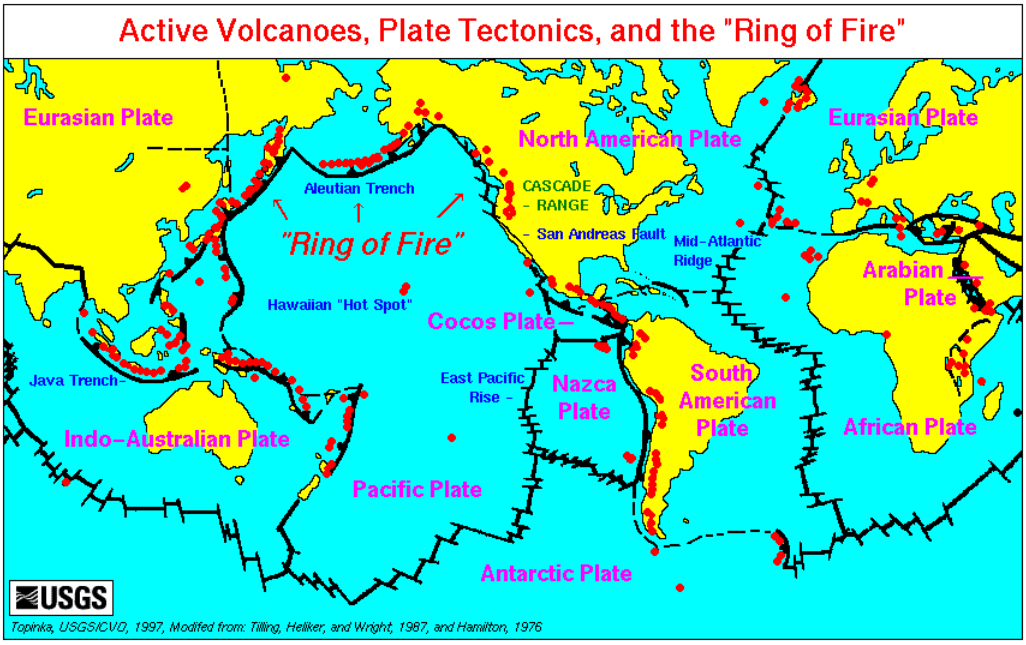


Figure *Section*4.4.5: Distribution of volcanoes on the planet. Click here for an interactive map of volcano distributions.

Section 4.4.1.3 Volcanoes at Continental Rifts

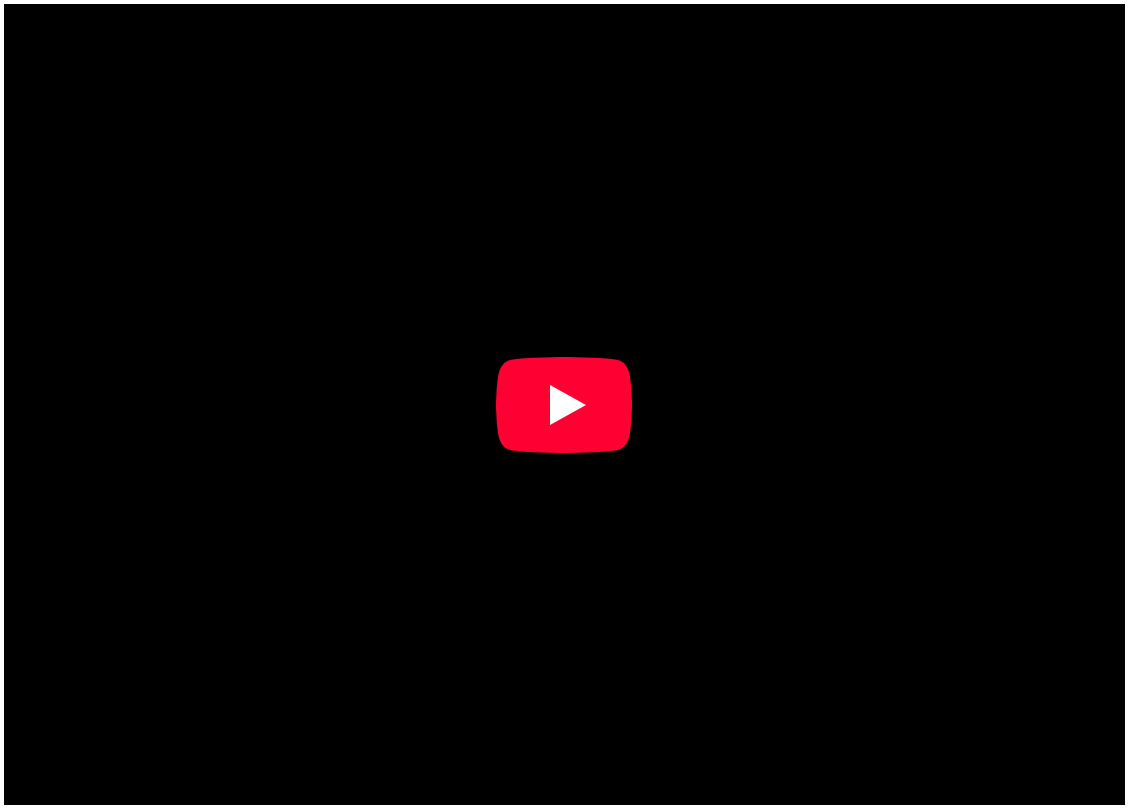
Some volcanoes are created at **continental rifts**, where crustal thinning is caused by diverging lithospheric plates, such as the East African Rift Basin in Africa. Volcanism caused by crustal thinning without continental rifting is found in the Basin and Range Province in North America. In this location, volcanic activity is produced by rising magma that stretches the overlying crust. Lower crust or upper mantle material rises through the thinned crust, releases pressure, and undergoes decompression-induced partial melting. This magma is less dense than the surrounding rock and continues to rise through the crust to the surface, erupting as basaltic lava. These eruptions usually result in flood basalts, cinder cones, and basaltic lava flows (see video). Relatively young cinder cones of basaltic lava can be found in south-central Utah, in the Black Rock Desert Volcanic Field, which is part of the zone

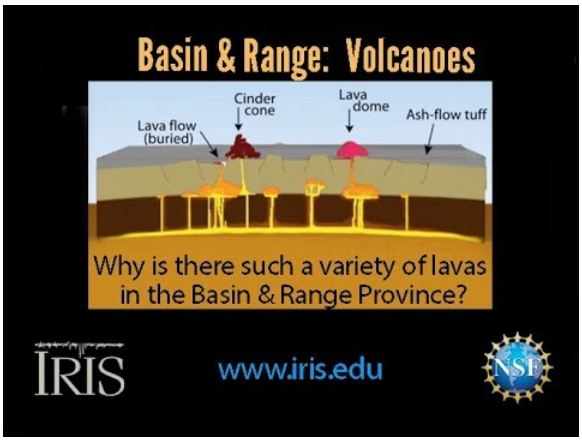
of Basin and Range crustal extension. These Utah cinder cones and lava flows started erupting around 6 million years ago, with the last eruption occurring 720 years ago [12].



Figure *Section*4.4.6: Basaltic cinder cones of the Black Rock Desert near Beaver, Utah.

The video shows the Basin and Range volcanic processes.





Section 4.4.1.4 Hotspots

Hotspots are the main source of intraplate volcanism. **Hotspots** occur when lithospheric plates glide over a hot **mantle plume**, an ascending column of solid heated rock originating from deep within the mantle. The mantle plume generates melts as material rises, with the magma rising even more. When the ascending magma reaches the lithospheric crust, it spreads out into a mushroom-shaped head that is tens to hundreds of kilometers across.

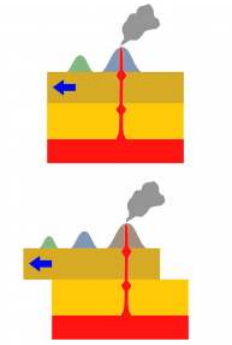


Figure ***Section*4.4.7**: Diagram showing a non-moving source of magma (mantle plume) and a moving overriding plate.

Since most mantle plumes are located beneath the oceanic lithosphere, the early stages of intraplate volcanism typically take place underwater. Over time, basaltic volcanoes may build up from the seafloor into islands, such as the Hawaiian Islands [13]. Where a hotspot is found under a continental plate, contact with the hot mafic magma may cause the overlying felsic rock to melt and mix with the mafic material below, forming intermediate magma. Or the felsic magma may continue to rise, and cool into a granitic batholith or erupt as a felsic volcano. The Yellowstone caldera is an example of hotspot volcanism that resulted in an explosive eruption.

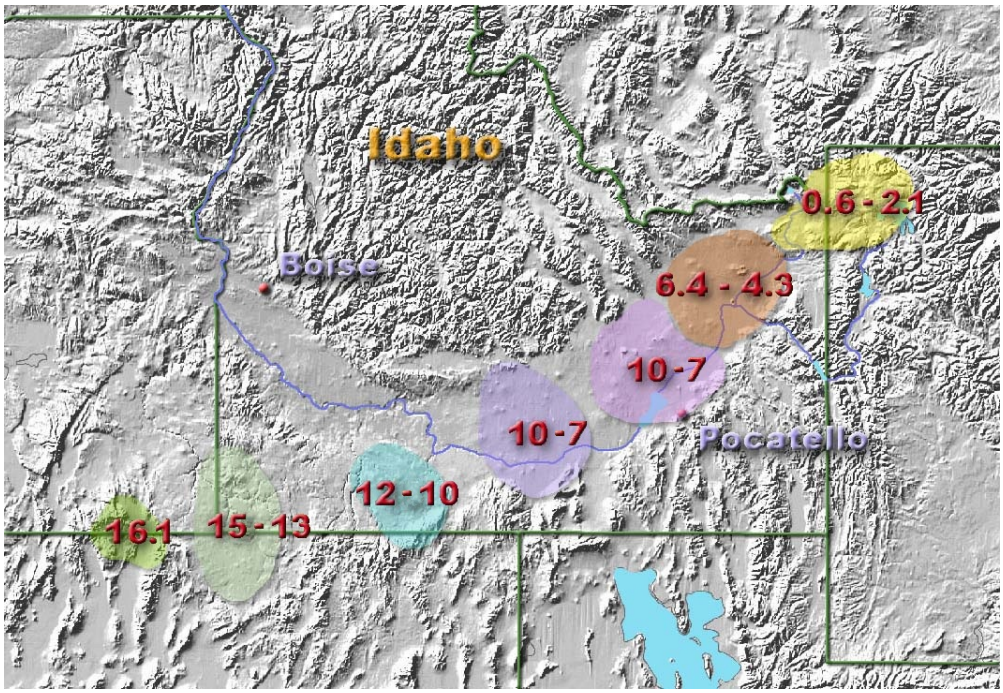


Figure *Section*4.4.8: The track of the Yellowstone hotspot, which shows the age of different eruptions millions of years ago.

A zone of actively erupting volcanism connected to a chain of extinct volcanoes indicates intraplate volcanism located over a hotspot. These volcanic chains are created by the overriding oceanic plate slowly moving over a hotspot mantle plume. These chains are seen on the seafloor and continents and include volcanoes that have been inactive for millions of years. The Hawaiian Islands on the Pacific oceanic plate are the active end of a long volcanic chain that extends from the northwest Pacific Ocean to the Emperor Seamounts, all the way to the subduction zone beneath the Kamchatka Peninsula. The adjacent overriding North American continental plate moved across a mantle plume hotspot for several million years, creating a chain of volcanic calderas that extends from Southwestern Idaho to the presently active Yellowstone caldera in Wyoming.

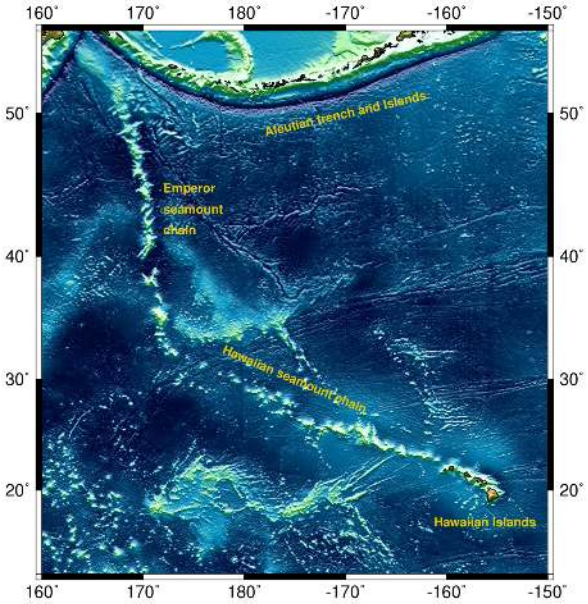
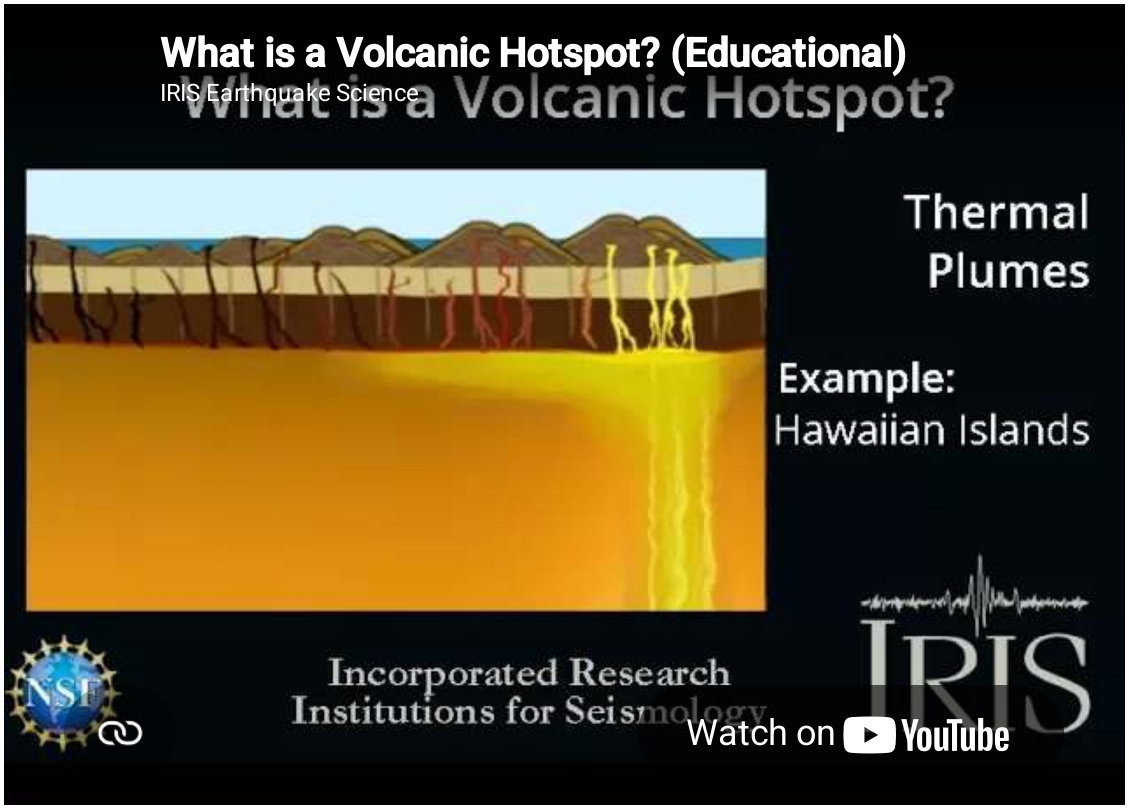
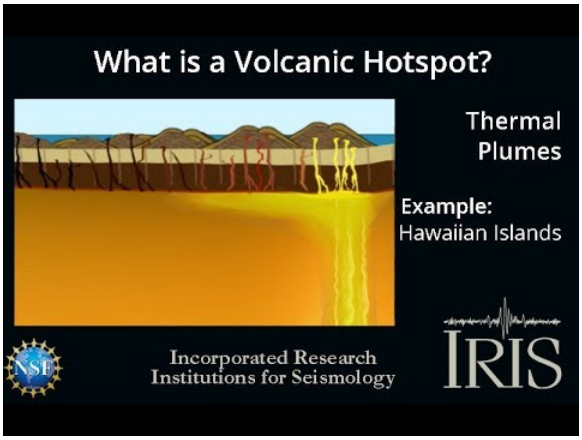


Figure *Section*4.4.9: The Hawaii-Emperor seamount and island chain.

The three-minute video illustrates hotspot volcanoes.





Section 4.4.2 References

10. Thorarinsson, S. The Lakagigar eruption of 1783. *Bull. Volcanol.* **33**, 910–929 (1969).

11. United States Geological Survey. Exploring the deep ocean floor. (1999). Available at: http://pubs.usgs.gov/gip/dynamic/exploring.html. (Accessed: 25th July 2016)

12. United States Geological Survey. Black Rock Desert Volcanic Field. (2012). Available at: http://volcanoes.usgs.gov/volcanoes/black_rock_desert/. (Accessed: 25th July 2016)

13. Rhodes, J. M. & Lockwood, J. P. Mauna Loa Revealed: Structure, Composition, History, and Hazards. *Washington DC American Geophysical Union Geophysical Monograph Series* **92**, (1995).

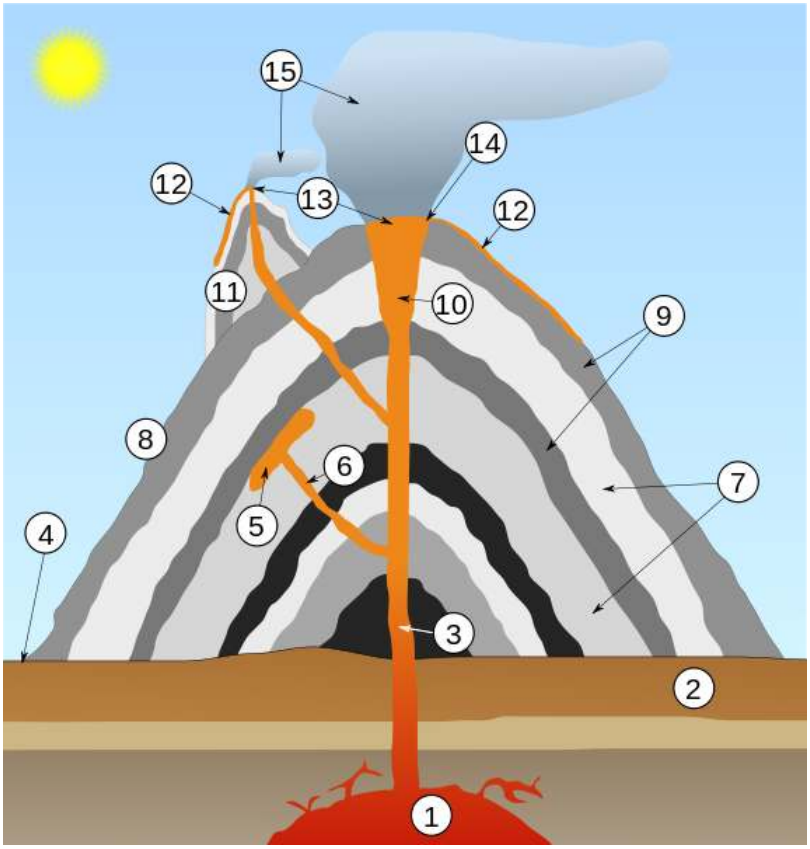
This page titled Section 4.4: Volcanism is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Chris Johnson, Matthew D. Affolter, Paul Inkenbrandt, & Cam Mosher (OpenGeology) via source content that was edited to the style and standards of the LibreTexts platform.

- **4.5: Volcanism** by Chris Johnson, Matthew D. Affolter, Paul Inkenbrandt, & Cam Mosher is licensed CC BY-NC-SA 4.0. Original source: https://opengeology.org/textbook/.

Section 4.5: Volcanic Structures

Section 4.5.1 Volcano Features and Types

There are several different types of volcanoes based on their shape, eruption style, magmatic composition, and other aspects.



The figure shows the main features of a typical stratovolcano:

1. magma chamber
2. bedrock or upper layers of lithosphere
3. the **conduit** or narrow pipe through which the lava erupts
4. the **base** or edge of the volcano
5. a sill of magma between layers of the volcano
6. a **branch pipe** or feeder tube to the sill
7. layers of tephra (ash) from previous eruptions
8. **flank** (side) of the volcano
9. layers of lava erupted from the vent that flowed down the sides of the volcano
10. the **throat** of the volcano
11. a **parasitic cone,** a small volcano located on the flank of a larger volcano such as Shastina on Mount Shasta (Kilauea sitting on the flank of Mauna Loa is not considered a parasitic cone because it has its own separate magma chamber [13].)
12. layers of lava on the main summit and parasitic cone
13. the **vents** of the parasitic cone and the main volcano
14. the **crater**
15. clouds of ash blown into the sky by the eruption; this settles back onto the volcano and surrounding land.



Figure *Section*4.5.1: Mt. Shasta in California with Shastina, its parasitic cone

The largest craters are called calderas, such as the Crater Lake Caldera in Oregon.



Figure *Section*4.5.2: Oregon's Crater Lake was formed about 7700 years ago after the eruption of Mount Mazama.

Many volcanic features are produced by **viscosity**, a basic property of lava. Viscosity is the resistance to flow by a fluid. Low viscosity magma flows easily more like syrup such as the basaltic volcanism that occurs in Hawaii on shield volcanoes. High viscosity magma is thick and sticky, typically felsic or intermediate, that flows slowly, similar to toothpaste.

Section 4.5.1.1 Shield Volcano

The largest volcanoes are **shield volcanoes**. They are characterized by broad low-angle flanks, small vents at the top, and mafic magma chambers. The name comes from the side view, which resembles a medieval warrior's shield. They are typically associated with hotspots, mid-ocean ridges, or continental rifts with rising upper mantle material. The low-angle flanks are built up slowly from numerous low-viscosity basaltic lava flows that spread out over long distances. The basaltic lava erupts **effusively**, meaning the eruptions are small, localized, and predictable.



Figure *Section*4.5.3: Mauna Kea, a shield volcano in Hawaii. (By Nula666; CC BY-SA 3.0 via Wikimedia Commons.)

Typically, shield volcano eruptions are not much of a hazard to human life—although non-explosive eruptions of Kilauea (Hawaii) in 2018 produced uncharacteristically large lavas that damaged roads and structures. Mauna Loa (see USGS page) and Kilauea (see USGS page) in Hawaii are examples of shield volcanoes. Shield volcanoes are also found in Iceland, the Galapagos Islands, Northern California, Oregon, and the East African Rift [14].



Figure ***Section*4.5.4**: Eruption of Kilauea in 2018 produced relatively high viscosity a'a lava shown here crossing and destroying a road. This eruption caused much property damage in Hawaii.

The largest volcanic edifice in the solar system is Olympus Mons on Mars. This (possibly extinct) shield volcano covers an area the size of the state of Arizona. This may indicate the volcano erupted over a hotspot for millions of years, which means Mars had little, if any, plate tectonic activity. [15] [16].

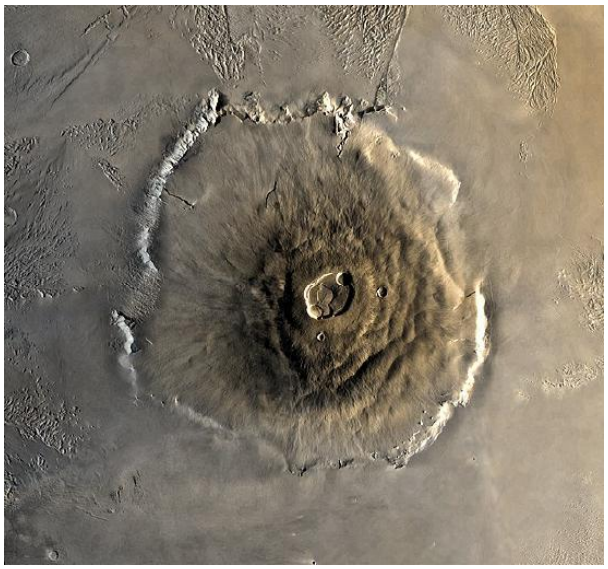


Figure ***Section*4.5.5**: Olympus Mons, an enormous shield volcano on Mars, the largest volcano in the solar system.

Basaltic lava forms special landforms based on magma temperature, composition, and content of dissolved gases and water vapor. The two main types of basaltic volcanic rock have Hawaiian names—*pahoehoe* and *aa*. **Pahoehoe** might come from low-viscosity lava that flows easily into ropey strands.



Figure *Section*4.5.6: Ropey pahoehoe lava.

Aa (sometimes spelled a'a or ʻaʻā and pronounced "ah-ah") is more viscous and has a crumbly blocky appearance [17]. The exact details of what forms the two types of flows are still up for debate. Felsic lavas have lower temperatures and more silica and thus are higher viscosity. These also form aa-style flows.



Figure *Section*4.5.7: Blocky a'a lava. (By Librex; CC BY 2.0 via Wikimedia Commons.)

Low-viscosity, fast-flowing basaltic lava tends to harden on the outside into a tube and continue to flow internally. Once lava flow subsides, the empty outer shell may be left as a **lava tube**. Lava tubes, with or without collapsed roofs, make famous caves in Hawaii, Northern California, the Columbia River Basalt Plateau of Washington and Oregon, El Malpais National Monument in New Mexico, and Craters of the Moon National Monument in Idaho.

Fissures are cracks that commonly originate from shield-style eruptions. Lava emerging from fissures is typically mafic and very fluid. The 2018 Kilauea eruption included fissures associated with the lava flows. Some fissures are caused by volcanic seismic activity rather than lava flows. Some fissures are influenced by plate tectonics, such as the common fissures located parallel to the divergent boundary in Iceland.



Figure *Section*4.5.8: Volcanic fissure and flow, which could eventually form a lava tube. (By M. Patrick; public domain via USGS.)

Cooling lava can contract into columns with semi-hexagonal cross sections called **columnar jointing**. This feature forms the famous Devils Tower in Wyoming, possibly an ancient volcanic vent from which the surrounding layers of lava and ash have been removed by erosion. Another well-known exposed example of columnar jointing is the Giant's Causeway in Ireland.



Figure *Section*4.5.9: Left: Devils Tower in Wyoming has columnar jointing. Right: Columnar jointing on Giant's Causeway in Ireland.

Section 4.5.1.2 Stratovolcano

A **stratovolcano**, also called a **composite cone volcano**, has steep flanks, a symmetrical cone shape, a distinct crater, and rises prominently above the surrounding landscape. The term composite refers to the alternating layers of pyroclastic fragments like ash and bombs, and solidified lava flows of varying composition. Examples include Mount Rainier in Washington state and Mount Fuji in Japan.



Figure *Section*4.5.10: Left: Mount Rainier towers over Tacoma, Washington. Right: Mt. Fuji in Japan, a typical stratovolcano: symmetrical, increasing slope, and a visible crater at the top.

Stratovolcanoes usually have felsic to intermediate magma chambers, but can even produce mafic lavas. Stratovolcanoes have viscous lava flows and domes, punctuated by explosive eruptions. This produces volcanoes with steep flanks [14].

Section 4.5.1.3 Lava Domes

Lava domes are accumulations of silica-rich volcanic rock, such as rhyolite and obsidian. Too viscous to flow easily, the felsic lava tends to pile up near the vent in blocky masses. Lava domes often form in a vent within the collapsed crater of a stratovolcano and grow by internal expansion. As the dome expands, the outer surface cools, hardens, and shatters, and spills loose fragments down the sides. Mount St. Helens has a good example of a lava dome inside of a collapsed stratovolcano crater. Examples of stand-alone lava domes are Chaiten in Chile and Mammoth Mountain in California [18][14].

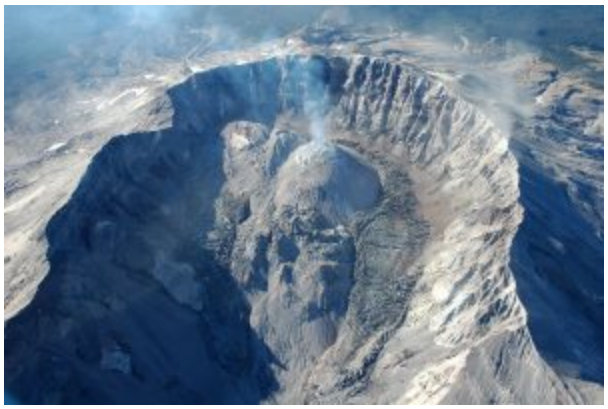


Figure *Section*4.5.11: Lava domes have started the rebuilding process at Mount St. Helens, Washington.

Section 4.5.1.4 Caldera

Calderas are steep-walled, basin-shaped depressions formed by the collapse of a volcanic edifice into an empty magma chamber. Calderas are generally very large, with diameters of up to 25 km (15.5 mi). The term caldera specifically refers to a volcanic vent but it is frequently used to describe a volcano type. Caldera volcanoes are typically formed by eruptions of high-viscosity felsic lava having high content of volatiles.

Crater Lake, Yellowstone, and the Long Valley Caldera are good examples of this type of volcanism. The caldera at Crater Lake National Park in Oregon was created about 6800 years ago when Mount Mazama, a composite volcano, erupted in a huge explosive blast. The volcano ejected large amounts of volcanic ash and rapidly drained the magma chamber, causing the top to collapse into a large depression that later filled with water. Wizard Island in the middle of the lake is a later resurgent lava dome that formed within the caldera basin [14].

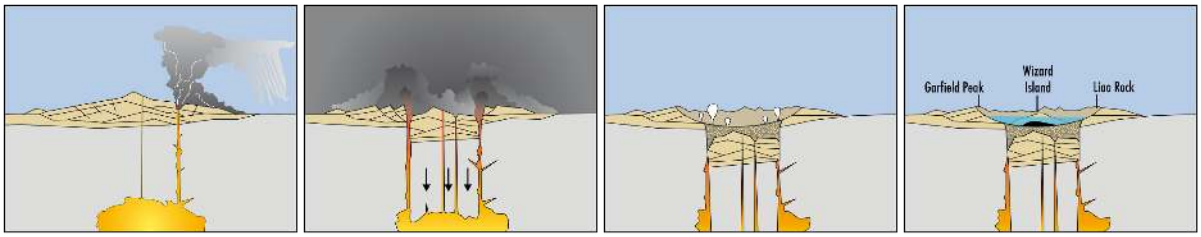


Figure *Section*4.5.12: Timeline of events at Mount Mazama. 1. Eruptions of ash and pumice. The cataclysmic eruption started from a vent on the northeast side of the volcano as a towering column of ash, with pyroclastic flows spreading to the northeast. 2. Caldera collapse. As more magma was erupted, cracks opened up around the summit, which began to collapse. Fountains of pumice and ash surrounded the collapsing summit, and pyroclastic flows raced down all sides of the volcano. 3. Steam explosions. When the dust had settled, the new caldera was 5 miles (8 km) in diameter and 1 mile (1.6 km) deep. Ground water interacted with hot deposits causing explosions of steam and ash. 4. Today. In the first few hundred years after the cataclysmic eruption, renewed eruptions built Wizard Island, Merriam Cone, and the central platform. Water filled the new caldera to form the deepest lake in the United States. (By USGS and NPS; public domain via Wikimedia Commons.)



Figure *Section*4.5.13: Wizard Island sits in the caldera at Crater Lake.

The Yellowstone volcanic system erupted three times in the recent geologic past—2.1, 1.3, and 0.64 million years ago—leaving behind three caldera basins. Each eruption created large rhyolite lava flows as well as pyroclastic flows that solidified into tuff formations. These extra-large eruptions rapidly emptied the magma chamber, causing the roof to collapse and form a caldera. The youngest of the three calderas contains most of Yellowstone National Park, as well as two resurgent lava domes. The calderas are difficult to see today due to the amount of time since their eruptions and subsequent erosion and glaciation.

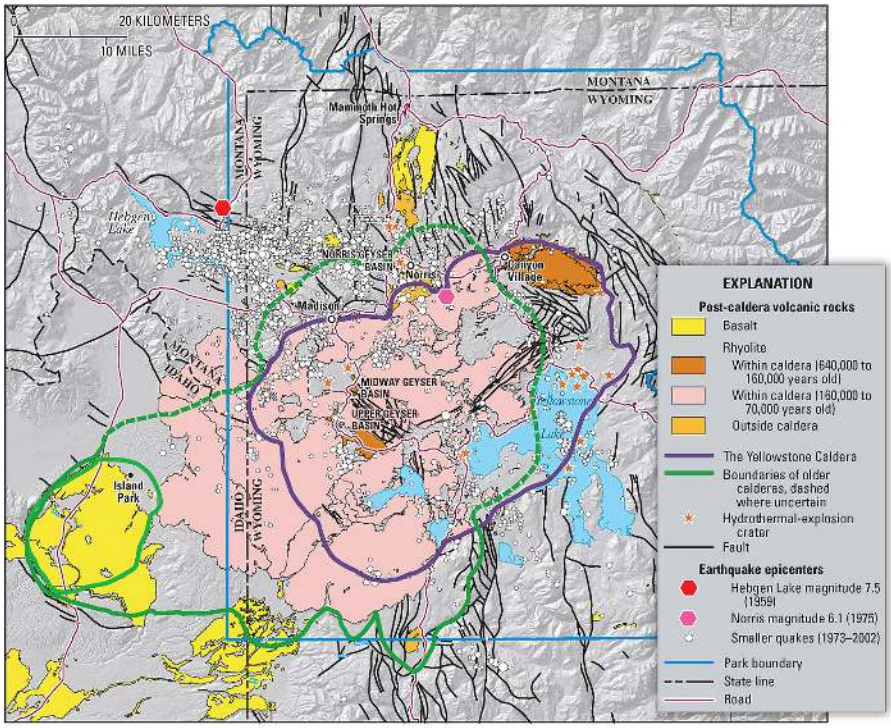


Figure *Section*4.5.14: Map of calderas and related rocks around Yellowstone.

Yellowstone volcanism started about 17 million years ago as a hotspot under the North American lithospheric plate near the Oregon/Nevada border. As the plate moved to the southwest over the stationary hotspot, it left behind a track of past volcanic activities. Idaho's Snake River Plain was created from volcanism that produced a series of calderas and lava flows. The plate eventually arrived at its current location in northwestern Wyoming, where hotspot volcanism formed the Yellowstone calderas [19].



Figure *Section*4.5.15: Several prominent ash beds found in North America, including three Yellowstone eruptions shaded pink (Mesa Falls, Huckleberry Ridge, and Lava Creek), the Bishop Tuff ash bed (brown dashed line), and the modern May 18, 1980 ash fall from Mt. St. Helens (yellow).

The Long Valley Caldera near Mammoth, California, is the result of a large volcanic eruption that occurred 760,000 years ago. The explosive eruption dumped enormous amounts of ash across the United States, in a manner similar to the Yellowstone eruptions. The Bishop Tuff deposit near Bishop, California, is made of ash from this eruption. The current caldera basin is 17 km by 32 km (10 mi by 20 mi), large enough to contain the town of Mammoth Lakes, major ski resort, airport, major highway, **resurgent dome**, and several hot springs [20].

Section 4.5.1.5 Cinder Cone

Cinder cones are small volcanoes with steep sides and made of pyroclastic fragments that have been ejected from a pronounced central vent. The small fragments are called **cinders** and the largest are **volcanic bombs**. The eruptions are usually short-lived events, typically consisting of mafic lavas with a high content of volatiles. Hot lava is ejected into the air, cooling and solidifying into fragments that accumulate on the flank of the volcano. Cinder cones are found throughout western North America [14].



Figure *Section*4.5.16: Sunset Crater, Arizona is a cinder cone.

A recent and striking example of a cinder cone is the eruption near the village of Parícutin, Mexico that started in 1943 [21]. The cinder cone started explosively shooting cinders out of the vent in the middle of a farmer's field. The volcanism quickly built up the cone to a height of over 90 m (300 ft) within a week and 365 m (1200 ft) within the first 8 months. After the initial explosive eruption of gases and cinders, basaltic lava poured out from the base of the cone. This is a common order of events for cinder cones: violent eruption, cone, and crater formation, low-viscosity lava flow from the base. The cinder cone is not strong enough to support a column of lava rising to the top of the crater, so the lava breaks through and emerges near the bottom of the volcano. During nine years of eruption activity, the ashfall covered about 260 km^2 (100 mi^2) and destroyed the nearby town of San Juan [14].

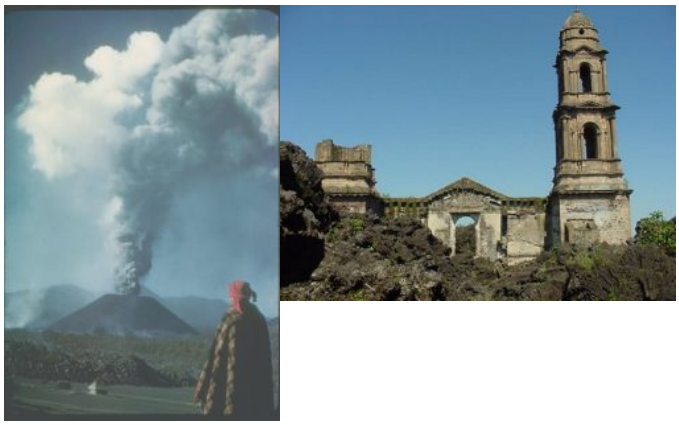


Figure *Section*4.5.17: Left: Soon after the birth of Parícutin in 1943. Right: Lava from Parícutin covered the local church and destroyed the town of San Juan, Mexico.

Section 4.5.1.6 Flood Basalts

A rare volcanic eruption type, unobserved in modern times, is the **flood basalt**. Flood basalts are some of the largest and lowest viscosity types of eruptions known. They are not known from any eruption in human history, so the exact mechanisms of eruption are still mysterious. Some famous examples include the Columbia River Flood Basalts in Washington, Oregon, and Idaho, the Deccan Traps, which cover about 1/3 of the country of India, and the Siberian Traps, which may have been involved in the Earth's largest mass extinction.

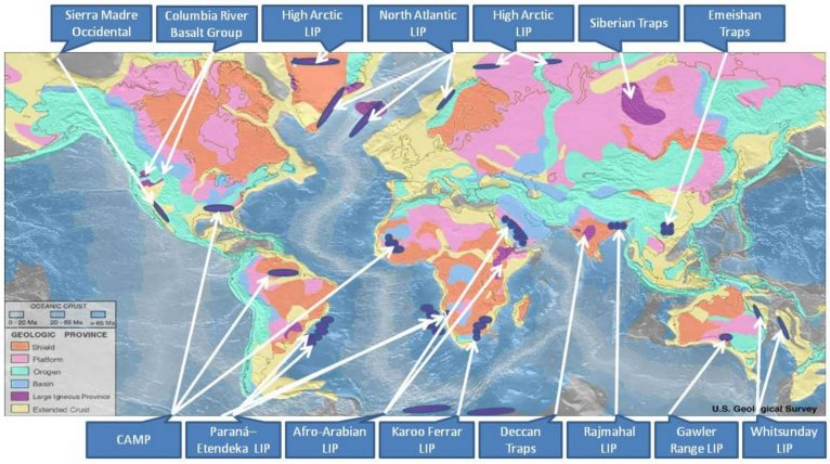


Figure *Section*4.5.18: World map of flood basalts. Note the largest is the Siberian Traps.

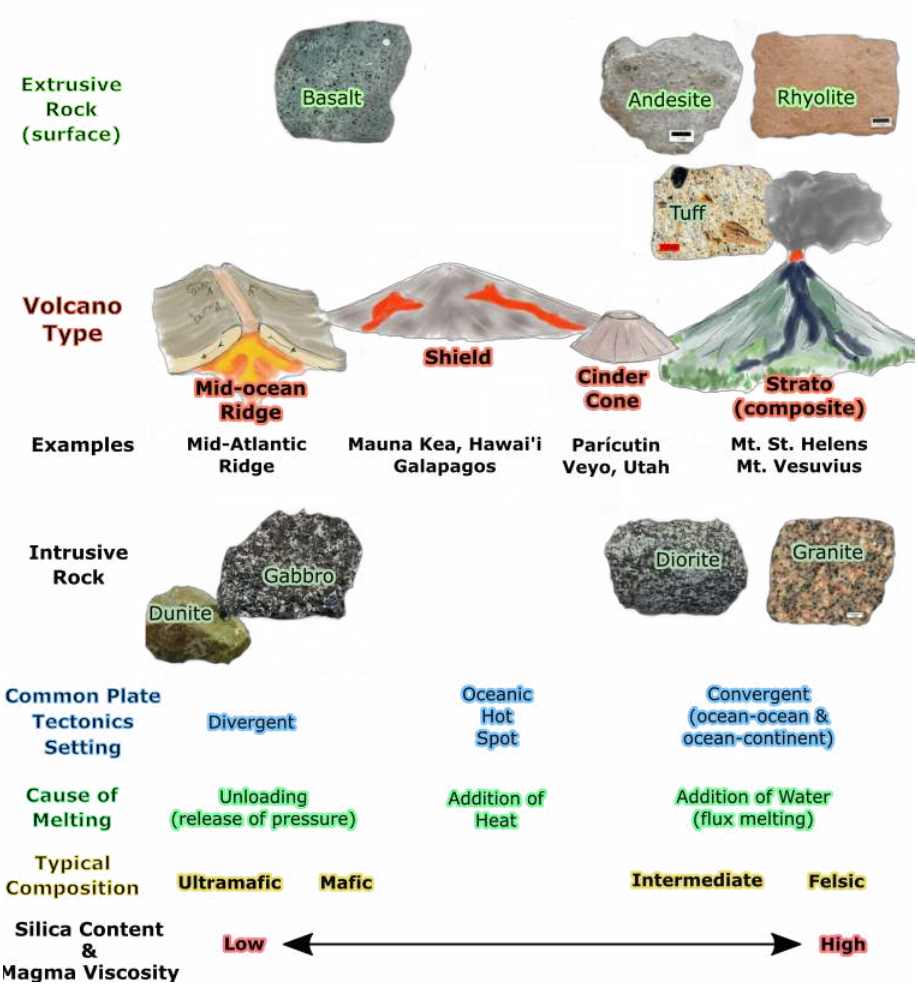
Section 4.5.1.7 Carbonatites

Arguably the most unusual volcanic activity is a **carbonatite** eruption. Only one actively erupting carbonatite volcano exists on Earth today, Ol Doinyo Lengai, in the East African Rift Zone of Tanzania. While all other volcanism on Earth originates from silicate-based magma, carbonatites are a product of carbonate-based magma and produce volcanic rocks containing greater than 50% carbonate minerals. Carbonatite lavas are very low viscosity and relatively cold for lava. The erupting lava is black and solidifies to brown/grey rock that eventually turns white. These rocks are occasionally found in the geologic record and require special study to distinguish them from metamorphic marbles. They are mostly associated with continental rifting [22].



Figure *Section*4.5.19: Crater of Ol Doinyo Lengai in 2011. Note the white carbonatite in the walls of the crater.

A summary of types of volcanoes with associated rock types and other characteristics is shown in the figure below.



*Section*4.5.20: Igneous rock types and related volcano types. Mid-ocean ridges and shield volcanoes represent more mafic compositions, and stratovolcanoes (composite volcanoes) generally represent a more intermediate or felsic composition and a convergent plate tectonic boundary. Note that there are exceptions to this generalized layout of volcano types and igneous rock composition.

Section 4.5.2 References

13. Rhodes, J. M. & Lockwood, J. P. Mauna Loa Revealed: Structure, Composition, History, and Hazards. *Washington DC American Geophysical Union Geophysical Monograph Series* **92**, (1995).

14. USGS. Volcanoes: Principal Types of Volcanoes. (2011). Available at: http://pubs.usgs.gov/gip/volc/types.html. (Accessed: 30th July 2016)

15. Carr, M. H. Geologic map of the Tharsis Quadrangle of Mars. *IMAP* (1975).

16. Frankel, C. *Worlds on Fire: Volcanoes on the Earth, the Moon, Mars, Venus and Io*. (Cambridge University Press, 2005).

17. Peterson, D. W. & Tilling, R. I. Transition of basaltic lava from pahoehoe to aa, Kilauea Volcano, Hawaii: Field observations and key factors - ScienceDirect. *J. Volcanol. Geotherm. Res.* **7**, 271–293 (1980).

18. USGS. Volcanoes General - What are the different types of volcanoes? (2016). Available at: https://www2.usgs.gov/faq/categories/9819/2730. (Accessed: 14th March 2017)

19. USGS. Yellowstone Volcano Observatory. (2012). Available at: https://volcanoes.usgs.gov/volcanoes/yellowstone/yellowstone_geo_hist_52.html. (Accessed: 30th July 2016)

20. United States Geological Survey. USGS: Volcano Hazards Program CalVO Long Valley Caldera. *Geologic history of the Long Valley, Mono Basin region* (2016). Available at: https://volcanoes.usgs.gov/volcanoes/long_valley/geo_hist_summary.html. (Accessed: 25th May 2017)

21. Luhr, J. F. & Cuasay, M. *Parícutin : The volcano born in a Mexican cornfield*. (U.S. Geoscience Press, 1993).

22. Bell, K. & Keller, J. *Carbonatite volcanism: Oldoinyo Lengai and the petrogenesis of natrocarbonatites*. (Springer Science & Business Media, 2012).

This page titled Section 4.5: Volcanic Structures is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Chris Johnson, Matthew D. Affolter, Paul Inkenbrandt, & Cam Mosher (OpenGeology) via source content that was edited to the style and standards of the LibreTexts platform.

- **4.5: Volcanism** by Chris Johnson, Matthew D. Affolter, Paul Inkenbrandt, & Cam Mosher is licensed CC BY-NC-SA 4.0. Original source: https://opengeology.org/textbook/.

Section 4.6: Volcanic Hazards and Monitoring

Section 4.6.1 Volcanic Hazards

While the most obvious volcanic hazard is lava, the dangers posed by volcanoes go far beyond lava flows. For example, on May 18, 1980, Mount St. Helens (Washington, United States) erupted with an explosion and landslide that removed the upper 400 m (1300 ft) of the mountain. The initial explosion was immediately followed by a lateral blast, which produced a pyroclastic flow that covered nearly 600 km^2 (230 mi^2) of the forest with hot ash and debris [23]. The pyroclastic flow moved at speeds of 80-130 km per hour (50-80 mph), flattening trees and ejecting clouds of ash into the air.

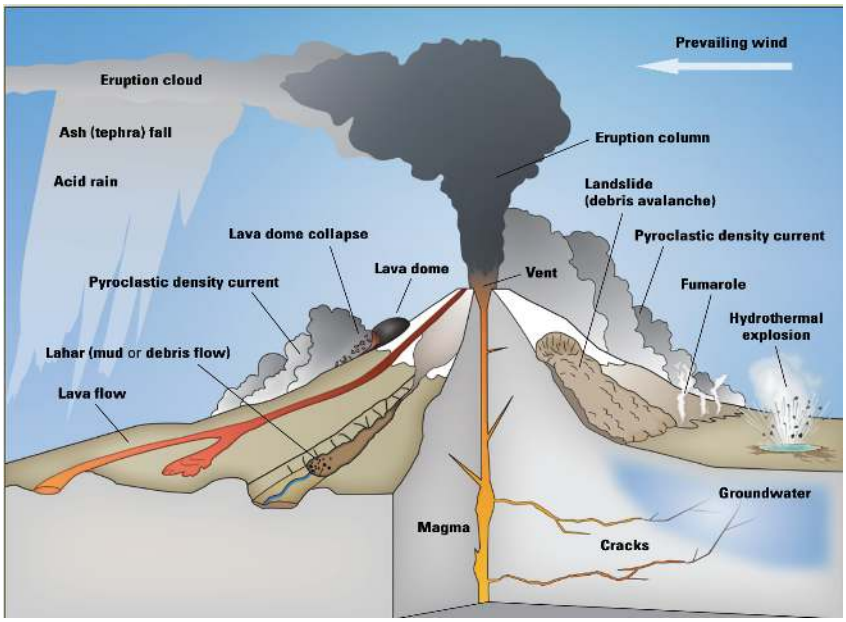


Figure *Section*4.6.1: General diagram of volcanic hazards around a stratovolcano. (By USGS; public domain.)

The USGS video provides an account of this explosive eruption that killed 57 people [24].





Figure *Section*4.6.2: Left: Mount St. Helens, the day before the May 18, 1980 eruption. Right: 4 months after the major eruption of Mount St. Helens.

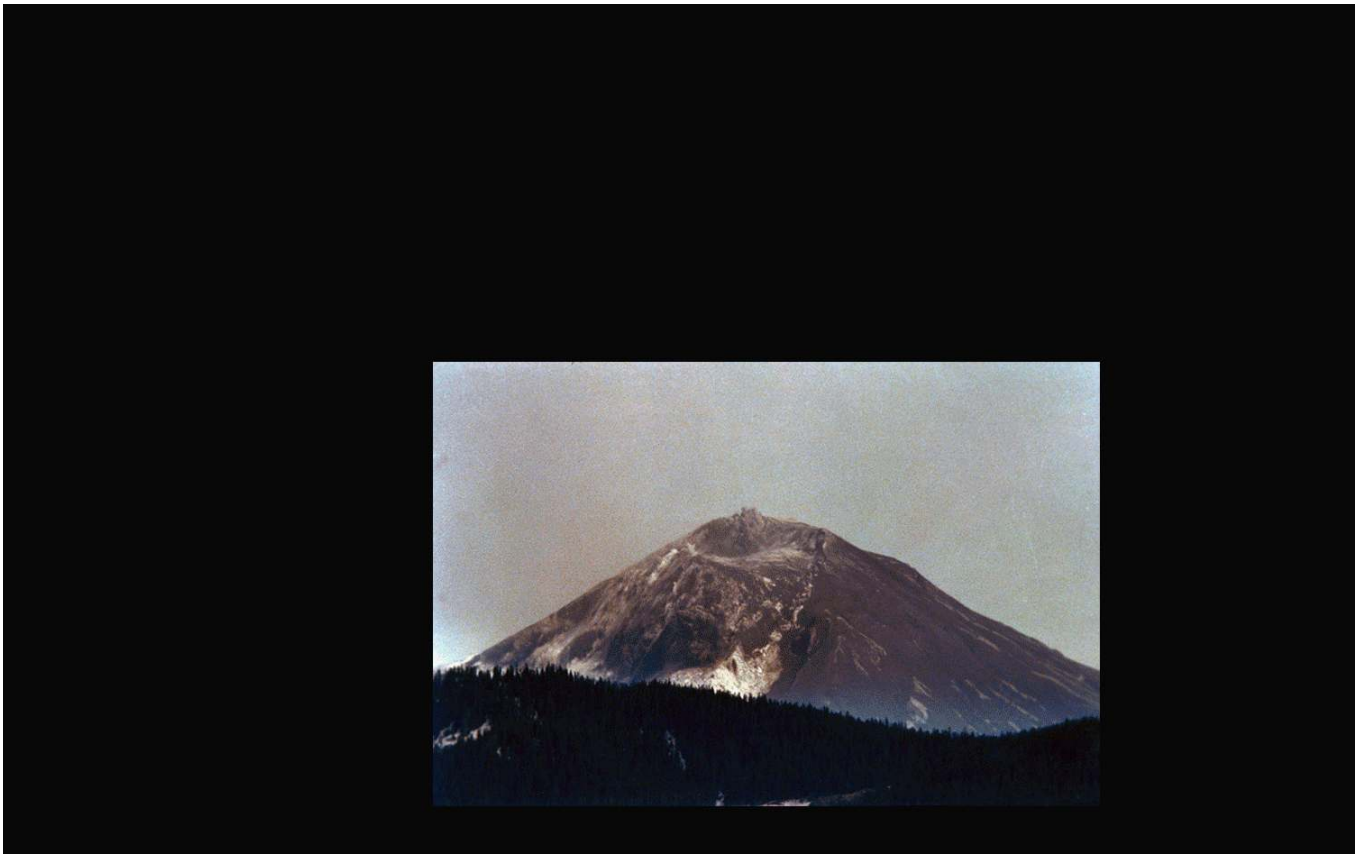


Figure *Section*4.6.3: Series of still images of the May 18, 1980, eruption of Mount St. Helens, Washington showing largest recorded landslide in history and subsequent eruption and pyroclastic flow (By The Associated Press via The Atlantic)

In 79 CE, Mount Vesuvius, located near Naples, Italy, violently erupted sending a pyroclastic flow over the Roman countryside, including the cities of Herculaneum and Pompeii. The buried towns were discovered in an archeological expedition in the 18th century [25]. Pompeii famously contains the remains (casts) of people suffocated by ash and covered by 10 feet (3 m) of ash, pumice lapilli, and collapsed roofs [26].



Figure *Section*4.6.4: Human remains from the 79 CE eruption of Vesuvius. (By Gary Todd; public domain via Wikimedia Commons.)

Section 4.6.1.1 Pyroclastic Flows

The most dangerous volcanic hazard is a **pyroclastic flow**. These flows are a mix of lava blocks, pumice, ash, and hot gases between 200°C-700°C (400°F-1300°F). The turbulent cloud of ash and gas races down the steep flanks at high speeds up to 193 km per hour (120 mph) into the valleys around composite volcanoes [24]. Most explosive, silica-rich, high viscosity magma volcanoes such as composite cones usually have pyroclastic flows. The rocks tuff and welded tuff are often formed from these pyroclastic flows.



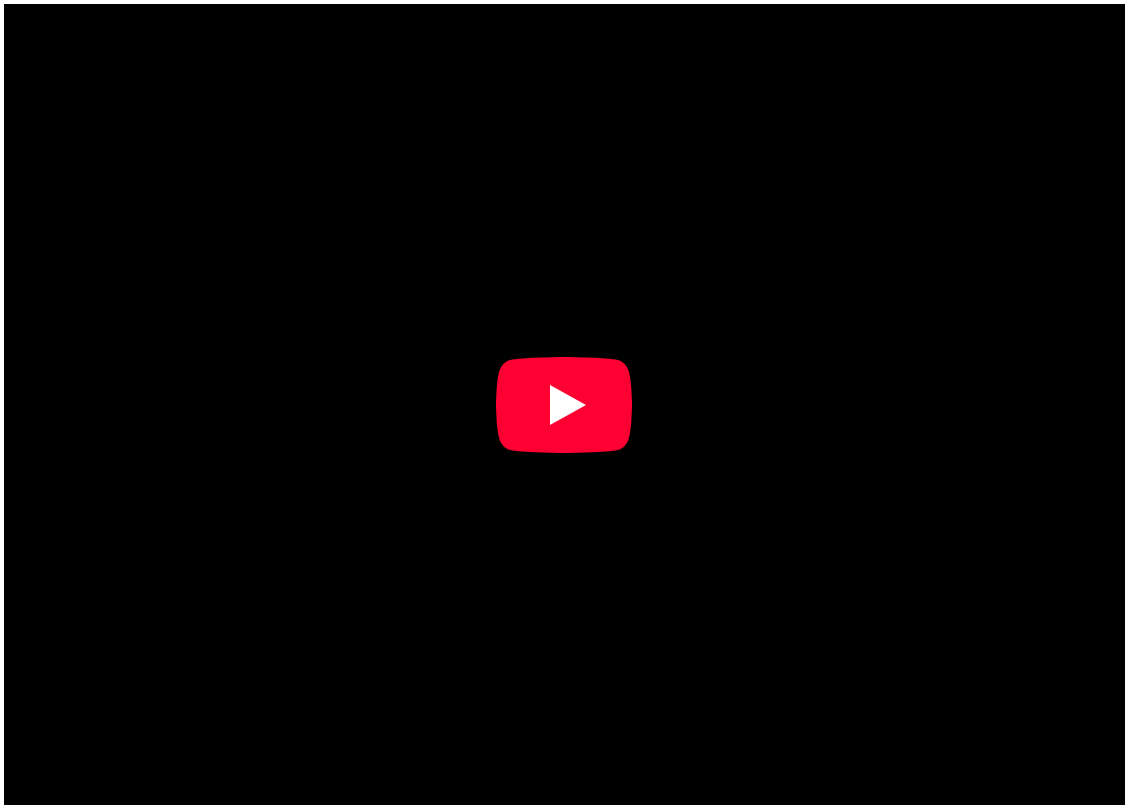
Figure *Section*4.6.5: The material coming down from the eruption column onto the flanks is a pyroclastic flow.

There are numerous examples of deadly pyroclastic flows. In 2014, the Mount Ontake pyroclastic flow in Japan killed 47 people. The flow was caused by magma heating groundwater into steam, which then rapidly ejected with ash and volcanic bombs. Some were killed by inhalation of toxic gases and hot ash, while others were struck by volcanic bombs [27]. This video shows an eye-witness account of the Ontake pyroclastic flow.





In the early 1990s, Mount Unzen erupted several times with pyroclastic flows. The pyroclastic flow shown in this short video killed 41 people.





In 1902, on the Caribbean Island Martinique, Mount Pelee erupted with a violent pyroclastic flow that destroyed the entire town of St. Pierre and killing 28,000 people in moments.



Figure *Section*4.6.6: The remains of St. Pierre after the eruption of Mount Pelee.

Section 4.6.1.2 Landslides and Landslide-Generated Tsunamis

The steep and unstable flanks of a volcano can lead to slope failure and dangerous **landslides**. These landslides can be triggered by magma movement, explosive eruptions, large earthquakes, and/or heavy rainfall. During the 1980 Mount St. Helens eruption, the entire north flank of the volcano collapsed and released a huge landslide that moved at speeds of 160-290 km per hour (100-180 mph).

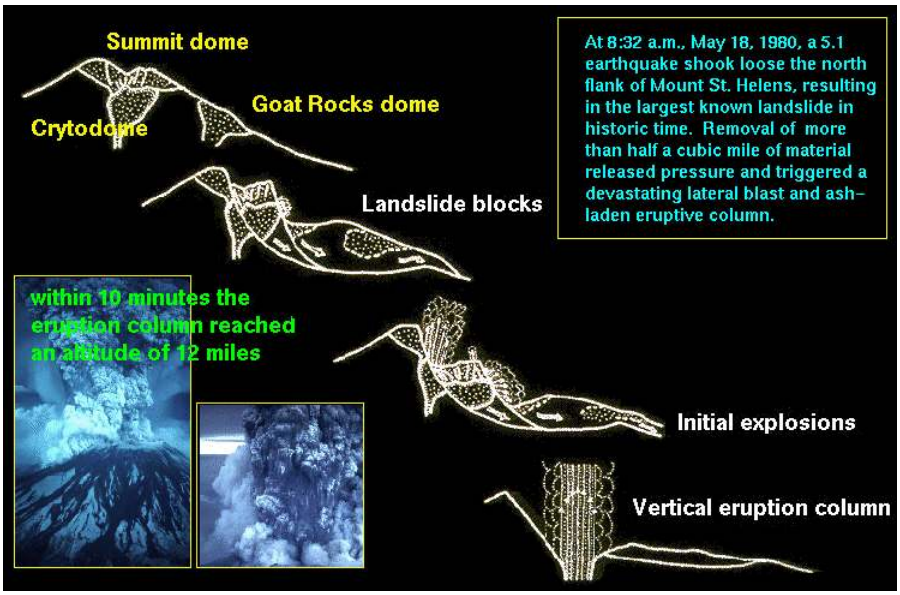


Figure *Section*4.6.7: Sequence of events for Mount St. Helens, May 18, 1980. Note that an earthquake caused a landslide, which caused the "uncorking" of the mountain and started the eruption.

If enough landslide material reaches the ocean, it may cause a **tsunami**. In 1792, a landslide caused by the Mount Unzen eruption reached the Ariaka Sea, generating a tsunami that killed 15,000 people. When Mount Krakatau in Indonesia erupted in 1883, it generated ocean waves that towered 40 m (131 ft) above sea level. The tsunami killed 36,000 people and destroyed 165 villages [24].

Section 4.6.1.3 Tephra

Volcanoes, especially composite volcanoes, eject large amounts of tephra (ejected rock materials), most notably ash (tephra fragments less 2 mm). Larger tephra is heavier and falls closer to the vent. Larger blocks and bombs pose hazards to those close to the eruption such as at the 2014 Mount Ontake disaster in Japan discussed earlier.



Figure *Section*4.6.8: A man sweeps ash from an eruption of Kelud, Indonesia.

Hot ash poses an immediate danger to people, animals, plants, machines, roads, and buildings located close to the eruption. Ash is fine-grained (< 2mm) and can travel airborne long distances away from the eruption site. Heavy accumulations of ash can cause buildings to collapse. In people, it may cause respiratory issues like silicosis. Ash is destructive to aircraft and automobile engines, which can disrupt transportation and shipping services [24]. In 2010, the Eyjafjallajökull volcano in Iceland emitted a large ash cloud into the upper atmosphere, causing the largest air-travel disruption in northern Europe since World War II. No one was injured, but the service disruption was estimated to have cost the world economy billions of dollars [29].

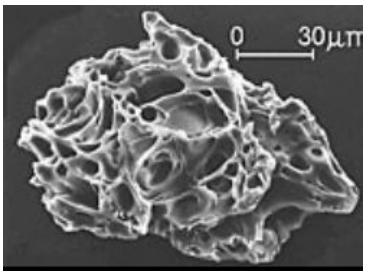


Figure *Section*4.6.9: Micrograph of silica particle in volcanic ash. A cloud of these is capable of destroying an aircraft or automobile engine.

Section 4.6.1.4 Volcanic Gases

As magma rises to the surface, the confining pressure decreases and allows dissolved gases to escape into the atmosphere. Even volcanoes that are not actively erupting may emit hazardous gases, such as carbon dioxide (CO_2), sulfur dioxide (SO_2), hydrogen sulfide (H_2S), and hydrogen halides (HF, HCl, or HBr).

Carbon dioxide tends to sink and accumulate in depressions and basins. In volcanic areas known to emit carbon dioxide, low-lying areas may trap hazardous concentrations of this colorless and odorless gas. The Mammoth Mountain Ski Resort in California, is located within the Long Valley Caldera, is one such area of carbon dioxide-producing volcanism. In 2006, three ski patrol members died of suffocation caused by carbon dioxide after falling into a snow depression near a fumarole (article).

In rare cases, volcanism may create a sudden emission of gases without warning. **Limnic eruptions** (*limne* is Greek for lake), occur in crater lakes associated with active volcanism. The water in these lakes is supercharged with high concentrations of dissolved gases. If the water is physically jolted by a landslide or earthquake, it may trigger an immediate and massive release of gases out of solution. An analogous example would be what happens to a vigorously shaken bottle of carbonated soda when the cap is opened. An infamous limnic eruption occurred in 1986 at Lake Nyos, Cameroon. Almost 2000 people were killed by a massive release of carbon dioxide [24].

Section 4.6.1.5 Lahars

Lahar is an Indonesian word and is used to describe a volcanic mudflow that forms from rapidly melting snow or glaciers. Lahars are slurries resembling wet concrete and consist of water, ash, rock fragments, and other debris. These mudflows flow down the flanks of volcanoes or mountains covered with freshly-erupted ash, and on steep slopes can reach speeds of up to 80 km per hour (50 mph).



Figure *Section*4.6.10: Mud line shows the extent of lahars around Mount St. Helens.

Several major cities, including Tacoma, are located on prehistoric lahar flows that extend for many kilometers across the flood plains surrounding Mount Rainier in Washington (see map). A map of Mount Baker in Oregon shows a similar potential hazard for lahar flows [24]. A tragic scenario played out in 1985, when a lahar from the Nevado del Ruiz volcano in Colombia buried the town of Armero and killed an estimated 23,000 people.

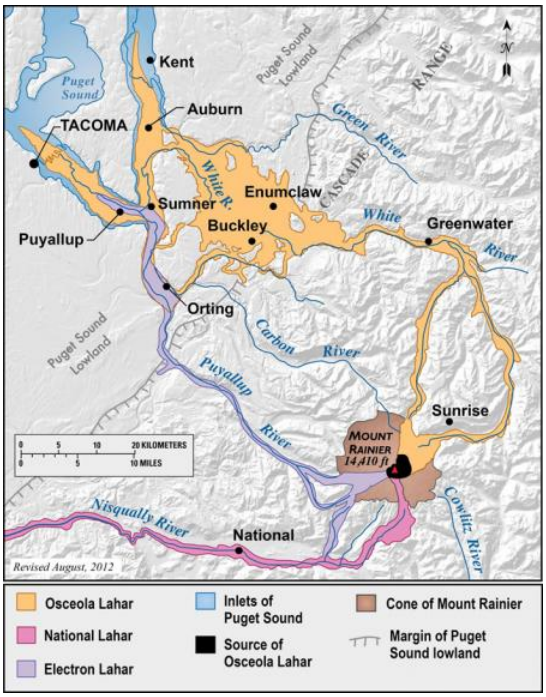
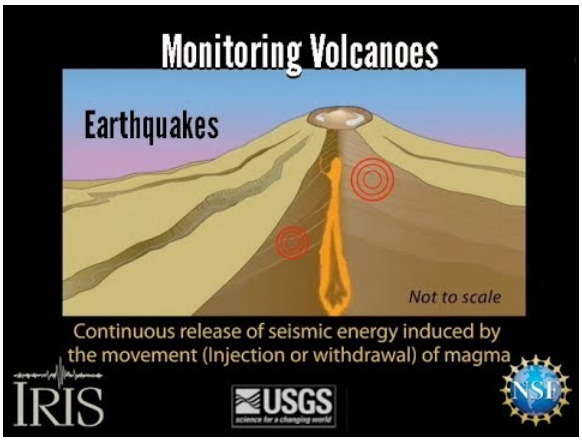


Figure *Section*4.6.11: Old lahars around Tacoma, Washington.

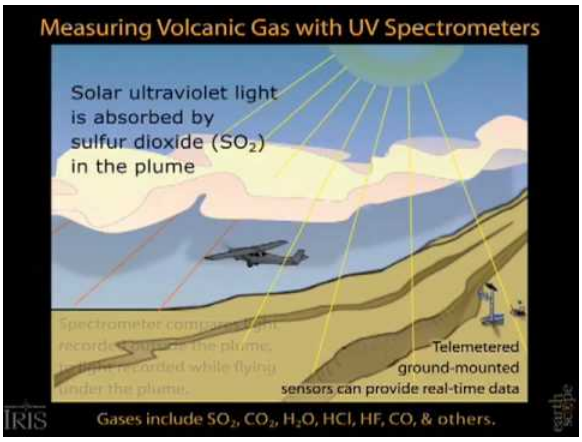
Section 4.6.2 Monitoring

Geologists use various instruments to detect changes or indications that an eruption is imminent [30][31]. The three videos show different types of volcanic monitoring used to predict eruptions 1) earthquake activity, 2) increases in gas emission, and 3) changes in land surface orientation and elevation.

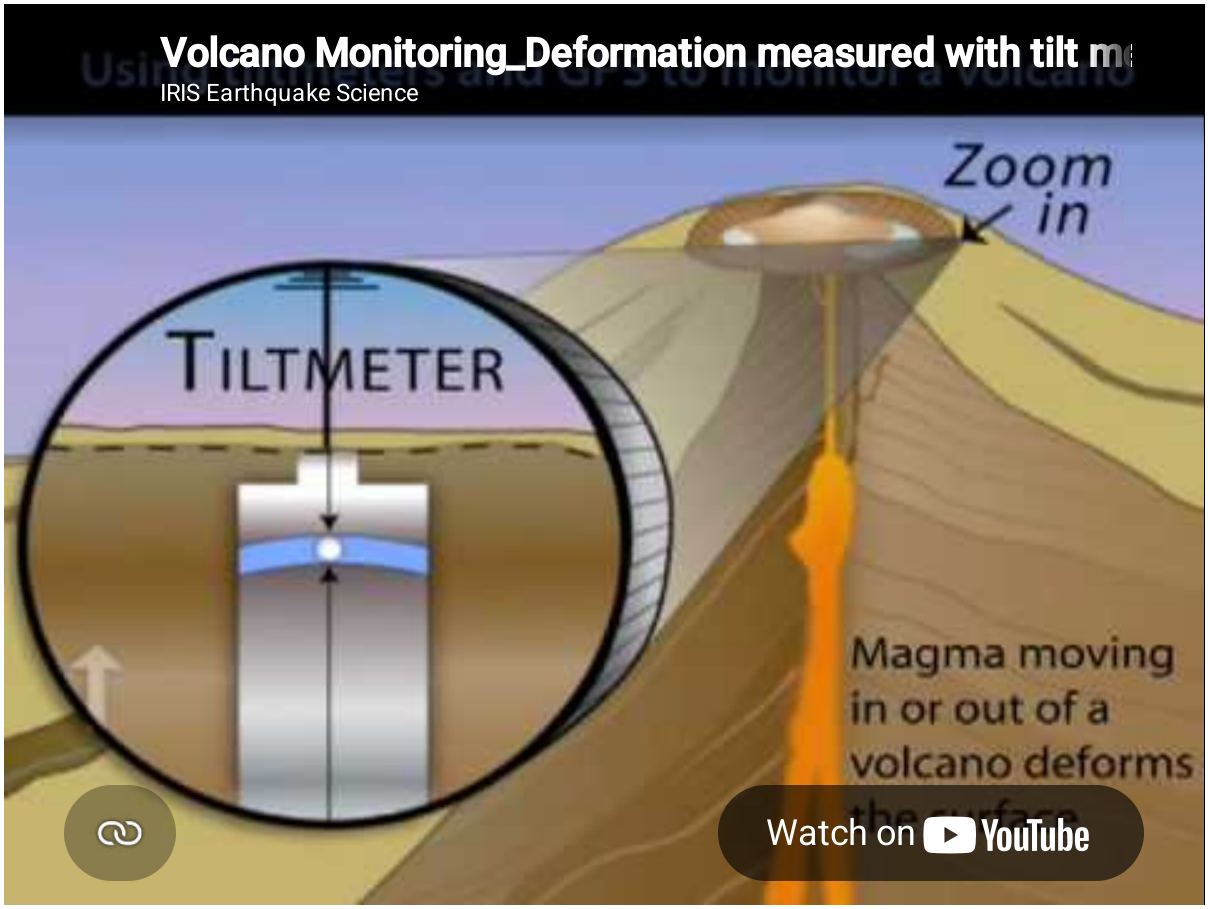
This video shows how monitoring earthquake frequency, especially special vibrational earthquakes called **harmonic tremors**, can detect magma movement and possible eruption.

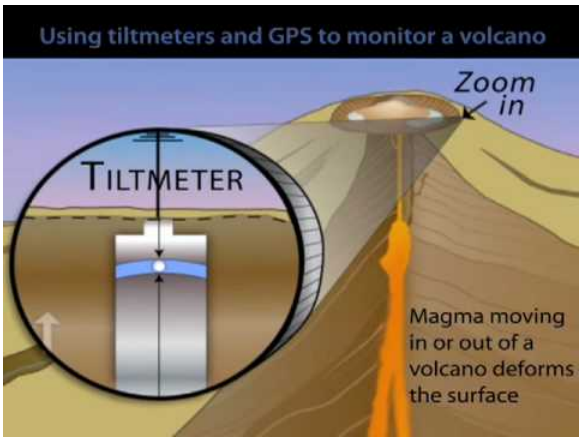


This video shows how gas monitoring may be used to predict an eruption. A rapid increase of gas emission may indicate magma that is actively rising to the surface and releasing dissolved gases out of solution, and that an eruption is imminent.



The last video shows how a GPS unit and **tiltmeter** can detect land surface changes, indicating the magma is moving underneath it.





Section 4.6.3 References

23. USGS. The Volcanoes of Lewis and Clark - Mount St. Helens. (2017). Available at: https://volcanoes.usgs.gov/observatories/cvo/Historical/LewisClark/Info/ summary_mount_st_helens.shtml. (Accessed: 14th March 2017)

24. USGS. USGS: Volcano Hazards Program. (2012). Available at: https://volcanoes.usgs.gov/vhp/hazards.html. (Accessed: 30th July 2016)

25. Scandone, R., Giacomelli, L. & Gasparini, P. Mount Vesuvius: 2000 years of volcanological observations. *Journal of Volcanology and Geothermal Research* **58**, 5–25 (1993).

26. Luongo, G. *et al*. Impact of the AD 79 explosive eruption on Pompeii, II. Causes of death of the inhabitants inferred by stratigraphic analysis and areal distribution of the human casualties. *J. Volcanol. Geotherm. Res.* **126**, 169–200 (2003).

27. EarthScope. Mount Ontake Volcanic Eruption. (2014). Available at: http://www.earthscope.org/science/geo-events/mount-ontake-volcanic-eruption. (Accessed: 30th July 2016)

28. USGS. Dual volcanic tragedies in the Caribbean led to founding of HVO. (2001). Available at: http://hvo.wr.usgs.gov/volcanowatch/archive/2001/01_05_03.html. (Accessed: 30th July 2016)

29. Perkins, S. 2010's Volcano-Induced Air Travel Shutdown Was Justified. (2011). Available at: http://www.sciencemag.org/news/2011/04/2010s-volcano-induced-air-travel-shutdown-was-justified. (Accessed: 30th July 2016)

30. Tilling, R. I. The critical role of volcano monitoring in risk reduction. *Adv. Geosci.* **14**, 3–11 (2008).

31. Stovall, W. K., Wilkins, A. M., Mandeville, C. W. & Driedger, C. L. *Fact Sheet*. (2016).

This page titled Section 4.6: Volcanic Hazards and Monitoring is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Chris Johnson, Matthew D. Affolter, Paul Inkenbrandt, & Cam Mosher (OpenGeology) via source content that was edited to the style and standards of the LibreTexts platform.

- **4.5: Volcanism** by Chris Johnson, Matthew D. Affolter, Paul Inkenbrandt, & Cam Mosher is licensed CC BY-NC-SA 4.0. Original source: https://opengeology.org/textbook/.

Section 4.S: Summary

Igneous rock is divided into two major groups: intrusive rock that solidifies from underground magma, and extrusive rock formed from lava that erupts and cools on the surface. Magma is generated from mantle material at several plate tectonics situations by three types of melting: decompression melting, flux melting, or heat-induced melting. Magma composition is determined by differences in the melting temperatures of the mineral components (Bowen's Reaction Series). Volcanoes come in a wide variety of shapes and sizes, and are classified by multiple factors, including magma composition, and plate tectonic activity. Because volcanism presents serious hazards to human civilization, geologists carefully monitor volcanic activity to mitigate or avoid the dangers it presents.

Section 4.S: Summary is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

CHAPTER OVERVIEW

Chapter 5: Weathering, Erosion, and Sedimentary Rocks

Learning Objectives

- Describe how water is an integral part of all sedimentary rock formation.
- Explain how chemical and mechanical weathering turn bedrock into sediment.
- Differentiate the two main categories of sedimentary rocks : clastic rock formed from pieces of weathered bedrock; and chemical rock that precipitates out of solution by organic or inorganic means.
- Explain the importance of sedimentary structures and analysis of depositional environments, and how they provide insight into the Earth's history.



Figure *Chapter*5.1: Horseshoe Bend of the Colorado River near the Grand Canyon. (By Christian Mehlführer; CC BY 2.5 via Wikimedia Commons.)

Sedimentary rock and the processes that create it, which include weathering, erosion, and lithification, are an integral part of understanding Earth Science. This is because the majority of the Earth's surface is made up of sedimentary rocks and their common predecessor, sediments. Even though sedimentary rocks can form in drastically different ways, their origin and creation have one thing in common, water.

Section 5.1: The Unique Properties of Water

Section 5.2: Weathering and Erosion

Section 5.3: Sedimentary Rocks

Section 5.4: Sedimentary Structures

Section 5.5: Depositional Environments

Section 5.S: Summary

This page titled Chapter 5: Weathering, Erosion, and Sedimentary Rocks is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Chris Johnson, Matthew D. Affolter, Paul Inkenbrandt, & Cam Mosher (OpenGeology) via source content that was edited to the style and standards of the LibreTexts platform.

Section 5.1: The Unique Properties of Water

Water plays a role in the formation of most sedimentary rocks. It is one of the main agents involved in creating the minerals in chemical sedimentary rock. It also is a weathering and erosion agent, producing the grains that become detrital sedimentary rock. Several special properties make water an especially unique substance, and integral to the production of sediments and sedimentary rock.

The water molecule consists of two hydrogen atoms covalently bonded to one oxygen atom arranged in a specific and important geometry. The two hydrogen atoms are separated by an angle of about 105°, and both are located to one side of the oxygen atom [1]. This atomic arrangement, with the positively charged hydrogens on one side and negatively charged oxygen on the other side, gives the water molecule a property called **polarity**. Resembling a battery or a magnet, the molecule's positive-negative architecture leads to a whole suite of unique properties.

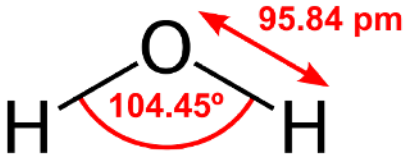


Figure *Section*5.1.1: A model of a water molecule, showing the bonds between the hydrogen and oxygen.

Polarity allows water molecules to stick to other substances. This is called **adhesion**. Water is also attracted to itself, a property called **cohesion**, which leads to water's most common form in the air, a droplet. Cohesion is responsible for creating **surface tension**, which various insects use to walk on water by distributing their weight across the surface.



Figure *Section*5.1.2: Dew on a spider's web.

The fact that water is attracted to itself leads to another important property, one that is extremely rare in the natural world—the liquid form is denser than the solid form. The polarity of water creates a special type of weak bonding called **hydrogen bonds**. Hydrogen bonds allow the molecules in liquid water to sit close together. Water is densest at 4°C and is less dense above and below that temperature. As water solidifies into ice, the molecules must move apart in order to fit into the crystal lattice, causing water to expand and become less dense as it freezes. Because of this, ice floats and water at 4°C sinks, which keeps the oceans liquid and prevents them from freezing solid from the bottom up. This unique property of water keeps Earth, the water planet, habitable.

Even more critical for supporting life, water remains **liquid** over a very large range of temperatures, which is also a result of cohesion. Hydrogen bonding allows liquid water to absorb high amounts of energy before turning into **vapor** or gas. The wide range across which water remains a liquid, 0°C-100°C (32°F-212°F), is rarely exhibited in other substances. Without this high **boiling point**, liquid water as we know it would be constricted to narrow temperature zones on Earth, instead of being found from pole to pole.

Water is a **universal solvent**, meaning it dissolves more substances than any other commonly found, naturally occurring liquid. The water molecules use polarity and hydrogen bonds to pry ions away from the crystal lattice. Water is such a powerful solvent, it can dissolve even the strongest rocks and minerals given enough time.

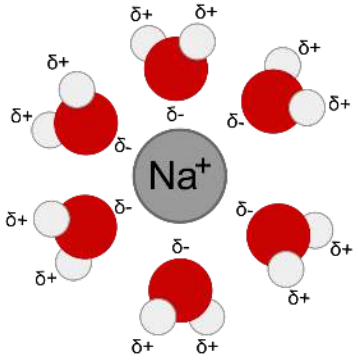


Figure ***Section*5.1.3**: A sodium (Na) ion in solution.

Section 5.1.1 Reference

1. Hoy, A. R. & Bunker, P. R. A precise solution of the rotation bending Schrödinger equation for a triatomic molecule with application to the water molecule. *J. Mol. Spectrosc.* **74**, 1–8 (1979).

This page titled Section 5.1: The Unique Properties of Water is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Chris Johnson, Matthew D. Affolter, Paul Inkenbrandt, & Cam Mosher (OpenGeology) via source content that was edited to the style and standards of the LibreTexts platform.

- **5.1: The Unique Properties of Water** by Chris Johnson, Matthew D. Affolter, Paul Inkenbrandt, & Cam Mosher is licensed CC BY-NC-SA 4.0. Original source: https://opengeology.org/textbook/.

Section 5.2: Weathering and Erosion

Bedrock refers to the solid crystalline rock that makes up the Earth's outer crust. **Weathering** is a process that turns bedrock into smaller particles, called **sediment** or soil. Mechanical weathering includes pressure expansion, frost wedging, root wedging, and salt expansion. Chemical weathering includes carbonic acid and hydrolysis, dissolution, and oxidation.

Erosion is a mechanical process, usually driven by water, wind, gravity, or ice, which transports sediment and soil from the place of weathering. Liquid water is the main agent of erosion. Gravity and mass wasting processes move rocks and sediment to new locations. Gravity and ice, in the form of glaciers, move large rock fragments as well as fine sediment.

Section 5.2.1 Mechanical Weathering

Mechanical weathering physically breaks bedrock into smaller pieces. The usual agents of mechanical weathering are pressure, temperature, freezing/thawing cycle of water, plant or animal activity, and salt evaporation.

Section 5.2.1.1 Pressure Expansion

Bedrock buried deep within the Earth is under high pressure and temperature. When uplift and erosion brings bedrock to the surface, its temperature drops slowly, while its pressure drops immediately. The sudden pressure drop causes the rock to rapidly expand and crack; this is called **pressure expansion**. **Sheeting** or **exfoliation** is when the rock surface spalls off in layers. **Spheroidal weathering** is a type of exfoliation that produces rounded features and is caused when chemical weathering moves along joints in the bedrock.



Figure *Section*5.2.1: The outer layer of this granite is fractured and eroding away, known as exfoliation.

Section 5.2.1.2 Frost Wedging

Frost wedging, also called **ice wedging**, uses the power of expanding ice to break apart rocks. Water works its way into various cracks, voids, and crevices. As the water freezes, it expands with great force, exploiting any weaknesses. When ice melts, the liquid water moves further into the widened spaces. Repeated cycles of freezing and melting eventually pry the rocks apart. The cycles can occur daily when fluctuations of temperature between day and night go from freezing to melting.

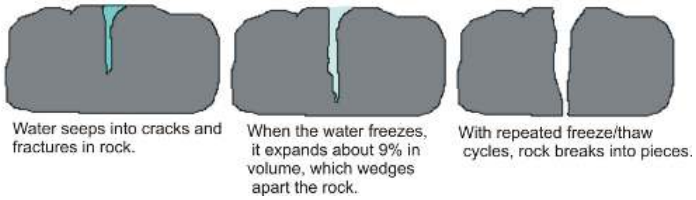


Figure *Section*5.2.2: The process of frost wedging.

Section 5.2.1.3 Root Wedging

Like frost wedging, **root wedging** happens when plant roots work themselves into cracks, prying the bedrock apart as they grow. Occasionally these roots may become fossilized. **Rhizolith** is the term for these roots preserved in the rock record [2]. Tunneling organisms such as earthworms, termites, and ants are biological agents that induce weathering similar to root wedging.



Figure *Section*5.2.3: The roots of this tree are demonstrating the destructive power of root wedging. Though this picture is a man-made rock (asphalt), it works on a typical rock as well.

Section 5.2.1.4 Salt Expansion

Salt expansion, which works similarly to frost wedging, occurs in areas of high evaporation or near-marine environments. Evaporation causes salts to precipitate out of solution and grow and expand into cracks in the rock. Salt expansion is one of the causes of **tafoni**, a series of holes in a rock. Tafoni, cracks, and holes are weak points that become susceptible to increased weathering. Another phenomenon that occurs is when salt water evaporates and leaves behind a **hopper crystal**, a square-shaped crystal, commonly made of salt, preserved in the rock.



Figure *Section*5.2.4: Tafoni from Salt Point, California.

Section 5.2.2 Chemical Weathering

Chemical weathering is the dominant weathering process in warm, humid environments. It happens when water, oxygen, and other reactants chemically degrade the mineral components of bedrock and turn them into water-soluble ions which can then be transported by water. Higher temperatures accelerate chemical weathering rates.

Chemical and mechanical weathering work hand-in-hand via a fundamental concept called **surface-area-to-volume ratio**. Chemical weathering only occurs on rock surfaces because water and reactants cannot penetrate the solid rock. Mechanical weathering penetrates the bedrock, breaking large rocks into smaller pieces and creating new rock surfaces. This exposes more surface area to chemical weathering, enhancing its effects. In other words, higher surface-area-to-volume ratios produce higher rates of overall weathering.

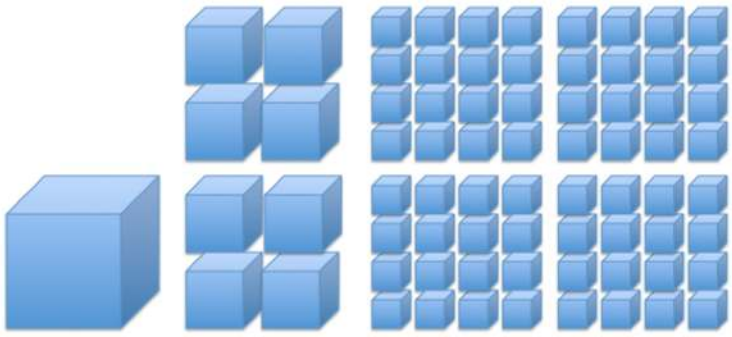


Figure *Section*5.2.5: Each of these three groups of cubes has an equal volume. However, their surface areas are vastly different. On the left, the single cube has a length, width, and height of 4 units, giving it a surface area of $6(4 \times 4) = 96$ and a volume of $4^3 = 64$. The middle eight cubes have a length, width, and height of 2, meaning a surface area of $8(6(2 \times 2)) = 8 \times 24 = 192$. They also have a volume of $8(2^3) = 8 \times 8 = 64$. The 64 cubes on the right have a length, width, and height of 1, leading to a surface area of $64(6(1 \times 1)) = 64 \times 6 = 384$. The volume remains unchanged because $64(1^3) = 64 \times 1 = 64$. The surface area to volume ratio (SA:V), which is related to the amount of material available for reactions, changes for each as well. On the left, it is $\frac{96}{64} = 0.75$ or 3:4. The center has a SA:V of $\frac{192}{64} = 1.5$, or 3:1. On the right, the SA:V is $\frac{384}{64} = 6$, or 6:1.

Section 5.2.2.1 Carbonic Acid and Hydrolysis

Carbonic acid (H_2CO_3) forms when carbon dioxide, the fifth-most abundant gas in the atmosphere, dissolves in water. This happens naturally in clouds, which is why precipitation is normally slightly acidic. Carbonic acid is an important agent in two chemical weathering reactions, hydrolysis, and dissolution.

Hydrolysis occurs via two types of reactions. In one reaction, water molecules ionize into positively charged H^+ and OH^- ions and replace mineral cations in the crystal lattice. In another type of hydrolysis, carbonic acid molecules react directly with minerals, especially those containing silicon and aluminum (i.e. feldspars), to form molecules of clay minerals.

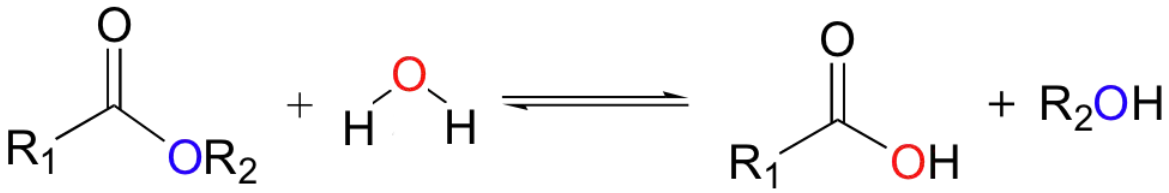


Figure *Section*5.2.6: Generic hydrolysis diagram, where the bonds in the mineral in question would represent the left side of the diagram.

Hydrolysis is the main process that breaks down silicate rock and creates clay minerals. The following is a hydrolysis reaction that occurs when silica-rich feldspar encounters carbonic acid to produce water-soluble clay and other ions:

feldspar + carbonic acid (in water) → clay + metal cations (Fe^{++}, Mg^{++}, Ca^{++}, Na^+, etc.) + bicarbonate anions (HCO_3^-) + silica (SiO_2)

Clay minerals are platy silicates or phyllosilicates similar to micas, and are the main components of very fine-grained sediment. The dissolved substances may later precipitate into chemical sedimentary rocks like evaporite and limestone, as well as amorphous silica or chert nodules.

Section 5.2.2.2 Dissolution

Dissolution is a hydrolysis reaction that dissolves minerals in bedrock and leaves the ions in solution, usually in water. Some evaporites and carbonates, like salt and calcite, are more prone to this reaction; however, all minerals can be dissolved. Non-acidic water, having a neutral pH of 7, will dissolve any mineral, although it may happen very slowly. Water with higher levels of acid, natural or man-made, dissolves rocks at a higher rate. Liquid water is normally slightly acidic due to the presence of carbonic acid and free H^+ ions. Natural rainwater can be highly acidic, with pH levels as low as 2 [3]. Dissolution can be enhanced by a biological agent, such as when organisms like lichen and bacteria release organic acids onto the rocks they are attached to. Regions with high humidity (airborne moisture) and precipitation experience more dissolution due to greater contact time between rocks and water.



Figure *Section*5.2.7: In this rock, a pyrite cube has dissolved (as seen with the negative “corner” impression in the rock), leaving behind small specks of gold coloring from the pyrite.

The **Goldich Dissolution Series** shows chemical weathering rates are associated with crystallization rankings in the Bowen’s Reaction Series [4]. Minerals at the top of Bowen's series crystallize under high temperatures and pressures, and chemically weather at a faster rate than minerals ranked at the bottom. Quartz, a felsic mineral that crystallizes at 700°C, is very resistant to chemical weathering. High crystallization-point mafic minerals, such as olivine and pyroxene (1250°C), weather relatively rapidly and more completely. Olivine and pyroxene are rarely found as end products of weathering because they tend to break down into elemental ions.



Figure *Section*5.2.8: This mantle xenolith containing olivine (green) is chemically weathering by hydrolysis and oxidation into the pseudo-mineral iddingsite, which is a complex of water, clay, and iron oxides. The more altered side of the rock has been exposed to the environment longer.

Dissolution is also noteworthy for the special geological features it creates. In places with abundant carbonate bedrock, dissolution weathering can produce a **karst topography** characterized by sinkholes or caves.



Figure *Section*5.2.9: Eroded karst topography in Minevre, France.

Timpanogos Cave National Monument in Northern Utah is a well-known dissolution feature. The figure shows a cave formation created from dissolution followed by precipitation—groundwater saturated with calcite seeped into the cavern, where evaporation caused the dissolved minerals to precipitate out.



Figure *Section*5.2.10: A formation called The Great Heart of Timpanogos in Timpanogos Cave National Monument.

Section 5.2.2.3 Oxidation

Oxidation, the chemical reaction that causes rust in metallic iron, occurs geologically when iron atoms in a mineral bond with oxygen. Any minerals containing iron can be oxidized. The resultant iron oxides may permeate a rock if it is rich in iron minerals. Oxides may also form a coating that covers rocks and grains of sediment, or they can line rock cavities and fractures. If the oxides are more susceptible to weathering than the original bedrock, they may create void spaces inside the rock mass, weakness throughout the rock mass, or hollows on exposed surfaces.

Three commonly found minerals are produced by iron-oxidation reactions: red or gray hematite, brown goethite (pronounced “GUR-tite”), and yellow limonite. These iron oxides coat and bind mineral grains together into sedimentary rocks in a process called **cementation** and often give these rocks a dominant color. They color the rock layers of the Colorado Plateau, as well as Zion, Arches, and Grand Canyon National Parks. When the oxide minerals replacing existing minerals in bedrock are resistant to weathering, iron **concretions** may occur in the rock. Concretions are round, hard, cemented masses in a sedimentary rock.



Figure *Section*5.2.11: Pyrite cubes are oxidized, becoming new mineral goethite. In this case, goethite is a pseudomorph after pyrite, meaning it has taken the form of another mineral.

Section 5.2.3 Erosion

Erosion is a mechanical process, usually driven by water, gravity, wind, or ice that removes sediment from the place of weathering. Liquid water is the main agent of erosion.



Figure *Section*5.2.12: Grand Canyon from Mather Point. The canyon was formed by erosion of the bedrock by the Colorado River.

Erosion resistance is important in the creation of distinctive geological features. This is well demonstrated in the cliffs of the Grand Canyon. The cliffs are made of rock left standing after less resistant materials have weathered and eroded away. Rocks with

different levels of erosion resistance also create unique-looking features called **hoodoos** in Bryce Canyon National Park and Goblin Valley State Park in Utah.



Figure *Section*5.2.13: A hoodoo near Moab, Utah. The more resistant cap has protected the less resistant underlying layers.

Section 5.2.4 Soil

Soil is a combination of air, water, minerals, and organic matter that forms at the transition between the biosphere and geosphere. Soil is made when weathering breaks down the bedrock and turns it into sediment. If erosion does not remove the sediment significantly, organisms can access the mineral content of the sediments. These organisms turn minerals, water, and atmospheric gases into organic substances that contribute to the soil.

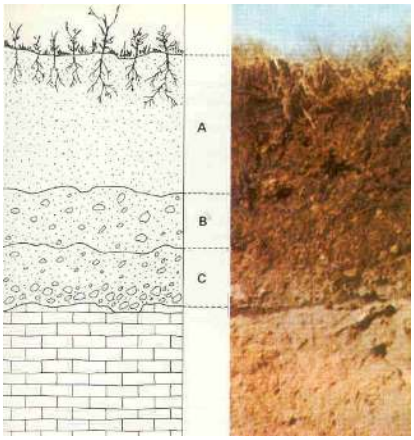


Figure *Section*5.2.14: A sketch and picture of soil.

Soil is an important reservoir for organic components necessary for plants, animals, and microorganisms to live. The organic component of soil, called **humus**, is a rich source of bioavailable nitrogen. Nitrogen is the most common element in the atmosphere, but it exists in a form most life forms are unable to use. Special bacteria found only in the soil provide most nitrogen compounds that are usable, **bioavailable**, by life forms. These **nitrogen-fixing bacteria** absorb nitrogen from the atmosphere and convert it into nitrogen compounds. These compounds are absorbed by plants and used to make DNA, amino acids for protein, and enzymes. Animals obtain bioavailable nitrogen by eating plants, and this is the source of most of the nitrogen used by life.

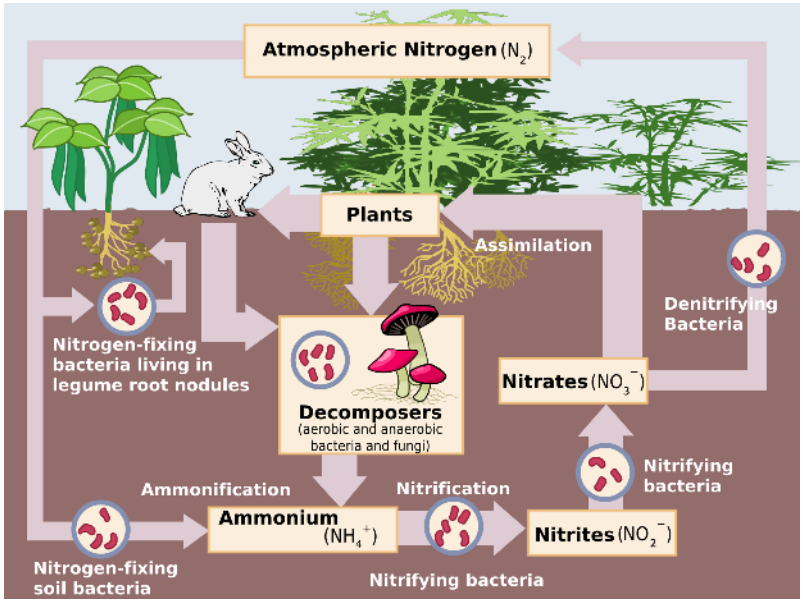


Figure *Section*5.2.15: Schematic of the nitrogen cycle.

Soils range from poor to rich, depending on the amount of humus they contain. Soil productivity is determined by water and nutrient content. Freshly created volcanic soils, called andisols, and clay-rich soils that hold nutrients and water are examples of productive soils.

The nature of the soil, meaning its characteristics, is determined primarily by five components:

1. mineralogy of the parent material
2. topography
3. weathering
4. climate
5. organisms that inhabit the soil.

For example, soil tends to erode more rapidly on steep slopes so soil layers in these areas may be thinner than in flood plains, where it tends to accumulate. The quantity and chemistry of the organic matter of soil affect how much and what varieties of life it can sustain. Temperature and precipitation, two major weathering agents, are dependent on climate. Fungi and bacteria contribute organic matter and the ability of soil to sustain life, interacting with plant roots to exchange nitrogen and other nutrients [5].



Figure *Section*5.2.16: Agricultural terracing, as made by the Inca culture from the Andes, helps reduce erosion and promote soil formation, leading to better farming practices.

In well-formed soils, there is a discernable arrangement of distinct layers called **soil horizons** [6]. These soil horizons can be seen in road cuts that expose the layers at the edge of the cut. Soil horizons make up the **soil profile**. Each soil horizon reflects climate, topography, and other soil-development factors, as well as its organic material and mineral sediment composition. The horizons are assigned names and letters. Differences in naming schemes depend on the area, soil type or research topic. The figure shows a simplified soil profile that uses commonly designated names and letters.

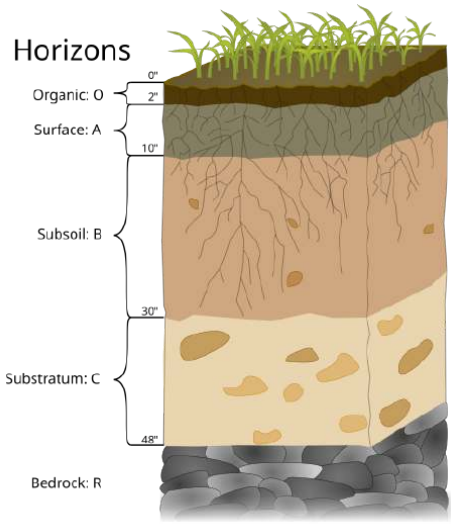


Figure *Section*5.2.17: A simplified soil profile, showing labeled layers. (By Wilsonbiggs; CC BY-SA 4.0 via Wikimedia Commons.)

O Horizon: The top horizon is a thin layer of predominantly organic material, such as leaves, twigs, and other plant parts that are actively decaying into humus.

A Horizon: The next layer, called **topsoil**, consists of humus mixed with mineral sediment. As precipitation soaks down through this layer, it leaches out soluble chemicals. In wet climates with heavy precipitation, this leaching out produces a separate layer called **horizon E**, the **leaching** or **eluviation zone**.

B Horizon: Also called **subsoil**, this layer consists of sediment mixed with humus removed from the upper layers. The subsoil is where mineral sediment is chemically weathered. The amount of organic material and the degree of weathering decrease with depth. The upper subsoil zone, called **regolith**, is a porous mixture of humus and highly weathered sediment. In the lower zone, **saprolite**, scant organic material is mixed with largely unaltered parent rock.

C Horizon: This is called **substratum** and is a zone of mechanical weathering. Here, bedrock fragments are physically broken but not chemically altered. This layer contains no organic material.

R Horizon: The final layer consists of unweathered, parent bedrock and fragments.

The United States governing body for agriculture, the USDA, uses a taxonomic classification to identify soil types, called soil orders. **Xoxisols** or **laterite soils** are nutrient-poor soils found in tropical regions. While poorly suited for growing crops, xosisols are home to most of the world's mineable aluminum ore (bauxite). **Ardisol** forms in dry climates and can develop layers of hardened calcite, called **caliche**. **Andisols** originate from volcanic ash deposits. **Alfisols** contain silicate clay minerals. These two soil orders are productive for farming due to their high content of mineral nutrients. In general, color can be an important factor in understanding soil conditions. Black soils tend to be **anoxic**, red soils are oxygen-rich, and green soils are oxygen-poor (i.e. reduced). This is true for many sedimentary rocks as well.



Figure *Section*5.2.18: A sample of bauxite. Note the unweathered igneous rock in the center.

Not only is soil essential to terrestrial life in nature, but also human civilization via agriculture. Careless or uninformed human activity can seriously damage soil's life-supporting properties. A prime example is the famous Dust Bowl disaster of the 1930s, which affected the midwestern United States. The damage occurred because of large-scale attempts to develop prairie land in southern Kansas, Colorado, western Texas, and Oklahoma into farmland [7]. Poor understanding of the region's geology, ecology, and climate led to farming practices that ruined the soil profile.



Figure ***Section*5.2.19**: A dust storm approaches Stratford, Texas in 1935.

The prairie soils and native plants are well adapted to a relatively dry climate. With government encouragement, settlers moved in to homestead the region. They plowed vast areas of prairie into long, straight rows and planted grain. The plowing broke up the stable soil profile and destroyed the natural grasses and plants, which had long roots that anchored the soil layers. The grains they planted had shallower root systems and were plowed up every year, which made the soil prone to erosion. The plowed furrows were aligned in straight rows running downhill, which favored erosion and loss of topsoil.

The local climate does not produce sufficient precipitation to support non-native grain crops, so the farmers drilled wells and over-pumped water from the underground aquifers. The grain crops failed due to lack of water, leaving bare soil that was stripped from the ground by the prairie winds. Particles of midwestern prairie soil were deposited along the east coast and as far away as Europe. Huge dust storms called black blizzards made life unbearable, and the once-hopeful homesteaders left in droves. The setting for John Steinbeck's famous novel and John Ford's film, *The Grapes of Wrath*, is Oklahoma during this time. The lingering question is whether we have learned the lessons of the dust bowl, to avoid creating it again [8].

Section 5.2.5 References

2. Klappa, C. F. Rhizoliths in terrestrial carbonates: classification, recognition, genesis and significance. *Sedimentology* **27**, 613–629 (1980).

3. Willey, J. D. *et al.* Effect of storm type on rainwater composition in southeastern North Carolina. *Environ. Sci. Technol.* **22**, 41–46 (1988).

4. Goldich, S. S. A study in rock-weathering. *J. Geol.* **46**, 17–58 (1938).

5. Jenny, H. *Factors of soil formation: a system of quantitative pedology*. (Courier Corporation, 1994).

6. Gerlach, A. C. Soil Profile Sections. *J. Geog.* **48**, 344–349 (1949).

7. Worster, D. *Dust bowl: the southern plains in the 1930s*. (Oxford University Press, 2004).

8. Eckholm, E. Losing ground. *Environment: Science and Policy for Sustainable Development* **18**, 6–11 (1976).

This page titled Section 5.2: Weathering and Erosion is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Chris Johnson, Matthew D. Affolter, Paul Inkenbrandt, & Cam Mosher (OpenGeology) via source content that was edited to the style and standards of the LibreTexts platform.

- **5.2: Weathering and Erosion** by Chris Johnson, Matthew D. Affolter, Paul Inkenbrandt, & Cam Mosher is licensed CC BY-NC-SA 4.0. Original source: https://opengeology.org/textbook/.

Section 5.3: Sedimentary Rocks

Sedimentary rock is classified into two main categories: clastic and chemical. Clastic or detrital sedimentary rocks are made from pieces of bedrock, sediment, derived primarily by mechanical weathering. Clastic rocks may also include chemically weathered sediment. Clastic rocks are classified by grain shape, grain size, and sorting. Chemical sedimentary rocks are precipitated from water saturated with dissolved minerals. Chemical rocks are classified mainly by the composition of minerals in the rock.



Figure *Section*5.3.1: Sedimentary rock at Siccar Point on the east coast of Scotland.

Section 5.3.1 Lithification and Diagenesis

Lithification turns loose sediment grains, created by weathering and transported by erosion, into clastic sedimentary rock via three interconnected steps. **Deposition** happens when friction and gravity overcome the forces driving sediment transport, allowing sediment to accumulate. **Compaction** occurs when material continues to accumulate on top of the sediment layer, squeezing the grains together and driving out the water. The mechanical compaction is aided by weak attractive forces between the smaller grains of sediment. Groundwater typically carries cementing agents into the sediment. These minerals, such as calcite, amorphous silica, or oxides, may have a different composition than the sediment grains. **Cementation** is the process of cementing minerals coating the sediment grains and gluing them together into a fused rock.

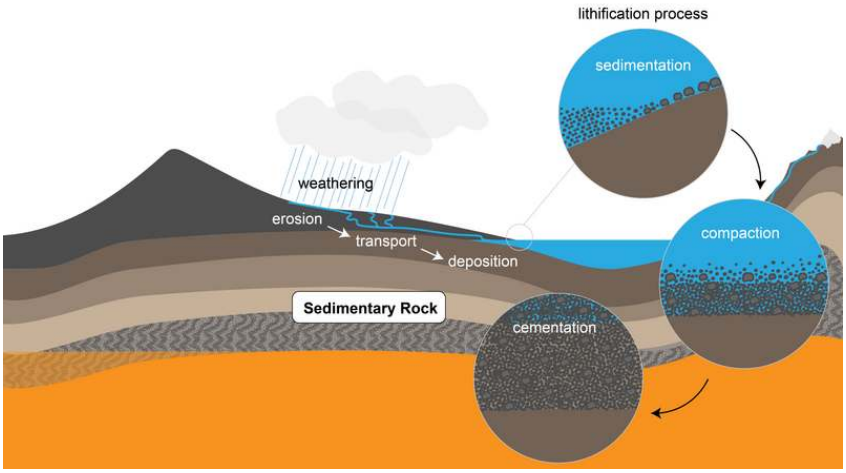


Figure *Section*5.3.2: The process of forming sedimentary rocks from weathering, erosion, transport, deposition, sedimentation, compaction, and cementation. (By Carie Frantz; CC BY-SA 4.0 via Wikimedia Commons.)

Diagenesis is a process accompanying lithification, and is a low-temperature form of rock metamorphism. During diagenesis, sediments are chemically altered by heat and pressure. A classic example is aragonite ($CaCO_3$), a form of calcium carbonate that makes up most organic shells. When lithified aragonite undergoes diagenesis, the aragonite reverts to calcite ($CaCO_3$), which has the same chemical formula but a different crystalline structure. In sedimentary rock containing calcite and magnesium (Mg), diagenesis may transform the two minerals into dolomite ($CaMg(CO_3)_2$). Diagenesis may also reduce the **pore space**, which is the

open space between sedimentary rock grains. The processes of cementation, compaction, and ultimately lithification occur within the realm of diagenesis, which includes the processes that turn organic material into fossils.



Figure *Section*5.3.3: Permineralization is a form of diagenesis that fossilizes wood into a rock, known as petrified wood. (By Moondigger; CC BY-SA 2.5 via Wikimedia Commons.)

Section 5.3.2 Detrital Sedimentary Rocks (Clastic)

Detrital or **clastic** sedimentary rocks consist of preexisting sediment pieces that come from weathered bedrock. Most of this is mechanically weathered sediment, although some clasts may be pieces of chemical rocks. This creates some overlap between the two categories, since clastic sedimentary rocks may include chemical sediments. Detrital or clastic rocks are classified and named based on their grain size.

Section 5.3.2.1 Grain Size

Detrital sedimentary rock is classified according to sediment grain size, which is graded from large to small on the Wentworth scale (see figure). **Grain size** is the average diameter of sediment fragments in sediment or rock. Grain sizes are delineated using a log base 2 scale [9; 10]. For example, the grain sizes in the **pebble** class are 2.52, 1.26, 0.63, 0.32, 0.16, and 0.08 inches, which correlate respectively to very coarse, **coarse**, **medium**, **fine**, and very fine granules. Large fragments, or clasts, include all grain sizes larger than 2 mm (5/64 in). These include **boulders**, **cobbles**, granules, and gravel. **Sand** has a grain size between 2 mm and 0.0625 mm, about the lower limit of the naked eye's resolution. Sediment grains smaller than sand are called **silt**. Silt is unique; the grains can be felt with a finger or as grit between your teeth, but are too small to see with the naked eye.

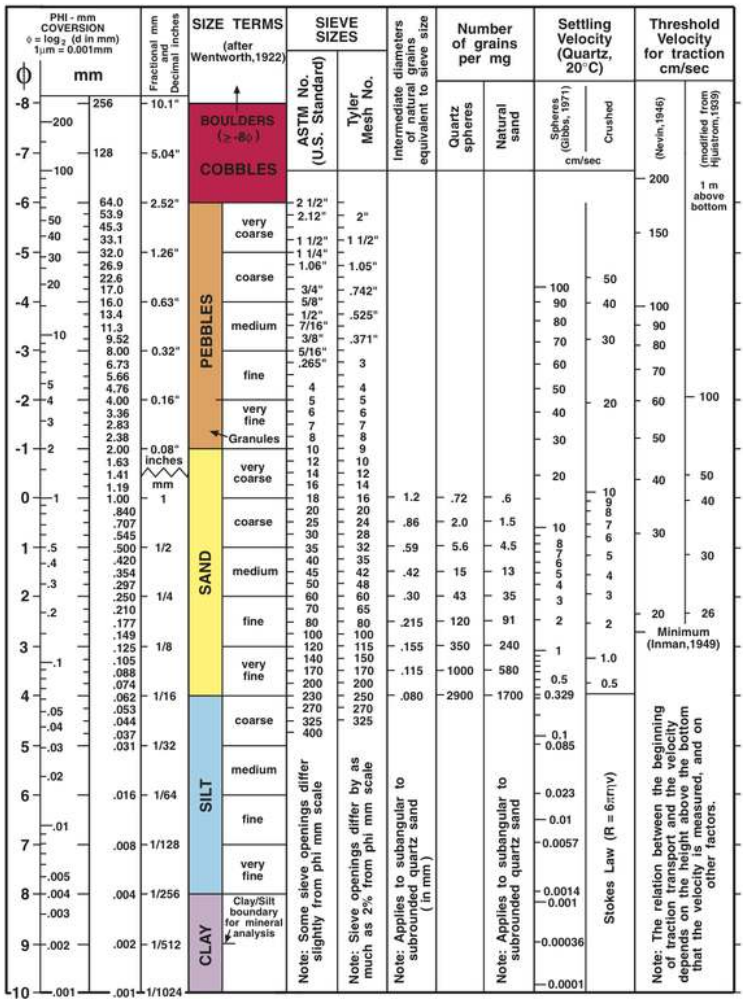


Figure *Section*5.3.4: Size categories of sediments, known as the Wentworth scale.

Section 5.3.2.2 Sorting and Rounding

Sorting describes the range of grain sizes within sediment or sedimentary rock. Geologists use the term "**well-sorted**" to describe a narrow range of grain sizes, and "**poorly-sorted**" for a wide range of grain sizes [11]. It is important to note that soil engineers use similar terms with opposite definitions; well-graded sediment consists of a variety of grain sizes, and poorly graded sediment has roughly the same grain sizes.

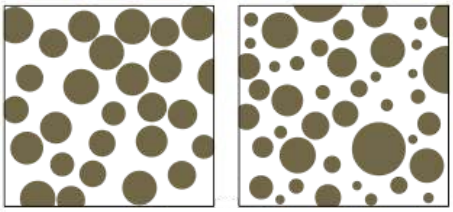


Figure *Section*5.3.5: Left: Well-sorted sediment. Right: poorly-sorted sediment.

When reading the story told by rocks, geologists use sorting to interpret erosion or transport processes, as well as **deposition energy**. For example, wind-blown sands are typically extremely well sorted, while glacial deposits are typically poorly sorted. These characteristics help identify the type of erosion process that occurred. Coarse-grained sediment and poorly-sorted rocks are usually found nearer to the source of sediment, while fine sediments are carried farther away. In a rapidly flowing mountain stream, you would expect to see boulders and pebbles. In a lake fed by the stream, there should be sand and silt deposits. If you also find large boulders in the lake, this may indicate the involvement of another sediment transport process, such as rockfall caused by ice- or root-wedging.

Rounding is created when angular corners of rock fragments are removed from a piece of sediment due to abrasion during transport. Well-rounded sediment grains are defined as being free of all sharp edges. Very **angular** sediment retains the sharp corners. Most clast fragments start with some sharp edges due to the bedrock's crystalline structure, and those points are worn down during transport. More rounded grains imply a longer erosion time or transport distance, or more energetic erosional process. Mineral hardness is also a factor in rounding.

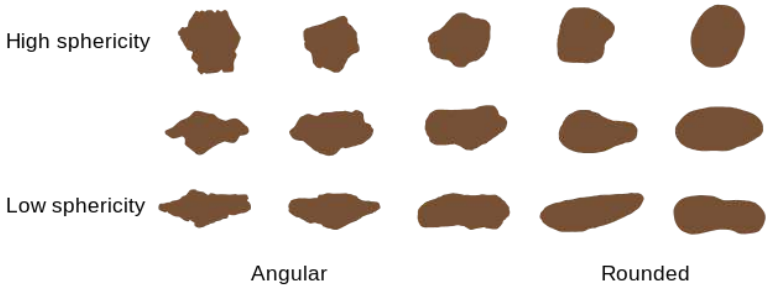


Figure *Section*5.3.6: Degree of rounding in sediments. Sphericity refers to the spherical nature of an object, a completely different measurement unrelated to rounding.

Section 5.3.2.3 Composition and Provenance

Composition describes the mineral components found in sediment or sedimentary rock and may be influenced by local geology, like source rock and hydrology. Other than clay, most sediment components are easily determined by visual inspection. The most commonly found sediment mineral is quartz because of its low chemical reactivity and high hardness, making it resistant to weathering, and its ubiquitous occurrence in continental bedrock. Other commonly found sediment grains include feldspar and lithic fragments. **Lithic fragments** are pieces of fine-grained bedrock [12], and include mud chips, volcanic clasts, or pieces of slate.

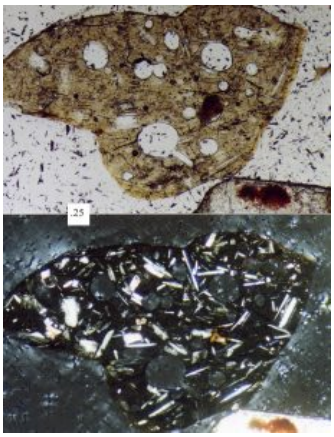


Figure *Section*5.3.7: A microscope view of a sand grain made of basalt, known as a microlithic volcanic lithic fragment. The box is 0.25 mm. Top picture is plane-polarized light; bottom is cross-polarized light.

Weathering of volcanic rock produces Hawaii's famous black (basalt) and green (olivine) sand beaches, which are rare elsewhere on Earth. This is because the local rock is composed almost entirely of basalt and provides an abundant source of dark-colored clasts loaded with mafic minerals. According to the Goldich Dissolution Series, clasts high in mafic minerals are more easily destroyed compared to clasts composed of felsic minerals like quartz [13].



Figure *Section*5.3.8: Left: Hawaiian beach composed of green olivine sand from weathering of nearby basaltic rock. Right: Sand sample from the green sand beach. (By Siim Sepp; CC BY-SA 3.0 via Wikimedia Commons.)

Geologists use **provenance** to discern the original source of sediment or sedimentary rock. Provenance is determined by analyzing the mineral composition and types of fossils present, as well as textural features like sorting and rounding. Provenance is important for describing tectonic history [14], visualizing paleogeographic formations [15], unraveling an area's geologic history, or reconstructing past supercontinents [16].

In quartz sandstone, sometimes called quartz arenite (SiO_2), age of the provenance may be determined using a rare, durable clast mineral called zircon ($ZrSiO_4$). Zircon, or zirconium silicate, contains traces of uranium, which can be used for age-dating the source bedrock that contributed sediment to the lithified sandstone rock.

Section 5.3.2.4 Classification of Clastic Rocks

Clastic rocks are classified according to the grain size of their sediment [17]. Coarse-grained rocks contain clasts with a predominant grain size larger than sand. Typically, smaller sediment grains, collectively called **groundmass** or **matrix**, fill in much of the volume between the larger clasts, and hold the clasts together. **Conglomerates** are rocks containing coarse rounded clasts, and **breccias** contain angular clasts. Both conglomerates and breccias are usually poorly sorted.



Figure *Section*5.3.9: Megabreccia in Titus Canyon, Death Valley National Park, California.

Medium-grained rocks composed mainly of sand are called **sandstone**, or sometimes **arenite** if well sorted. Sediment grains in sandstone can have a wide variety of mineral compositions, roundness, and sorting. Some sandstone names indicate the rock's mineral composition. **Quartz sandstone** contains predominantly quartz sediment grains. **Arkose** is sandstone with significant amounts of feldspar, usually greater than 25%. Sandstone that contains feldspar, which weathers more quickly than quartz, is useful for analyzing the local geologic history. **Graywacke** is a term with conflicting definitions [18]. Graywacke may refer to sandstone with a muddy matrix, or sandstone with many lithic fragments (small rock pieces).

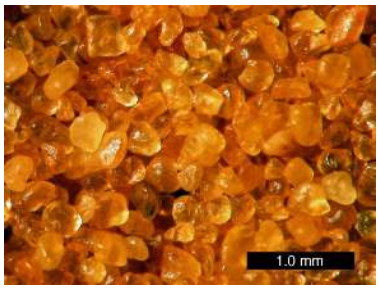


Figure ***Section*5.3.10**: Enlarged image of frosted and rounded windblown sand grains.

Fine-grained rocks include mudstone, shale, siltstone, and claystone. **Mudstone** is a general term for rocks made of sediment grains smaller than sand (less than 2 mm). Rocks that are **fissile**, meaning they separate into thin sheets, are called **shale**. Rocks exclusively composed of silt or clay sediment, are called **siltstone** or **claystone**, respectively. These last two rock types are rarer than mudstone or shale.



Figure ***Section*5.3.11**: The Rochester Shale, New York. Note the thin fissility in the layers.

Rock types found as a mixture between the main classifications may be named using the less-common component as a descriptor. For example, a rock containing some silt but mostly rounded sand and gravel are called silty conglomerate. Sand-rich rock containing minor amounts of clay is called clayey sandstone.



Figure ***Section*5.3.12**: Claystone laminations (layers) from Glacial Lake Missoula.

Section 5.3.3 Chemical, Biochemical, and Organic Sedimentary Rocks

Chemical sedimentary rocks are formed by processes that do not directly involve mechanical weathering and erosion. Chemical weathering may contribute to the dissolved materials in water that ultimately form these rocks. Biochemical and organic sediments are clastic in the sense that they are made from pieces of organic material that are deposited, buried, and lithified; however, they are usually classified as being chemically produced.

Inorganic chemical sedimentary rocks are made of minerals precipitated from ions dissolved in solution, and created without the aid of living organisms. Inorganic chemical sedimentary rocks form in environments where ion concentration, dissolved gases, temperatures, or pressures are changing, which cause minerals to crystallize.

Biochemical sedimentary rocks are formed from shells and bodies of underwater organisms. The living organisms extract chemical components from the water and use them to build shells and other body parts. The components include aragonite, a mineral similar to and commonly replaced by calcite, and silica.

Organic sedimentary rocks come from organic material that has been deposited and lithified, usually underwater. The source materials are plant and animal remains that are transformed through burial and heat, and end up as coal, oil, and methane (natural gas).

Section 5.3.3.1 Inorganic Chemical Sedimentary Rocks

Inorganic chemical sedimentary rocks are formed when minerals precipitate out of an aqueous solution, usually due to water evaporation. The precipitate minerals form various salts known as **evaporites**. For example, the Bonneville Salt Flats in Utah flood with winter rains and dry out every summer, leaving behind salts such as **gypsum** and **halite**. The deposition order of evaporite formation is opposite to their solubility order, i.e. as water evaporates and increases the mineral concentration in solution, less soluble minerals precipitate out sooner than the highly soluble minerals. The deposition order and saturation percentages are depicted in the table, bearing in mind the process in nature may vary from laboratory-derived values [19].



Figure *Section*5.3.13: Salt-covered plain known as the Bonneville Salt Flats, Utah.

Table *Section*5.3.1: Deposition order and saturation percentages. Table after [20].

Mineral sequence	Percent Seawater remaining after evaporation
Calcite	50%
Gypsum/anhydrite	20%
Halite	10%
Various potassium and magnesium salts	5%

Calcium carbonate-saturated water precipitates porous masses of calcite called **tufa**. Tufa can form near degassing water and in saline lakes. Waterfalls downstream of springs often precipitate tufa as the turbulent water enhances the degassing of carbon dioxide, which makes calcite less soluble and causes it to precipitate. Saline lakes concentrate calcium carbonate from a combination of wave action causing degassing, springs in the lakebed, and evaporation. In salty Mono Lake in California, tufa towers were exposed after water was diverted and lowered the lake levels.



Figure *Section*5.3.14: Limestone tufa towers along the shores of Mono Lake, California.

Cave deposits like **stalactites** and **stalagmites** are another form of chemical precipitation of calcite, in a form called **travertine**. Calcite slowly precipitates from water to form the travertine, which often shows banding. This process is similar to the mineral growth on faucets in your home sink or shower that comes from hard (mineral-rich) water. Travertine also forms at hot springs such as Mammoth Hot Spring in Yellowstone National Park.



Figure *Section*5.3.15: Travertine terraces of Mammoth Hot Springs, Yellowstone National Park.

Banded iron formation deposits commonly formed early in Earth's history, but this type of chemical sedimentary rock is no longer being created. Oxygenation of the atmosphere and oceans caused free iron ions, which are water-soluble, to become oxidized and precipitate out of solution. The iron oxide was deposited, usually in bands alternating with layers of chert.

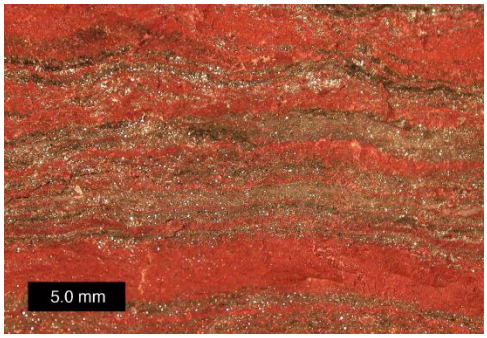


Figure *Section*5.3.16: Alternating bands of iron-rich and silica-rich mud, formed as oxygen combined with dissolved iron.

Chert, another commonly found chemical sedimentary rock, is usually produced from silica (SiO_2) precipitated from groundwater. Silica is highly insoluble on the surface of Earth, which is why quartz is so resistant to chemical weathering. Water deep underground is subjected to higher pressures and temperatures, which helps dissolve silica into an aqueous solution. As the groundwater rises toward or emerges at the surface, the silica precipitates out, often as a cementing agent or into **nodules**. For example, the bases of the geysers in Yellowstone National Park are surrounded by silica deposits called geyserite or **sinter**. The

silica is dissolved in water that is thermally heated by a relatively deep magma source. Chert can also form biochemically and is discussed in the Biochemical subsection. Chert has many synonyms, some of which may have gem value such as jasper, flint, onyx, and agate, due to subtle differences in colors, striping, etc., but chert is the more general term used by geologists for the entire group.



Figure ***Section*5.3.17**: A type of chert, flint, shown with a lighter weathered crust.

Oolites are among the few limestone forms created by an inorganic chemical process, similar to what happens in evaporite deposition. When water is oversaturated with calcite, the mineral precipitates out around a nucleus, a sand grain or shell fragment, and forms little spheres called **ooids** (see figure). As evaporation continues, the ooids continue building concentric layers of calcite as they roll around in gentle currents.

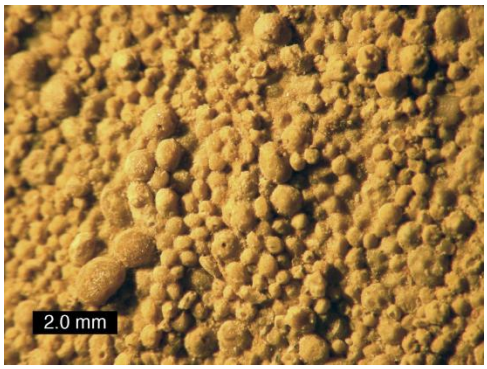


Figure ***Section*5.3.18**: Ooids in an oolite.

Section 5.3.3.2 Biochemical Sedimentary Rocks

Biochemical sedimentary rocks are not that different from chemical sedimentary rocks; they are also form from ions dissolved in solution. However, biochemical sedimentary rocks rely on biological processes to extract the dissolved materials out of the water. Most macroscopic marine organisms use dissolved minerals, primarily aragonite (calcium carbonate), to build hard parts such as shells. When organisms die, the hard parts settle as sediment, which becomes buried, compacted, and cemented into rock.

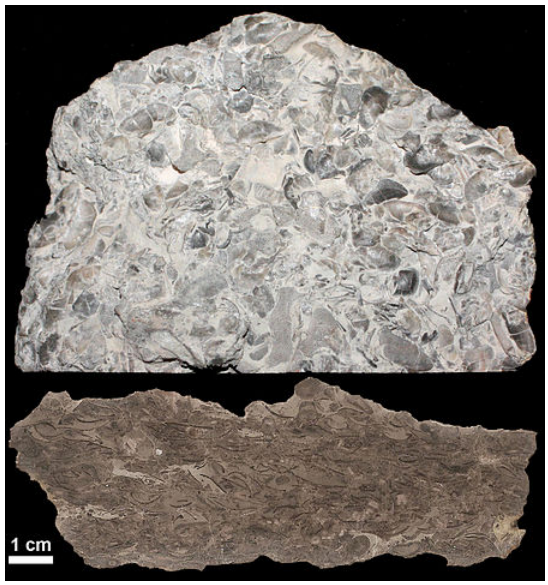


Figure *Section*5.3.19: Fossiliferous limestone (with brachiopods and bryozoans) from the Kope Formation of Ohio. Lower image is a section of the rock that has been etched with acid to emphasize the fossils.

This biochemical extraction and secretion is the main process for forming **limestone**, the most commonly occurring, non-clastic sedimentary rock. Limestone is mostly made of calcite ($CaCO_3$) and sometimes includes dolomite ($CaMg(CO_3)_2$), a close relative. Solid calcite reacts with hydrochloric acid by effervescing or fizzing. Dolomite only reacts to hydrochloric acid when ground into a powder, which can be done by scratching the rock surface.

Limestone occurs in many forms, most of which originate from biological processes. Entire coral reefs and their ecosystems can be preserved in exquisite detail in limestone rock. **Fossiliferous limestone** contains many visible fossils. A type of limestone called **coquina** originates from beach sands made predominantly of shells that were then lithified. Coquina is composed of loosely-cemented shells and shell fragments. You can find beaches like this in modern tropical environments, such as the Bahamas. **Chalk** contains high concentrations of shells from a microorganism called a coccolithophore. **Micrite**, also known as microscopic calcite mud, is a very fine-grained limestone containing microfossils that can only be seen using a microscope.



Figure *Section*5.3.20: Close-up of coquina, a shell hash.

Biogenetic chert forms on the deep ocean floor, created from biochemical sediment made of microscopic organic shells. This sediment, called **ooze**, may be calcareous (calcium carbonate-based) or siliceous (silica-based) depending on the type of shells deposited. For example, the shells of radiolarians (zooplankton) and diatoms (phytoplankton) are made of silica, so they produce siliceous ooze.

Section 5.3.3.3 Organic Sedimentary Rocks

Under the right conditions, intact pieces of organic material or material derived from organic sources are preserved in the geologic record. Although not derived from sediment, this lithified organic material is associated with sedimentary strata and created by similar processes—burial, compaction, and diagenesis. Deposits of these, which are used as fuel, develop in areas where organic material collects in large quantities. Lush swamplands can create conditions conducive to **coal** formation. Shallow-water, organic

material-rich marine sediment can become highly productive **petroleum** and **natural gas** deposits. These are examples of fossil-derived energy sources.



Figure *Section*5.3.21: Bituminous coal, frequently used for fuel. (By Amcyrus2012; CC BY 4.0 via Wikimedia Commons.)

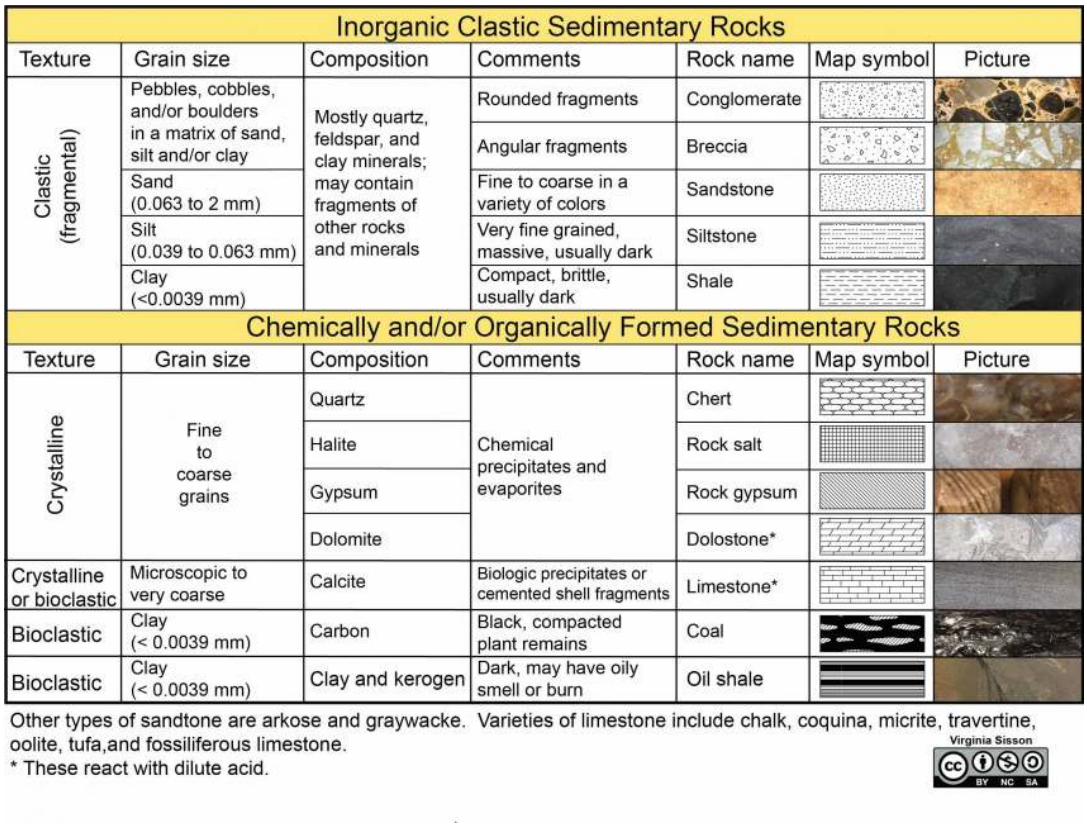
Section 5.3.3.4 Classification of Chemical Sedimentary Rocks

In contrast to detrital sediment, chemical, biochemical, and organic sedimentary rocks are classified based on mineral composition. Most of these are **monomineralic**, composed of a single mineral, so the rock name is usually associated with the identifying mineral. Chemical sedimentary rocks consisting of halite are called **rock salt**. Rocks made of limestone (calcite) are an exception, having elaborate subclassifications and even two competing classification methods: Folk Classification and Dunham Classification [11; 21]. The Folk Classification deals with rock grains and usually requires a specialized, petrographic microscope. The Dunham Classification is based on rock texture, which is visible to the naked eye or using a hand lens and is easier for field applications. Most carbonate geologists use the Dunham system.



Figure *Section*5.3.22: Gyprock, a chemical sedimentary rock made of the mineral gypsum. From the Castile formation of New Mexico.

A chart of types of sedimentary rocks with associated characteristics for identification is shown in the figure below.



Inorganic Clastic Sedimentary Rocks						
Texture	Grain size	Composition	Comments	Rock name	Map symbol	Picture
Clastic (fragmental)	Pebbles, cobbles, and/or boulders in a matrix of sand, silt and/or clay	Mostly quartz, feldspar, and clay minerals; may contain fragments of other rocks and minerals	Rounded fragments	Conglomerate		
			Angular fragments	Breccia		
	Sand (0.063 to 2 mm)		Fine to coarse in a variety of colors	Sandstone		
	Silt (0.039 to 0.063 mm)		Very fine grained, massive, usually dark	Siltstone		
	Clay (<0.0039 mm)		Compact, brittle, usually dark	Shale		
Chemically and/or Organically Formed Sedimentary Rocks						
Texture	Grain size	Composition	Comments	Rock name	Map symbol	Picture
Crystalline	Fine to coarse grains	Quartz	Chemical precipitates and evaporites	Chert		
		Halite		Rock salt		
		Gypsum		Rock gypsum		
		Dolomite		Dolostone*		
Crystalline or bioclastic	Microscopic to very coarse	Calcite	Biologic precipitates or cemented shell fragments	Limestone*		
Bioclastic	Clay (< 0.0039 mm)	Carbon	Black, compacted plant remains	Coal		
Bioclastic	Clay (< 0.0039 mm)	Clay and kerogen	Dark, may have oily smell or burn	Oil shale		

Other types of sandtone are arkose and graywacke. Varieties of limestone include chalk, coquina, micrite, travertine, oolite, tufa,and fossiliferous limestone.
* These react with dilute acid.

Virginia Sisson

Figure *Section*5.3.23: Sedimentary rock identification chart. (By Virginia Sisson; CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 via The Story of Earth.)

Section 5.3.4 References

9. Udden, J. A. Mechanical composition of clastic sediments. *Geol. Soc. Am. Bull.* **25**, 655–744 (1914).

10. Wentworth, C. K. A scale of grade and class terms for clastic sediments. *J. Geol.* **30**, 377–392 (1922).

11. Folk, R. L. Petrography of sedimentary rocks. *Univ. Texas, Hemphill, Austin, Tex* **182**, (1974).

12. Dickinson, W. R. Interpreting detrital modes of graywacke and arkose. *J. Sediment. Res.* **40**, (1970).

13. Affolter, M. D. On the nature of volcanic lithic fragments: Definition source and evolution. (2004).

14. Dickinson, W. R. & Suczek, C. A. Plate tectonics and sandstone compositions. *AAPG Bull.* **63**, 2164–2182 (1979).

15. Johnson, C. L. *et al.* Sedimentary response to arc-continent collision, Permian, southern Mongolia. *Geological Society of America Special Papers* **436**, 363–390 (2008).

16. Cawood, P. A., Nemchin, A. A., Strachan, R., Prave, T. & Krabbendam, M. Sedimentary basin and detrital zircon record along East Laurentia and Baltica during assembly and breakup of Rodinia. *J. Geol. Soc. London* **164**, 257–275 (2007).

17. Grabau, A. W. *On the classification of sedimentary rocks*. (1904).

18. R. H. Dott, J. Wacke, Graywacke and Matrix–What Approach to Immature Sandstone Classification? *Journal of Sedimentary Research* **34**, (1964).

19. Borchert, H. & Muir, R. O. *Salt deposits: the origin, metamorphism and deformation of evaporites*. (Van Nostrand, 1964).

20. Boggs, S. J. *Principles of sedimentology and stratigraphy*. (Pearson, 2011).

21. Dunham, R. J. Classification of carbonate rocks according to depositional textures. (1962).

This page titled Section 5.3: Sedimentary Rocks is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Chris Johnson, Matthew D. Affolter, Paul Inkenbrandt, & Cam Mosher (OpenGeology) via source content that was edited to the style and standards of the LibreTexts platform.

- **5.3: Sedimentary Rocks** by Chris Johnson, Matthew D. Affolter, Paul Inkenbrandt, & Cam Mosher is licensed CC BY-NC-SA 4.0. Original source: https://opengeology.org/textbook/.

Section 5.4: Sedimentary Structures

Sedimentary structures are visible textures or arrangements of sediments within a rock. Geologists use these structures to interpret the processes that made the rock and the environment in which it formed. They compare sedimentary structures formed in modern environments to lithified counterparts in ancient rocks. Below is a summary discussion of common sedimentary structures that are useful for interpretations in the rock record.

Section 5.4.1 Bedding Planes

The most basic sedimentary structure is **bedding planes**, the planes that separate the layers or **strata** in sedimentary and some volcanic rocks. Visible in exposed outcroppings, each bedding plane indicates a change in sediment deposition conditions. This change may be subtle. For example, if a section of underlying sediment firms up, this may be enough to create a form or a layer that is dissimilar from the overlying sediment. Each layer is called a **bed**, or **stratum**, the most basic unit of **stratigraphy**, the study of sedimentary layering.



Figure *Section*5.4.1: Horizontal strata in southern Utah.

As would be expected, bed thickness can indicate sediment deposition quantity and timing. Technically, a bed is a bedding plane thicker than 1 cm (0.4 in) and the smallest mappable unit. A layer thinner than 1 cm (0.4 in) is called a **lamina** [22]. **Varves** are bedding planes created when laminae and beds are deposited in repetitive cycles, typically daily or seasonally [23]. Varves are valuable geologic records of climatic histories, especially those found in lakes and glacial deposits.



Figure *Section*5.4.2: Students from the University of Wooster examine beds of Ordovician limestone in central Tennessee.

Section 5.4.2 Graded Bedding

Graded bedding refers to a sequence of increasingly coarse- or fine-grained sediment layers. Graded bedding often develops when sediment deposition occurs in an environment of decreasing energy. A **Bouma sequence** is graded bedding observed in a clastic rock called **turbidite** [24]. Bouma sequence beds are formed by offshore **sediment gravity flows**, which are underwater flows of sediment. These subsea density flows begin when sediment is stirred up by an energetic process and becomes a dense slurry of

mixed grains. The sediment flow courses downward through submarine channels and canyons due to gravity acting on the density difference between the denser slurry and less dense surrounding seawater. As the flow reaches deeper ocean basins it slows down, loses energy, and deposits sediment in a Bouma sequence of coarse grains first, followed by increasingly finer grains.

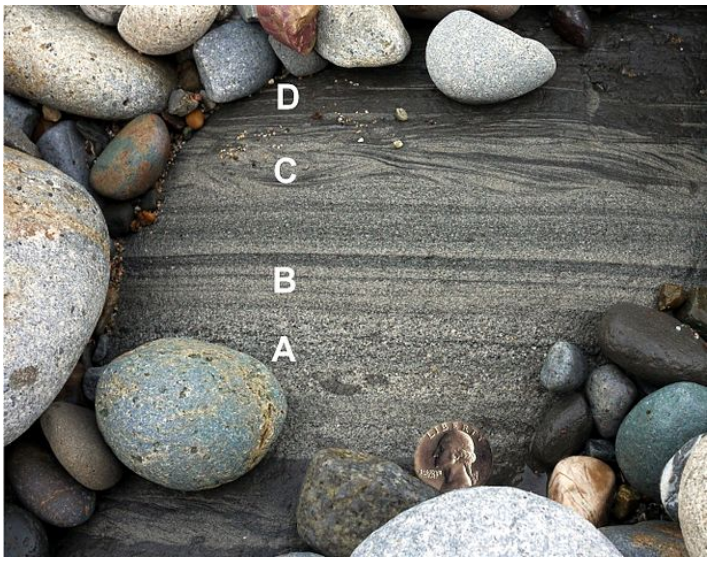


Figure *Section*5.4.3: Image of the classic Bouma sequence. A=coarse- to fine-grained sandstone, possibly with an erosive base. B=laminated medium- to fine-grained sandstone. C=rippled fine-grained sandstone. D=laminated siltstone grading to mudstone.

Section 5.4.3 Flow Regime and Bedforms

In fluid systems, such as moving water or wind, sand is the most easily transported and deposited sediment grain. Smaller particles like silt and clay are less movable by fluid systems because the tiny grains are chemically attracted to each other and stick to the underlying sediment. Under higher flow rates, the fine silt and clay sediment tend to stay in place and the larger sand grains get picked up and moved.

Bedforms are sedimentary structures created by fluid systems working on sandy sediment [25]. Grain size, flow velocity, and **flow regime** or pattern interact to produce bedforms having unique, identifiable physical characteristics. Flow regimes are divided into **upper** and **lower regimes**, which are further divided into uppermost, upper, lower, and lowermost parts. The table below shows bedforms and their associated flow regimes. For example, the dunes bedform is created in the upper part of the lower flow regime.

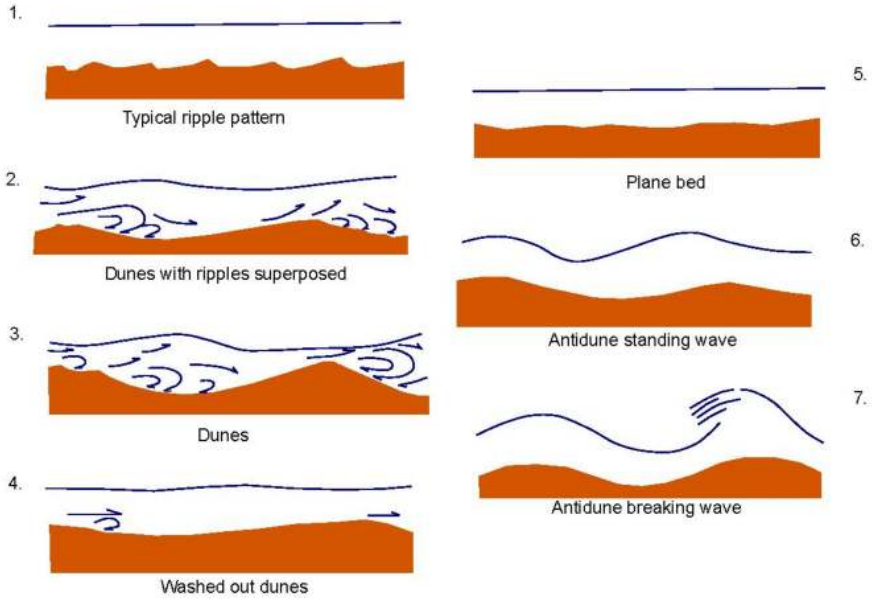


Figure *Section*5.4.4: Bedforms from under increasing flow velocities.

Table *Section*5.4.1: Bedforms and their associated flow regimes.

Flow Regime (part)	Bedform	Description
Lower (lowest)	Plane bed	Lower plane bed, flat laminations
Lower (lower)	Ripples	Small (with respect to flow) inclined layers dipping downflow
Lower (upper)	Dunes	Larger inclined cross beds, ±ripples, dipping downflow
Upper (lower)	Plane bed	Flat layers, can include lined-up grains (parting lineations)
Upper (upper)	Antidunes	Hard to preserve reverse dunes dipping shallowly upflow
Upper (uppermost)	Chutes/pools *(rare)*	Erosional, not really a bedform; rarely found preserved

Section 5.4.3.1 Plane Beds

Plane beds created in the lower flow regime are like bedding planes, on a smaller scale. The flat, parallel layers form as sandy sediment piles and moves on top of layers below. Even non-flowing fluid systems, such as lakes, can produce sediment plane beds. Plane beds in the upper flow regime are created by fast-flowing fluids. They may look identical to lower-flow-regime beds; however, they typically show **parting lineations**, slight alignments of grains in rows and swaths, caused by high sediment transport rates that only occur in upper flow regimes.



Figure *Section*5.4.5: Subtle lines across this sandstone (trending from the lower left to upper right) are parting lineations.

Section 5.4.3.2 Ripples

Ripples are known by several names: **ripple marks**, ripple cross-beds, or ripple cross laminations. The ridges or undulations in the bed are created as sediment grains pile up on top of the plane bed. With the exception of dunes, the scale of these beds is typically measured in centimeters. Occasionally, large flows like glacial lake outbursts can produce ripples as tall as 20 m (66 ft).



Figure *Section*5.4.6: Left: Modern current ripple in sand from the Netherlands. The flow creates a steep side down current. In this image, the flow is from right to left. Right: A bidirectional flow creates this symmetrical wave ripple in rocks from Nomgon, Mongolia. Note the crests of the ripples have been eroded away by subsequent flows in places.

First scientifically described by Hertha Ayrton [26], ripple shapes are determined by flow type and can be straight-crested, sinuous, or complex. Asymmetrical ripples form in a unidirectional flow. Symmetrical ripples are the result of an oscillating back-and-forth flow typical of intertidal swash zones. Climbing ripples are created from high sedimentation rates and appear as overlapping layers of ripple shapes.



Figure *Section*5.4.7: Climbing ripple deposit from India.

Section 5.4.3.3 Dunes

Dunes are very large and prominent versions of ripples and typical examples of large cross-bedding [27]. **Cross bedding** happens when ripples or dunes pile atop one another, interrupting, and/or cutting into the underlying layers. Desert sand dunes are probably the first image conjured up by this category of bedform.



Figure *Section*5.4.8: Lithified cross-bedded dunes from the high country of Zion National Park, Utah. The complexity of bedding planes results from the three-dimensional network of ancient dune flows.

Dunes are the most common sedimentary structure found within channelized flows of air or water. The biggest difference between river dunes and air-formed (desert) dunes is the depth of the fluid system. Since the atmosphere's depth is immense when compared to a river channel, desert dunes are much taller than those found in rivers. Some famous air-formed dune landscapes include the Sahara Desert, Death Valley, and the Gobi Desert [28].



Figure *Section*5.4.9: The modern sand dune in Morocco.

As airflow moves sediment along, the grains accumulate on the dune's **windward surface** (facing the wind). The angle of the windward side is typically shallower than the **leeward** (downwind) side, which has grains falling down over it. This difference in slopes can be seen in a bed cross-section and indicates the direction of the flow in the past. There are typically two styles of dune beds: the more common **trough cross-beds** with curved windward surfaces, and rarer **planar cross-beds** with flat windward surfaces.

In tidal locations with strong in-and-out flows, dunes can develop in opposite directions. This produces a feature called **herringbone cross-bedding**.



Figure *Section*5.4.10: Herringbone cross-bedding from the Mazomanie Formation, upper Cambrian of Minnesota.

Another dune formation variant occurs when very strong, hurricane-strength, winds agitate parts of the usually undisturbed seafloor. These beds are called **hummocky cross-stratification** and have a 3D architecture of hills and valleys, with inclined and declined layering that matches the dune shapes.



Figure ***Section*5.4.11**: Hummocky-cross stratification, seen as bedding planes within bedding planes in this rock from Australia. (By Rygel, M.C.; CC BY-SA 4.0 via Wikimedia Commons.)

Section 5.4.3.4 Antidunes

Antidunes are so named because they share similar characteristics with dunes, but are formed by a different, opposing process [29]. While dunes form in lower flow regimes, antidunes come from fast-flowing upper flow regimes. In certain conditions of high flow rates, the sediment accumulates upstream of a subtle dip instead of traveling downstream. Antidunes form in phase with the flow; in rivers, they are marked by rapids in the current. Antidunes are rarely preserved in the rock record because the high flow rates needed to produce the beds also accelerate erosion.



Figure ***Section*5.4.12**: Antidunes forming in Urdaibai, Spain.

Section 5.4.4 Bioturbation

Bioturbation is the result of organisms burrowing through soft sediment, which disrupts the bedding layers. These tunnels are backfilled and eventually preserved when the sediment becomes rock. Bioturbation happens most commonly in shallow, marine environments, and can be used to indicate water depth [30].



Figure *Section*5.4.13: Bioturbated sandstone from Australia showing tunnels created by burrowing organisms. (By Rygel, M.C.; CC BY-SA 4.0 via Wikimedia Commons.)

Section 5.4.5 Mudcracks

Mudcracks occur in clay-rich sediment that is submerged underwater and later dries out. Water fills voids in the clay's crystalline structure, causing the sediment grains to swell. When this waterlogged sediment begins to dry out, the clay grains shrink. The sediment layer forms deep polygonal cracks with tapered openings toward the surface [31], which can be seen in profile. The cracks fill with new sediment and become visible veins running through the lithified rock. These dried-out clay beds are a major source of **mud chips**, small fragments of mud or shale, which commonly become inclusions in sandstone and conglomerate. What makes this sedimentary structure so important to geologists is that they only form in certain depositional environments—such as tidal flats that form underwater and are later exposed to air. **Syneresis cracks** are similar in appearance to mud cracks but much rarer; they are formed when subaqueous (underwater) clay sediment shrinks [32].

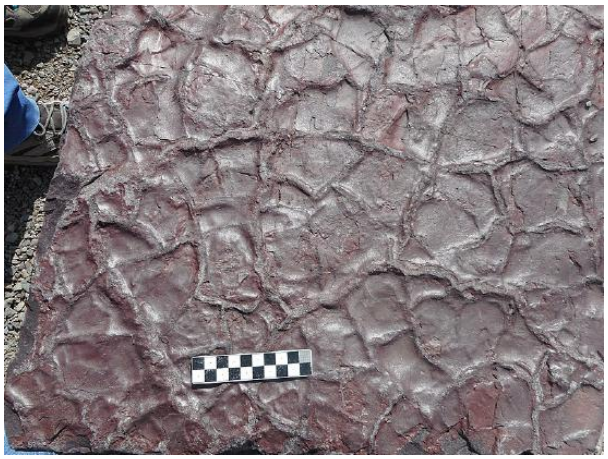


Figure *Section*5.4.14: Mudcracks in the Grinnell Formation, Glacier National Park. (By Carpenter, Kenneth; CC BY-SA 4.0 via Wikimedia Commons.)

Section 5.4.6 Sole Marks

Sole marks are small features typically found in river deposits. They form at the base of a bed, the sole, and on top of the underlying bed. They can indicate several things about the deposition conditions, such as flow direction or stratigraphic up-direction. **Flute casts** or **scour marks** are grooves carved out by the forces of fluid flow and sediment loads. The upstream part of the flow creates steep grooves and downstream the grooves are shallower. The grooves subsequently become filled by overlying sediment, creating a cast of the original hollow [33].

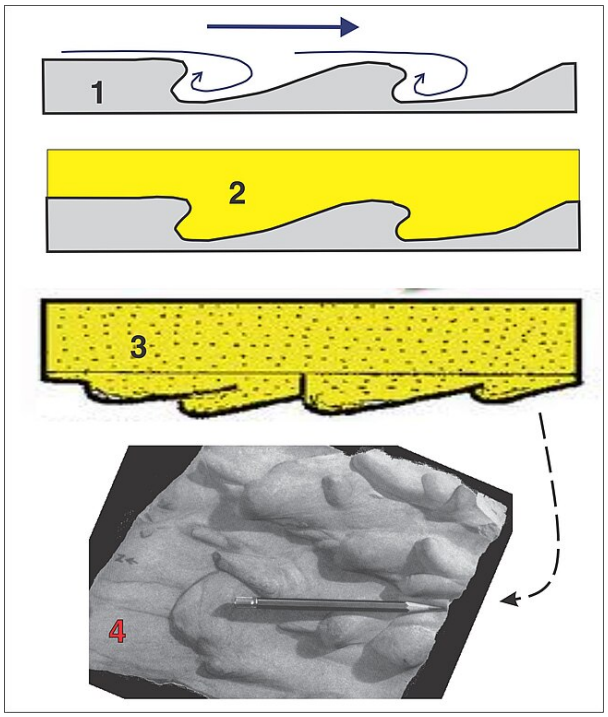


Figure *Section*5.4.15: Formation of a flute cast. 1. Flowing water creates grooves in the sediment. 2. New sediment is deposited on top which preserves the grooves. 3. The sediment is lithified, with the mold of the grooves. 4. The rock has blob-like bulges, flute casts, and is the top layer of sediment that covered the grooves. (By Ceclre.Caballero; CC BY-SA 4.0 via Wikimedia Commons.)

Formed similarly to flute casts but with a more regular and aligned shape, **groove casts** are produced by larger clasts or debris carried along in the water that scrape across the sediment layer. **Tool marks** come from objects like sticks carried in the fluid downstream or embossed into the sediment layer, leaving a depression that later fills with new sediment.



Figure *Section*5.4.16: Tool marks and groove casts on the base of a sandstone. (By Rygel, M.C.; CC BY-SA 4.0 via Wikimedia Commons.)

Load casts, an example of **soft-sediment deformation**, are small indentations made by an overlying layer of coarse sediment grains or clasts intruding into a softer, finer-grained sediment layer [34].



Figure *Section*5.4.17: Load casts on the base of a bed of sandstone. (By Rygel, M.C.; CC BY-SA 4.0 via Wikimedia Commons.)

Section 5.4.7 Raindrop Impressions

Like their name implies, **raindrop impressions** are small pits or bumps found in soft sediment. While they are generally believed to be created by rainfall, they may be caused by other agents such as escaping gas bubbles [35].

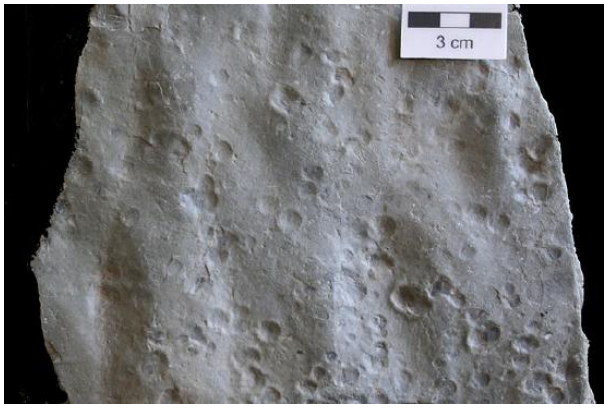


Figure *Section*5.4.18: Mississippian raindrop impressions over wave ripples from Nova Scotia.

Section 5.4.8 Imbrication

Imbrication is a stack of large and usually flat clasts—cobbles, gravels, mud chips, etc—that are aligned in the direction of fluid flow [36]. The clasts may be stacked in rows, with their edges dipping down and flat surfaces aligned to face the flow. Or their flat surfaces may be parallel to the layer and long axes aligned with the flow. Imbrications are useful for analyzing **paleocurrents**, or currents found in the geologic past, especially in alluvial deposits.



Figure *Section*5.4.19: Cobbles in this conglomerate are positioned in a way that they are stacked on each other, which occurred as flow went from left to right.

Section 5.4.9 Geopetal Structures

Geopetal structures [37], also called **up-direction indicators**, are used to identify which way was up when the sedimentary rock layers were originally formed. This is especially important in places where the rock layers have been deformed, tilted, or overturned. Well-preserved mud cracks, sole marks, and raindrop impressions can be used to determine up direction.



Figure *Section*5.4.20: This bivalve (clam) fossil was partially filled with tan sediment, partially empty. Later fluids filled in the fossil with white calcite minerals. The line between the sediment and the later calcite is paleo-horizontal.

Other useful geopetal structures include:

- **Vugs**: Small voids in the rock that usually become filled during diagenesis. If the void is partially filled or filled in stages, it serves as a permanent record of a level bubble, frozen in time.
- Cross bedding – In places where ripples or dunes pile on top of one another, where one cross bed interrupts and/or cuts another below, this shows a cross-cutting relationship that indicates up direction.
- Ripples, dunes: Sometimes the ripples are preserved well enough to differentiate between the crests (top) and troughs (bottom).
- Fossils: Body fossils in life position, meaning the body parts are not scattered or broken, and trace fossils like footprints can provide an up direction. Intact fossilized coral reefs are excellent up indicators because of their large size and easily distinguishable top and bottom. Index fossils, such as ammonites, can be used to age date strata and determine up direction based on relative rock ages.
- Vesicles – Lava flows eliminate gas upwards. An increase of vesicles toward the top of the flow indicates up.



Figure ***Section*5.4.21**: Trace fossil Eubrontes, a dinosaur footprint, from Utah. It shows the geopetal direction is into the image.

Section 5.4.10 References

- 22. Mckee, E. D. & Weir, G. W. Terminology for stratification and cross-stratification in sedimentary rocks. *Geol. Soc. Am. Bull.* **64**, 381–390 (1953).
- 23. de Geer, G. Geochronology of the last 12,000 years. in *Milestones in Geosciences* (eds. Dullo, P. D. W.-C. & e.V., G. V.) 100–110 (Springer Berlin Heidelberg, 2003).
- 24. Bouma, A. H., Kuenen, P. H. & Shepard, F. P. *Sedimentology of some flysch deposits: a graphic approach to facies interpretation*. **168**, (Elsevier Amsterdam, 1962).
- 25. Blatt, H., Middleton, G. V. & Murray, R. *Origin of Sedimentary Rocks*. (Prentice-Hall, Inc., Englewood Cliffs, New Jersey, USA, 1980).
- 26. Ayrton, H. The origin and growth of ripple-mark. *Proceedings of the Royal Society of London. Series A, Containing Papers of a Mathematical and Physical Character* **84**, 285–310 (1910).
- 27. Ashley, G. M. Classification of large-scale subaqueous bedforms: a new look at an old problem-SEPM bedforms and bedding structures. *J. Sediment. Res.* **60**, (1990).
- 28. Dingus, L. & Loope, D. Death in the Dunes. *Nat. Hist.* **109**, 50–55 (2000).
- 29. Gilbert, G. K. & Murphy, E. C. *The Transportation of Débris by Running Water*. (U.S. Government Printing Office, 1914).
- 30. Ekdale, A. A. Classification of Trace Fossils. (1984).
- 31. Plummer, P. S. & Gostin, V. A. Shrinkage cracks: desiccation or synaeresis? *J. Sediment. Res.* **51**, (1981).
- 32. Burst, J. F. Subaqueously formed shrinkage cracks in clay. *J. Sediment. Res.* **35**, (1965).
- 33. Yin, D. *et al.* Bedform genesis in bedrock substrates: Insights into formative processes from a new experimental approach and the importance of suspension-dominated abrasion. *Geomorphology* **255**, 26–38 (2016).
- 34. Pettijohn, F. J. & Potter, P. E. Atlas and glossary of primary sedimentary structures. (2012).
- 35. Metz, R. Why not raindrop impressions? *J. Sediment. Res.* **51**, (1981).
- 36. Karátson, D., Sztanó, O. & Telbisz, T. Preferred clast orientation in volcaniclastic mass-flow deposits: application of a new photo-statistical method. *J. Sediment. Res.* **72**, 823–835 (2002).
- 37. Sander, B. *Contributions to the study of depositional fabrics: rhythmically deposited Triassic limestones and dolomites*. (American Association of Petroleum Geologists, 1951).

This page titled Section 5.4: Sedimentary Structures is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Chris Johnson, Matthew D. Affolter, Paul Inkenbrandt, & Cam Mosher (OpenGeology) via source content that was edited to the style and standards of the LibreTexts platform.

- **5.4: Sedimentary Structures** by Chris Johnson, Matthew D. Affolter, Paul Inkenbrandt, & Cam Mosher is licensed CC BY-NC-SA 4.0. Original source: https://opengeology.org/textbook/.

Section 5.5: Depositional Environments

Section 5.5.1 Depositional Environments

The ultimate goal of many stratigraphy studies is to understand the original depositional environment. Knowing where and how a particular sedimentary rock was formed can help geologists paint a picture of past environments—such as a mountain glacier, gentle floodplain, dry desert, or deep-sea ocean floor. The setting in which sediments are accumulated is called a **depositional environment**. In the case of clastic rocks, the key environmental conditions are related to the amount of energy available to transport sediments, and how far the sediments get from their source before being deposited.

Broadly, depositional environments can be said to be terrestrial, marine, or to reflect a transitional zone between the two. **Terrestrial** refers to depositional environments on land. These may be depositional environments such as deserts found on dry land, but they could also be environments such as freshwater lakes or rivers. Marine refers to environments associated with saltwater seas and oceans. Transitional depositional environments include environments such as deltas, where freshwater rivers empty into saltwater seas or oceans.

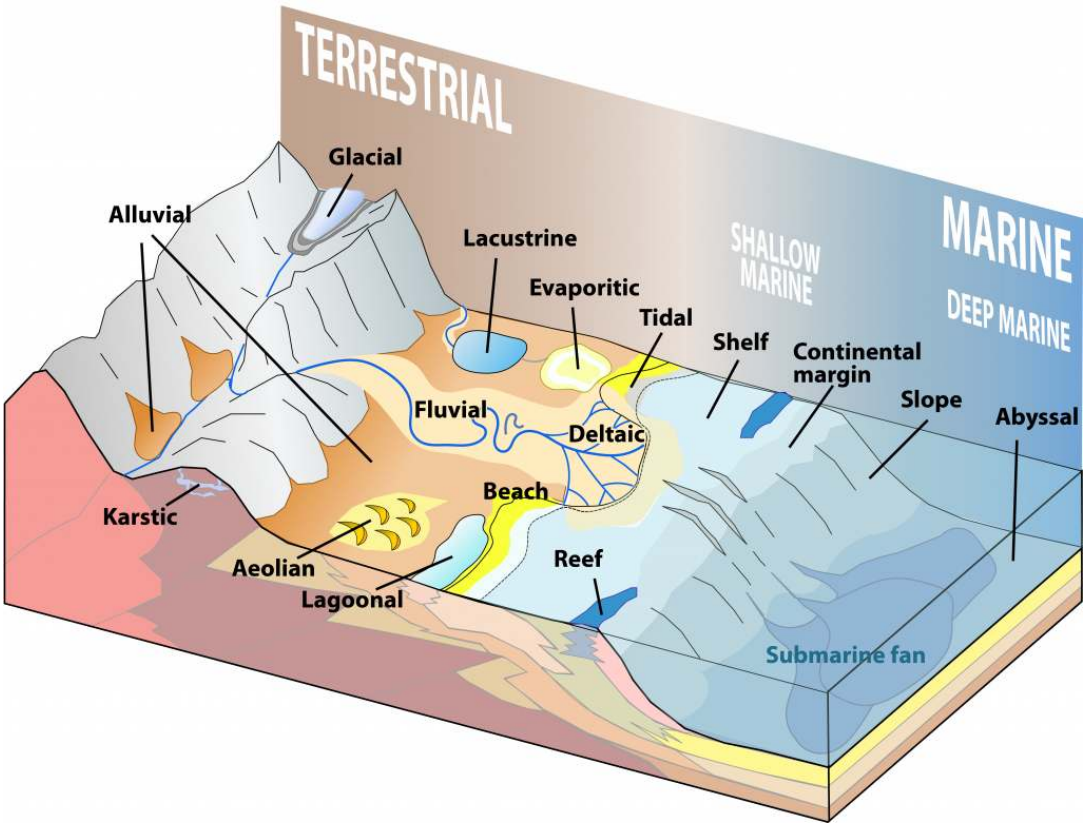


Figure *Section*5.5.1: Some of the important depositional environments for sediments and sedimentary rocks. Source: Karla Panchuk (2021) CC BY-SA 4.0. Modified after Mike Norton (2018) CC BY-SA 3.0. View source.

Tables *Section*5.5.1 and *Section*5.5.2 provide a summary of the processes and sediment types that pertain to the various depositional environments illustrated in the figure above.

Table *Section*5.5.1: Terrestrial Depositional Environments.

Environment	Key Transport Processes	Depositional Settings	Typical Sediments
Glacial	Gravity, moving ice, moving water	Valleys, plains, streams, lakes	Glacial till, gravel, sand, silt, clay
Alluvial	Gravity, moving water	Where steep-sided valleys meet plains	Coarse angular fragments
Fluvial	Moving water	Streams	Gravel, sand, silt, organic matter
Aeolian	Wind	Deserts and coastal regions	Sand, silt
Lacustrine	Moving Water	Lakes	Sand, silt, clay, organic matter
Evaporite	Still water	Lakes in arid regions	Salts, clay
Source: Karla Panchuk (2018), CC BY 4.0. Modified after Steven Earle (2015), CC BY 4.0. View source.			

Table *Section*5.5.2: Marine and Transitional Depositional Environments.

Environment	Key Transport Processes	Depositional Settings	Typical Sediments
Deltaic	Moving water	Deltas	Sand, silt, clay, organic matter
Beach	Waves, long-shore currents	Beaches, spits, sand bars	Gravel, sand
Tidal	Tidal currents	Tidal flats	Fine-grained sand, silt, clay
Reef	Waves, tidal currents	Reefs and adjacent basins	Carbonates
Shallow marine	Waves, tidal currents	Shelves, slopes, lagoons	Carbonates in tropical climates; sand/silt/clay elsewhere
Lagoonal	Little transportation	Lagoon bottom	Carbonates in tropical climates; silt, clay elsewhere
Submarine fan	Underwater gravity flows	Continental slopes, abyssal plains	Gravel, sand, silt, clay
Deep water	Ocean currents	Deep-ocean abyssal plains	Clay, carbonate mud, silica mud
Source: Karla Panchuk (2018), CC BY 4.0. Modified after Steven Earle (2015), CC BY 4.0. View source.			

Marine and transitional depositional environments are described in the chapter on Coastlines. Terrestrial depositional environments are described next.

Section 5.5.2 Terrestrial Depositional Environments

Terrestrial depositional environments are diverse. Water is a major factor in these environments, in liquid or frozen states, or even when it is lacking (arid conditions). The table shows the sediment, rocks, fossils and sedimentary structures typically found in terrestrial depositional environments.

Table *Section*5.5.3: Rock record and terrestrial depositional environments

Location	Sediment	Common Rock Types	Typical Fossils	Sedimentary Structures
Fluvial (river)	sand and mud, can have larger sediments	sandstone, conglomerate	bone beds (rare)	cross beds, channels, asymmetric ripples
Alluvial	mud to boulders, poorly sorted	clastic rocks	rare	channels, mud cracks
Lacustrine (lake)	fine-grained laminations	shale	invertebrates, rare (deep) bone beds	laminations
Paludal (swamp)	plant material	coal	plant debris	rare
Aeolian (dunes)	very well-sorted sand and silt	sandstone	rare	cross beds (large)
Glacial	mud to boulders, poorly sorted	conglomerate (tillite)		striations, drop stones

Section 5.5.2.1 Fluvial

Fluvial (river) systems are formed by water flowing in channels over the land. They generally come in two main varieties: meandering or braided. In **meandering** streams, the flow carries sediment grains via a single channel that wanders back and forth across the floodplain. The sediment deposited farther away from the channel is mostly fine-grained material that only gets deposited during floods.



Figure *Section*5.5.2: The Cauto River in Cuba. Note the sinuosity in the river, which is meandering.

Braided fluvial systems generally contain coarser sediment grains, and form a complicated series of intertwined channels that flow around gravel and sand bars [49].



Figure *Section*5.5.3: The braided Waimakariri river in New Zealand.

Section 5.5.2.2 Alluvial

A distinctive characteristic of **alluvial** systems is the intermittent flow of water. Alluvial deposits are common in arid places with little soil development. Lithified alluvial beds are the primary basin-filling rock found throughout the Basin and Range region of the western United States. The most distinctive alluvial sedimentary deposit is the **alluvial fan**, a large cone of sediment formed by streams flowing out of dry mountain valleys into a wider and more open dry area. Alluvial sediments are typically poorly sorted and coarse-grained, and often found near playa lakes or aeolian deposits [50].



Figure *Section*5.5.4: An alluvial fan spreads out into a broad alluvial plain. From Red Rock Canyon State Park, California.

Section 5.5.2.3 Lacustrine

Lake systems and deposits, called **lacustrine**, often form as sediment from rivers is dumped into a lake and slowly settles to the bottom. Lacustrine deposits are found in lakes in a wide variety of locations. Lake Baikal in southeast Siberia (Russia) is in a tectonic basin. Crater Lake (Oregon) sits in a volcanic caldera. The Great Lakes (northern United States) came from glacially carved and deposited sediment. Ancient Lake Bonneville (Utah) formed in a **pluvial** (from rainfall) setting during a climate that was relatively wetter and cooler than that of modern Utah. Oxbow lakes, named for their curved shape, originated in fluvial floodplains.



Figure *Section*5.5.5: Oregon's Crater Lake was formed about 7700 years ago after the eruption of Mount Mazama.

Lacustrine sediment tends to be very fine-grained and thinly laminated, with only minor contributions from wind-blown, current, and tidal deposits [51]. When lakes dry out or evaporation outpaces precipitation, playas form. **Playa** deposits resemble those of normal lake deposits but contain more evaporite minerals. Certain tidal flats can have playa-type deposits as well.

Section 5.5.2.4 Paludal

Paludal systems include bogs, marshes, swamps, or other wetlands, and usually contain lots of organic matter. Paludal systems typically develop in coastal environments but are common in humid, low-lying, low-latitude, warm zones with large volumes of flowing water. A characteristic paludal deposit is a peat bog, a deposit rich in organic matter that can be converted into coal when lithified. Paludal environments may be associated with tidal, deltaic, lacustrine, and/or fluvial deposition.

Section 5.5.2.5 Aeolian

Aeolian, sometimes spelled eolian or œolian, are deposits of windblown sediments. Since wind has a much lower carrying capacity than water, aeolian deposits typically consist of clast sizes from fine dust to sand [52]. Fine silt and clay can cross very long

distances, even entire oceans suspended in the air.

With sufficient sediment influx, aeolian systems can potentially form large dunes in dry or wet conditions. The figure shows dune features and various types. Parabolic and linear dunes grow from sand anchored by plants and are common in coastal areas.

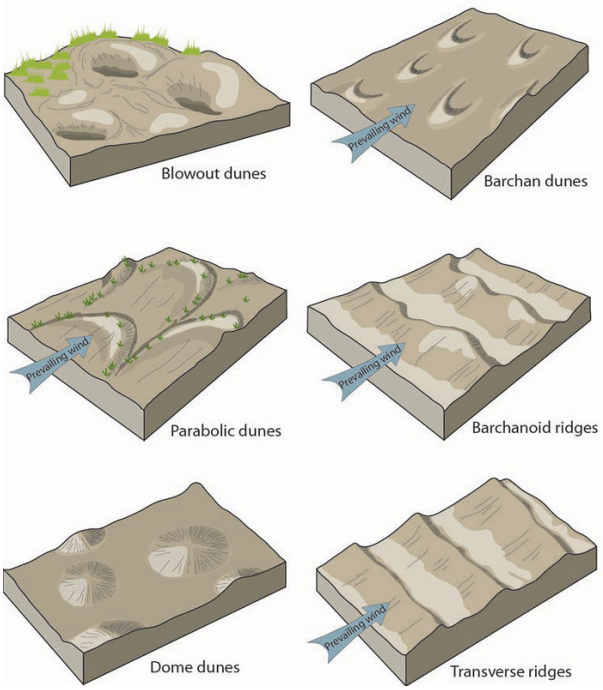


Figure ***Section*5.5.6**: Formation and types of dunes. (By NPS; public domain via Flickr.)

Compacted layers of wind-blown sediment are known as **loess**. Loess commonly starts as finely ground-up rock flour created by glaciers. Such deposits cover thousands of square miles in the Midwestern United States. Loess may also form in desert regions. Silt for the Loess Plateau in China came from the Gobi Desert in China and Mongolia.

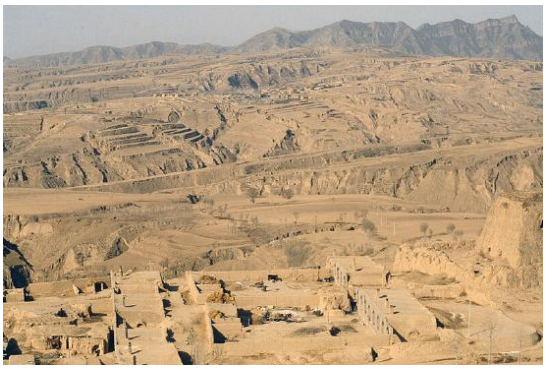


Figure ***Section*5.5.7**: Loess Plateau in China. The loess is so highly compacted that buildings and homes have been carved in it.

Section 5.5.2.6 Glacial

Glacial sedimentation is very diverse and generally consists of the most poorly-sorted sediment deposits found in nature. The main rock type is called **diamictite**, which literally means two sizes, referring to the unsorted mix of large and small rock fragments found in glacial deposits [53]. Many glacial **tills**, glacially derived sediments, include very finely-pulverized rock flour along with giant erratic boulders. The surfaces of larger clasts typically have striations from the rubbing, scraping, and polishing of surfaces by abrasion during the movement of glacial ice. Glacial systems are so large and produce so much sediment, they frequently create multiple, individualized depositional environments, such as fluvial, deltaic, lacustrine, pluvial, alluvial, and/or aeolian.



Figure *Section*5.5.8: Wide range of sediments near Athabaska Glacier, Jasper National Park, Alberta, Canada.

Section 5.5.3 References

- 49. Cant, D. J. Fluvial facies models and their application. (1982).
- 50. Stanistreet, I. G. & McCarthy, T. S. The Okavango Fan and the classification of subaerial fan systems. *Sediment. Geol.* **85**, 115–133 (1993).
- 551. Sly, P. G. Sedimentary processes in lakes. in *Lakes* (ed. Lerman, A.) 65–89 (Springer New York, 1978). doi:10.1007/978-1-4757-1152-3_3
- 52. Bagnold, R. A. The physics of blown sand and desert dunes. *Methum, London, UK* 265 (1941).
- 53. Eyles, N., Eyles, C. & Miall, A. D. Glacial facies models. *Geology* **16**, 374–375 (1988).

This page titled Section 5.5: Depositional Environments is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Karla Panchuk via source content that was edited to the style and standards of the LibreTexts platform.

- **9.4: Depositional Environments and Sedimentary Basins** by Karla Panchuk is licensed CC BY-NC-SA 4.0. Original source: https://pressbooks.bccampus.ca/physicalgeologyh5p/.
- **5.5: Depositional Environments** by Chris Johnson, Matthew D. Affolter, Paul Inkenbrandt, & Cam Mosher is licensed CC BY-NC-SA 4.0. Original source: https://opengeology.org/textbook/.

Section 5.S: Summary

Sedimentary rocks are grouped into two main categories: clastic (detrital) and chemical. Clastic (detrital) rocks are made of mineral clasts or sediment that lithifies into solid material. Sediment is produced by the mechanical or chemical weathering of bedrock and transported away from the source via erosion. Sediment that is deposited, buried, compacted, and sometimes cemented becomes clastic rock. Clastic rocks are classified by grain size; for example sandstone is made of sand-sized particles. Chemical sedimentary rocks come from minerals precipitated out of an aqueous solution and are classified according to mineral composition. The chemical sedimentary rock limestone is made of calcium carbonate. Sedimentary structures have textures and shapes that give insight on depositional histories. Depositional environments depend mainly on fluid transport systems and encompass a wide variety of underwater and above ground conditions. Geologists analyze depositional conditions, sedimentary structures, and rock records to interpret the paleogeographic history of a region.

Section 5.S: Summary is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

- **5.S: Weathering, Erosion, and Sedimentary Rocks (Summary)** is licensed CC BY-NC-SA 4.0.

CHAPTER OVERVIEW

Chapter 6: Metamorphic Rocks

Learning Objectives

- Describe the temperature and pressure conditions of the metamorphic environment.
- Identify and describe the three principal metamorphic agents.
- Describe what recrystallization is and how it affects mineral crystals.
- Explain what foliation is and how it results from directed pressure and recrystallization.
- Explain the relationships among slate, phyllite, schist, and gneiss in terms of metamorphic grade.
- Define index mineral.
- Explain how metamorphic facies relate to plate tectonic processes.
- Describe what a contact aureole is and how contact metamorphism affects surrounding rock.
- Describe the role of hydrothermal metamorphism in forming mineral deposits and ore bodies.



Figure *Chapter*6.1: Painted Wall of Black Canyon of the Gunnison National Park, Colorado, made of 1.7 billion-year-old gneiss intruded by younger pegmatites.

Metamorphic rock, *meta-* meaning change and *–morphos* meaning form, is one of the three rock categories in the rock cycle. Metamorphic rock material has been changed by temperature, pressure, and/or fluids. The **rock cycle** shows that both igneous and sedimentary rocks can become metamorphic rocks. And metamorphic rocks themselves can be re-metamorphosed. Because metamorphism is caused by plate tectonic motion, metamorphic rocks provide geologists with a history book of how past tectonic processes shaped our planet [1].

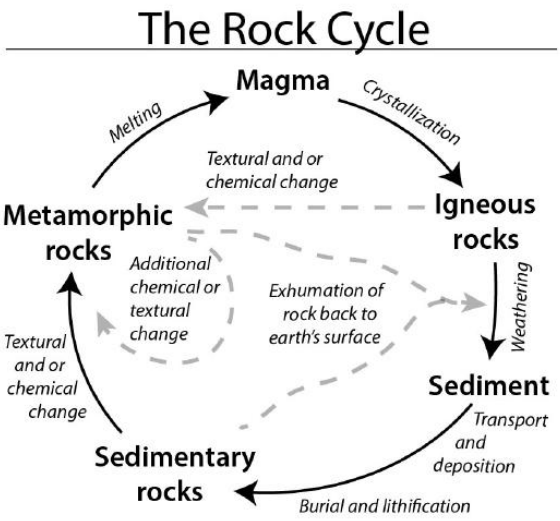


Figure *Chapter*6.2: Rock cycle showing the five materials (such as igneous rocks and sediment) and the processes by which one changes into another (such as weathering). (Source: Peter Davis)

Section 6.1: Metamorphic Processes
Section 6.2: Metamorphic Textures
Section 6.3: Metamorphic Grade
Section 6.4: Metamorphic Environments
Section 6.S: Summary

Chapter 6.1 Reference

1. Yardley BWD (1989) An introduction to metamorphic petrology. Prentice Hall

This page titled Chapter 6: Metamorphic Rocks is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Chris Johnson, Matthew D. Affolter, Paul Inkenbrandt, & Cam Mosher (OpenGeology) via source content that was edited to the style and standards of the LibreTexts platform.

Section 6.1: Metamorphic Processes

Metamorphism occurs when solid rock changes in composition and/or texture without the mineral crystals melting, which is how igneous rock is generated. Metamorphic source rocks, the rocks that experience the metamorphism, are called the **parent rock** or **protolith**, from *proto–* meaning first, and *lithos-* meaning rock. Most metamorphic processes take place deep underground, inside the Earth's crust. During metamorphism, protolith chemistry is mildly changed by increased temperature (heat), a type of pressure called confining pressure, and/or chemically reactive fluids. Rock texture is changed by heat, confining pressure, and a type of pressure called directed stress.

Section 6.1.1 Temperature (Heat)

Temperature measures a substance's energy—an increase in temperature represents an increase in energy [2]. Temperature changes affect the chemical equilibrium or cation balance in minerals. At high temperatures, atoms may vibrate so vigorously they jump from one position to another within the crystal lattice, which remains intact. In other words, this atom swapping can happen while the rock is still solid.

The temperatures of metamorphism lie in between surficial processes (as in sedimentary rock) and magma in the rock cycle. Heat-driven metamorphism begins at temperatures as cold as 200˚C and can continue to occur at temperatures as high as 700°C to 1100°C [3; 4; 5]. Higher temperatures would create magma, and thus, would no longer be a metamorphic process. Temperature increases with increasing depth in the Earth along the geothermal gradient and metamorphic rock records these depth-related temperature changes.

Section 6.1.2 Pressure

Pressure is the force exerted over a unit area on a material. Like heat, pressure can affect the chemical equilibrium of minerals in a rock. The pressure that affects metamorphic rocks can be grouped into confining pressure and directed stress. **Stress** is a scientific term indicating a force. **Strain** is the result of this stress, including metamorphic changes within minerals.

Section 6.1.2.1 Confining Pressure

Pressure exerted on rocks under the surface is due to the simple fact that rocks lie on top of one another. When pressure is exerted from rocks above, it is balanced from below and sides and is called **confining** or **lithostatic pressure**. Confining pressure has equal pressure on all sides (see figure) and is responsible for causing chemical reactions to occur, just like heat. These chemical reactions will cause new minerals to form.

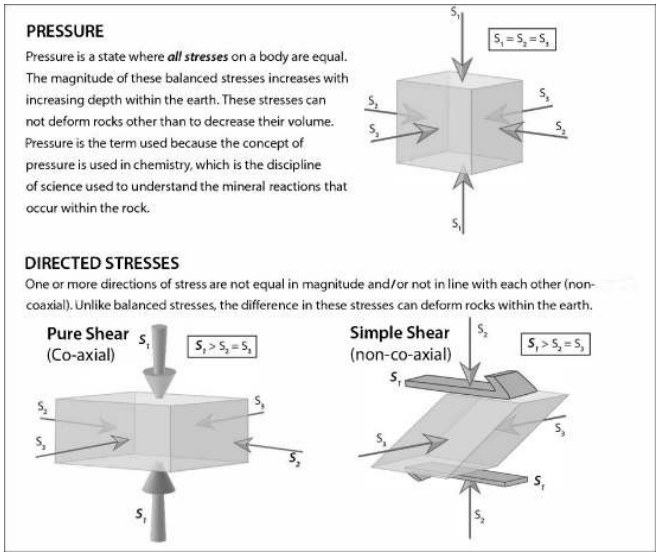


Figure *Section*6.1.1: Difference between pressure and stress and how they deform rocks. Pressure (or confining pressure) has equal stress (forces) in all directions and increases with depth under the Earth's surface. Under directed stress, some stress directions (forces) are stronger than others, and this can deform rocks. Source: Peter Davis

Confining pressure is measured in bars and ranges from 1 bar at sea level to around 10,000 bars at the base of the crust [6]. For metamorphic rocks, pressures range from a relatively low pressure of 3000 bars [5] to around 50,000 bars [5], which occurs around 15-35 kilometers below the surface.

Section 6.1.2.2 Directed Stress

Directed stress, also called **differential** or **tectonic stress**, is an unequal balance of forces on a rock in one or more directions (see the previous figure). Directed stresses are generated by the movement of lithospheric plates. Stress indicates a type of force acting on the rock. Strain describes the resultant processes caused by stress and includes metamorphic changes in the minerals. In contrast to confining pressure, directed stress occurs at much lower pressures and does not generate chemical reactions that change the mineral composition and atomic structure [3]. Instead, directed stress modifies the parent rock at a mechanical level, changing the arrangement, size, and/or shape of the mineral crystals. These crystalline changes create identifying textures, which is shown in the figure below comparing the phaneritic texture of igneous granite with the foliated texture of metamorphic gneiss.



Figure ***Section*6.1.2**: An igneous rock granite (left) and foliated high-temperature and high-pressure metamorphic rock gneiss (right) illustrating a metamorphic texture. (Source: Peter Davis)

Directed stresses produce rock textures in many ways. Crystals are rotated, changing their orientation in space. Crystals can get fractured, reducing their grain size. Conversely, they may grow larger as atoms migrate. Crystal shapes also become deformed. These mechanical changes occur via **recrystallization**, which is when minerals dissolve from an area of rock experiencing high stress and precipitate or regrow in a location having lower stress. For example, recrystallization increases grain size much like adjacent soap bubbles coalesce to form larger ones. Recrystallization rearranges mineral crystals without fracturing the rock structure, deforming the rock like silly putty; these changes provide important clues to understanding the creation and movement of deep underground rock faults.



Figure ***Section*6.1.3**: Pebbles (that used to be spherical or close to spherical) deformed by directed stress. (By Marli Miller; CC BY-NC 4.0 via Geologic Time Pics.)

Section 6.1.3 Fluids

A third metamorphic agent is **chemically reactive fluids** that are expelled by crystallizing magma and created by metamorphic reactions. These reactive fluids are made of mostly water (H_2O) and carbon dioxide (CO_2), and smaller amounts of potassium (K),

sodium (Na), iron (Fe), magnesium (Mg), calcium (Ca), and aluminum (Al). These fluids react with minerals in the protolith, changing its chemical equilibrium and mineral composition, in a process similar to the reactions driven by heat and pressure. In addition to using elements found in the protolith, the chemical reaction may incorporate substances contributed by the fluids to create new minerals. In general, this style of metamorphism, in which fluids play an important role, is called **hydrothermal metamorphism** or **hydrothermal alteration**. Water actively participates in chemical reactions and allows extra mobility of the components in hydrothermal alteration.

Fluid-activated metamorphism is frequently involved in creating economically important mineral deposits that are located next to igneous intrusions or magma bodies. For example, the mining districts in the Cottonwood Canyons and Mineral Basin of northern Utah produce valuable ores such as argentite (silver sulfide), galena (lead sulfide), and chalcopyrite (copper-iron sulfide), as well as the native element gold [2]. These mineral deposits were created from the interaction between a granitic intrusion called the Little Cottonwood Stock and country rock consisting of mostly limestone and dolostone. Hot, circulating fluids expelled by the crystallizing granite reacted with and dissolved the surrounding limestone and dolostone, precipitating out new minerals created by the chemical reaction. Hydrothermal alteration of mafic mantle rock, such as olivine and basalt, creates the metamorphic rock **serpentinite**, a member of the serpentine subgroup of minerals. This metamorphic process happens at mid-ocean spreading centers where newly formed oceanic crust interacts with seawater.

Some hydrothermal alterations remove elements from the parent rock rather than deposit them. This happens when seawater circulates down through fractures in the fresh, still-hot basalt, reacting with and removing mineral ions from it. The dissolved minerals are usually ions that do not fit snugly in the silicate crystal structure, such as copper. The mineral-laden water emerges from the seafloor via hydrothermal vents called black smokers, named after the dark-colored precipitates produced when the hot vent water meets cold seawater. Ancient black smokers were an important source of copper ore for the inhabitants of Cyprus (Cypriots) as early as 4000 BCE, and later by the Romans [8].

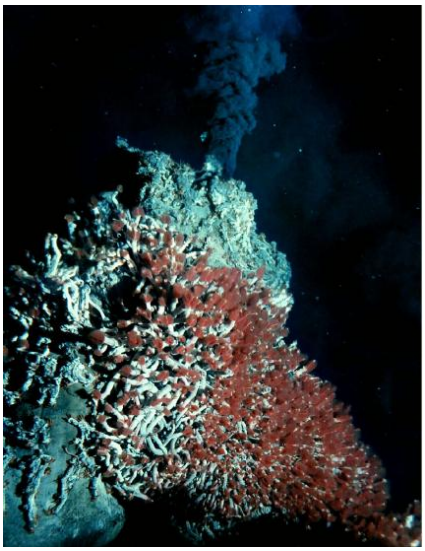


Figure *Section*6.1.4: Black smoker hydrothermal vent with a colony of giant (6 foot) tube worms.

Section 6.1.4 References

- 2. Jeong I-K, Heffner RH, Graf MJ, Billinge SJL (2003) Lattice dynamics and correlated atomic motion from the atomic pair distribution function. Phys Rev B Condens Matter 67:104301
- 3. Winter JD (2009) Principles of igneous and metamorphic petrology, 2 edition. Pearson, New York
- 4. Boehler R (1996) Melting temperatures of the Earth's mantle and core: Earth's thermal structure. Annual Review of Earth and Planetary Sciences 24:15–40. https://doi.org/10.1146/annurev.earth.24.1.15
- 5. Issitt ML (2012) Ultra-High-Pressure Metamorphism. Earth Science: Earth Materials & Resources 523
- 6. Petrini, Podladchikov (2000) Lithospheric pressure–depth relationship in compressive regions of thickened crust. Journal of Metamorphic Geology 18:67–77. https://doi.org/10.1046/j.1525-1314.2000.00240.x
- 8. (2007) Timeline of Art History. Reference Reviews 21:45–45

This page titled Section 6.1: Metamorphic Processes is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Chris Johnson, Matthew D. Affolter, Paul Inkenbrandt, & Cam Mosher (OpenGeology) via source content that was edited to the style and standards of the LibreTexts platform.

- **6.2: Metamorphic Processes** by Chris Johnson, Matthew D. Affolter, Paul Inkenbrandt, & Cam Mosher is licensed CC BY-NC-SA 4.0. Original source: https://opengeology.org/textbook/.

Section 6.2: Metamorphic Textures

Metamorphic texture is the description of the shape and orientation of mineral grains in a metamorphic rock. Metamorphic rock textures are foliated, non-foliated, or lineated are described below.

Table *Section*6.2.1: Metamorphic rock identification table.

Identify rock's foliation		Textural features	Mineral composition	Rock name	Parent rock
Foliated (layered texture)	Fine-grained or no visible grains	Flat, slaty cleavage is well developed. Dense, microscopic grains may exhibit slight sheen (or dull luster). Clanky sound when struck. Breaks into hard, flat sheets.	Fine, microscopic clay or mica	Slate	Shale
		Finely crystalline; micas hardly discernible, but impart a sheen or luster. Breaks along wavy surfaces.	Dark silicates and micas	Phyllite	Siltstone or shale
	Medium- to coarse-grained	Schistose texture. Foliation formed by alignment of visible crystals. Rock breaks along scaly foliation surfaces. Medium to fine-grained. Sparkling appearance.	Common minerals include chlorite, biotite, muscovite, garnet, and hornblende. Recognizable minerals used as part of rock name. Porphyroblasts common.	Mica schist	Siltstone or shale
				Garnet schist	
		Gneissic banding. Coarse-grained. Foliation present as minerals arranged into alternating light and dark layers giving the rock a banded texture in side view. Crystalline texture. No cleavage.	Light-colored quartz and feldspar; dark ferromagnesian minerals	Gneiss	Shale or granitic rocks
Non-foliated (no layered texture)	Fine-grained or no visible grains	Medium- to coarse-grained crystalline structure.	Crystals of amphibole (hornblende) in blade-like crystals	Amphibolite	Basalt, gabbro, or ultramafic igneous rocks
		Microcrystalline texture. Glassy black sheen. Conchoidal fracture. Low density.	Fine, tar-like, organic makeup	Anthracite coal	Coal
		Dense and dark-	Microscopic dark	Hornfels	Many rock types

Identify rock's foliation		Textural features	Mineral composition	Rock name	Parent rock
		colored. Fine or microcrystalline texture. Very hard. Color can range from gray, gray-green to black.	silicates		
		Microcrystalline or no visible grains with smooth, wavy surfaces. May be dull or glossy. Usually shades of green.	Serpentine. May have fibrous asbestos visible.	Serpentinite	Ultramafic igneous rocks or peridotite
	Fine- to coarse-grained	Microcrystalline or no visible grains. Can be scratched with a fingernail. Shades of green, gray, brown, or white. Soapy feel.	Talc	Soapstone or talc schist	Ultramafic igneous rocks
		Crystalline. Hard (scratches glass). Breaks across grains. Sandy or sugary texture. Color variable; can be white, pink, buff, brown, red, purple.	Quartz grains fused together. Grains will not rub off like sandstone.	Quartzite	Quartz sandstone
		Finely crystalline (resembling a sugar cube) to medium or coarse texture. Color variable; white, pink, gray, among others. Fossils in some varieties.	Calcite or dolomite crystals tightly fused together. Calcite effervesces with HCl; dolomite effervesces only when powdered.	Marble	Limestone or dolostone
		Texture of conglomerate, but breaks across clasts as easily as around them. Pebbles may be stretched (lineated) or cut by rock cleavage.	Granules or pebbles are commonly granitic or jasper, chert, quartz, or quartzite.	Meta-conglomerate	Conglomerate

Section 6.2.1 Foliation and Lineation

Foliation is a term used that describes minerals lined up in planes. Certain minerals, most notably the mica group, are mostly thin and planar by default. Foliated rocks typically appear as if the minerals are stacked like pages of a book, thus the use of the term 'folia', like a leaf. Other minerals, with hornblende being a good example, are longer in one direction, linear like a pencil or a needle, rather than a planar-shaped book. These linear objects can also be aligned within a rock. This is referred to as a **lineation**. Linear crystals, such as hornblende, tourmaline, or stretched quartz grains, can be arranged as part of a foliation, a lineation, or foliation/lineation together. If they lie on a plane with mica, but with no common or preferred direction, this is foliation. If the minerals line up and point in a common direction, but with no planar fabric, this is lineation. When minerals lie on a plane AND point in a common direction; this is both foliation and lineation.

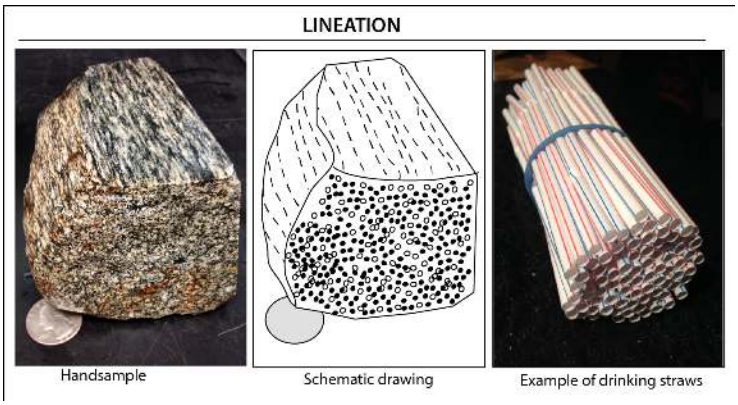


Figure ***Section*6.2.1**: Example of lineation where minerals are aligned like a stack of straws or pencils. (Source: Peter Davis)

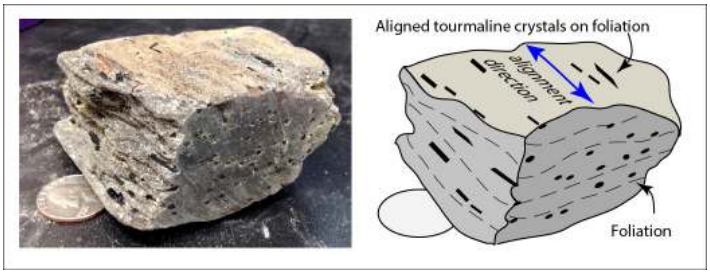


Figure ***Section*6.2.2**: An example of foliation WITH lineation. (Source: Peter Davis)

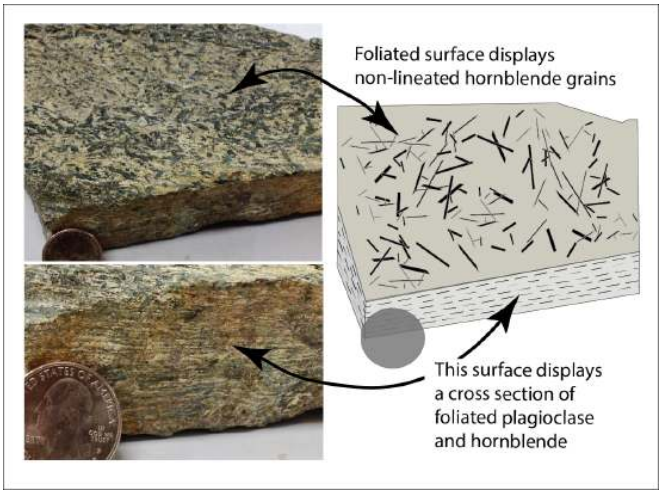


Figure ***Section*6.2.3**: An example of foliation WITHOUT lineation. (Source: Peter Davis)

Foliated metamorphic rocks are named based on the style of their foliations. Each rock name has a specific texture that defines and distinguishes it, with their descriptions listed below.

Slate is a fine-grained metamorphic rock that exhibits a foliation called **slaty cleavage** that is the flat orientation of the small platy crystals of mica and chlorite forming perpendicular to the direction of stress. The minerals in slate are too small to see with the

unaided eye. The thin layers in slate may resemble sedimentary bedding, but they are a result of directed stress and may lie at angles to the original strata. In fact, original sedimentary layering may be partially or completely obscured by the foliation. Thin slabs of slate are often used as a building material for roofs and tiles.

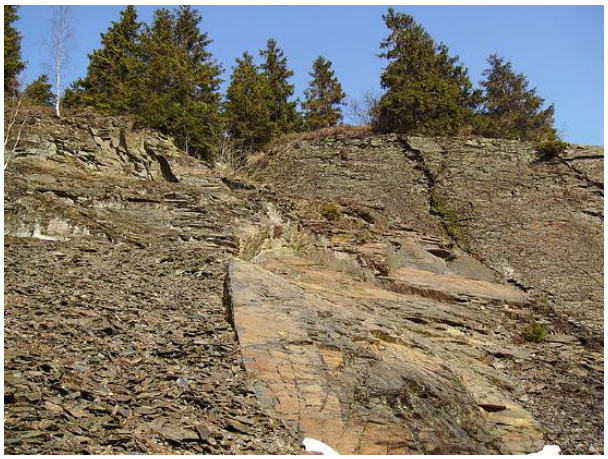


Figure *Section*6.2.4: Slate mine in Germany. Note the rock breaks along flat, even planes, showing slaty cleavage.

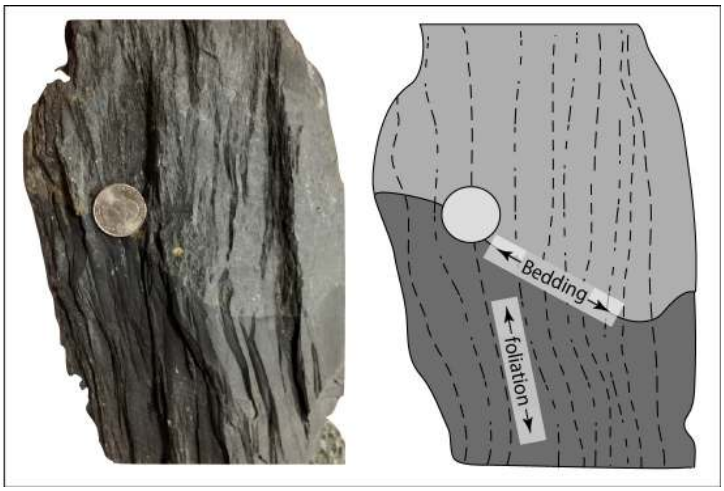


Figure *Section*6.2.5: Foliation vs. bedding. Foliation is caused by metamorphism. Bedding is a result of sedimentary processes. They do not have to align. (Source: Peter Davis)

Phyllite is a foliated metamorphic rock in which platy minerals have grown larger and the surface of the foliation shows a sheen from light reflecting from the grains, perhaps even a wavy appearance, called **crenulations**. Similar to phyllite but with even larger grains is the foliated metamorphic rock **schist**, which has large platy grains visible as individual crystals. Common minerals are muscovite, biotite, and porphyroblasts of garnets. A **porphyroblast** is a large crystal of a particular mineral surrounded by small grains. **Schistosity** is a textural description of foliation created by the parallel alignment of platy visible grains. Some schists are named for their minerals such as mica schist (mostly micas), garnet schist (mica schist with garnets), and staurolite schist (mica schists with staurolite).



Figure *Section*6.2.6: Phyllite with a small fold. (Source: Peter Davis)



Figure *Section*6.2.7: Schist.



Figure *Section*6.2.8: Garnet staurolite muscovite schist.

Gneissic banding is a metamorphic foliation in which visible silicate minerals separate into dark and light bands or lineations. These grains tend to be coarse and often folded. A rock with this texture is called **gneiss**. Since gneiss forms at the highest temperatures and pressures, some partial melting may occur. This partially melted rock is a transition between metamorphic and igneous rocks called a **migmatite** [9].



Figure *Section*6.2.9: Gneiss.

Migmatites appear as dark and light banded gneiss that may be swirled or twisted since some minerals started to melt. Thin accumulations of light-colored rock layers can occur in a darker rock that are parallel to each other or even cut across the gneissic foliation. The lighter colored layers are interpreted to be the result of the separation of a felsic igneous melt from the adjacent highly metamorphosed darker layers, or injection of a felsic melt from some distance away.



Figure *Section*6.2.10: Migmatite.

Section 6.2.2 Non-foliated

Non-foliated textures do not have lineations, foliations, or other alignments of mineral grains. Non-foliated metamorphic rocks are typically composed of just one mineral and, therefore, usually show the effects of metamorphism with recrystallization in which crystals grow together, but with no preferred direction. The two most common examples of non-foliated rocks are quartzite and marble. **Quartzite** is a metamorphic rock from the protolith sandstone. In quartzite, the quartz grains from the original sandstone are enlarged and interlocked by recrystallization. A defining characteristic for distinguishing quartzite from sandstone is that when broken with a rock hammer, the quartz crystals break across the grains. In a sandstone, only a thin mineral cement holds the grains together, meaning that a broken piece of sandstone will leave the grains intact. Because most sandstones are rich in quartz, and quartz is a mechanically and chemically durable substance, quartzite is very hard and resistant to weathering.

Marble is metamorphosed limestone (or dolostone) composed of calcite (or dolomite). Recrystallization typically generates larger interlocking crystals of calcite or dolomite. Marble and quartzite often look similar, but these minerals are considerably softer than quartz. Another way to distinguish marble from a quartzite is with a drop of dilute hydrochloric acid. Marble will effervesce (fizz) if it is made of calcite.



Figure *Section*6.2.11: Left: Marble. Right: Quarzite.



Figure *Section*6.2.12: Left: Macro view of quartzite. Note the interconnectedness of the grains. Right: Unmetamorphosed, unconsolidated sand grains have space between the grains.

A third non-foliated rock is **hornfels,** identified by its dense, fine-grained, hard, blocky or splintery texture composed of several silicate minerals. Crystals in hornfels become smaller with metamorphism and get so small that specialized study is required to identify them. These are common around intrusive igneous bodies and are hard to identify. The protolith of hornfels can be even harder to distinguish, which can be anything from mudstone to basalt.

Section 6.2.3 References

- 9. Sawyer EW (2008) Atlas of migmatites. NRC Research Press and Mineralogical Association of Canada, Canada

---

This page titled Section 6.2: Metamorphic Textures is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Chris Johnson, Matthew D. Affolter, Paul Inkenbrandt, & Cam Mosher (OpenGeology) via source content that was edited to the style and standards of the LibreTexts platform.

- **6.3: Metamorphic Textures** by Chris Johnson, Matthew D. Affolter, Paul Inkenbrandt, & Cam Mosher is licensed CC BY-NC-SA 4.0. Original source: https://opengeology.org/textbook/.

Section 6.3: Metamorphic Grade

Metamorphic grade refers to the range of metamorphic change a rock undergoes, progressing from **low grade** (little metamorphic change) to **high grade** (significant metamorphic change). Low-grade metamorphism begins at temperatures and pressures just above sedimentary rock conditions. The sequence *slate* → *phyllite* → *schist* → *gneiss* illustrates an increasing metamorphic grade.



Figure *Section*6.3.1: Garnet schist.

Geologists use **index minerals** that form at certain temperatures and pressures to identify metamorphic grade. These index minerals also provide important clues to a rock's sedimentary protolith and the metamorphic conditions that created it. Chlorite, muscovite, biotite, garnet, and staurolite are index minerals representing a respective sequence of low-to-high grade rock. The figure shows a **phase diagram** of three index minerals—sillimanite, kyanite, and andalusite—with the same chemical formula (Al_2SiO_5) but having different crystal structures (**polymorphism**) created by different pressure and temperature conditions.

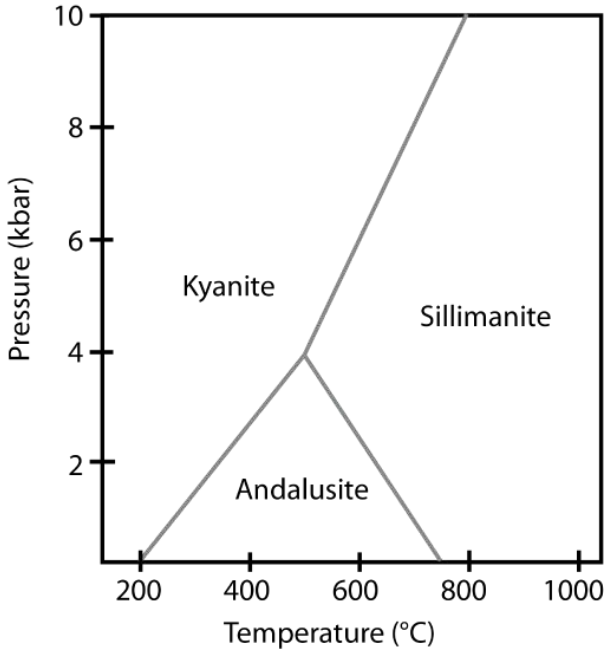


Figure *Section*6.3.1: Phase diagram for kyanite, andalusite and sillimanite.



Figure *Section*6.3.2: Left: Kyanite. Middle: Andalusite. Right: Sillimanite.

Some metamorphic rocks are named based on the highest grade of index mineral present. Chlorite schist includes the low-grade index mineral chlorite. Muscovite schist contains a slightly higher grade muscovite, indicating a greater degree of metamorphism. Garnet schist includes the high-grade index mineral garnet and indicating it has experienced much higher pressures and temperatures than chlorite.

This page titled Section 6.3: Metamorphic Grade is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Chris Johnson, Matthew D. Affolter, Paul Inkenbrandt, & Cam Mosher (OpenGeology) via source content that was edited to the style and standards of the LibreTexts platform.

- **6.4: Metamorphic Grade** by Chris Johnson, Matthew D. Affolter, Paul Inkenbrandt, & Cam Mosher is licensed CC BY-NC-SA 4.0. Original source: https://opengeology.org/textbook/.

Section 6.4: Metamorphic Environments

As with igneous processes, metamorphic rocks form at different zones of pressure (depth) and temperature as shown on the pressure-temperature (P-T) diagram. The term facies is an objective description of a rock. In metamorphic rocks, **facies** are groups of minerals called **mineral assemblages**. The names of metamorphic facies on the pressure-temperature diagram reflect minerals and mineral assemblages that are stable at these pressures and temperatures and provide information about the metamorphic processes that have affected the rocks. This is useful when interpreting the history of metamorphic rock.

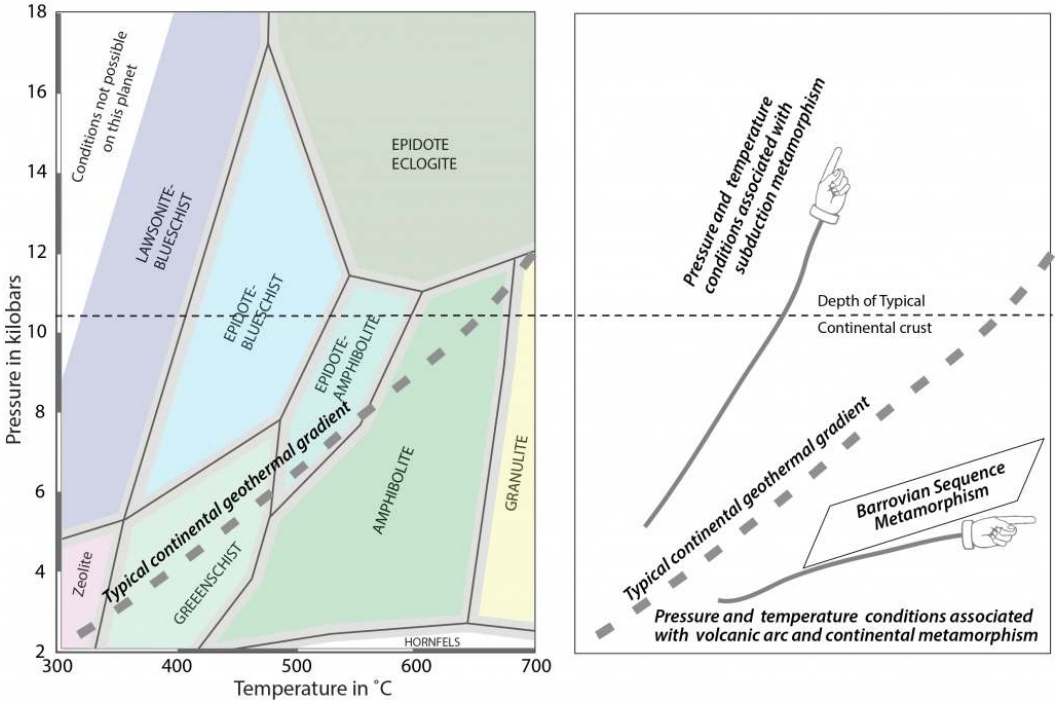


Figure *Section*6.4.1: Pressure-temperature diagram showing metamorphic facies.

In the late 1800s, British geologist George Barrow mapped zones of index minerals in different metamorphic zones of an area that underwent regional metamorphism. Barrow outlined a progression of index minerals, named the **Barrovian Sequence**, that represents increasing metamorphic grade: chlorite (slates and phyllites) → biotite (phyllites and schists) → garnet (schists) → staurolite (schists) → kyanite (schists) → sillimanite (schists and gneisses).

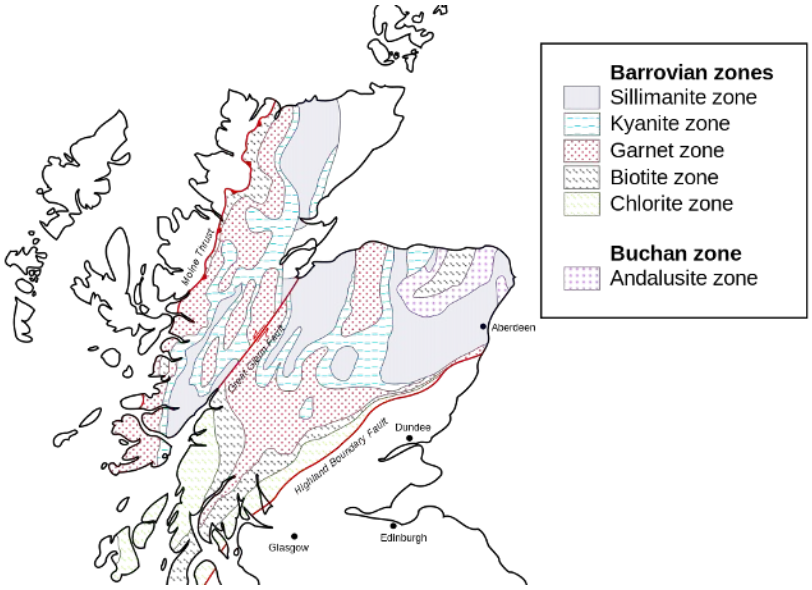


Figure *Section*6.4.2: Barrovian sequence in Scotland.

The first of the Barrovian sequence has a mineral group that is commonly found in the metamorphic **greenschist** facies. Greenschist rocks form under relatively low pressure and temperatures and represent the fringes of regional metamorphism. The "green" part of the name is derived from green minerals like chlorite, serpentine, and epidote, and the "schist" part is applied due to the presence of platy minerals such as muscovite.

Many different styles of metamorphic facies are recognized, tied to different geologic and tectonic processes. Recognizing these facies is the most direct way to interpret the metamorphic history of rock. A simplified list of major metamorphic facies is given below.

Section 6.4.1 Burial Metamorphism

Burial metamorphism occurs when rocks are deeply buried, at depths of more than 2000 meters (1.24 miles) [10]. Burial metamorphism commonly occurs in sedimentary basins, where rocks are buried deeply by overlying sediments. As an extension of diagenesis, a process that occurs during lithification, burial metamorphism can cause clay minerals, such as **smectite**, in shales to change to another clay mineral **illite**. Or it can cause quartz sandstone to metamorphose into quartzite such the Big Cottonwood Formation in the Wasatch Range of Utah. This formation was deposited as ancient near-shore sands in the late Proterozoic, deeply buried and metamorphosed to quartzite, folded, and later exposed at the surface in the Wasatch Range today. An increase of temperature with depth in combination and an increase of confining pressure produces low-grade metamorphic rocks with mineral assemblages are indicative of a **zeolite facies** [11; 12].

Section 6.4.2 Contact Metamorphism

Contact metamorphism occurs in rock exposed to high temperature and low pressure, as might happen when hot magma intrudes into or lava flows over pre-existing protolith. This combination of high temperature and low pressure produces numerous metamorphic facies. The lowest pressure conditions produce **hornfels facies**, while higher pressure creates greenschist**, amphibolite**, or **granulite facies**.

As with all metamorphic rock, the parent rock texture and chemistry are major factors in determining the final outcome of the metamorphic process, including what index minerals are present. Fine-grained shale and basalt, which happen to be chemically similar, characteristically recrystallize to produce hornfels. Sandstone (silica) surrounding an igneous intrusion becomes quartzite via contact metamorphism, and limestone (carbonate) becomes marble.



Figure ***Section*6.4.3**: Basaltic dike intruding into volcanic mudflow deposits in eastern Oregon. Note the baked (white) and altered (orange) edge of the country rock around the intrusion. (By Marli Miller; CC BY-NC 4.0 via Geologic Time Pics.)

When contact metamorphism occurs deeper in the Earth, metamorphism can be seen as rings of facies around the intrusion, resulting in **aureoles**. These differences in metamorphism appear as distinct bands surrounding the intrusion, as can be seen around the Alta Stock in Little Cottonwood Canyon, Utah. The Alta Stock is a granite intrusion surrounded first by rings of the index minerals amphibole (tremolite) and olivine (forsterite), with a ring of talc (dolostone) located further away [13; 14].

Section 6.4.3 Regional Metamorphism

Regional metamorphism occurs when parent rock is subjected to increased temperature and pressure over a large area and is often located in mountain ranges created by converging continental crustal plates. This is the setting for the Barrovian sequence of rock

facies, with the lowest grade of metamorphism occurring on the flanks of the mountains and highest grade near the core of the mountain range, closest to the convergent boundary.

An example of an old regional metamorphic environment is visible in the northern Appalachian Mountains while driving east from New York state through Vermont and into New Hampshire. Along this route, the degree of metamorphism gradually increases from sedimentary parent rock to low-grade metamorphic rock, then higher-grade metamorphic rock, and eventually the igneous core. The rock sequence is sedimentary rock, slate, phyllite, schist, gneiss, migmatite, and granite. In fact, New Hampshire is nicknamed the Granite State. The reverse sequence can be seen heading east, from eastern New Hampshire to the coast [15].

Section 6.4.4 Subduction Zone Metamorphism

Subduction zone metamorphism is a type of regional metamorphism that occurs when a slab of oceanic crust is subducted under continental crust. Because rock is a good insulator, the temperature of the descending oceanic slab increases slowly relative to the more rapidly increasing pressure, creating a metamorphic environment of high pressure and low temperature. **Glaucophane**, which has a distinctive blue color, is an index mineral found in **blueschist facies** (see metamorphic facies diagram). The California Coast Range near San Francisco has blueschist-facies rocks created by subduction-zone metamorphism, which include rocks made of **blueschist**, **greenstone**, and red chert. Greenstone, which is metamorphosed basalt, gets its color from the index mineral chlorite [16].



Figure *Section*6.4.4: Blueschist rock with green serpentinite and mica.

Section 6.4.5 Fault Metamorphism

There are a range of metamorphic rocks made along faults. Near the surface, rocks involved in repeated brittle faulting produce a material called **rock flour,** which is rock that is ground up to the particle size of flour used for food. At lower depths, faulting creates **cataclastites** [17], chaotically-crushed mixes of rock material with little internal texture. At depths below cataclastites, where strain becomes ductile, mylonites are formed. **Mylonites** are metamorphic rocks created by dynamic recrystallization through directed shear forces, generally resulting in a reduction of grain size [18]. When larger, stronger crystals (like feldspar, quartz, garnet) embedded in a metamorphic matrix are sheared into an asymmetrical eye-shaped crystal, an **augen** is formed [19; 20].

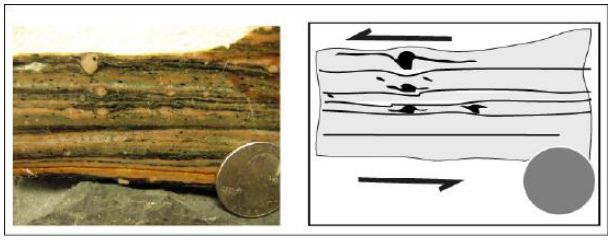


Figure *Section*6.4.5: Left: Mylonite. Right: Diagram of the mylonite showing directed shear forces.

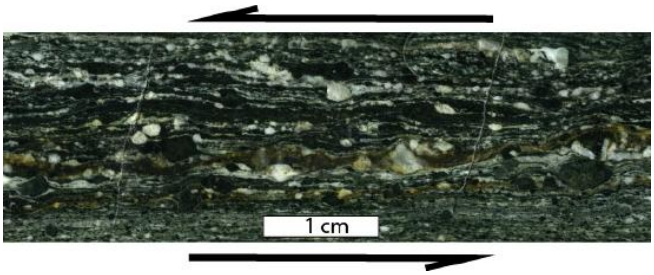


Figure *Section*6.4.6: Examples of augens.

Section 6.4.6 Shock Metamorphism

Shock (also known as **impact**) **metamorphism** is metamorphism resulting from meteorite or other bolide impacts, or from a similar high-pressure shock event. Shock metamorphism is the result of very high pressures (and higher, but less extreme temperatures) delivered relatively rapidly. Shock metamorphism produces planar deformation features, tektites, shatter cones, and quartz polymorphs. Shock metamorphism produces planar deformation features (**shock lamellae**), which are narrow planes of glassy material with distinct orientations found in silicate mineral grains. **Shocked quartz** has planar deformation features [21].

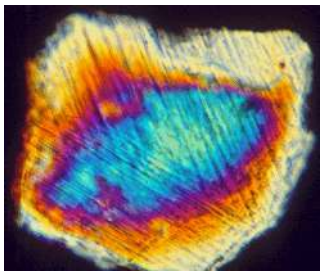


Figure *Section*6.4.7: Close-up view of shock lamellae in a quartz grain.

Shatter cones are cone-shaped pieces of rock created by dynamic branching fractures caused by impacts [22]. While not strictly a metamorphic structure, they are common around shock metamorphism. Their diameter can range from microscopic to several meters. Fine-grained rocks with shatter cones show a distinctive horsetail pattern.



Figure *Section*6.4.8: Shatter cone.

Shock metamorphism can also produce index minerals, though they are typically only found via microscopic analysis. The quartz polymorphs **coesite** and **stishovite** are indicative of impact metamorphism [21]. Recall that polymorphs are minerals with the same composition but different crystal structures. Intense pressure (> 10 GPa) and moderate to high temperatures (700-1200 °C) are required to form these minerals.

Shock metamorphism can also produce glass. **Tektites** are gravel-size glass grains ejected during an impact event. They resemble volcanic glass but, unlike volcanic glass, tektites contain no water or phenocrysts, and have a different bulk and isotopic chemistry. Tektites contain partially melted inclusions of shocked mineral grains [23]. Although all are melt glasses, tektites are also chemically distinct from **trinitite**, which is produced from thermonuclear detonations [24], and **fulgurites**, which are produced by lightning strikes [25]. All geologic glasses not derived from volcanoes can be called with the general term **pseudotachylyte** [26], a name that can also be applied to glasses created by faulting. The term pseudo in this context means ‘false’ or ‘in the appearance of’, a volcanic rock called tachylite because the material observed looks like volcanic rock, but is produced by significant shear heating.



Figure *Section*6.4.9: Tektites.

Section 6.4.7 References

10. Hower J, Eslinger EV, Hower ME, Perry EA (1976) Mechanism of burial metamorphism of argillaceous sediment: 1. Mineralogical and chemical evidence. Geol Soc Am Bull 87:725–737

11. ChO M, Liou JG, Maruyama S (1986) Transition from the zeolite to prehnite-pumpellyite facies in the Karmutsen metabasites, Vancouver Island, British Columbia. J Petrol

12. Coombs DS, Horodyski RJ, Naylor RS (1970) Occurrence of prehnite-pumpellyite facies metamorphism in northern Maine. Am J Sci 268:142–156

13. Cook SJ, Bowman JR (2000) Mineralogical evidence for fluid–rock interaction accompanying prograde contact metamorphism of siliceous dolomites: Alta Stock Aureole, Utah, USA. J Petrol 41:739–757

14. Moore JN, Kerrick DM (1976) Equilibria in siliceous dolomites of the Alta aureole, Utah. Am J Sci 276:502–524

15. Proctor BP, McAleer R, Kunk MJ, Wintsch RP (2013) Post-Taconic tilting and Acadian structural overprint of the classic Barrovian metamorphic gradient in Dutchess County, New York. Am J Sci 313:649–682

16. Wahrhaftig C (1984) A streetcar to subduction and other plate tectonic trips by public transport in San Francisco. American Geophysical Union

17. Brodie K, Fettes D, Harte B, Schmid R (2007) Recommendations by the IUGS Subcommission on the Systematics of Metamorphic Rocks. https://www.bgs.ac.uk/ scmr/docs/papers/paper_3.pdf

18. Trouw RAJ, Passchier CW, Wiersma DJ (2009) Atlas of mylonites- and related microstructures: Springer Berlin Heidelberg

19. Davis RA Jr, Fitzgerald DM (2009) Beaches and coasts. John Wiley & Sons

20. Simpson C, Schmid SM (1983) An evaluation of criteria to deduce the sense of movement in sheared rocks. Geol Soc Am Bull 94:1281–1288

21. Goltrant O, Leroux H, Doukhan J-C, Cordier P (1992) Formation mechanisms of planar deformation features in naturally shocked quartz. Physics of the Earth and Planetary Interiors 74:219–240. https://doi.org/10.1016/0031-9201(92)90012-K

22. Sagy A, Fineberg J, Reches Z (2004) Shatter cones: Branched, rapid fractures formed by shock impact. J Geophys Res 109:B10209

23. French BM (1998) Traces of Catastrophe: A Handbook of Shock-Metamorphic Effects in Terrestrial Meteorite Impact Structures

24. Eby N, Hermes R, Charnley N, Smoliga JA (2010) Trinitite—the atomic rock. Geology Today 26:180–185

25. Joseph ML (2012) A Geochemical Analysis of Fulgurites: from the inner glass to the outer crust. University of South Florida

26. Shand SJ (1916) The Pseudotachylyte of Parijs (Orange Free State), and its Relation to 'Trap-Shotten Gneiss' and 'Flinty Crush-Rock.' Q J Geol Soc London 72:198–221

This page titled Section 6.4: Metamorphic Environments is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Chris Johnson, Matthew D. Affolter, Paul Inkenbrandt, & Cam Mosher (OpenGeology) via source content that was edited to the style and standards of the LibreTexts platform.

- **6.5: Metamorphic Environments** by Chris Johnson, Matthew D. Affolter, Paul Inkenbrandt, & Cam Mosher is licensed CC BY-NC-SA 4.0. Original source: https://opengeology.org/textbook/.

Section 6.S: Summary

Section 6.S.1 Summary

Metamorphism is the process that changes existing rocks (called protoliths) into new rocks with new minerals and new textures. Increases in temperature and pressure are the main causes of metamorphism, with fluids adding important mobilization of materials. The primary way metamorphic rocks are identified is with texture. Foliated textures come from platy minerals forming planes in a rock, while non-foliated metamorphic rocks have no internal fabric. Grade describes the amount of metamorphism in a rock, and facies are a set of minerals that can help guide an observer to an interpretation of the metamorphic history of a rock. Different tectonic or geologic environments cause metamorphism, including collisions, subduction, faulting, and even impacts from space.

Section 6.S: Summary is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

- **6: Metamorphic Rocks** by Chris Johnson, Matthew D. Affolter, Paul Inkenbrandt, & Cam Mosher is licensed CC BY-NC-SA 4.0. Original source: https://opengeology.org/textbook/.

CHAPTER OVERVIEW

Chapter 7: Geologic Time

Learning Objectives

- Explain the difference between relative time and numeric time
- Describe the five principles of stratigraphy
- Apply relative dating principles to a block diagram and interpret the sequence of geologic events
- Define an isotope, and explain alpha decay, beta decay, and electron capture as mechanisms of radioactive decay
- Describe how radioisotopic dating is accomplished and list the four key isotopes used
- Explain how carbon-14 forms in the atmosphere and how it is used in dating recent events
- Explain how scientists know the numeric age of the Earth and other events in Earth history
- Explain how sedimentary sequences can be dated using radioisotopes and other techniques
- Define a fossil and describe types of fossils preservation
- Outline how natural selection takes place as a mechanism of evolution
- Describe stratigraphic correlation
- List the eons, eras, and periods of the geologic time scale and explain the purpose behind the divisions
- Explain the relationship between time units and corresponding rock units—chronostratigraphy versus lithostratigraphy

The geologic time scale and basic outline of Earth's history were worked out long before we had any scientific means of assigning numerical age units, like years, to events of Earth history. Working out Earth's history depended on realizing some key principles of relative time. Nicolaus Steno (1638-1686) introduced basic principles of stratigraphy, the study of layered rocks, in 1669 [1]. William Smith (1769-1839), working with the strata of English coal mines, noticed that strata and their sequence were consistent throughout the region. Eventually, he produced the first national geologic map of Britain [2], becoming known as "the Father of English Geology." Nineteenth-century scientists developed a relative time scale using Steno's principles, with names derived from the characteristics of the rocks in those areas. The figure of this geologic time scale shows the names of the units and subunits. Using this time scale, geologists can place all events of Earth history in order without ever knowing their numerical ages. The specific events within Earth history are discussed in Chapter 8.



Figure ***Chapter7.1***: Nicolas Steno, c. 1670

Section 7.1: Relative Dating
Section 7.2: Absolute Dating
Section 7.3: Fossils and Evolution
Section 7.4: Correlation
Section 7.5: Earth History
Section 7.5.1: Origin of the Universe
Section 7.5.2: Origin of the Solar System—The Nebular Hypothesis

Section 7.5.3: Hadean Eon
Section 7.5.4: Archean Eon
Section 7.5.5: Proterozoic Eon
Section 7.5.6: Paleozoic
Section 7.5.7: Mesozoic
Section 7.5.8: Cenozoic

Chapter 7.1 Summary

Events in Earth history can be placed in sequence using the five principles of relative dating. The geologic time scale was completely worked out in the 19th Century using these principles without knowing any actual numeric ages for the events. The discovery of radioactivity in the late 1800s enabled absolute dating, the assignment of numerical ages to events in the Earth's history, using decay of unstable radioactive isotopes. Accurately interpreting radioisotopic dating data depends on the type of rock tested and accurate assumptions about isotope baseline values. With a combination of relative and absolute dating, the history of geological events, age of Earth, and a geologic time scale have been determined with considerable accuracy. Stratigraphic correlation is an additional tool used for understanding how depositional environments change geographically. Geologic time is vast, providing plenty of time for the evolution of various lifeforms, and some of these have become preserved as fossils that can be used for biostratigraphic correlation. The geologic time scale is continuous, although the rock record may be broken because rocks representing certain time periods may be missing.

Chapter 7.2 References

1. Kardel, T. & Maquet, P. *Nicolaus Steno: Biography and original papers of a 17th century scientist*. (Springer Science & Business Media, 2012).

2. Winchester, S. *The Map That Changed the World: William Smith and the Birth of Modern Geology*. (HarperCollins, 2009).

This page titled Chapter 7: Geologic Time is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Chris Johnson, Matthew D. Affolter, Paul Inkenbrandt, & Cam Mosher (OpenGeology) via source content that was edited to the style and standards of the LibreTexts platform.

Section 7.1: Relative Dating

Relative dating is the process of determining if one rock or geologic event is older or younger than another, without knowing their specific ages—i.e., how many years ago the object was formed. The principles of relative time are simple, even obvious now, but were not generally accepted by scholars until the scientific revolution of the 17th and 18th centuries [3]. James Hutton (see Chapter 1) realized geologic processes are slow and his ideas on uniformitarianism (i.e., “the present is the key to the past”) provided a basis for interpreting rocks of the Earth using scientific principles.

EON	ERA	PERIOD	MILLIONS OF YEARS AGO
Phanerozoic	Cenozoic	Quaternary	1.6
		Tertiary	66
	Mesozoic	Cretaceous	138
		Jurassic	205
		Triassic	240
	Paleozoic	Permian	290
		Pennsylvanian	330
		Mississippian	360
		Devonian	410
		Silurian	435
		Ordovician	500
		Cambrian	570
Proterozoic	Late Proterozoic Middle Proterozoic Early Proterozoic		2500
Archean	Late Archean Middle Archean Early Archean		3800?
Pre-Archean			

Figure *Section*7.1.1: A Geologic Time Scale

Section 7.1.1 Relative Dating Principles

Stratigraphy is the study of layered sedimentary rocks. This section discusses principles of relative time used in all of geology, but are especially useful in stratigraphy.



Figure *Section*7.1.1: Lower strata are older than those lying on top of them.. via Wikimedia Commons" width="270"

Principle of Superposition: In an otherwise undisturbed sequence of sedimentary strata, or rock layers, the layers on the bottom are the oldest and layers above them are younger.

Principle of Original Horizontality: Layers of rocks deposited from above, such as sediments and lava flows, are originally laid down horizontally. The exception to this principle is at the margins of basins, where the strata can slope slightly downward into the basin.



Figure *Section*7.1.1: Lateral continuity

Principle of Lateral Continuity: Within the depositional basin, strata are continuous in all directions until they thin out at the edge of that basin. Of course, all strata eventually end, either by hitting a geographic barrier, such as a ridge, or when the depositional process extends too far from its source, either a sediment source or a volcano. Strata that are cut by a canyon later remain continuous on either side of the canyon.



Figure ***Section*7.1.1**: Dark dike cutting across older rocks, the lighter of which is younger than the grey rock.. CC BY 2.0], via Wikimedia Commons" width="267px" height="356px"

Principle of Cross-Cutting Relationships: Deformation events like folds, faults and igneous intrusions that cut across rocks are younger than the rocks they cut across.

Principle of Inclusions: When one rock formation contains pieces or inclusions of another rock, the included rock is older than the host rock.

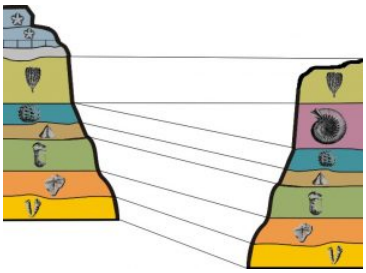


Figure ***Section*7.1.1**: Fossil succession showing the correlation among strata.

Principle of Fossil Succession: Evolution has produced a succession of unique fossils that correlate to the units of the geologic time scale. Assemblages of fossils contained in strata are unique to the time they lived and can be used to correlate rocks of the same age across a wide geographic distribution. Assemblages of fossils refer to groups of several unique fossils occurring together.

Section 7.1.2 Grand Canyon Example



Figure ***Section*7.1.1**: The Grand Canyon of Arizona. www.tomascastelazo.com / Wikimedia Commons, via Wikimedia Commons" width="449px" height="299px"

The Grand Canyon of Arizona illustrates the stratigraphic principles. The photo shows layers of rock on top of one another in order, from the oldest at the bottom to the youngest at the top, based on the principle of superposition. The predominant white layer just below the canyon rim is the Coconino Sandstone. This layer is laterally continuous, even though the intervening canyon separates its outcrops. The rock layers exhibit the principle of lateral continuity, as they are found on both sides of the Grand Canyon which has been carved by the Colorado River.

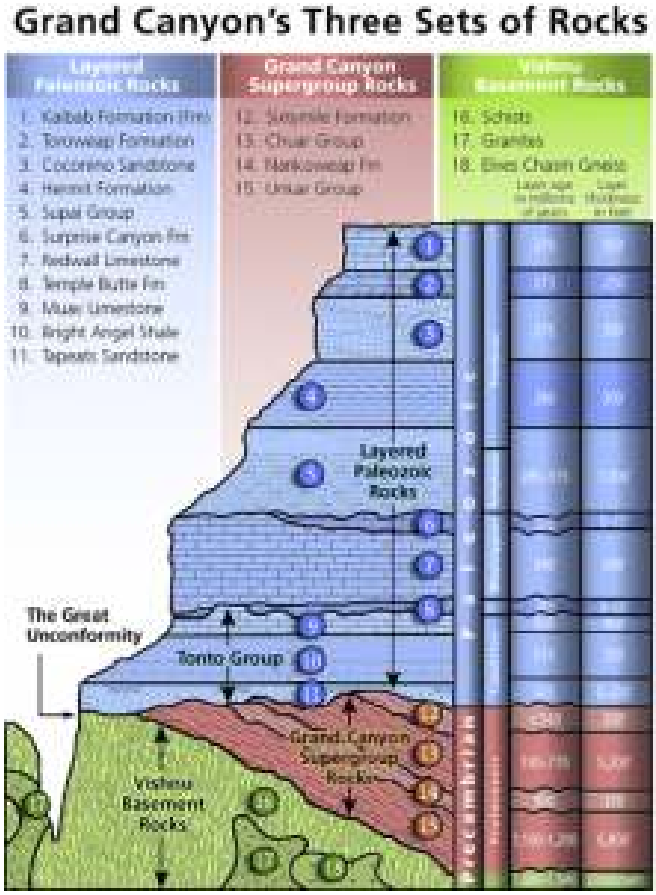


Figure *Section*7.1.1: The rocks of the Grand Canyon

The diagram called “Grand Canyon’s Three Sets of Rocks” shows a cross-section of the rocks exposed on the walls of the Grand Canyon, illustrating the principle of cross-cutting relationships, superposition, and original horizontality. In the lowest parts of the Grand Canyon are the oldest sedimentary formations, with igneous and metamorphic rocks at the bottom. The principle of cross-cutting relationships shows the sequence of these events. The metamorphic schist (#16) is the oldest rock formation and the cross-cutting granite intrusion (#17) is younger. As seen in the figure, the other layers on the walls of the Grand Canyon are numbered in reverse order with #15 being the oldest and #1 the youngest [4]. This illustrates the principle of superposition. The Grand Canyon region lies in Colorado Plateau, which is characterized by horizontal or nearly horizontal strata, which follows the principle of original horizontality. These rock strata have been barely disturbed from their original deposition, except by a broad regional uplift.



Figure *Section*7.1.1: The red, layered rocks of the Grand Canyon Supergroup overlying the dark-colored rocks of the Vishnu schist represents a type of unconformity called a nonconformity.. CC BY-SA 3.0], via Wikimedia Commons" width="371px" height="278px"

The photo of the Grand Canyon here show strata that were originally deposited in a flat layer on top of older igneous and metamorphic “basement” rocks, per the original horizontality principle. Because the formation of the basement rocks and the deposition of the overlying strata is not continuous but broken by events of metamorphism, intrusion, and erosion, the contact between the strata and the older basement is termed an **unconformity**. An unconformity represents a period during which deposition did not occur or erosion removed rock that had been deposited, so there are no rocks that represent events of Earth history during that span of time at that place. Unconformities appear in cross-sections and stratigraphic columns as wavy lines between formations. Unconformities are discussed in the next section.

Section 7.1.3 Unconformities



Figure *Section*7.1.1: All three of these formations have a disconformity at the two contacts between them. The pinching Temple Butte is the easiest to see the erosion, but even between the Muav and Redwall, there is an unconformity.

There are three types of unconformities, nonconformity, disconformity, and angular unconformity. A nonconformity occurs when sedimentary rock is deposited on top of igneous and metamorphic rocks as is the case with the contact between the strata and basement rocks at the bottom of the Grand Canyon.

The strata in the Grand Canyon represent alternating marine transgressions and regressions where sea level rose and fell over millions of years. When the sea level was high marine strata formed. When sea-level fell, the land was exposed to erosion creating an unconformity. In the Grand Canyon cross-section, this erosion is shown as heavy wavy lines between the various numbered strata. This is a type of unconformity called a **disconformity**, where either non-deposition or erosion took place. In other words, layers of rock that could have been present, are absent. The time that could have been represented by such layers is instead represented by the disconformity. Disconformities are unconformities that occur between parallel layers of strata indicating either a period of no deposition or erosion.



Figure *Section*7.1.1: In the lower part of the picture is an angular unconformity in the Grand Canyon known as the Great Unconformity. Notice the flat-lying strata over dipping strata (Source: Doug Dolde).. via Wikimedia Commons" width="327px" height="244px"

The Phanerozoic strata in most of the Grand Canyon are horizontal. However, near the bottom horizontal strata overlie tilted strata. This is known as the Great Unconformity and is an example of an **angular unconformity**. The lower strata were tilted by tectonic processes that disturbed their original horizontality and caused the strata to be eroded. Later, horizontal strata were deposited on top of the tilted strata creating an angular unconformity.

Here are three graphical illustrations of the three types of unconformity.

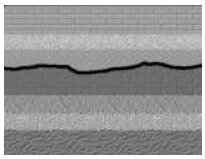


Figure *Section*7.1.1: Disconformity

Disconformity, where is a break or stratigraphic absence between strata in an otherwise parallel sequence of strata.

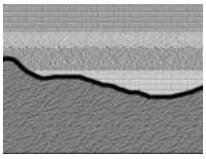


Figure *Section*7.1.1: Nonconformity (the lower rocks are igneous or metamorphic)

Nonconformity, where sedimentary strata are deposited on crystalline (igneous or metamorphic) rocks.

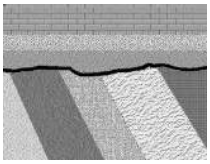


Figure *Section*7.1.1: Angular unconformity

Angular unconformity, where sedimentary strata are deposited on a terrain developed on sedimentary strata that have been deformed by tilting, folding, and/or faulting. so that they are no longer horizontal.

Section 7.1.4 Applying Relative Dating Principles

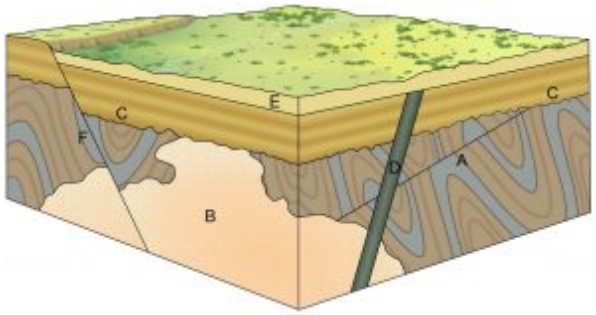


Figure ***Section*7.1.1**: Block diagram to apply relative dating principles. The wavy rock is an old metamorphic gneiss, A and F are faults, B is an igneous granite, D is a basaltic dike, and C and E are sedimentary strata.. CC BY-SA 1.0], via Wikimedia Commons" width="498px" height="264px"

In the block diagram, the sequence of geological events can be determined by using the relative-dating principles and known properties of igneous, sedimentary, metamorphic rock (see Chapter 4, Chapter 5, and Chapter 6). The sequence begins with the folded metamorphic gneiss on the bottom. Next, the gneiss is cut and displaced by the fault labeled A. Both the gneiss and fault A are cut by the igneous granitic intrusion called batholith B; its irregular outline suggests it is an igneous granitic intrusion emplaced as magma into the gneiss. Since batholith B cuts both the gneiss and fault A, batholith B is younger than the other two rock formations. Next, the gneiss, fault A, and batholith B were eroded forming a nonconformity as shown with the wavy line. This unconformity was actually an ancient landscape surface on which sedimentary rock C was subsequently deposited perhaps by a marine transgression. Next, igneous basaltic dike D cut through all rocks except sedimentary rock E. This shows that there is a disconformity between sedimentary rocks C and E. The top of dike D is level with the top of layer C, which establishes that erosion flattened the landscape prior to the deposition of layer E, creating a disconformity between rocks D and E. Fault F cuts across all of the older rocks B, C and E, producing a fault scarp, which is the low ridge on the upper-left side of the diagram. The final events affecting this area are current erosion processes working on the land surface, rounding off the edge of the fault scarp, and producing the modern landscape at the top of the diagram.

Section 7.1.5 References

3. Whewell, W. *History of the Inductive Sciences: From the Earliest to the Present Times*. (J.W. Parker, 1837).

4. Elston, D. P., Billingsley, G. H. & Young, R. A. *Geology of Grand Canyon, Northern Arizona (with Colorado River Guides): Lees Ferry to Pierce Ferry, Arizona*. **115**, (Amer Geophysical Union, 1989).

This page titled Section 7.1: Relative Dating is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Chris Johnson, Matthew D. Affolter, Paul Inkenbrandt, & Cam Mosher (OpenGeology) via source content that was edited to the style and standards of the LibreTexts platform.

- **7.1: Relative Dating** by Chris Johnson, Matthew D. Affolter, Paul Inkenbrandt, & Cam Mosher is licensed CC BY-NC-SA 4.0. Original source: https://opengeology.org/textbook/.

Section 7.2: Absolute Dating



Figure ***Section7.2.1***: Canada's Nuvvuagittuq Greenstone Belt may have the oldest rocks and oldest evidence life on Earth, according to recent studies.

Relative time allows scientists to tell the story of Earth events, but does not provide specific numeric ages, and thus, the rate at which geologic processes operate. Based on Hutton's principle of uniformitarianism (see Chapter 1), early geologists surmised geological processes work slowly and the Earth is very old. Relative dating principles was how scientists interpreted Earth history until the end of the 19th Century. Because science advances as technology advances, the discovery of radioactivity in the late 1800s provided scientists with a new scientific tool called **radioisotopic dating**. Using this new technology, they could assign specific time units, in this case years, to mineral grains within a rock. These numerical values are not dependent on comparisons with other rocks such as with relative dating, so this dating method is called **absolute dating** [5]. There are several types of absolute dating discussed in this section but radioisotopic dating is the most common and therefore is the focus on this section.

Section 7.2.1 Radioactive Decay

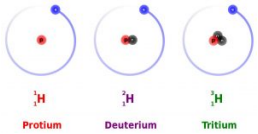


Figure ***Section7.2.1***: Three isotopes of hydrogen

All elements on the Periodic Table of Elements (see Chapter 3) contain isotopes. An isotope is an atom of an element with a different number of neutrons. For example, hydrogen (H) always has 1 proton in its nucleus (the atomic number), but the number of neutrons can vary among the isotopes (0, 1, 2). Recall that the number of neutrons added to the atomic number gives the atomic mass. When hydrogen has 1 proton and 0 neutrons it is sometimes called protium (^{1}H), when hydrogen has 1 proton and 1 neutron it is called deuterium (^{2}H), and when hydrogen has 1 proton and 2 neutrons it is called tritium (^{3}H).

Many elements have both stable and unstable isotopes. For the hydrogen example, ^{1}H and ^{2}H are stable, but ^{3}H is unstable. Unstable isotopes, called **radioactive isotopes**, spontaneously decay over time releasing subatomic particles or energy in a process called **radioactive decay**. When this occurs, an unstable isotope becomes a more stable isotope of another element. For example, carbon-14 (^{14}C) decays to nitrogen-14 (^{14}N).

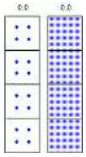


Figure ***Section7.2.1***: Simulation of half-life. On the left, 4 simulations with only a few atoms. On the right, 4 simulations with many atoms.. via Wikimedia Commons" width="140"

The radioactive decay of any individual atom is a completely unpredictable and random event. However, some rock specimens have an enormous number of radioactive isotopes, perhaps trillions of atoms and this large group of radioactive isotopes do have a predictable pattern of radioactive decay. The radioactive decay of *half* of the radioactive isotopes in this group takes a specific amount of time. The time it takes for half of the atoms in a substance to decay is called the **half-life**. In other words, the half-life of an isotope is the amount of time it takes for half of a group of unstable isotopes to decay to a stable isotope. The half-life is constant and measurable for a given radioactive isotope, so it can be used to calculate the age of a rock. For example, the half-life uranium-238 (^{238}U) is 4.5 billion years and the half-life of ^{14}C is 5,730 years.

The principles behind this dating method require two key assumptions. First, the mineral grains containing the isotope formed at the same time as the rock, such as minerals in an igneous rock that crystallized from magma. Second, the mineral crystals remain a closed system, meaning they are not subsequently altered by elements moving in or out of them.



Figure ***Section7.2.1***: Granite (left) and gneiss (right). Dating a mineral within the granite would give the crystallization age of the rock while dating the gneiss might reflect the timing of metamorphism.

These requirements place some constraints on the kinds of rock suitable for dating, with the igneous rock being the best. Metamorphic rocks are crystalline, but the processes of metamorphism may reset the clock and derived ages may represent a smear of different metamorphic events rather than the age of original crystallization. Detrital sedimentary rocks contain clasts from separate parent rocks from unknown locations and derived ages are thus meaningless. However, sedimentary rocks with precipitated minerals, such as evaporites, may contain elements suitable for radioisotopic dating. Igneous pyroclastic layers and lava flows within a sedimentary sequence can be used to date the sequence. Cross-cutting igneous rocks and sills can be used to bracket the ages of affected, older sedimentary rocks. The resistant mineral zircon, found as clasts in many ancient sedimentary rocks, has been successfully used for establishing very old dates, including the age of Earth's oldest known rocks [6] Knowing that zircon minerals in metamorphosed sediments came from older rocks that are no longer available for study, scientists can date zircon to establish the age of the pre-metamorphic source rocks.

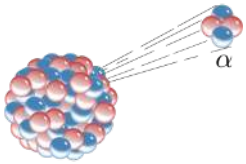


Figure **Section7.2.1**: An alpha decay: Two protons and two neutrons leave the nucleus.

There are several ways radioactive atoms decay. We will consider three of them here—**alpha decay, beta decay,** and **electron capture**. **Alpha decay** is when an alpha particle, which consists of two protons and two neutrons, is emitted from the nucleus of an atom. This also happens to be the nucleus of a helium atom; helium gas may get trapped in the crystal lattice of a mineral in which alpha decay has taken place. When an atom loses two protons from its nucleus, lowering its atomic number, it is transformed into an element that is two atomic numbers lower on the Periodic Table of the Elements.

Simplified Periodic Table of the ElementsCC BY-SA 4.0], via Wikimedia Commons" width="778px" height="415px" src="/@api/deki/files/7554/07.11_periodic_table-300x160.png">

Periodic Table of the Elements

The loss of four particles, in this case, two neutrons and two protons, also lowers the mass of the atom by four. For example, alpha decay takes place in the unstable isotope ^{238}U, which has an atomic number of 92 (92 protons) and a mass number of 238 (total of all protons and neutrons). When ^{238}U spontaneously emits an alpha particle, it becomes thorium-234 (^{234}Th). The radioactive decay product of an element is called its **daughter isotope** and the original element is called the **parent isotope**. In this case, ^{238}U is the parent isotope and ^{234}Th is the daughter isotope. The half-life of ^{238}U is 4.5 billion years, i.e., the time it takes for half of the parent isotope atoms to decay into the daughter isotope. This isotope of uranium, ^{238}U, can be used for absolute dating the oldest materials found on Earth, and even meteorites and materials from the earliest events in our solar system.



Figure **Section7.2.1**: Decay chain of U-238 to stable Pb-206 through a series of alpha and beta decays.

Beta Decay is when a neutron in its nucleus splits into an electron and a proton. The electron is emitted from the nucleus as a beta ray. The new proton increases the element's atomic number by one, forming a new element with the same atomic mass as the parent isotope. For example, ^{234}Th is unstable and undergoes beta decay to form protactinium-234 (^{234}Pa), which also undergoes beta decay to form uranium-234 (^{234}U). Notice these are all isotopes of different elements but they have the same atomic mass of 234. The decay process of radioactive elements like uranium keeps producing radioactive parents and daughters until a stable, or non-radioactive, daughter is formed. Such a series is called a **decay chain**. The decay chain of the radioactive parent isotope ^{238}U progresses through a series of alpha (red arrows on the adjacent figure) and beta decays (blue arrows) until it forms the stable daughter isotope, lead-206 (^{206}Pb).

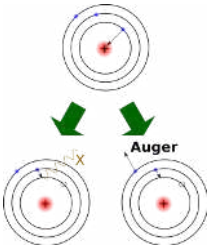


Figure **Section7.2.1**: The two paths of electron capture. CC BY-SA 4.0], via Wikimedia Commons" width="254"

Electron capture is when a proton in the nucleus captures an electron from one of the electron shells and becomes a neutron. This produces one of two different effects: 1) an electron jumps in to fill the missing spot of the departed electron and emits an X-ray, or 2) in what is called the Auger process, another electron is released and changes the atom into an ion. The atomic number is reduced by one and the mass number remains the same. An example of an element that decays by electron capture is potassium-40 (^{40}K). Radioactive ^{40}K makes up a tiny percentage (0.012%) of naturally occurring potassium, most of which not radioactive. ^{40}K decays to argon-40 (^{40}Ar) with a half-life of 1.25 billion years, so it is very useful for dating geological events [7]. Below is a table of some of the more commonly-used radioactive dating isotopes and their half-lives.

Elements	Parent symbol	Daughter symbol	Half-life
Uranium-238/Lead-206	^{238}U	^{206}Pb	4.5 billion years
Uranium-235/Lead-207	^{235}U	^{207}Pb	704 million years
Potassium-40/Argon-40	^{40}K	^{40}Ar	1.25 billion years
Rubidium-87/Strontium-87	^{87}Rb	^{87}Sr	48.8 billion years
Carbon-14/Nitrogen-14	^{14}C	^{14}N	5,730 years

Some common isotopes used for radioisotopic dating [7; 8].

Section 7.2.2 Radioisotopic Dating

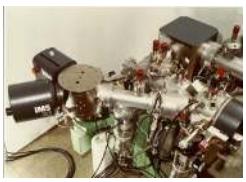


Figure **Section7.2.1**: Mass spectrometer instrument

For a given sample of rock, how is the dating procedure carried out? The parent and daughter isotopes are separated out of the mineral using chemical extraction. In the case of uranium, ^{238}U and ^{235}U isotopes are separated out together, as are the ^{206}Pb and ^{207}Pb with an instrument called a mass spectrometer [9].

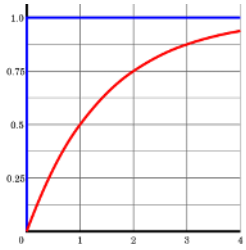


Figure ***Section7.2.1***: Graph of the number of half-lives vs. amount of daughter isotope in the sample up to 4 half-lives. CC0], via Wikimedia Commons" width="300"

Here is a simple example of age calculation using the daughter-to-parent ratio of isotopes. When the mineral initially forms, it consists of 0% daughter and 100% parent isotope, so the daughter-to-parent ratio (D/P) is 0. After one half-life, half the parent has decayed so there is 50% daughter and 50% parent, a 50/50 ratio, with D/P = 1. After two half-lives, there is 75% daughter and 25% parent (75/25 ratio) and D/P = 3. This can be further calculated for a series of half-lives as shown in the table. The table does not show more than 10 half-lives because, after about 10 half-lives, the amount of remaining parent is so small it becomes too difficult to accurately measure via chemical analysis. Modern applications of this method have achieved remarkable accuracies of plus or minus two million years in 2.5 billion years (that's ±0.055%) [10]. Applying the uranium/lead technique in any given sample analysis provides two separate clocks running at the same time, ^{238}U and ^{235}U. The existence of these two clocks in the same sample gives a cross-check between the two. Many geological samples contain multiple parent/daughter pairs, so cross-checking the clocks confirms that radioisotopic dating is highly reliable.

Half-lives (#)	Parent present (%)	Daughter present (%)	Daughter/ Parent ratio	Parent/ Daught
Start the clock	100	0	0	infinite
1	50	50	1	1
2	25	75	3	0.33
3	12.5	87.5	7	0.143
4	6.25	93.75	15	0.0667
5	3.125	96.875	31	0.0325
10	0.098	99.9	1023	0.00098

The ratio of parent to a daughter in terms of half-life.

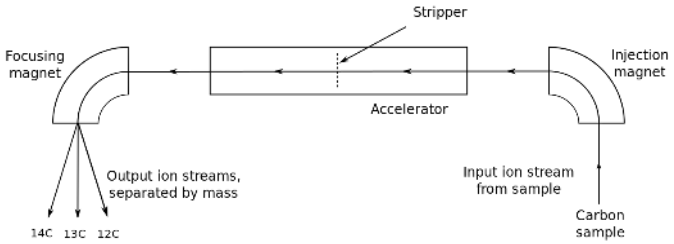


Figure ***Section7.2.1***: Schematic of carbon going through a mass spectrometer.

Another radioisotopic dating method involves carbon and is useful for dating archaeologically important samples containing organic substances like wood or bone. **Radiocarbon dating**, also called carbon dating, uses the unstable isotope carbon-14 (^{14}C) and the stable isotope carbon-12 (^{12}C). Carbon-14 is constantly being created in the atmosphere by the interaction of cosmic particles with atmospheric nitrogen-14 (^{14}N) [11]. Cosmic particles such as neutrons strike the nitrogen nucleus, kicking out a proton but leaving the neutron in the nucleus. The collision reduces the atomic number by one, changing it from seven to six, changing the nitrogen into carbon with the same mass number of 14. The ^{14}C quickly bonds with oxygen (O) in the atmosphere to form carbon dioxide ($^{14}CO_2$) that mixes with another atmospheric carbon dioxide ($^{12}CO_2$) while this mix of gases is incorporated into living matter. While an organism is alive, the ratio of $^{14}C/^{12}C$ in its body doesn't really change since CO_2 is constantly exchanged with the atmosphere. However, when it dies, the radiocarbon clock starts ticking as the ^{14}C decays back to ^{14}N by beta decay, which has a half-life of 5,730 years. The radiocarbon dating technique is thus useful for 57,300 years or so, about 10 half-lives back.

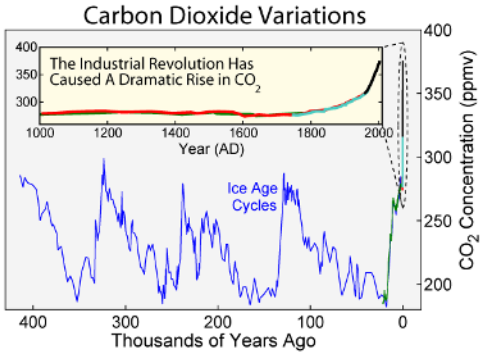


Figure ***Section7.2.1***: Carbon dioxide concentrations over the last 400,000 years.

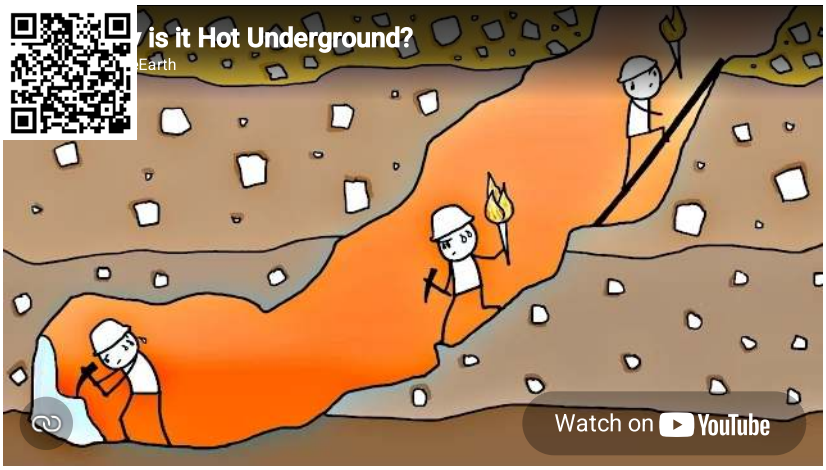
Radiocarbon dating relies on daughter-to-parent ratios derived from a known quantity of parent ^{14}C. Early applications of carbon dating assumed the production and concentration of ^{14}C in the atmosphere remained fairly constant for the last 50,000 years. However, it is now known that the amount of parent ^{14}C levels in the atmosphere. Comparisons of carbon ages with tree-ring data and other data for known events have allowed reliable calibration of the radiocarbon dating method. Taking into account carbon-14 baseline levels must be calibrated against other reliable dating methods, carbon dating has been shown to be a reliable method for dating archaeological specimens and very recent geologic events.

Section 7.2.3 Age of the Earth



Figure **Section7.2.1**: Artist's impression of Earth in the Hadean Eon, early in Earth's history.. CC BY-SA 4.0], via Wikimedia Commons" width="449px" height="241px"

The work of Hutton and other scientists gained attention after the Renaissance (see Chapter 1), spurring exploration into the idea of an ancient Earth. In the late 19th century William Thompson, a.k.a. Lord Kelvin, applied his knowledge of physics to develop the assumption that the Earth started as a hot molten sphere. He estimated the Earth is 98 million years old, but because of uncertainties in his calculations stated the age as a range of between 20 and 400 million years [12; 13]. This animation (also shown below) illustrates how Kelvin calculated this range and why his numbers were so far off, which has to do with unequal heat transfer within the Earth. It has also been pointed out that Kelvin failed to consider pliability and convection in the Earth's mantle as a heat transfer mechanism. Kelvin's estimate for Earth's age was considered plausible but not without challenge, and the discovery of radioactivity provided a more accurate method for determining ancient ages [14].



In the 1950s, Clair Patterson (1922–1995) thought he could determine the age of the Earth using radioactive isotopes from meteorites, which he considered to be early solar system remnants that were present at the time Earth was forming. Patterson analyzed meteorite samples for uranium and lead using a mass spectrometer. He used the uranium/lead dating technique in determining the age of the Earth to be 4.55 billion years, give or take about 70 million (± 1.5%) [15]. The current estimate for the age of the Earth is 4.54 billion years, give or take 50 million (± 1.1%) [13]. It is remarkable that Patterson, who was still a graduate student at the University of Chicago, came up with a result that has been little altered in over 60 years, even as technology has improved dating methods.

Section 7.2.4 Dating Geological Events



Figure **Section7.2.1**: Photomicrograph of zircon crystal

Radioactive isotopes of elements that are common in mineral crystals are useful for radioisotopic dating. The uranium/lead method, with its two cross-checking clocks, is most often used with crystals of the mineral zircon ($ZrSiO_4$) where uranium can substitute for zirconium in the crystal lattice. Zircon is resistant to weathering which makes it useful for dating geological events in ancient rocks. During metamorphic events, zircon crystals may form multiple crystal layers, with each layer recording the isotopic age of an event, thus tracing the progress of the several metamorphic events [16].

Geologists have used zircon grains to do some amazing studies that illustrate how scientific conclusions can change with technological advancements. Zircon crystals from Western Australia that formed when the crust first differentiated from the mantle 4.4 billion years ago have been determined to be the oldest known rocks [6]. The zircon grains were incorporated into metasedimentary host rocks, sedimentary rocks showing signs of having undergone partial metamorphism. The host rocks were not very old but the embedded zircon grains were created 4.4 billion years ago and survived the subsequent processes of weathering, erosion, deposition, and metamorphism. From other properties of the zircon crystals, researchers concluded that not only were continental rocks exposed above sea level but also that conditions on the early Earth were cool enough for liquid water to exist on the surface. The presence of liquid water allowed the processes of weathering and erosion to take place [17]. Researchers at UCLA studied 4.1 billion-year-old zircon crystals and found carbon in the zircon crystals that may be biogenic in origin, meaning that life may have existed on Earth much earlier than previously thought [18].



Figure ***Section7.2.1***: Several prominent ash beds found in North America, including three Yellowstone eruptions, shaded pink (Mesa Falls Tuff, Huckleberry Ridge Tuff, and Lava Creek Tuff), the Bishop Tuff ash bed (brown dashed line), and the May 18th, 1980 ash fall (yellow).

Igneous rocks best suited for radioisotopic dating because their primary minerals provide dates of crystallization from magma. Metamorphic processes tend to reset the clocks and smear the igneous rock's original date. Detrital sedimentary rocks are less useful because they are made of minerals derived from multiple parent sources with potentially many dates. However, scientists can use igneous events to date sedimentary sequences. For example, if sedimentary strata are between a lava flow and volcanic ash bed with radioisotopic dates of 54 million years and 50 million years, then geologists know the sedimentary strata and its fossils formed between 54 and 50 million years ago. Another example would be a 65 million-year-old volcanic dike that cut across sedimentary strata. This provides an upper limit age on the sedimentary strata, so these strata would be older than 65 million years. Potassium is common in evaporite sediments and has been used for potassium/argon dating [19]. Primary sedimentary minerals containing radioactive isotopes like ^{40}K has provided dates for important geologic events.

Section 7.2.5 Other Absolute Dating Techniques

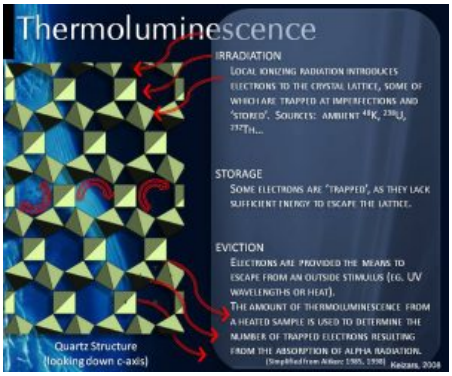


Figure ***Section7.2.1***: Thermoluminescence, a type of luminescence dating. GFDL or CC BY-SA 4.0-3.0-2.5-2.0-1.0], via Wikimedia Commons" width="557px" height="458px"

Luminescence (aka Thermoluminescence): Radioisotopic dating is not the only way scientists determine numeric ages. Luminescence dating measures the time elapsed since some silicate minerals, such as coarse-sediments of silicate minerals, were last exposed to light or heat at the surface of Earth. All buried sediments are exposed to radiation from normal background radiation from the decay process described above. Some of these electrons get trapped in the crystal lattice of silicate minerals like quartz. When exposed at the surface, ultraviolet radiation and heat from the Sun release these electrons, but when the minerals are buried just a few inches below the surface, the electrons get trapped again. Samples of coarse sediments collected just a few feet below the surface are analyzed by stimulating them with light in a lab. This stimulation releases the trapped electrons as a photon of light which is called luminescence. The amount luminescence released indicates how long the sediment has been buried. Luminescence dating is only useful for dating sediments young sediment that is less than 1 million years old [20; 21]. In Utah, luminescence dating is used to determine when coarse-grained sediment layers were buried near a fault. This is one technique used to determine the recurrence interval of large earthquakes on faults like the Wasatch Fault that primarily cut coarse-grained material and lack buried organic soils for radiocarbon dating [22].



Figure ***Section7.2.1***: Apatite from Mexico.. iRocks.com – CC-BY-SA-3.0 [CC BY-SA 3.0], via Wikimedia Commons" width="300"

Fission Track: Fission track dating relies on damage to the crystal lattice produced when unstable ^{238}U decays to the daughter product ^{234}Th and releases an alpha particle. These two decay products move in opposite directions from each other through the crystal lattice leaving a visible track of damage. This is common in uranium-bearing mineral grains such as apatite. The tracks are large and can be visually counted under an optical microscope. The number of tracks corresponds to the age of the grains. Fission track dating works from about 100,000 to 2 billion (1×10^5 to 2×10^9) years ago. Fission track dating has also been used as a second clock to confirm dates obtained by other methods [23; 7].

Section 7.2.6 References

5. Geyh, M. A. & Schleicher, H. Absolute Age Determination: Physical and Chemical Dating Methods and Their Application, 503 pp. *Spring-er-Verlag, New York* (1990).

6. Wilde, S. A., Valley, J. W., Peck, W. H. & Graham, C. M. Evidence from detrital zircons for the existence of continental crust and oceans on the Earth 4.4 Gyr ago. *Nature* **409**, 175–178 (2001).

7. Dickin, A. P. *Radiogenic isotope geology*. (Cambridge University Press, 2005).

8. Jaffey, A. H., Flynn, K. F., Glendenin, L. E., Bentley, W. C. & others. Precision measurement of half-lives and specific activities of U 235 and U 238. *Phys. Rev. C Nucl. Phys.* (1971).

9. Dass, C. Basics of mass spectrometry. in *Fundamentals of Contemporary Mass Spectrometry* 1–14 (John Wiley & Sons, Inc., 2007).

10. Oberthür, T., Davis, D. W., Blenkinsop, T. G. & Höhndorf, A. Precise U–Pb mineral ages, Rb–Sr and Sm–Nd systematics for the Great Dyke, Zimbabwe—constraints on late Archean events in the Zimbabwe craton and Limpopo belt. *Precambrian Res.* **113**, 293–305 (2002).

11. Burleigh, R. W. F. Libby and the development of radiocarbon dating. *Antiquity* **55**, 96–98 (1981).

12. MacDougall, Doug. *Nature's clocks: how scientists measure the age of almost everything*. (2008).

13. Brent Dalrymple, G. *The Age of the Earth*. (Stanford University Press, 1994).

14. Stacey, F. D. Kelvin's age of the Earth paradox revisited. *J. Geophys. Res.* **105**, 13155–13158 (2000).

15. Patterson, C. Age of meteorites and the earth. *Geochim. Cosmochim. Acta* **10**, 230–237 (1956).

16. Ireland, T. New tools for isotopic analysis. *Science* **286**, 2289–2290 (1999).

17. Valley, J. W., Peck, W. H., King, E. M. & Wilde, S. A. A cool early Earth. *Geology* **30**, 351–354 (2002).

18. Bell, E. A., Boehnke, P., Harrison, T. M. & Mao, W. L. Potentially biogenic carbon preserved in a 4.1 billion-year-old zircon. *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. U. S. A.* **112**, 14518–14521 (2015).

19. Léost, I., Féraud, G., Blanc-Valleron, M. M. & Rouchy, J. M. First absolute dating of Miocene Langbeinite evaporites by 40Ar/39Ar laser step-heating:[K2Mg2 (SO4) 3] Stebnyk Mine (Carpathian Foredeep Basin). *Geophys. Res. Lett.* **28**, 4347–4350 (2001).

20. Murray, A. S. & Olley, J. M. Precision and accuracy in the optically stimulated luminescence dating of sedimentary quartz: a status review. *Geochronometria* **21**, 1–16 (2002).

21. Murray, A. S. & Olley, J. M. Optically stimulated luminescence dating of sediments over the past 200,000 years. *Annu. Rev. Earth Planet. Sci.* **39**, 461–488 (2011).

22. Christopher B. DuRoss, Stephen F. Personius, Anthony J. Crone, Susan S. Olig & William R. Lund. Integration of Paleoseismic Data from Multiple Sites to Develop an Objective Earthquake Chronology: Application to the Weber Segment of the Wasatch Fault Zone, Utah. *Bulletin of the Seismological Society of America* **101**, 2765–2781 (2011).

23. P van den Haute & Frans De Corte. Advances in Fission-Track Geochronology. *Springer Science & Business Media* (2013).

This page titled Section 7.2: Absolute Dating is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Chris Johnson, Matthew D. Affolter, Paul Inkenbrandt, & Cam Mosher (OpenGeology) via source content that was edited to the style and standards of the LibreTexts platform.

- **7.2: Absolute Dating** by Chris Johnson, Matthew D. Affolter, Paul Inkenbrandt, & Cam Mosher is licensed CC BY-NC-SA 4.0. Original source: https://opengeology.org/textbook/.

Section 7.3: Fossils and Evolution



Figure *Section*7.3.1: Archaeopteryx lithographica, specimen displayed at the Museum für Naturkunde in Berlin.

Fossils are any evidence of past life preserved in rocks. They may be actual remains of body parts (rare), impressions of soft body parts, casts and molds of body parts (more common), body parts replaced by mineral (common) or evidence of animal behavior such as footprints and burrows. The body parts of living organisms range from the hard bones and shells of animals, soft cellulose of plants, soft bodies of jellyfish, down to single cells of bacteria and algae. Which body parts can be preserved? The vast majority of life today consists of soft-bodied and/or single-celled organisms, and will not likely be preserved in the geologic record except under unusual conditions. The best environment for preservation is the ocean, yet marine processes can dissolve hard parts and scavenging can reduce or eliminate remains. Thus, even under ideal conditions in the ocean, the likelihood of preservation is quite limited. For terrestrial life, the possibility of remains being buried and preserved is even more limited. In other words, the fossil record is incomplete and records only a small percentage of life that existed. Although incomplete, fossil records are used for stratigraphic correlation, using the Principle of Faunal Succession, and provide a method used for establishing the age of a formation on the Geologic Time Scale.

Section 7.3.1 Types of Preservation



Figure *Section*7.3.1: Trilobites had a hard exoskeleton and are often preserved by permineralization.. via Wikimedia Commons" width="204px" height="252px"

Remnants or impressions of hard parts, such as a marine clamshell or dinosaur bone, are the most common types of fossils [24]. The original material has almost always been replaced with new minerals that preserve much of the shape of the original shell, bone, or cell. The common types of fossil preservation are actual preservation, permineralization, molds and casts, carbonization, and trace fossils.

Actual preservation is a rare form of fossilization where the original materials or hard parts of the organism are preserved. Preservation of soft-tissue is very rare since these organic materials easily disappear because of bacterial decay [24]. Examples of actual preservation are unaltered biological materials like insects in amber or original minerals like mother-of-pearl on the interior of a shell. Another example is mammoth skin and hair preserved in post-glacial deposits in the Arctic regions [25]. Rare mummification [26] have left fragments of soft tissue, skin, and sometimes even blood vessels of dinosaurs, from which proteins have been isolated and evidence for DNA fragments have been discovered [27].



Figure *Section*7.3.1: Mosquito preserved in amber. via Wikimedia Commons" width="388px" height="266px"



Figure *Section*7.3.1: Permineralization in petrified wood. CC BY-SA 2.5], via Wikimedia Commons" width="250px" height="250px"

Permineralization occurs when an organism is buried, and then elements in groundwater completely impregnate all spaces within the body, even cells. Soft body structures can be preserved in great detail, but stronger materials like bone and teeth are the most likely to be preserved. Petrified wood is an example of detailed cellulose structures in the wood being preserved. The University of California Berkeley website has more information on permineralization.

Molds and **casts** form when the original material of the organism dissolves and leaves a cavity in the surrounding rock. The shape of this cavity is an external mold. If the mold is subsequently filled with sediments or a mineral precipitate, the organism's external shape is preserved as a cast. Sometimes internal cavities of organisms, such internal casts of clams, snails, and even skulls are preserved as internal casts showing details of soft structures. If the chemistry is right, and burial is rapid, mineral nodules form around soft structures preserving the three-dimensional detail. This is called **authigenic mineralization**.

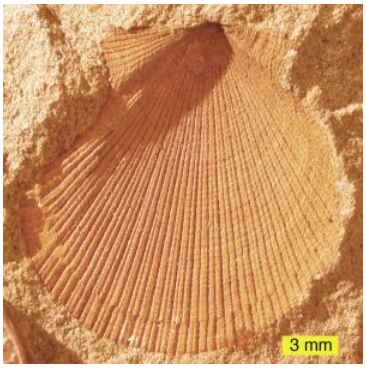


Figure *Section*7.3.1: External mold of a clam

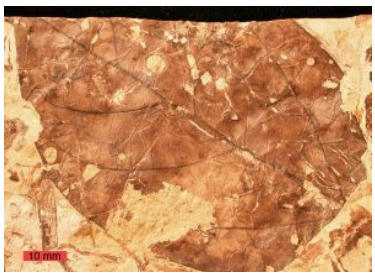


Figure *Section*7.3.1: Carbonized leaf. via Wikimedia Commons" width="308px" height="221px"

Carbonization occurs when the organic tissues of an organism are compressed, the volatiles are driven out, and everything but the carbon disappears leaving a carbon silhouette of the original organism. Leaf and fern fossils are examples of carbonization [28].

Trace fossils are indirect evidence left behind by an organism, such as burrows and footprints, as it lived its life. **Ichnology** is specifically the study of prehistoric animal tracks. Dinosaur tracks testify to their presence and movement over an area and even provide information about their size, gait, speed, and behavior [29; 30]. Burrows dug by tunneling organisms tell of their presence and mode of life [31; 32; 33]. Other trace fossils include fossilized feces called **coprolites** [34] and stomach stones called **gastroliths** [35] that provide information about diet and habitat.



Figure ***Section*7.3.1**: Footprints of the early crocodile Chirotherium. Ballista at the English language Wikipedia [GFDL or CC-BY-SA-3.0], via Wikimedia Commons" width="218px" height="346px"



Figure ***Section*7.3.1**: Fossil animal droppings (coprolite)

Section 7.3.2 Evolution

Evolution has created a variety of ancient fossils that are important to stratigraphic correlation. (see chapter 7 and Chapter 5) This section is a brief discussion of the process of evolution. The British naturalist Charles Darwin (1809-1882) recognized that life forms evolve into progeny life forms. He proposed **natural selection**—which operated on organisms living under environmental conditions that posed challenges to survival—was the mechanism driving the process of evolution forward.

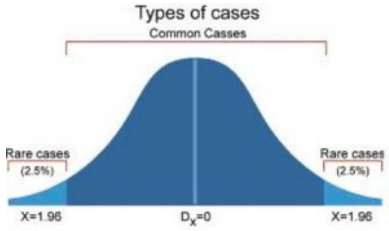


Figure ***Section*7.3.1**: Variation within a population

The basic classification unit of life is the **species**: a population of organisms that exhibit shared characteristics and are capable of reproducing fertile offspring. For a species to survive, each individual within a particular population is faced with challenges posed by the environment and must survive them long enough to reproduce. Within the natural variations present in the population, there may be individuals possessing characteristics that give them some advantage in facing environmental challenges. These individuals are more likely to reproduce and pass these favored characteristics on to successive generations. If sufficient individuals in a population fail to surmount the challenges of the environment and the population cannot produce enough viable offspring, the

species becomes extinct. The average lifespan of a species in the fossil record is around a million years. That life still exists on Earth shows the role and importance of evolution as a natural process in meeting the continual challenges posed by our dynamic Earth. If the inheritance of certain distinctive characteristics is sufficiently favored over time, populations may become genetically isolated from one another, eventually resulting in the evolution of separate species. This genetic isolation may also be caused by a geographic barrier, such as an island surrounded by ocean. This theory of evolution by natural selection was elaborated by Darwin in his book *On the Origin of Species* (see Chapter 1) [36]. Since Darwin's original ideas, technology has provided many tools and mechanisms to study how evolution and speciation take place and this arsenal of tools is growing. Evolution is well beyond the hypothesis stage and is a well-established theory of modern science.

Variation within populations occurs by the natural mixing of genes through sexual reproduction or from naturally occurring mutations. Some of this genetic variation can introduce advantageous characteristics that increase the individual's chances of survival. While some species in the fossil record show little morphological change over time, others show gradual or punctuated changes, within which intermediate forms can be seen.

Section 7.3.3 References

24. Allison, P. A. & Briggs, D. E. G. Exceptional fossil record: Distribution of soft-tissue preservation through the Phanerozoic. *Geology* **21**, 527–530 (1993).

25. Dale Guthrie, R. *Frozen Fauna of the Mammoth Steppe*. (pu3430623_3430810, 1989).

26. Manning, P. *Grave Secrets of Dinosaurs: Soft Tissues and Hard Science*. (National Geographic, 2009).

27. Schweitzer, M. H., Wittmeyer, J. L., Horner, J. R. & Toporski, J. K. Soft-tissue vessels and cellular preservation in Tyrannosaurus rex. *Science* **307**, 1952–1955 (2005).

28. Erickson, J., Coates, D. R. & Erickson, H. P. *An introduction to fossils and minerals: seeking clues to the Earth's past*. (Facts On File, Incorporated, 2014).

29. James O Farlow, R.E. Chapman, B Breithaupt & N Matthews. The Scientific Study of Dinosaur Footprints. in *The Complete Dinosaur* (2012).

30. Martin Lockley. *Tracking dinosaurs: a new look at an ancient world*. (1991).

31. Pemberton, S. G. & Frey, R. W. Trace Fossil Nomenclature and the Planolites-Palaeophycus Dilemma. *J. Paleontol.* **56**, 843–881 (1982).

32. *Palaeobiology II*. (Wiley-Blackwell, 2001).

33. *Biogenic structures: Their use in interpreting depositional environments*. (Sepm Society for Sedimentary, 1985).

34. Karen Chin. What did Dinosaurs Eat? Coprolites and other direct evidence of Dinosaur diets. in *The Complete Dinosaur* (2012).

35. Wm. Lee Stokes. Dinosaur gastroliths revisited. *J. Paleontol.* **61**, 1242–1246 (1987).

36. Darwin, C. *On the origin of species by means of natural selection, or, the preservation of favoured races in the struggle for life*. (J. Murray, 1859).

This page titled Section 7.3: Fossils and Evolution is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Chris Johnson, Matthew D. Affolter, Paul Inkenbrandt, & Cam Mosher (OpenGeology) via source content that was edited to the style and standards of the LibreTexts platform.

- **7.3: Fossils and Evolution** by Chris Johnson, Matthew D. Affolter, Paul Inkenbrandt, & Cam Mosher is licensed CC BY-NC-SA 4.0. Original source: https://opengeology.org/textbook/.

Section 7.4: Correlation

Correlation is the process of establishing which sedimentary strata are of the same age but geographically separated. Correlation can be determined by using magnetic polarity reversals (Chapter 2), rock types, unique rock sequences, or index fossils. There are four main types of correlation: stratigraphic, lithostratigraphic, chronostratigraphic, and biostratigraphic.

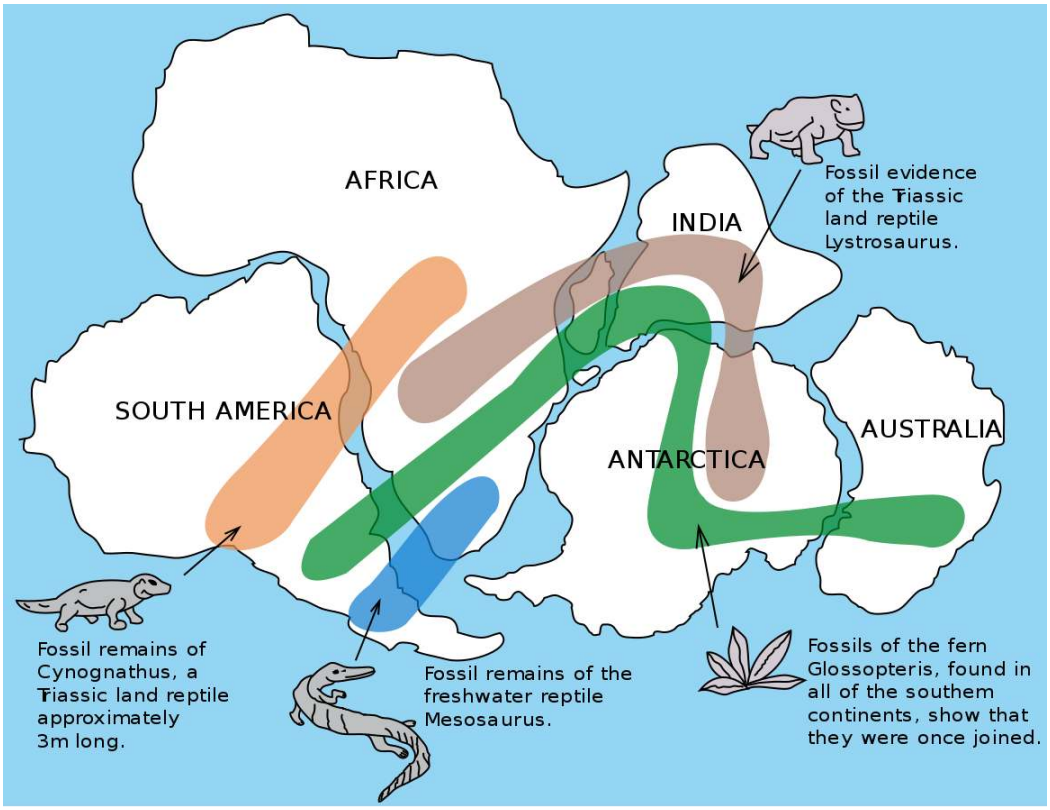


Figure *Section*7.4.1: Image showing fossils that connect the continents of Gondwana (the southern continents of Pangea). Wegener used correlation to help develop the idea of continental drift.

Section 7.4.1 Stratigraphic Correlation

Stratigraphic correlation is the process of establishing which sedimentary strata are the same age at distant geographical areas by means of their stratigraphic relationship. Geologists construct geologic histories of areas by mapping and making stratigraphic columns-a detailed description of the strata from bottom to top. An example of stratigraphic relationships and correlation between Canyonlands National Park and Zion National Park in Utah. At Canyonlands, the Navajo Sandstone overlies the Kayenta Formation which overlies the cliff-forming Wingate Formation. In Zion, the Navajo Sandstone overlies the Kayenta formation which overlies the cliff-forming Moenave Formation. Based on the stratigraphic relationship, the Wingate and Moenave Formations correlate. These two formations have unique names because their composition and outcrop pattern is slightly different. Other strata in the Colorado Plateau and their sequence can be recognized and correlated over thousands of square miles.

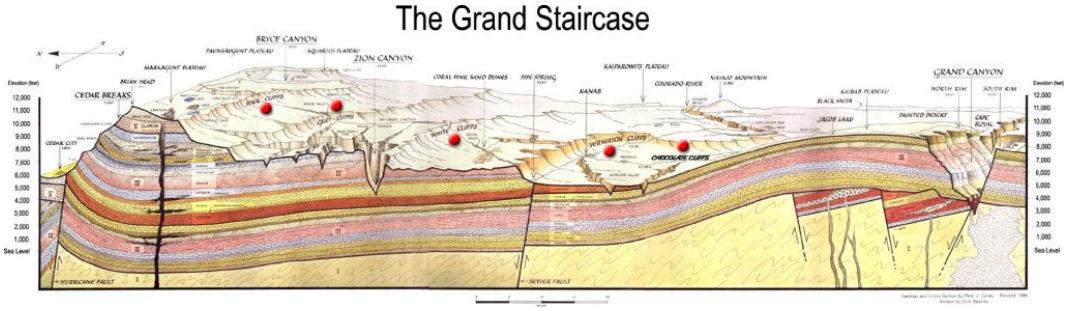


Figure ***Section*7.4.1**: Correlation of Paleozoic and Mesozoic strata along the Grand Staircase from the Grand Canyon to Zion Canyon, Bryce Canyon, and Cedar Breaks. (Source: National Park Service)

Section 7.4.2 Lithostratigraphic Correlation



Figure ***Section*7.4.1**: View of Navajo Sandstone from Angel's Landing in Zion National Park. GFDL, CC-BY-SA-3.0 or CC BY-SA 2.5-2.0-1.0], via Wikimedia Commons" width="293px" height="300px"

Lithostratigraphic correlation establishes a similar age of strata based on **lithology**, which is the composition and physical properties of that strata. *Lithos* is Greek for stone and -logy comes from the Greek word for doctrine or science. Lithostratigraphic correlation can be used to correlate whole formations long distances or can be used to correlate smaller strata within formations to trace their extent and regional depositional environments.



Figure ***Section*7.4.1**: Stevens Arch in the Navajo Sandstone at Coyote Gulch some 125 miles away from Zion National Park. via Wikimedia Commons" width="305px" height="216px"

For example, the Navajo Sandstone, which makes up the prominent walls of Zion National Park, is the same Navajo Sandstone in Canyonlands because the lithology of the two are identical even though they are hundreds of miles apart. Extensions of the same Navajo Sandstone formation are found miles away in other parts of southern Utah, including Capitol Reef and Arches National Parks. Further, this same formation is called the Aztec Sandstone in Nevada and Nugget Sandstone near Salt Lake City because they are lithologically distinct enough to warrant new names.

Section 7.4.3 Chronostratigraphic Correlation

Chronostratigraphic correlation matches rocks of the same age, even though they are made of different lithologies. Different lithologies of sedimentary rocks can form at the same time at different geographic locations because depositional environments vary geographically. For example, at any one time in a marine setting, there could be this sequence of depositional environments from the beach to deep marine: beach, nearshore area, shallow marine lagoon, reef, slope, and deep marine. Each depositional environment will have a unique sedimentary rock formation. On the figure of the Permian Capitan Reef at Guadalupe National

Monument in West Texas, the red line shows a chronostratigraphic timeline that represents a snapshot in time. Shallow-water marine lagoon/back reef area is light blue, the main Capitan reef is dark blue, and deep-water marine siltstone is yellow. All three of these unique lithologies were forming at the same time in Permian along this red timeline.

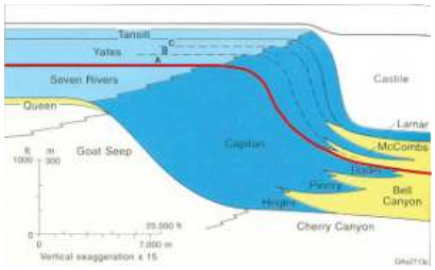


Figure ***Section*7.4.1**: Cross-section of the Permian El Capitan Reef at Guadalupe National Monument, Texas. The red line shows a chronostratigraphic timeline that represents a snapshot in time in which the shallow marine lagoon/back reef area (light blue), main Capitan reef (dark blue), and deep marine siltstones (yellow) were all being deposited at the same time.

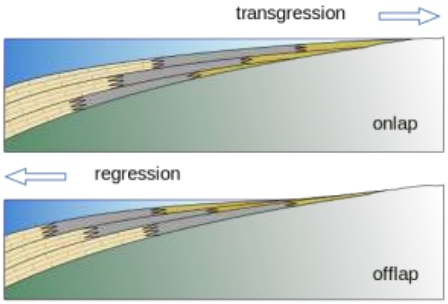


Figure ***Section*7.4.1**: The rising sea levels of transgressions create onlapping sediments, regressions create off-lapping. Ocean water is shown in blue so the timeline is on the surface below the water. At the same time sandstone (buff color), limestone (gray), and shale (mustard color) are all forming at different depths of water.

Section 7.4.4 Biostratigraphic Correlation

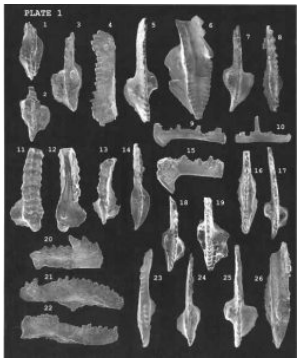


Figure ***Section*7.4.1**: Conodonts

Biostratigraphic correlation uses index fossils to determine strata ages. Index fossils represent assemblages or groups of organisms that were uniquely present during specific intervals of geologic time. Assemblages refer a group of fossils. Fossils allow geologists to assign a formation to an absolute date range, such as the Jurassic Period (199 to 145 million years ago), rather than a relative time scale. In fact, most of the geologic time ranges are mapped to fossil assemblages. The most useful index fossils come from lifeforms that were geographically widespread and had a species lifespan that was limited to a narrow time interval. In other words, index fossils can be found in many places around the world, but only during a narrow time frame. Some of the best fossils for biostratigraphic correlation are microfossils**,** most of which came from single-celled organisms. As with microscopic organisms today, they were widely distributed across many environments throughout the world. Some of these microscopic organisms had hard parts, such as exoskeletons or outer shells, making them better candidates for preservation. Foraminifera, single-celled organisms with calcareous shells, are an example of an especially useful index fossil for the Cretaceous Period and Cenozoic Era [37].

Conodonts are another example of microfossils useful for biostratigraphic correlation of the Cambrian through Triassic Periods. Conodonts are tooth-like phosphatic structures of an eel-like multi-celled organism that had no other preservable hard parts. The conodont-bearing creatures lived in shallow marine environments all over the world. Upon death, the phosphatic hard parts were scattered into the rest of the marine sediments. These distinctive tooth-like structures are easily collected and separated from limestone in the laboratory.

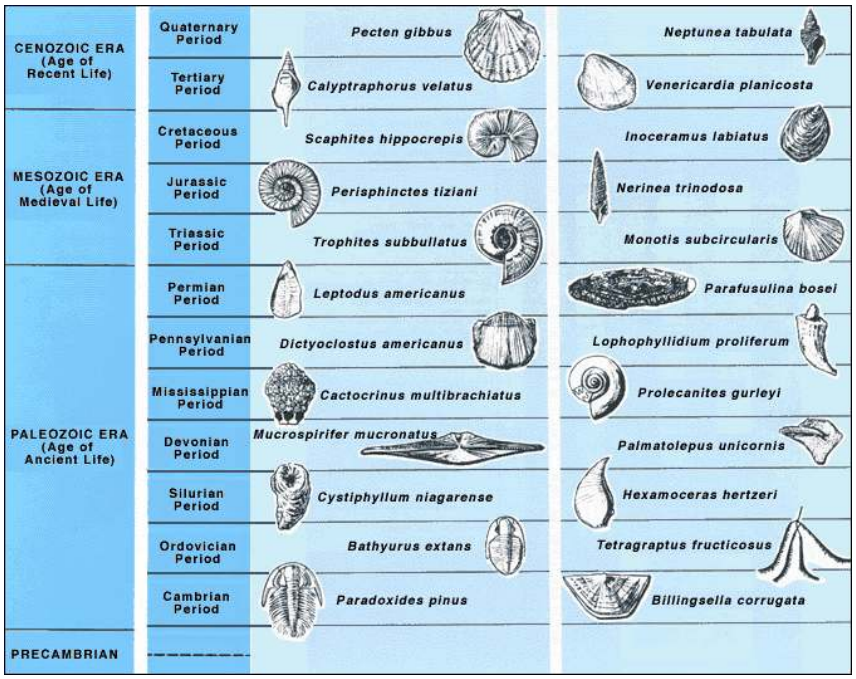


Figure *Section*7.4.1: Index fossils used for biostratigraphic correlation

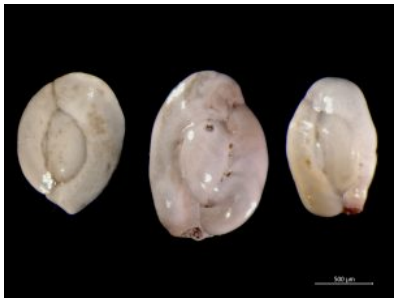


Figure *Section*7.4.1: Foraminifera, microscopic creatures with hard shells. via Wikimedia Commons" width="325px" height="244px"

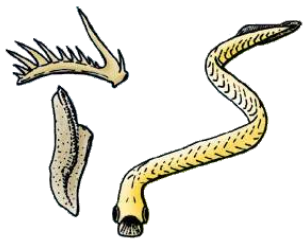


Figure *Section*7.4.1: Artist reconstruction of the conodont animal (right) alongside its teeth. CC BY 3.0], via Wikimedia Commons" width="265px" height="208px"

Because the conodont creatures were so widely abundant, rapidly evolving, and readily preserved in sediments, their fossils are especially useful for correlating strata, even though knowledge of the actual animal possessing them is sparse. Scientists in the 1960s carried out a fundamental biostratigraphic correlation that tied Triassic conodont zonation into ammonoids, which are extinct ancient cousins of the pearly nautilus. Up to that point, ammonoids were the only standard for Triassic correlation, so cross-referencing micro- and macro-index fossils enhanced the reliability of biostratigraphic correlation for either type [38]. That

conodont study went on to establish the use of conodonts to internationally correlate Triassic strata located in Europe, Western North America, and the Arctic Islands of Canada [39].

Section 7.4.5 Geologic Time Scale

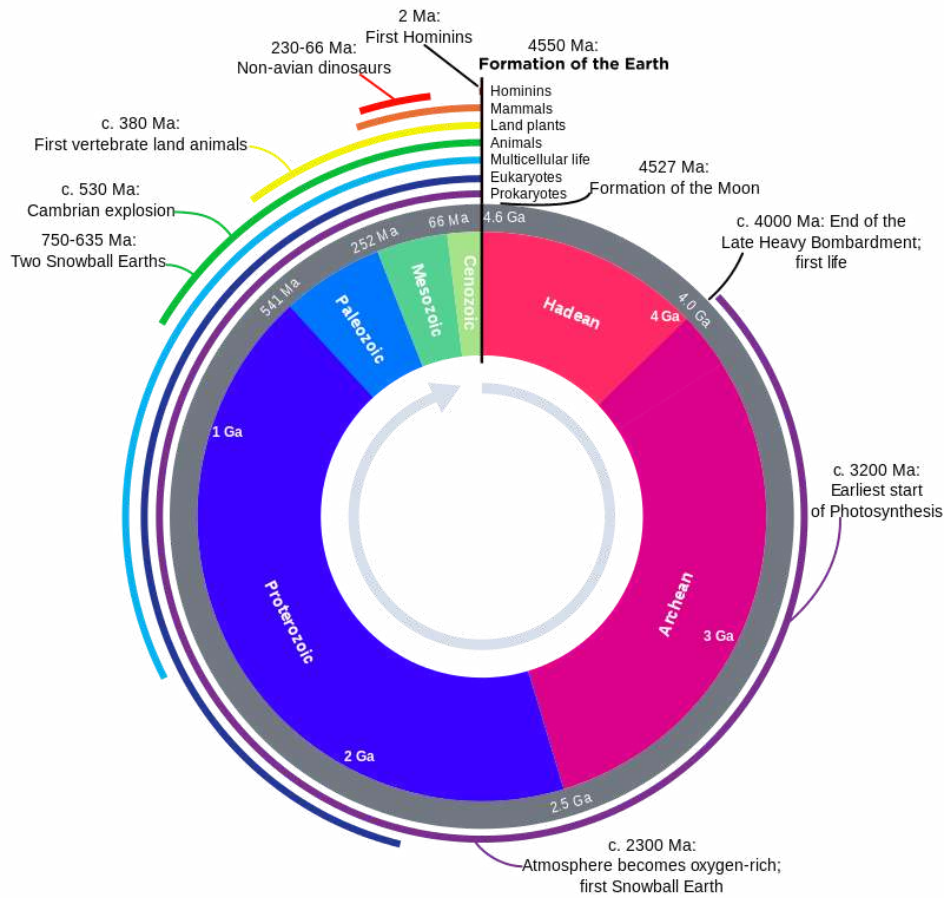


Figure *Section*7.4.1: Geologic time on Earth, represented circularly, to show the individual time divisions and important events. Ga=billion years ago, Ma=million years ago.

Geologic time has been subdivided into a series of divisions by geologists. Eon is the largest division of time, followed by era, period, epoch, and age. The partitions of the geologic time scale are the same everywhere on Earth; however, rocks may or may not be present at a given location depending on the geologic activity going on during a particular period of time. Thus, we have the concept of time vs. rock, in which time is an unbroken continuum but rocks may be missing and/or unavailable for study. The figure of the geologic time scale represents time flowing continuously from the beginning of the Earth, with the time units presented in an unbroken sequence. But that does not mean there are rocks available for study for all of these time units.

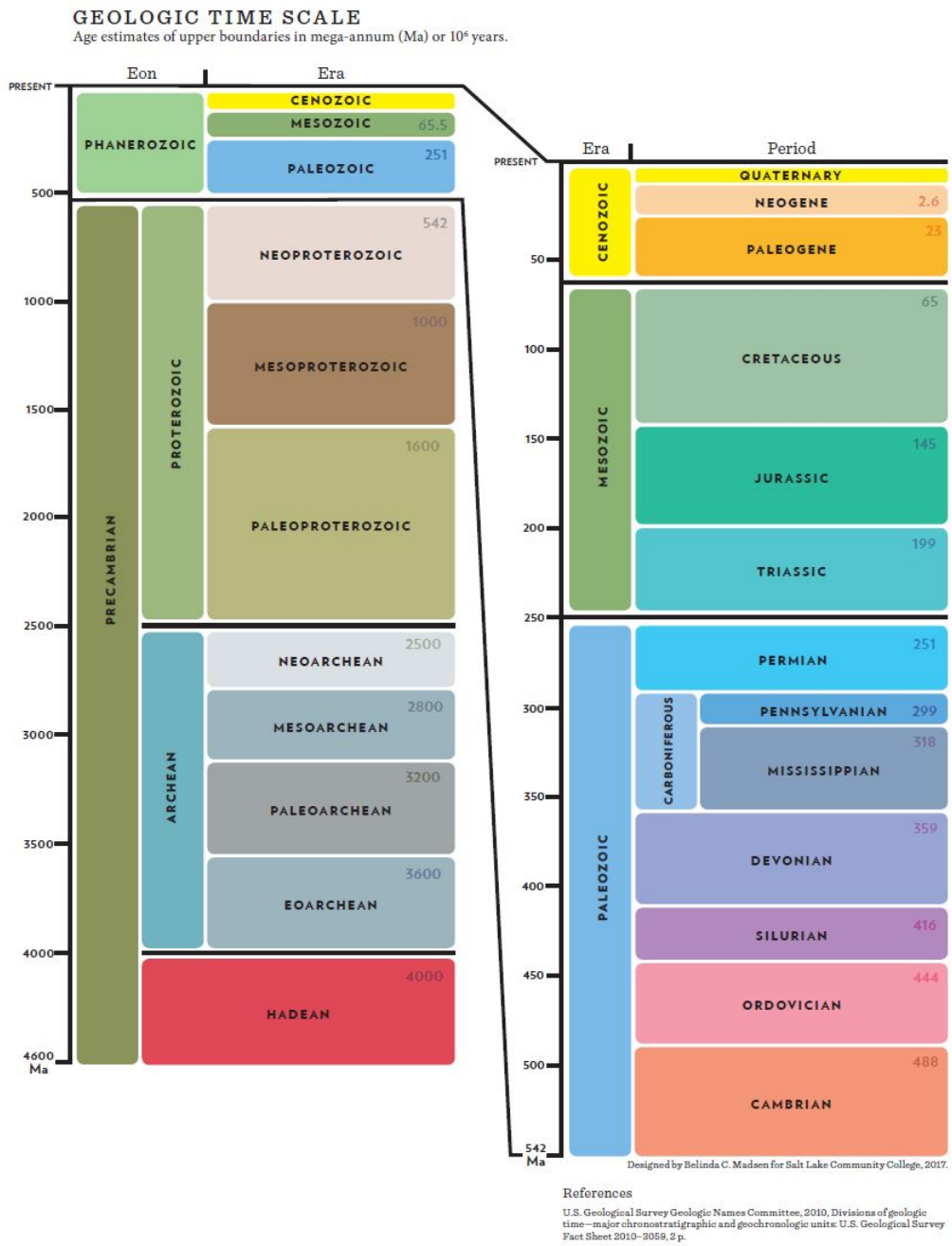


Figure ***Section*7.4.1**: Geologic Time Scale with ages shown in millions of years ago (Ma).

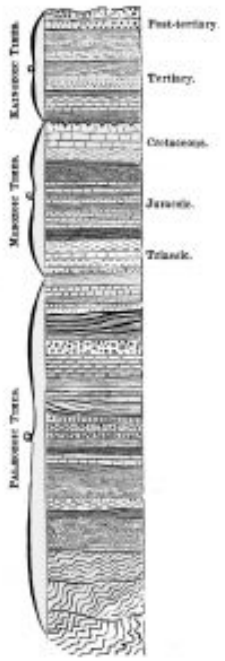


Figure *Section*7.4.1: Names from the Geologic Time Scale applied to strata in a region

The geologic time scale was developed during the 19th century using the principles of stratigraphy. The relative order of the time units was determined before geologists had the tools to assign numerical ages to periods and events. Biostratigraphic correlation using fossils to assign era and period names to sedimentary rocks on a worldwide scale [40]. With the expansion of science and technology, some geologists think the influence of humanity on natural processes has become so great they are suggesting a new geologic time period, known as the **Anthropocene**. [39; 41].

Section 7.4.6 References

37. Wade, B. S., Pearson, P. N., Berggren, W. A. & Pälike, H. Review and revision of Cenozoic tropical planktonic foraminiferal biostratigraphy and calibration to the geomagnetic polarity and astronomical time scale. *Earth-Sci. Rev.* **104**, 111–142 (2011).

38. Mosher, L. C. Triassic conodonts from Western North America and Europe and Their Correlation. *J. Paleontol.* **42**, 895–946 (1968).

39. Mosher, L. C. Triassic conodonts from British Columbia and the northern Arctic Islands. *Bull. Geol. Surv. Can.* **222**, 141–193 (1973).

40. Berry, W. B. N. *Growth of a Prehistoric Time Scale: Based on Organic Evolution (San Francisco, USA, and Folkestone, Kent, England*. (WH Freeman and Co, 1968).

41. Zalasiewicz, J. *et al*. Are we now living in the Anthropocene? *GSA Today* **18**, 4 (2008).

This page titled Section 7.4: Correlation is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Chris Johnson, Matthew D. Affolter, Paul Inkenbrandt, & Cam Mosher (OpenGeology) via source content that was edited to the style and standards of the LibreTexts platform.

- **7.4: Correlation** by Chris Johnson, Matthew D. Affolter, Paul Inkenbrandt, & Cam Mosher is licensed CC BY-NC-SA 4.0. Original source: https://opengeology.org/textbook/.

SECTION OVERVIEW

Section 7.5: Earth History

Learning Objectives

- Explain the big-bang theory and origin of the elements
- Explain the solar system's origin and the consequences for Earth.
- Describe the turbulent beginning of Earth during the Hadean and Archean Eons
- Identify the transition to the modern atmosphere, plate tectonics, and evolution that occurred in the Proterozoic Eon
- Describe the Paleozoic evolution and extinction of invertebrates with hard parts, fish, amphibians, reptiles, tetrapods, and land plants; and tectonics and sedimentation associated with the supercontinent Pangea
- Describe the Mesozoic evolution and extinction of birds, dinosaurs, and mammals; and tectonics and sedimentation associated with the breakup of Pangea
- Describe the Cenozoic evolution of mammals and birds, paleoclimate, and tectonics that shaped the modern world

Entire courses and careers have been based on the wide-ranging topics covering Earth's history. Throughout the long history of Earth, change has been the norm. Looking back in time, an untrained eye would see many unfamiliar life forms and terrains. The main topics studied in Earth history are paleogeography, paleontology, and paleoecology and paleoclimatology—respectively, past landscapes, past organisms, past ecosystems, and past environments. The changes that have occurred since the inception of Earth are vast and significant. From the oxygenation of the atmosphere, the progression of life forms, the assembly and deconstruction of several supercontinents, to the extinction of more life forms than exist today, having a general understanding of these changes can put present change into a more rounded perspective. This chapter will cover briefly the origin of the universe and the 4.6 billion year history of Earth. This Earth history will focus on the major physical and biological events in each eon and Era.

Section 7.5.1: Origin of the Universe

Section 7.5.2: Origin of the Solar System—The Nebular Hypothesis

Section 7.5.3: Hadean Eon

Section 7.5.4: Archean Eon

Section 7.5.5: Proterozoic Eon

Section 7.5.6: Paleozoic

Section 7.5.7: Mesozoic

Section 7.5.8: Cenozoic

This page titled Section 7.5: Earth History is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Chris Johnson, Matthew D. Affolter, Paul Inkenbrandt, & Cam Mosher (OpenGeology) via source content that was edited to the style and standards of the LibreTexts platform.

Section 7.5.1: Origin of the Universe

The universe appears to have an infinite number of galaxies and solar systems and our solar system occupies a small section of this vast entirety. The origins of the universe and solar system set the context for conceptualizing the Earth's origin and early history.



Figure *Section*7.5.1.1: The Hubble Deep Field. This image, released in 1996, is a composite long-exposure picture of one of the darkest parts of the night sky. Every light on this image that does not have diffraction spikes is believed to be an entire galaxy, with hundreds of billions of stars, demonstrating the immense size and scope of the universe.

Section 7.5.1.1 Big-Bang Theory

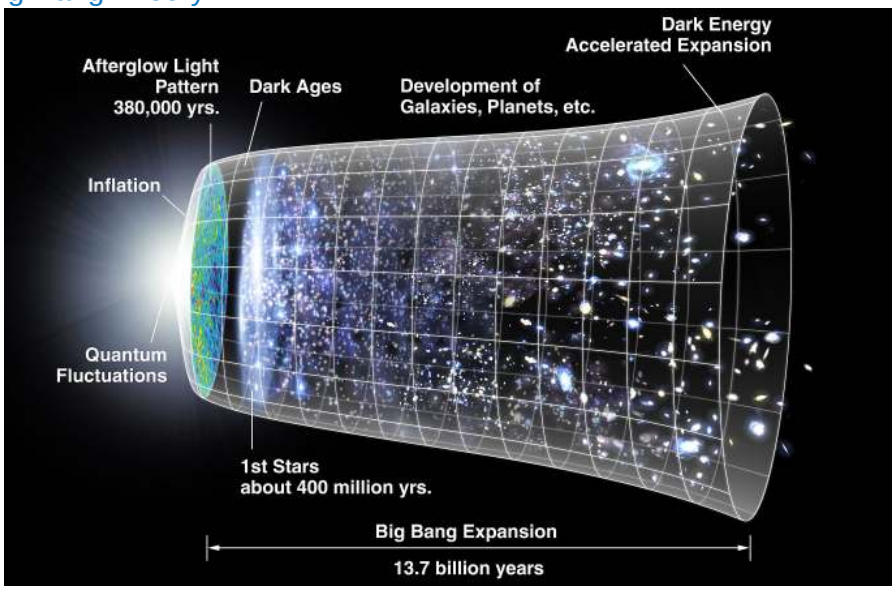


Figure *Section*7.5.1.1: Timeline of expansion of the universe

The mysterious details of events prior to and during the origin of the universe are subject to great scientific debate. The prevailing idea about how the universe was created is called the **big-bang theory**. Although the ideas behind the big-bang theory feel almost mystical, they are supported by Einstein's theory of general relativity [1]. Other scientific evidence, grounded in empirical observations, supports the big-bang theory.

The big-bang theory proposes the universe was formed from an infinitely dense and hot core of the material. The bang in the title suggests there was an explosive, outward expansion of all matter and space that created atoms. Spectroscopy confirms that hydrogen makes up about 74% of all matter in the universe. Since its creation, the universe has been expanding for 13.8 billion years and recent observations suggest the rate of this expansion is increasing [2].

Section 7.5.1.1.1 Spectroscopy

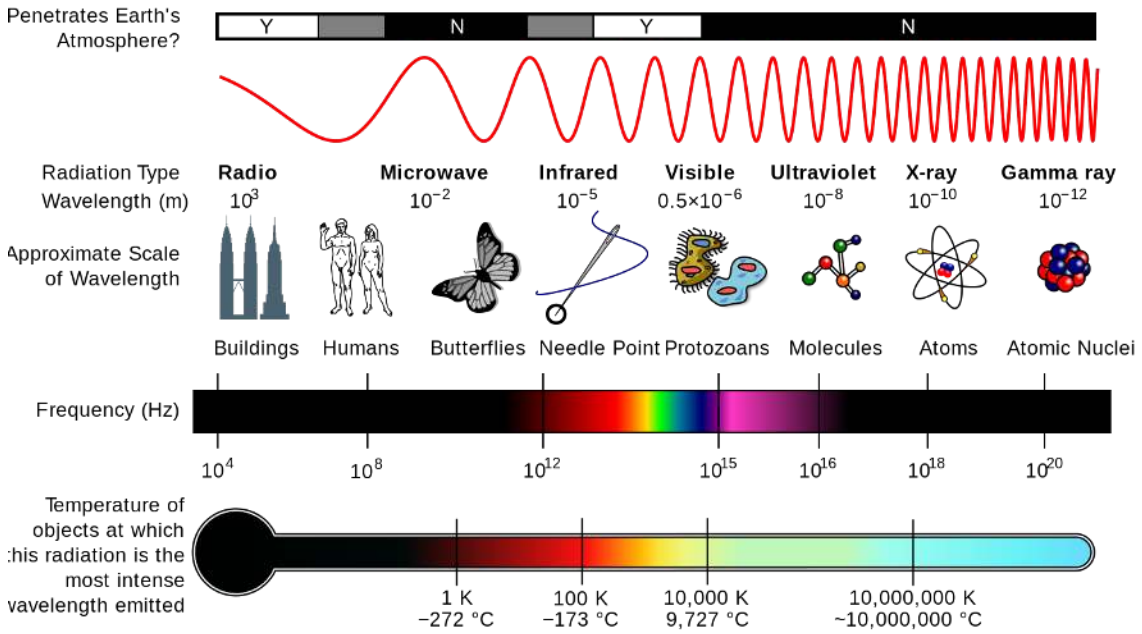


Figure *Section*7.5.1.1: The electromagnetic spectrum and properties of light across the spectrum.

Spectroscopy is the investigation and measurement of spectra produced when materials interact with or emit electromagnetic radiation. *Spectra* is the plural for *spectrum* which is a particular wavelength from the **electromagnetic spectrum**. Common spectra include the different colors of visible light, X-rays, ultraviolet waves, microwaves, and radio waves. Each beam of light is a unique mixture of wavelengths that combine across the spectrum to make the color we see. The light wavelengths are created or absorbed inside atoms, and each wavelength signature matches a specific element. Even white light from the Sun, which seems like an uninterrupted continuum of wavelengths, has gaps in some wavelengths. The gaps correspond to elements present in the Earth's atmosphere that act as filters for specific wavelengths. These missing wavelengths were famously observed by Joseph von Fraunhofer (1787–1826) in the early 1800s [3], but it took decades before scientists were able to relate the missing wavelengths to atmospheric filtering. Spectroscopy shows that the Sun is mostly made of hydrogen and helium. Applying this process to light from distant stars, scientists can calculate the abundance of elements in a specific star and visible universe as a whole. Also, this spectroscopic information can be used as an interstellar speedometer.

Section 7.5.1.1.2 Redshift



Figure *Section*7.5.1.1: Click to animate. This animation demonstrates how the Doppler effect is heard as a car moves. The waves in front of the car are compressed together, making the pitch higher. The waves in the back of the car are stretched, and the pitch gets lower.

The **Doppler effect** is the same process that changes the pitch of the sound of an approaching car or ambulance from high to low as it passes. When an object emits waves, such as light or sound, while moving toward an observer, the wavelengths get compressed. In sound, this results in a shift to a higher pitch. When an object moves away from an observer, the wavelengths are extended, producing a lower-pitched sound. The Doppler effect is used on light emitted from stars and galaxies to determine their speed and direction of travel. Scientists, including Vesto Slipher (1875–1696) [6] and Edwin Hubble (1889–1953) [7], examined galaxies both near and far and found that almost all galaxies outside of our galaxy are moving away from each other, and us. Because the light wavelengths of receding objects are extended, visible light is shifted toward the red end of the spectrum, called a **redshift**. In addition, Hubble noticed that galaxies that were farther away from Earth also had a greater amount of redshift, and thus, the faster they are traveling away from us. The only way to reconcile this information is to deduce the universe is still expanding. Hubble's observation forms the basis of the big-bang theory.





Section 7.5.1.1.3 Cosmic Microwave Background Radiation

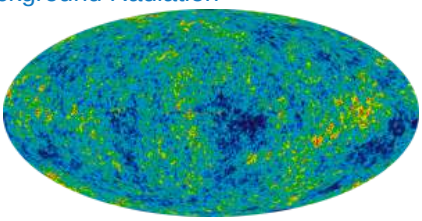


Figure *Section*7.5.1.1: Heat map, showing slight variations in background heat, which is related to cosmic background radiation.. via Wikimedia Commons" width="347px" height="174px"

Another strong indication of the big-bang is **cosmic microwave background radiation**. Cosmic radiation was accidentally discovered by Arno Penzias (1933–) and Robert Woodrow Wilson (1936–) [8] when they were trying to eliminate background noise from a communication satellite. They discovered very faint traces of energy or heat that are omnipresent across the universe. This energy was left behind from the big bang, like an echo.

Section 7.5.1.2 Stellar Evolution

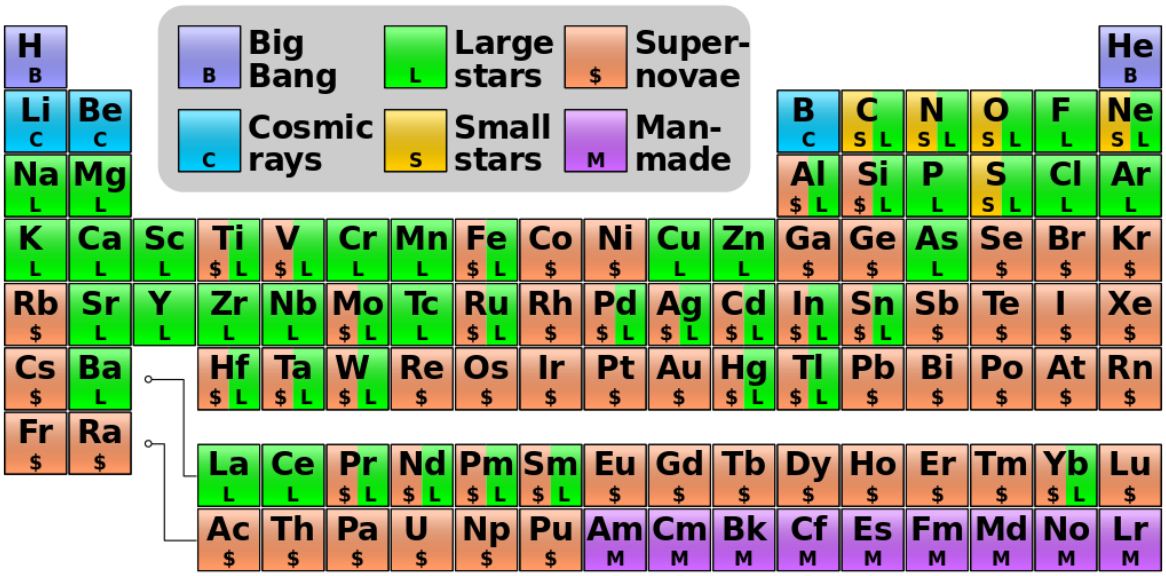


Figure *Section*7.5.1.1: Origin of the elements on the periodic table, showing the important role the star life cycle plays.

Astronomers think the big bang created lighter elements, mostly hydrogen and smaller amounts of elements helium, lithium, and beryllium. Another process must be responsible for creating the other 90 heavier elements. The current model of stellar evolution explains the origins of these heavier elements.

Section 7.5.1.2.1 Birth of a Star

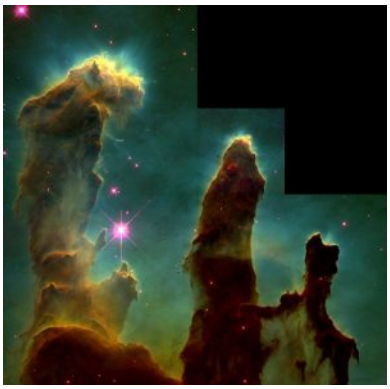


Figure *Section*7.5.1.1: Section of the Eagle Nebula known as “The Pillars of Creation.”. via Wikimedia Commons" width="321px" height="317px"

Stars start their lives as elements floating in cold, spinning clouds of gas and dust known as **nebulas**. Gravitational attraction or perhaps a nearby stellar explosion causes the elements to condense and spin into a disk shape. In the center of this disk shape, a new star is born under the force of gravity. The spinning whirlpool concentrates material in the center, and the increasing gravitational forces collect even more mass. Eventually, the immensely concentrated mass of material reaches a critical point of such intense heat and pressure it initiates fusion.

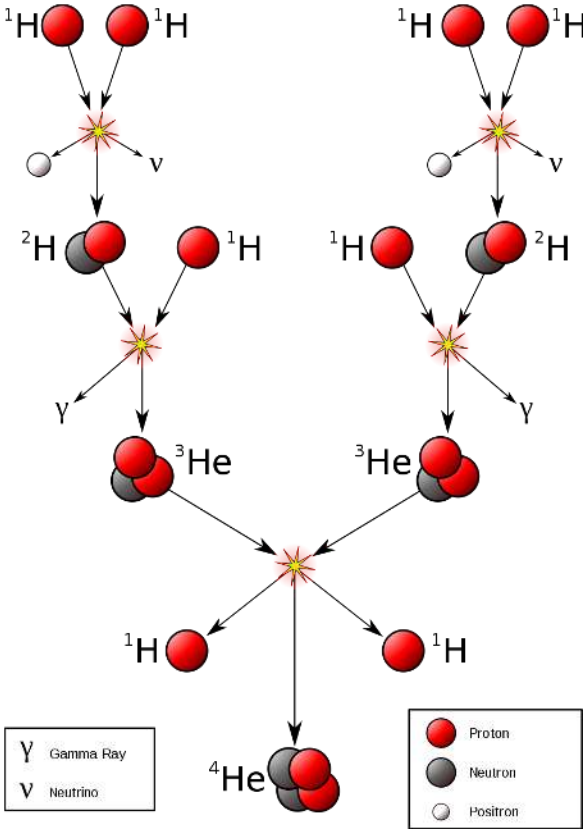


Figure *Section*7.5.1.1: General diagram showing the series of fusion steps that occur in the sun.

Fusion is not a chemical reaction. **Fusion** is a nuclear reaction in which two or more nuclei, the centers of atoms, are forced together and combine creating a new larger atom. This reaction gives off a tremendous amount of energy, usually as light and solar radiation. An element such as hydrogen combines or fuses with other hydrogen atoms in the core of a star to become a new element, in this case, helium. Another product of this process is energy, such as solar radiation that leaves the Sun and comes to the Earth as light and heat. Fusion is a steady and predictable process, which is why we call this the main phase of a star's life. During its main phase, a star turns hydrogen into helium. Since most stars contain plentiful amounts of hydrogen, the main phase may last billions of years, during which their size and energy output remains relatively steady.

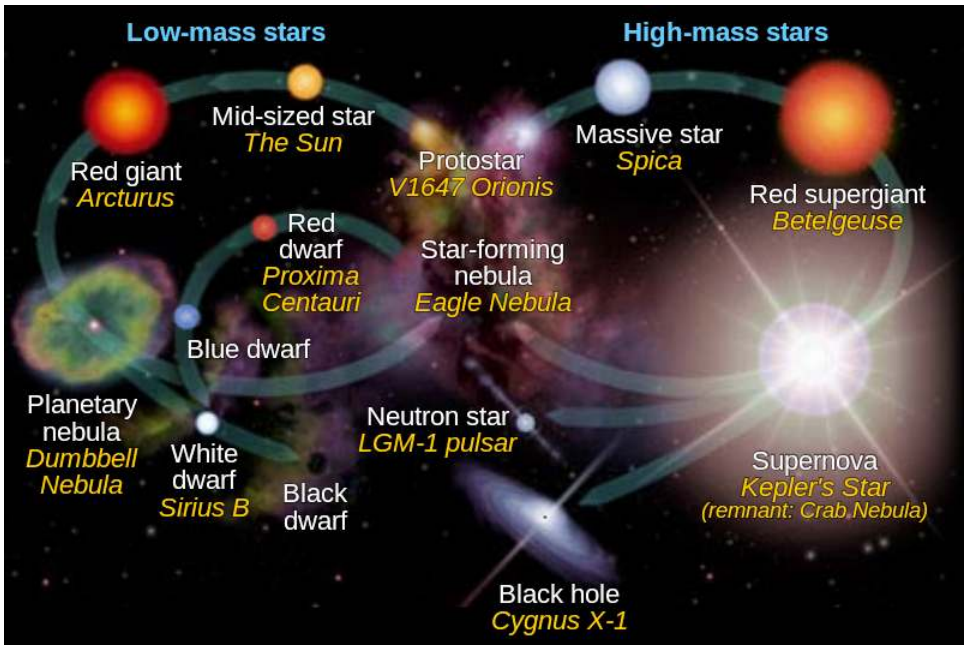


Figure ***Section*7.5.1.1**: Two main paths of a star's life cycle, depending on mass.

The giant phase in a star's life occurs when the star runs out of hydrogen for fusion. If a star is large enough, it has sufficient heat and pressure to start fusing helium into heavier elements. This style of fusion is more energetic and the higher energy and temperature expand the star to a larger size and brightness. This giant phase is predicted to happen to our Sun in another few billion years, growing the radius of the Sun to Earth's orbit, which will render life impossible. The mass of a star during its main phase is the primary factor in determining how it will evolve. If the star has enough mass and reaches a point at which the primary fusion element, such as helium, is exhausted, fusion continues using new, heavier elements. This occurs over and over in very large stars, forming progressively heavier elements like carbon and oxygen. Eventually, fusion reaches its limit as it forms iron and nickel. This progression explains the abundance of iron and nickel in rocky objects, like Earth, within the solar system. At this point, any further fusion absorbs energy instead of giving it off, which is the beginning of the end of the star's life [9].

Section 7.5.1.2.3 Death of a Star

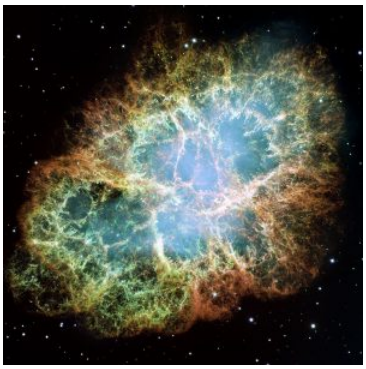


Figure ***Section*7.5.1.1**: Hubble space telescope image of the Crab Nebula, the remnants of a supernova that occurred in 1054 C.E.

The death of a star can range from spectacular to other-worldly (see figure). Stars like the Sun form a planetary nebula, which comes from the collapse of the star's outer layers in an event like the implosion of a building. In the tug-of-war between gravity's inward pull and fusion's outward push, gravity instantly takes over when fusion ends, with the outer gasses puffing away to form a nebula. More massive stars do this as well but with a more energetic collapse, which starts another type of energy release mixed with element creation known as a supernova. In a **supernova**, the collapse of the core suddenly halts, creating a massive outward-propagating shock wave. A supernova is the most energetic explosion in the universe short of the big bang. The energy release is so significant the ensuing fusion can make every element up through uranium [10].

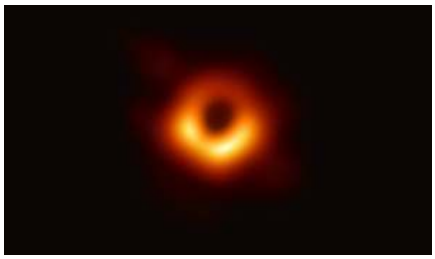


Figure *Section*7.5.1.1: A black hole and its shadow have been captured in an image for the first time in 2019, a historic feat by an international network of radio telescopes called the Event Horizon Telescope (Source: NASA)

The death of the star can result in the creation of white dwarfs, neutron stars, or black holes. Following their deaths, stars like the Sun turn into white dwarfs.

White dwarfs are hot star embers, formed by packing most of a dying star's mass into a small and dense object about the size of Earth. Larger stars may explode in a supernova that packs their mass even tighter to become neutron stars. Neutron stars are so dense that protons combine with electrons to form neutrons. The largest stars collapse their mass even further, becoming objects so dense that light cannot escape their gravitational grasp. These are the infamous black holes and the details of the physics of what occurs in them are still up for debate.

Section 7.5.1.3 References

1. Einstein A (1917) Cosmological Reflections on the General Relativity Theory. Sitzungsberichte der Königlich Preußischen Akademie der Wissenschaften (Berlin), Seite 142-152 142–152

2. Perlmutter S, Aldering G, Goldhaber G (1999) Measurements of Omega and Lambda from 42 high-redshift supernovae. Astrophys J 517:565–586

3. Fraunhofer J (1817) Bestimmung des Brechungs-und des Farbenzerstreungs-Vermögens verschiedener Glasarten, in Bezug auf die Vervollkommnung achromatischer Fernröhre. Ann Phys 56:264–313. https://doi.org/10.1002/andp.18170560706

6. Slipher VM (1913) The radial velocity of the Andromeda Nebula. Lowell Observatory Bulletin 2:56–57

7. Hubble E (1929) A relation between distance and radial velocity among extra-galactic nebulae. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A 15:168–173

8. Penzias AA, Wilson RW (1965) A Measurement of Excess Antenna Temperature at 4080 Mc/s. Astrophys J 142:419–421

9. Salaris M, Cassisi S (2005) Evolution of stars and stellar populations. John Wiley & Sons

10. Timmes FX, Woosley SE, Weaver TA (1995) Galactic chemical evolution: Hydrogen through zinc. The Astrophysical journal Supplement series 98:617–658

This page titled Section 7.5.1: Origin of the Universe is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Chris Johnson, Matthew D. Affolter, Paul Inkenbrandt, & Cam Mosher (OpenGeology) via source content that was edited to the style and standards of the LibreTexts platform.

- **8.1: Origin of the Universe** by Chris Johnson, Matthew D. Affolter, Paul Inkenbrandt, & Cam Mosher is licensed CC BY-NC-SA 4.0. Original source: https://opengeology.org/textbook/.

Section 7.5.2: Origin of the Solar System—The Nebular Hypothesis

Our solar system formed at the same time as our Sun as described in the nebular hypothesis. The **nebular hypothesis** is the idea that a spinning cloud of dust made of mostly light elements, called a nebula, flattened into a protoplanetary disk, and became a solar system consisting of a star with orbiting planets [12]. The spinning nebula collected the vast majority of material in its center, which is why the sun Accounts for over 99% of the mass in our solar system.

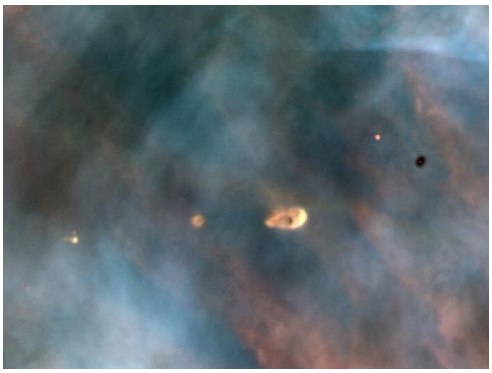


Figure ***Section*7.5.2.1**: Small protoplanetary discs in the Orion *Nebula*

Section 7.5.2.1 Planet Arrangement and Segregation

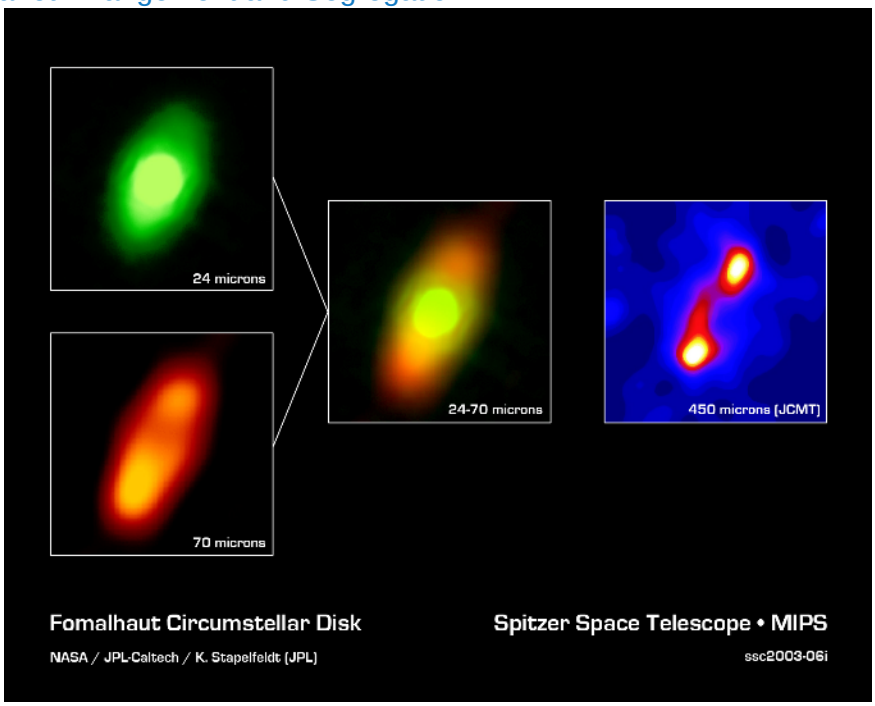


Figure ***Section*7.5.2.1**: This disk is asymmetric, possibly because of a large gas giant planet orbiting relatively far from the star.

As our solar system formed, the nebular cloud of dispersed particles developed distinct temperature zones. Temperatures were very high close to the center, only allowing condensation of metals and silicate minerals with high melting points. Farther from the Sun, the temperatures were lower, allowing the condensation of lighter gaseous molecules such as methane, ammonia, carbon dioxide, and water [13]. This temperature differentiation resulted in the inner four planets of the solar system becoming rocky, and the outer four planets becoming gas giants.

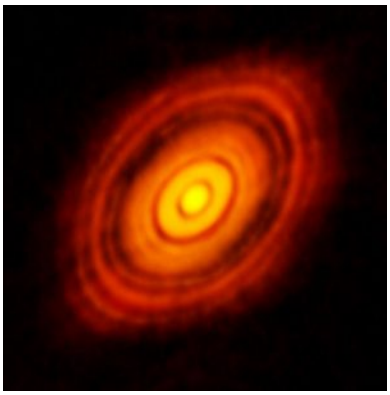


Figure *Section*7.5.2.1: Image by the ALMA telescope of HL Tauri and its protoplanetary disk, showing grooves formed as planets absorb the material in the disk.. CC BY 4.0], via Wikimedia Commons" width="321px" height="321px"

Both rocky and gaseous planets have a similar growth model. Particles of dust, floating in the disc were attracted to each other by static charges and eventually, gravity. As the clumps of dust became bigger, they interacted with each other—colliding, sticking, and forming proto-planets. The planets continued to grow over the course of many thousands or millions of years, as material from the protoplanetary disc was added. Both rocky and gaseous planets started with a solid core. Rocky planets built more rock on that core, while gas planets added gas and ice. Ice giants formed later and on the furthest edges of the disc, accumulating less gas and more ice. That is why the gas-giant planets Jupiter and Saturn are composed of mostly hydrogen and helium gas, more than 90%. The ice giants Uranus and Neptune are composed of mostly methane ices and only about 20% hydrogen and helium gases.

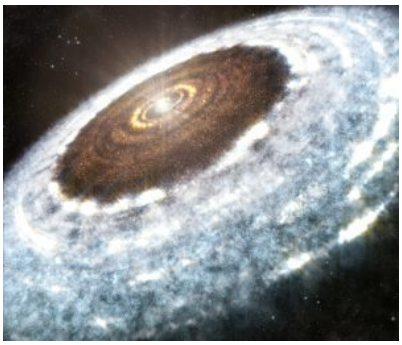


Figure *Section*7.5.2.1: This artist's impression of the water snowline around the young star V883 Orionis, as detected with ALMA.. via Wikimedia Commons" width="329px" height="280px"

The planetary composition of the gas giants is clearly different from the rocky planets. Their size is also dramatically different for two reasons: First, the original planetary nebula contained more gases and ices than metals and rocks. There was abundant hydrogen, carbon, oxygen, nitrogen, and less silicon and iron, giving the outer planets more building material. Second, the stronger gravitational pull of these giant planets allowed them to collect large quantities of hydrogen and helium, which could not be collected by the weaker gravity of the smaller planets.



Figure *Section*7.5.2.1: A polished fragment of the iron-rich Toluca Meteorite, with octahedral Widmanstätten Pattern.. GFDL or CC-BY-SA-3.0], via Wikimedia Commons" width="355px" height="266px"

Jupiter's massive gravity further shaped the solar system and growth of the inner rocky planets. As the nebula started to coalesce into planets, Jupiter's gravity accelerated the movement of nearby materials, generating destructive collisions rather than

constructively gluing material together [14]. These collisions created the asteroid belt, an unfinished planet, located between Mars and Jupiter. This asteroid belt is the source of most **meteorites** that currently impact the Earth. Study of asteroids and meteorites help geologist to determine the age of Earth and the composition of its core, mantle, and crust. Jupiter's gravity may also explain Mars' smaller mass, with the larger planet consuming material as it migrated from the inner to the outer edge of the solar system [15].

Section 7.5.2.1.1 Pluto and Planet Definition

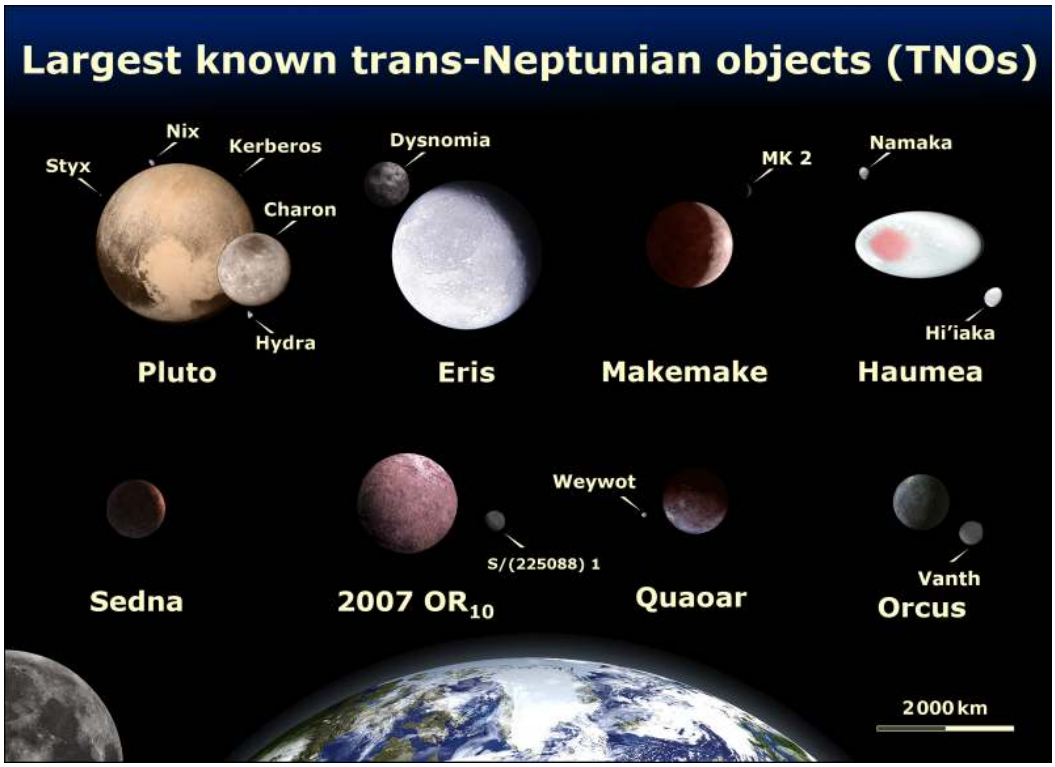


Figure *Section*7.5.2.1: Eight largest objects discovered past Neptune.

The outermost part of the solar system is known as the Kuiper belt, which is a scattering of rocky and icy bodies. Beyond that is the Oort cloud, a zone filled with small and dispersed ice traces. These two locations are where most comets form and continue to orbit, and objects found here have relatively irregular orbits compared to the rest of the solar system. Pluto, formerly the ninth planet, is located in this region of space. The XXVIth General Assembly of the International Astronomical Union (IAU) stripped Pluto of planetary status in 2006 because scientists discovered an object more massive than Pluto, which they named Eris. The IAU decided against including Eris as a planet, and therefore, excluded Pluto as well. The IAU narrowed the definition of a planet to three criteria:

1. Enough mass to have gravitational forces that force it to be rounded
2. Not massive enough to create a fusion
3. Large enough to be in a cleared orbit, free of other planetesimals that should have been incorporated at the time the planet formed. Pluto passed the first two parts of the definition, but not the third. Pluto and Eris are currently classified as dwarf planets

Section 7.5.2.2 References

12. Montmerle T, Augereau J-C, Chaussidon M, et al (2006) Solar System Formation and Early Evolution: the First 100 Million Years. In: From Suns to Life: A Chronological Approach to the History of Life on Earth. Springer New York, pp 39–95

13. Martin RG, Livio M (2012) On the evolution of the snow line in protoplanetary discs. Mon Not R Aston Soc Lett 425:L6–L9

14. Petit J-M, Morbidelli A, Chambers J (2001) The Primordial Excitation and Clearing of the Asteroid Belt. Icarus 153:338–347. https://doi.org/10.1006/icar.2001.6702

15. Walsh KJ, Morbidelli A, Raymond SN, et al (2011) A low mass for Mars from Jupiter's early gas-driven migration. Nature 475:206–209

This page titled Section 7.5.2: Origin of the Solar System—The Nebular Hypothesis is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Chris Johnson, Matthew D. Affolter, Paul Inkenbrandt, & Cam Mosher (OpenGeology) via source content that was edited to the style and standards of the LibreTexts platform.

- **8.2: Origin of the Solar System—The Nebular Hypothesis** by Chris Johnson, Matthew D. Affolter, Paul Inkenbrandt, & Cam Mosher is licensed CC BY-NC-SA 4.0. Original source: https://opengeology.org/textbook/.

Section 7.5.3: Hadean Eon

Geoscientists use the geological time scale to assign relative age names to events and rocks, separating major events in Earth's history based on significant changes as recorded in rocks and fossils. This section summarizes the most notable events of each major time interval. For a breakdown of how these time intervals are chosen and organized, see chapter 7.

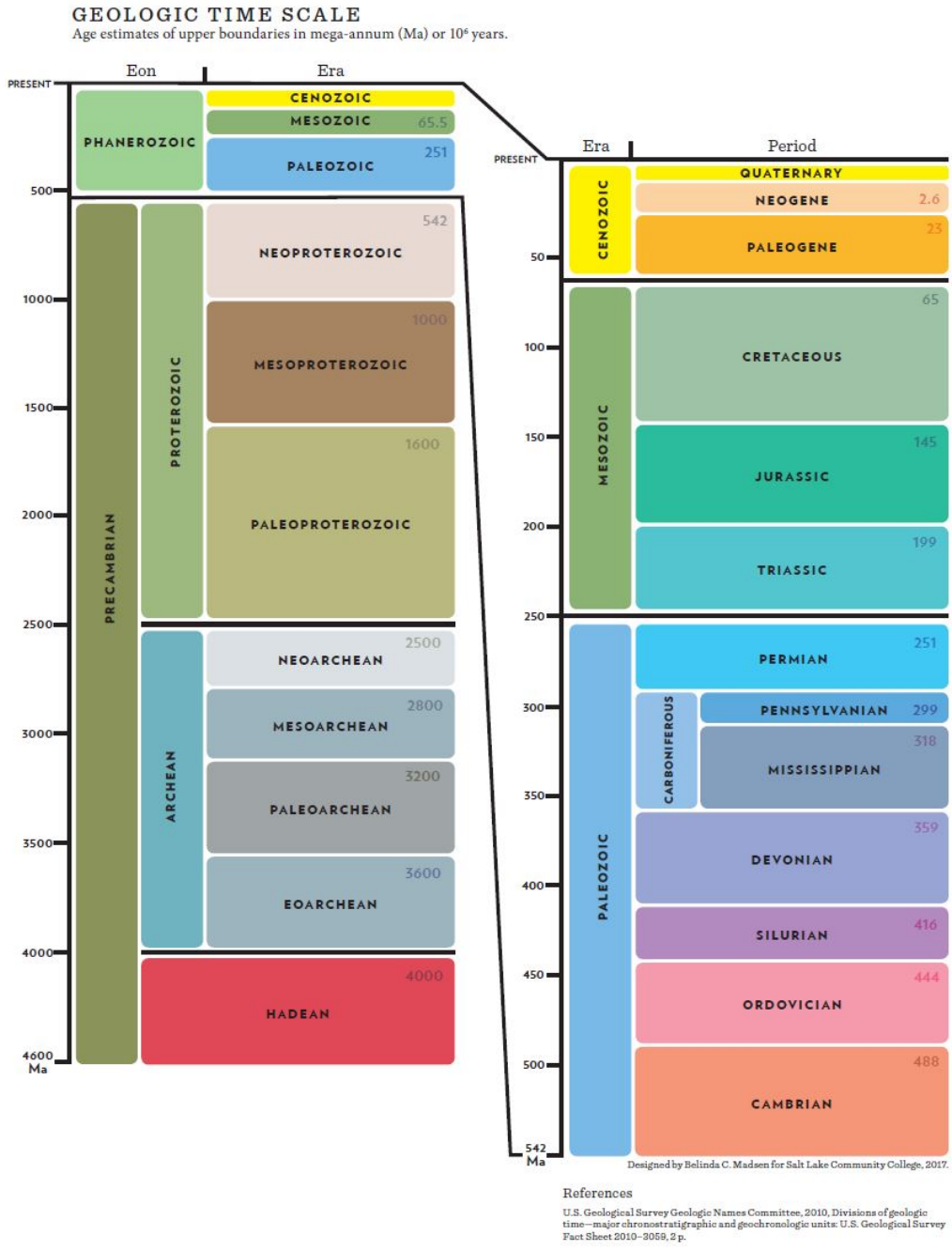


Figure ***Section*7.5.3.1**: Geologic Time Scale with ages shown

The Hadean Eon, named after the Greek god and ruler of the underworld Hades, is the oldest eon and dates from 4.5–4.0 billion years ago.

This time represents Earth's earliest history, during which the planet was characterized by a partially molten surface, volcanism, and asteroid impacts. Several mechanisms made the newly forming Earth incredibly hot: gravitational compression, radioactive decay, and asteroid impacts. Most of this initial heat still exists inside the Earth. The Hadean was originally defined as the birth of

the planet occurring 4.0 billion years ago and preceding the existence of many rocks and life forms. However, geologists have dated minerals at 4.4 billion years, with evidence that liquid water was present [18]. There is possibly even evidence of life existing over 4.0 billion years ago. However, the most reliable record for early life, the microfossil record, starts at 3.5 billion years ago.



Figure ***Section*7.5.3.1**: Artist's impression of the Earth in the Hadean.. CC BY-SA 4.0], via Wikimedia Commons" width="393px" height="211px"

Section 7.5.3.1 Origin of Earth's Crust

As Earth cooled from its molten state, minerals started to crystallize and settle resulting in a separation of minerals based on density and the creation of the crust, mantle, and core. The earliest Earth was chiefly molten material and would have been rounded by gravitational forces so it resembled a ball of lava floating in space. As the outer part of the Earth slowly cooled, the high melting-point minerals (see Bowen's Reaction Series in Chapter 4) formed solid slabs of early crust. These slabs were probably unstable and easily reabsorbed into the liquid magma until the Earth cooled enough to allow numerous larger fragments to form a thin primitive crust. Scientists generally assume this crust was oceanic and mafic in composition and littered with impacts, much like the Moon's current crust. There is still some debate over when plate tectonics started, which would have led to the formation of the continental and the felsic crust [23]. Regardless of this, as Earth cooled and solidified, less dense felsic minerals floated to the surface of the Earth to form the crust, while the denser mafic and ultramafic materials sank to form the mantle and the highest-density iron and nickel sank into the core. This differentiated the Earth from a homogenous planet into a heterogeneous one with layers of felsic crust, mafic crust, ultramafic mantle, and iron and nickel core.

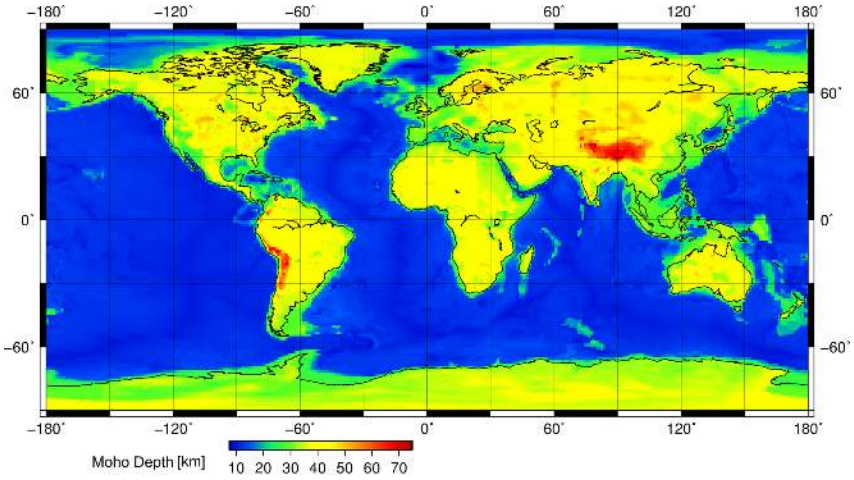


Figure ***Section*7.5.3.1**: The global map of the depth of the moho, or thickness of the crust.

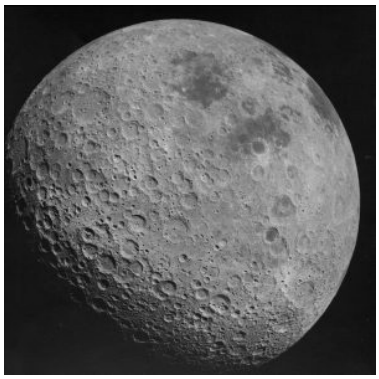


Figure *Section*7.5.3.1: Dark side of the Moon. via Wikimedia Commons" width="311px" height="309px"

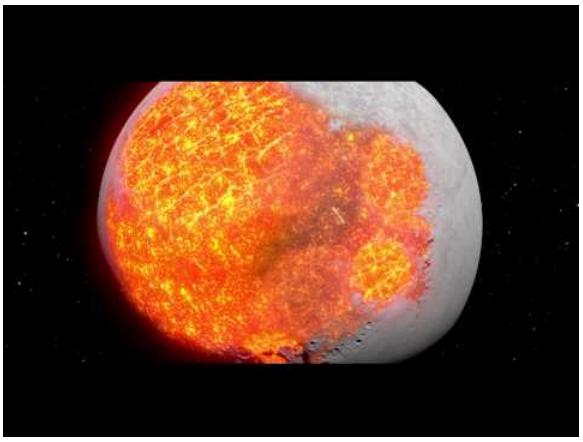
Several unique features of Earth's Moon have prompted scientists to develop the current hypothesis about its formation. The Earth and Moon are tidally locked, meaning that as the Moon orbits, one side always faces the Earth and the opposite side is not visible to us. Also and most importantly, the chemical compositions of the Earth and Moon show nearly identical isotope ratios [24] and volatile content. Apollo missions returned from the Moon with rocks that allowed scientists to conduct very precise comparisons between Moon and Earth rocks. Other bodies in the solar system and meteorites do not share the same degree of similarity and show much higher variability. If the Moon and Earth formed together, this would explain why they are so chemically similar.



Figure *Section*7.5.3.1: Artist's concept of the giant impact from a Mars-sized object that could have formed the moon.. via Wikimedia Commons" width="309px" height="247px"

Many ideas have been proposed for the origin of the Moon: The Moon could have been captured from another part of the solar system and formed in place together with the Earth, or the Moon could have been ripped out of the early Earth. None of the proposed explanations can account for all the evidence. The currently prevailing hypothesis is the **giant-impact hypothesis**. It proposes a body about half of Earth's size must have shared at least parts of Earth's orbit and collided with it, resulting in a violent mixing and scattering of material from both objects. Both bodies would be composed of a combination of materials, with more of the lower density splatter coalescing into the Moon. This may explain why the Earth has a higher density and thicker core than the Moon.





Computer simulation of the evolution of the Moon (2 minutes).

Section 7.5.3.3 Origin of Earth's Water

Explanations for the origin of Earth's water include volcanic outgassing, comets, and meteorites. The volcanic outgassing hypothesis for the origin of Earth's water is that it originated from inside the planet, and emerged via tectonic processes as vapor associated with volcanic eruptions [27]. Since all volcanic eruptions contain some water vapor, at times more than 1% of the volume, these alone could have created Earth's surface water. Another likely source of water was from space. Comets are a mixture of dust and ice, with some or most of that ice being frozen water. Seemingly dry meteors can contain small but measurable amounts of water, usually trapped in their mineral structures [28; 29]. During heavy bombardment periods later in Earth's history, its cooled surface was pummeled by comets and meteorites, which could be why so much water exists above ground. There isn't a definitive answer to what process is the source of ocean water. Earth's water isotopically matches water found in meteorites much better than that of comets [30]. However, it is hard to know if Earth processes could have changed the water's isotopic signature over the last 4-plus billion years. It is possible that all three sources contributed to the origin of Earth's water.

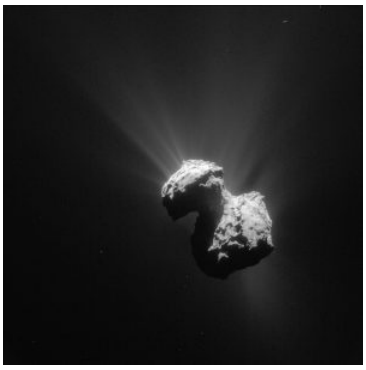


Figure *Section*7.5.3.1: Water vapor leaves comet 67P/Churyumov–Gerasimenko.. CC BY-SA IGO 3.0 [CC BY-SA 3.0-igo], via Wikimedia Commons" width="300"

Section 7.5.3.4 References

18. Wilde SA, Valley JW, Peck WH, Graham CM (2001) Evidence from detrital zircons for the existence of continental crust and oceans on the Earth 4.4 Gyr ago. Nature 409:175–178

23. Johnson TE, Brown M, Gardiner NJ, et al (2017) Earth's first stable continents did not form by subduction. Nature 543:239–242

24. Wiechert U, Halliday AN, Lee DC, et al (2001) Oxygen isotopes and the moon-forming giant impact. Science 294:345–348

27. Pearson DG, Brenker FE, Nestola F, et al (2014) Hydrous mantle transition zone indicated by ringwoodite included within diamond. Nature 507:221–224

28. Morbidelli A, Chambers J, Lunine JI, et al (2000) Source regions and timescales for the delivery of water to the Earth. Meteorit Planet Sci 35:1309–1320

29. Hosono N, Karato S, Makino J, Saitoh TR (2019) Terrestrial magma ocean origin of the Moon. Nature Geoscience 1. https://doi.org/10.1038/s41561-019-0354-2

30. Altwegg K, Balsiger H, Bar-Nun A, et al (2015) Cometary science. 67P Churyumov-Gerasimenko, a Jupiter family comet with a high D-H ratio. Science 347:1261952

This page titled Section 7.5.3: Hadean Eon is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Chris Johnson, Matthew D. Affolter, Paul Inkenbrandt, & Cam Mosher (OpenGeology) via source content that was edited to the style and standards of the LibreTexts platform.

- **8.3: Hadean Eon** by Chris Johnson, Matthew D. Affolter, Paul Inkenbrandt, & Cam Mosher is licensed CC BY-NC-SA 4.0. Original source: https://opengeology.org/textbook/.

Section 7.5.4: Archean Eon

The **Archean Eon**, which lasted from 4.0–2.5 billion years ago, is named after the Greek word for beginning. This eon represents the beginning of the rock record. Although there is current evidence that rocks and minerals existed during the Hadean Eon, the Archean has a much more robust rock and fossil record.



Figure *Section*7.5.4.1: Artist's impression of the Archean.

Section 7.5.4.1 Late Heavy Bombardment

Objects were chaotically flying around at the start of the solar system, building the planets and moons. There is evidence that after the planets formed, about 4.1–3.8 billion years ago, a second large spike of asteroid and comet impacted the Earth and Moon in an event called **late heavy bombardment**. Meteorites and comets in stable or semi-stable orbits became unstable and started impacting objects throughout the solar system. In addition, this event is called the lunar cataclysm because most of the Moons craters are from this event. During the late heavy bombardment, the Earth, Moon, and all planets in the solar system were pummeled by material from the asteroid and Kuiper belts. Evidence of this bombardment was found within samples collected from the Moon.

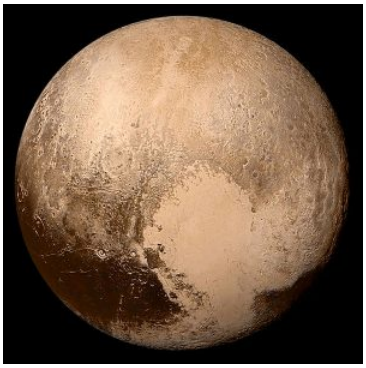


Figure *Section*7.5.4.2: 2015 image from NASA's New Horizons probe of Pluto. The lack of impacts found on the Tombaugh Regio (the heart-shaped plain, lower right) has been inferred as being younger than the Late Heavy Bombardment and the surrounding surface due to its lack of impacts.

It is universally accepted that the solar system experienced extensive asteroid and comet bombardment at its start; however, some other process must have caused the second increase in impacts hundreds of millions of years later. A leading theory blames gravitational resonance between Jupiter and Saturn for disturbing orbits within the asteroid and Kuiper belts [33] based on a similar process observed in the Eta Corvi star system.

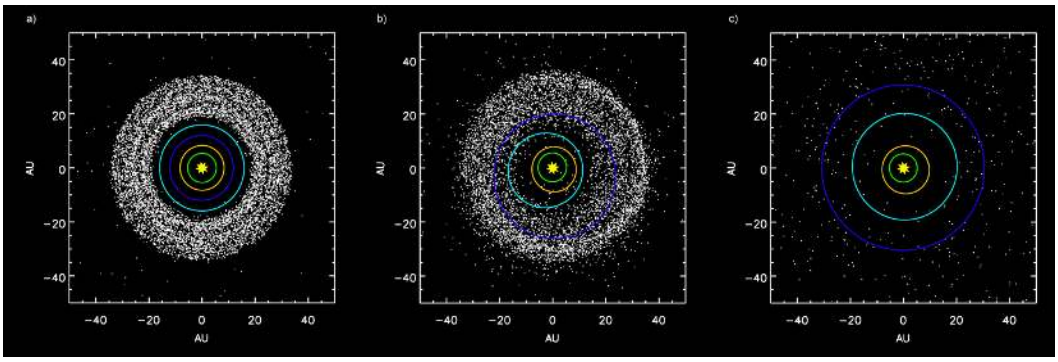


Figure *Section*7.5.4.3: Simulation of before, during, and after the late heavy bombardment.

Section 7.5.4.2 Origin of the Continents

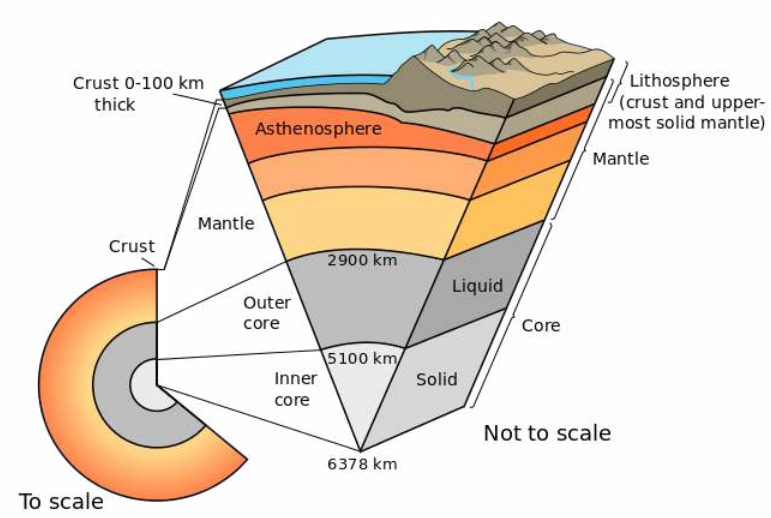


Figure *Section*7.5.4.4: The layers of the Earth. Physical layers include the lithosphere and asthenosphere; chemical layers are crust, mantle, and core.

In order for plate tectonics to work as it does currently, it necessarily must have continents. However, the easiest way to create continental material is via assimilation and differentiation of existing continents (see Chapter 4). This chicken-and-egg quandary over how continents were made in the first place is not easily answered because of the great age of continental material and how much evidence has been lost during tectonics and erosion. While the timing and specific processes are still debated, volcanic action must have brought the first continental material to the Earth's surface during the Hadean, 4.4 billion years ago [18]. This model does not solve the problem of continent formation since magmatic differentiation seems to need a thicker crust. Nevertheless, the continents formed by some incremental process during the early history of Earth. The best idea is that density differences allowed lighter felsic materials to float upward and heavier ultramafic materials and metallic iron to sink. These density differences led to the layering of the Earth, the layers that are now detected by seismic studies. Early protocontinents accumulated felsic materials as developing plate-tectonic processes brought lighter material from the mantle to the surface [36].

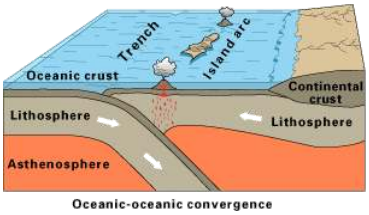


Figure *Section*7.5.4.5: Subduction of an oceanic plate beneath another oceanic plate, forming a trench and an island arc. Several island arcs might combine and eventually evolve into a continent.

The first solid evidence of modern plate tectonics is found at the end of the Archean, indicating at least some continental lithosphere must have been in place. This evidence does not necessarily mark the starting point of plate tectonics; remnants of

earlier tectonic activity could have been erased by the rock cycle.

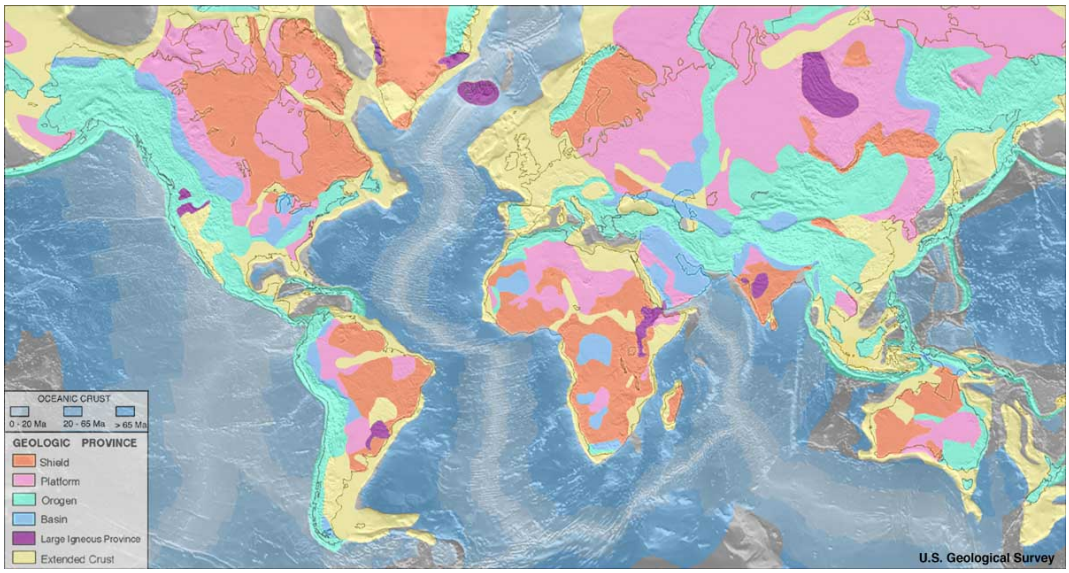


Figure ***Section*7.5.4.6**: Geologic provinces of Earth. Cratons are pink and orange.

The stable interiors of the current continents are called **cartons** and were mostly formed in the Archean Eon. A craton has two main parts: the **shield**, which is crystalline basement rock near the surface, and the **platform** made of sedimentary rocks covering the shield. Most cratons have remained relatively unchanged with most tectonic activity having occurred around cratons instead of within them. Whether they were created by plate tectonics or another process, Archean continents gave rise to the Proterozoic continents that now dominate our planet.

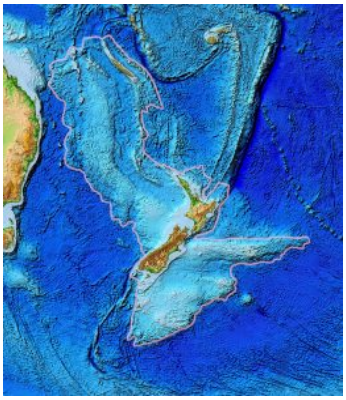


Figure ***Section*7.5.4.7**: The continent of Zealandia. via Wikimedia Commons" width="282px" height="328px"

The general guideline as to what constitutes a continent and differentiates oceanic from the continental crust is under some debate. At passive margins, continental crust grades into the oceanic crust at passive margins, making a distinction difficult. Even island-arc and hot-spot material can seem more closely related to continental crust than oceanic. Continents usually have a craton in the middle with felsic igneous rocks. There is evidence that submerged masses like Zealandia, that includes present-day New Zealand, would be considered a continent [39]. Continental crust that does not contain a craton is called a continental fragment, such as the island of Madagascar off the east coast of Africa.

Section 7.5.4.3 First Life on Earth

Life most likely started during the late Hadean or early Archean Eons. The earliest evidence of life is chemical signatures, microscopic filaments, and microbial mats. Carbon found in 4.1 billion-year-old zircon grains have a chemical signature suggesting an organic origin. Other evidence of early life is the 3.8–4.3 billion-year-old microscopic filaments from a hydrothermal vent deposit in Quebec, Canada. While the chemical and microscopic filaments evidence is not as robust as fossils, there is significant fossil evidence for life at 3.5 billion years ago. These first well-preserved fossils are photosynthetic microbial mats, called **stromatolites**, found in Australia [41].



Figure *Section*7.5.4.8: Fossils of microbial mats from Sweden. CC BY-SA 3.0], via Wikimedia Commons" width="384px" height="214px"

Although the origin of life on Earth is unknown, hypotheses include a chemical origin in the early atmosphere and ocean, deep-sea hydrothermal vents, and delivery to Earth by comets or other objects. One hypothesis is that life arose from the chemical environment of the Earth's early atmosphere and oceans, which was very different than today. The oxygen-free atmosphere produced a reducing environment with abundant methane, carbon dioxide, sulfur, and nitrogen compounds. This is what the atmosphere is like on other bodies in the solar system.

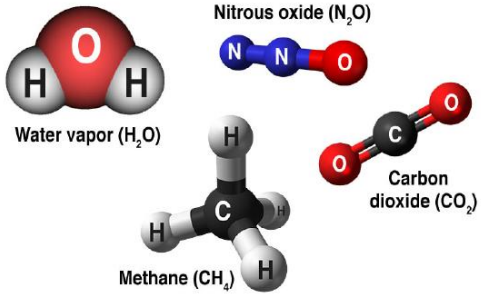


Figure *Section*7.5.4.9: Greenhouse gases were more common in Earth's early atmosphere.

In the famous Miller-Urey experiment, researchers simulated early Earth's atmosphere and lightning within a sealed vessel. After igniting sparks within the vessel, they discovered the formation of amino acids, the fundamental building blocks of proteins [42]. In 1977, when scientists discovered an isolated ecosystem around hydrothermal vents on a deep-sea mid-ocean ridge (Chapter 4), it opened the door for another explanation of the origin of life. The hydrothermal vents have a unique ecosystem of critters with chemosynthesis as the foundation of the food chain instead of photosynthesis. The ecosystem is deriving its energy from hot chemical-rich waters pouring out of underground towers. This suggests that life could have started on the deep ocean floor and derived energy from the heat from the Earth's interior via chemosynthesis. Scientists have since expanded the search for life to more unconventional places, like Jupiter's icy moon Europa.

Animation of the original Miller-Urey 1959 experiment that simulated the early atmosphere and created amino acids from simple elements and compounds.

Another possibility is that life or its building blocks came to Earth from space, carried aboard comets or other objects. Amino acids, for example, have been found within comets and meteorites. This intriguing possibility also implies a high likelihood of life existing elsewhere in the cosmos.

Section 7.5.4.4 References

- 18. Wilde SA, Valley JW, Peck WH, Graham CM (2001) Evidence from detrital zircons for the existence of continental crust and oceans on the Earth 4.4 Gyr ago. Nature 409:175–178
- 33. Desch SJ (2007) Mass distribution and planet formation in the solar nebula. ApJ 671:878. https://doi.org/10.1086/522825
- 36. Smithies RH, Champion DC, Cassidy KF (2003) Formation of Earth's early Archaean continental crust. Precambrian Res 127:89–101
- 39. Mortimer N, Campbell HJ, Tulloch AJ, et al (2017) Zealandia: Earth's Hidden Continent. GSA Today 27
- 41. Noffke N, Christian D, Wacey D, Hazen RM (2013) Microbially induced sedimentary structures recording an ancient ecosystem in the ca. 3.48 billion-year-old Dresser Formation, Pilbara, Western Australia. Astrobiology 13:1103–1124
- 42. Miller SL, Urey HC (1959) Organic compound synthesis on the primitive earth. Science 130:251

This page titled Section 7.5.4: Archean Eon is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Chris Johnson, Matthew D. Affolter, Paul Inkenbrandt, & Cam Mosher (OpenGeology) via source content that was edited to the style and standards of the LibreTexts platform.

- **8.4: Archean Eon** by Chris Johnson, Matthew D. Affolter, Paul Inkenbrandt, & Cam Mosher is licensed CC BY-NC-SA 4.0. Original source: https://opengeology.org/textbook/.

Section 7.5.5: Proterozoic Eon

The **Proterozoic Eon**, meaning “earlier life,” is the eon of time after the Archean eon and ranges from 2.5 billion years old to 541 million years old. During this time, most of the central parts of the continents had formed and the plate tectonic process had started. Photosynthesis (in organisms like stromatolites) had already been adding oxygen slowly to the atmosphere, but it was quickly absorbed in minerals. Evolutionary advancements in multicellular cyanobacteria completely transformed the atmosphere by adding free oxygen gas (O_2) and causing the decimation of the anaerobic (non-oxygen) bacteria that existed at the time [47]. This is known as the **Great Oxygenation Event.** In an oxygenated world, organisms could thrive in ways they could not earlier. Oxygen also changed the chemistry of the planet in significant ways. For example, iron can be carried in solution in a non-oxygenated environment. However, when iron combines with free oxygen, it creates a solid precipitate to make minerals like hematite (iron oxide). This is the reason large deposits of iron known as banded iron formations are common during this time, ending around 2 billion years ago [48].

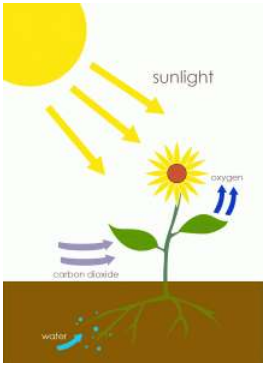


Figure *Section*7.5.5.1: Diagram showing the main products and reactants in photosynthesis. The one product that is not shown is sugar, which is the chemical energy that goes into constructing the plant, and the energy that is stored in the plant which is used later by the plant or by animals that consume the plant.. CC BY-SA 3.0], via Wikimedia Commons" width="216"

The formation of the banded iron lasted a long time and prevented the oxygen level from increasing significantly in the oceans since the rocks literally took the oxygen out of the water and formed alternating layers of iron-oxide minerals and red chert. Eventually, as oxygen continued to be made, absorption of oxygen in mineral precipitation leveled off, and dissolved oxygen gas started filling the oceans and eventually bubbling out into the atmosphere. Oxygenation of the atmosphere is the single biggest event that distinguishes the Archean Earth and the Proterozoic Earth [49]. In addition to changing mineral and ocean chemistry, this event is also tabbed as the likely cause of Earth’s first glaciation, the Huron Glaciation that occurred around 2.1 billion years ago [50]. Free oxygen reacted with methane in the atmosphere, turning it into carbon dioxide. Methane is a more effective greenhouse gas than carbon dioxide, and as CO_2 increased in the atmosphere, the greenhouse effect actually decreased, thus cooling the planet.

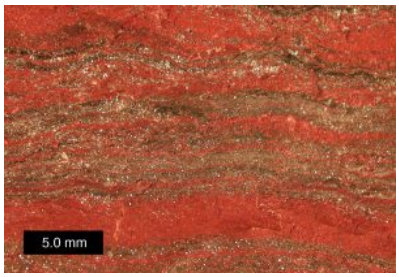


Figure *Section*7.5.5.1: Alternating bands of iron-rich and silica-rich mud, formed as oxygen combined with dissolved iron.. via Wikimedia Commons" width="326px" height="224px"

Section 7.5.5.1 Rodinia

By the Proterozoic eon, lithospheric plates had formed and started moving according to plate tectonic motions similar to today. As these plates formed and started moving, eventually a **supercontinent** formed from collisions as the ocean basins closed. The exact number of supercontinents during the Proterozoic (or earlier) is unknown, but **Rodinia** is the best understood. It formed about 1 billion years ago and broke up at the end of the Proterozoic, about 750-600 million years ago. **Laurentia**, the name for the continental mass that became North America, most likely was in the center of Rodinia. The reconstruction of Rodinia has been

accomplished matching and aligning ancient mountain chains to assemble the pieces like a jigsaw puzzle, and paleomagnetic to orient them with respect to magnetic north.

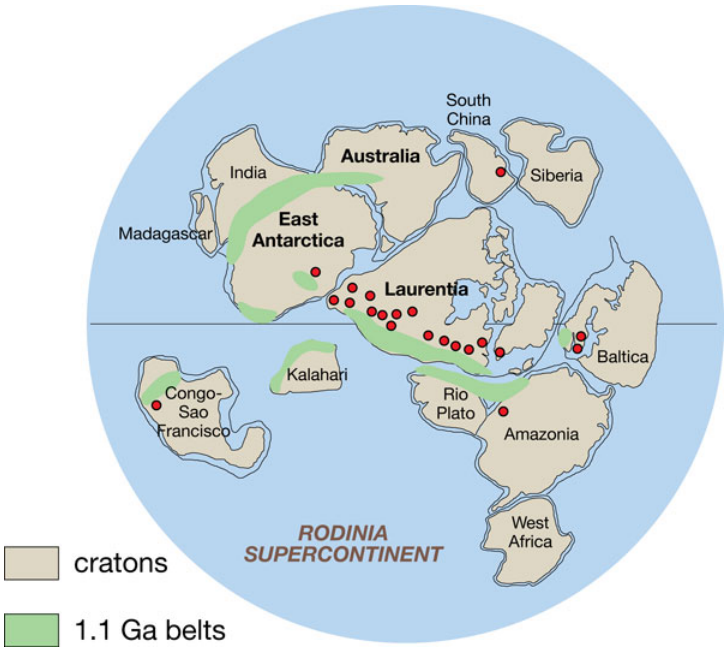


Figure *Section*7.5.5.1: One possible reconstruction of Rodinia 1.1 billion years ago. Source: John Goodge, modified from Dalziel (1997).

As examples of the complexity of the issue and disagreements among geologists over the reconstructions, there are at least six different models of what broke away from Laurentia in the Panthallasa Ocean (early Pacific), including Australia, Antarctica [53], parts of China, the Tarim craton north of the Himalaya [54], Siberia [55], or the Kalahari craton of eastern Africa [56]. Regardless of the exact details, it was this breakup that created lots of biologically-favorable shallow water environments that fostered the evolutionary breakthroughs that mark the start of the next eon, the Phanerozoic.

Section 7.5.5.2 Life Evolves

Early life in the Archean and earlier is poorly documented in the fossil record, but chemical evidence and evolutionary theory state that this life would have been single-celled photosynthetic organisms such as cyanobacteria in **stromatolites**. Fossil cyanobacteria in these stromatolites produced free oxygen in the atmosphere through photosynthesis. Cyanobacteria are **prokaryotes**, i.e. single-celled organisms (archaea and bacteria) with simple cells that lack a cell nucleus and other organelles.



Figure *Section*7.5.5.1: Modern cyanobacteria (as stromatolites) in Shark Bay, Australia.. GFDL or CC-BY-SA-3.0], via Wikimedia Commons" width="347px" height="258px"

However, during the Proterozoic, a large evolutionary step occurred with the appearance of eukaryotes. Evolving around 2.1-1.6 billion years ago, **eukaryotic** cells are more complex with cell organelles and a nucleus with more complex DNA replication and regulation, mitochondria for additional energy, and chloroplasts to perform photosynthesis and produce energy. Certain organelles even have their own DNA, like mitochondria. Eukaryotes are the branch of the tree of life that gave rise to fungi, plants, and animals. About 1.2 billion years ago, another important event in Earth's biological history occurred when some eukaryotes invented

sex [59]. By sharing genetic material between reproducing individuals (male and female), evolutionary change was enhanced by increasing genetic variability. This allowed more complexity among individual organisms, and eventually, ecosystems.



Figure ***Section*7.5.5.1**: Fossil stromatolites in Saratoga Springs, New York.. CC BY-SA 3.0], via Wikimedia Commons" width="335"

It is important to realize that the Proterozoic land surfaces were barren, at least of plants like grasses, trees, and animals. Geologic processes were active just like today, but the application of the Uniformity Principle requires the realization of differences in the environments in which the processes operate. For example, rain and rivers were present but erosion on barren land surfaces would have operated at different rates than on modern land surfaces protected by plants.



Figure ***Section*7.5.5.1**: Dickinsonia, a typical Ediacaran fossil.. Verisimilus at English Wikipedia [GFDL, CC-BY-SA-3.0 or CC BY 2.5], via Wikimedia Commons" width="300"

The **Ediacaran fauna** (635.5-541 million years ago, [60]) offers the first glimpse at these evolving ecosystems toward the end of the Proterozoic. These organisms were among the first multicellular life forms and may have been similar to soft jellyfish or worm-like organisms [61; 62]. Since the Ediacaran fauna did not have hard parts like shells, they are not well preserved in Proterozoic rocks. However, studies suggest that they were widespread around the earth [63]. Scientists still debate how many of these are extinct evolutionary dead-ends or the ancestors to modern biological groups [61]. The transition of life from the soft-bodied Ediacaran forms to the explosion of forms with hard parts at the end of the Proterozoic and beginning of the Phanerozoic made a dramatic difference in our ability to understand earth history and the history of life.

Section 7.5.5.3 References

47. Schirrmeister BE, de Vos JM, Antonelli A, Bagheri HC (2013) Evolution of multicellularity coincided with increased diversification of cyanobacteria and the Great Oxidation Event. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A 110:1791–1796

48. Cloud P (1973) Paleoecological significance of the banded iron-formation. Econ Geol 68:1135–1143

49. Planavsky NJ, Asael D, Hofman A, et al (2014) Evidence for oxygenic photosynthesis half a billion years before the Great Oxidation Event. Nat Geosci 7:283–286

50. Rasmussen B, Bekker A, Fletcher IR (2013) Correlation of Paleoproterozoic glaciations based on U–Pb zircon ages for tuff beds in the Transvaal and Huronian Supergroups. Earth Planet Sci Lett 382:173–180

53. Moores EM (1991) Southwest U.S.-East Antarctic (SWEAT) connection: A hypothesis. Geology 19:425–428

54. Wen B, Evans DAD, Li Y-X (2017) Neoproterozoic paleogeography of the Tarim Block: An extended or alternative “missing-link” model for Rodinia? Earth Planet Sci Lett 458:92–106

55. Sears JW, Price RA (2000) New look at the Siberian connection: No SWEAT. Geology 28:423–42

56. Scotese CR (2009) Late Proterozoic plate tectonics and palaeogeography: a tale of two supercontinents, Rodinia and Pannotia. Geological Society, London, Special Publications 326:67–83

59. Sampson SD (2009) Dinosaur odyssey: Fossil threads in the web of life. University of California Press

60. Knoll AH, Walter MR, Narbonne GM, Christie-Blick N (2004) A new period for the geologic time scale. Science 305:621–622

61. McMenamin MAS (1986) The Garden of Ediacara. Palaios 1:178–182

62. McMenamin MA, Schulte McMenamin DL (1990) The Emergence of Animals: The Cambrian Breakthrough. Columbia University Press

63. Smith EF, Nelson LL, Strange MA, et al (2016) The end of the Ediacaran: Two new exceptionally preserved body fossil assemblages from Mount Dunfee, Nevada, USA. Geology 44:911–914

This page titled Section 7.5.5: Proterozoic Eon is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Chris Johnson, Matthew D. Affolter, Paul Inkenbrandt, & Cam Mosher (OpenGeology) via source content that was edited to the style and standards of the LibreTexts platform.

- **8.5: Proterozoic Eon** by Chris Johnson, Matthew D. Affolter, Paul Inkenbrandt, & Cam Mosher is licensed CC BY-NC-SA 4.0. Original source: https://opengeology.org/textbook/.

Section 7.5.6: Paleozoic



Figure *Section*7.5.6.1: The trilobites had a hard exoskeleton and were an early arthropod, the same group that includes modern insects, crustaceans, and arachnids.

The **Phanerozoic** eon is the most recent eon and represents time in which fossils are common, 541 million years ago to today. The word Phanerozoic means “visible life.” Older rocks, collectively known as the **Precambrian** (sometimes referred to as the Cryptozoic, meaning “invisible life”), are less common and have only rare fossils, and the fossils that exist represent soft-bodied life forms. The invention of hard parts like claws, scales, shells, and bones made fossils more easily preserved, and thus, easier to find. Since the younger rocks of the Phanerozoic are more common and contain the majority of fossils, the study of this eon yields much greater detail. It is further subdivided into three eras: Paleozoic (“ancient life”), Mesozoic (“middle life”), and Cenozoic (“recent life”).

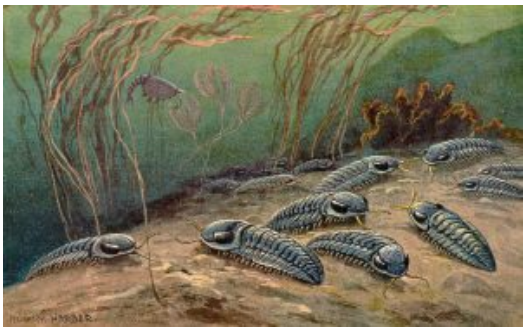


Figure *Section*7.5.6.1: Trilobites, by Heinrich Harder, 1916.

The **Paleozoic** era was dominated by marine organisms, but by the middle of the era, plants and animals had evolved to live and reproduce on land, including amphibians and reptiles. Fish evolved jaws and fins evolved into limbs. Lungs evolved and life emerged from the sea onto land to become the first four-legged tetrapods, amphibians. Amphibians eventually evolved into reptiles once they developed hard-shelled eggs. From reptiles evolved an early ancestor to mammals. The Carboniferous Period near the end of the Paleozoic had some of the most productive forests in the history of Earth and produced the coal that powered the industrial revolution in Europe and the United States. Tectonically, during the early Paleozoic, North America was separated from the other continents until the supercontinent Pangea formed towards the end of the era.



Figure *Section*7.5.6.1: Laurentia, which makes up the North American craton.

After the breakup of Rodinia toward the end of the Proterozoic, sea level remained high relative to land in the early Paleozoic. This resulted in much of **Laurentia** (considered mainly synonymous with North America) being inundated with water over the stable platforms surrounding the craton. While sea level fluctuated during transgressions and regressions after the Ordovician, many of the Paleozoic rocks found in the interior of the United States are marine in origin, due to overall relative high sea level throughout the Paleozoic.

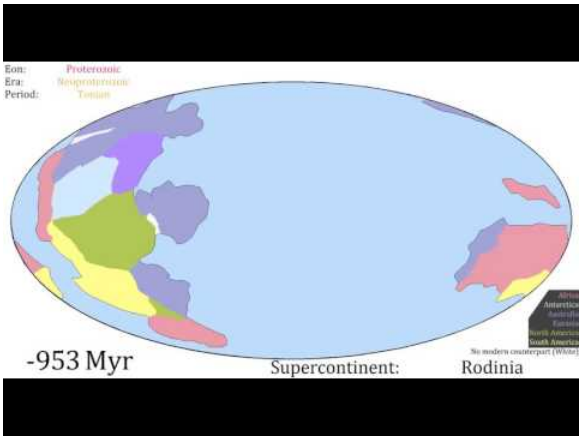


Figure *Section*7.5.6.1: A reconstruction of Pangaea, showing approximate positions of modern continents.

In eastern North America, the assembly of **Pangea** (sometimes spelled Pangaea) started as early as the Cambrian with a series of events including subduction with island arcs and continental collisions and eventually ocean-basin closures known as the Taconic, Acadian, Caledonian, and Alleghanian (also known as Appalachian) orogenies [66; 68]. The name Pangea, originally coined by

Alfred Wegener, means “all land.” Colliding lithospheric plates formed the supercontinent, creating a series of mountain ranges and a broad fold-thrust belt, leaving a large global ocean basin known as the Panthalassa Ocean, with the Tethys Sea being the name of the large “bay” that formed between **Laurasia** (the northern continents of Laurentia and Eurasia) and **Gondwana** (the southern continents of India, Australia, Antarctica, and Africa). The eroded remains of the collisional mountains formed on Pangea are still in existence today as the Appalachian, Alleghanian, Scandinavian, Marathon, and Ouachita Mountain ranges. Stress from the Alleghanian orogeny reactivated faulting, produced uplifts, and deformation/folding as far west as the Pennsylvanian-aged Ancestral Rocky Mountains of Colorado.





Animation of plate movement in the last 3.3 billion years. Pangea occurs at the 4:40 mark.

Tectonics in western North America during the early part of the Paleozoic was mostly mild, as a long-lived passive margin developed. After the start of the Devonian, the Antler orogeny finally caused faulting and basin development, mostly seen across Nevada today. The Antler belt is most likely a result of an island arc crashing into western North America [71].



Figure *Section*7.5.6.1: Anomalocaris reconstruction by the MUSE science museum in Italy.. CC BY-SA 3.0], via Wikimedia Commons" width="300"

The earliest Paleozoic had a significant biological explosion and contains evidence of a wide variety of evolutionary paths, including the evolutionary invention of hard parts like shells, spikes, teeth, and scales. Paleontologists refer to this event as the **Cambrian Explosion**, named after the first period in the Paleozoic. Scientists debate whether this was a manifestation of a true evolutionary pattern of diversification, better preservation from easier to fossilize creatures, or simply an artifact of a more complete recent rock record. Ediacaran fauna, which lacked easily-fossilized hard parts, may have already been diverse and set the stage for the Cambrian Explosion [72]. Regardless, during the Cambrian period, 541-485 million years ago, a large majority of the phyla of modern marine animals appeared [73]. These new organisms had simple cone- or tube-shaped shells that quickly became more complex. Some of these life forms have survived to today, and some were “experimental” whose lineage did not continue past the Cambrian period. Fossil evidence of this time was first discovered by Charles Walcott in a rock layer called the Burgess Shale in western Canada in 1909.



Figure *Section*7.5.6.1: Original plate from Walcott’s 1912 description of Opabinia, with labels: fp = frontal appendage, e = eye, ths = thoracic somites, i = intestine, ab = abdominal segment.. via Wikimedia Commons" width="134px" height="359px"

The Burgess Shale is a **lagerstätte**, or fossil site of exceptional preservation, including impressions of soft body parts. This allowed scientists to learn immense details of the animals that existed at the time, in addition to their tough shells, spikes, and claws. Other lagerstätte sites of similar age in China and Utah have allowed the forming of a fairly detailed picture of what the biodiversity was like in the Cambrian. The biggest mystery is the animals that do not fit existing lineages and are unique to that time. This includes famous fossil creatures like the first compound-eyed trilobites, and many other strange ones, including *Wiwaxia*, a spiked shell creature; *Hallucigenia*, a walking worm with spikes; *Opabinia*, a 5-eyed lobed arthropod with a trunk and a grappling claw at the end; and the related *Anomalocaris*, the alpha predator of the time, complete with grabbing arms and a deadly circular mouth full of teeth. Most notably at this time, an important ancestor to humans evolved. *Pikaia*, a segmented worm, is thought to be the earliest ancestor of the **Chordata** phylum (including vertebrates; animals with backbones [76]). These astonishing creatures offer a glimpse at evolutionary creativity. At the end of the Cambrian, mollusks, brachiopods, nautiloids, gastropods, graptolites, echinoderms and trilobites had evolved and shared the seafloor.



Figure ***Section*7.5.6.1**: A modern coral reef.. CC BY-SA 3.0 or GFDL], via Wikimedia Commons" width="364px" height="273px"

After the Cambrian Explosion, a similar event occurred which abandoned some of the Cambrian evolutionary animal lines and proliferated others. Known as the Ordovician Radiation or Great Ordovician Biodiversification Event, many common forms and ecosystems recognizable today became common. This includes invertebrates such as mollusks (clams and their relatives), corals, arthropods (insects and their relatives), and vertebrates became more diverse and complex and dominated the oceans [77].

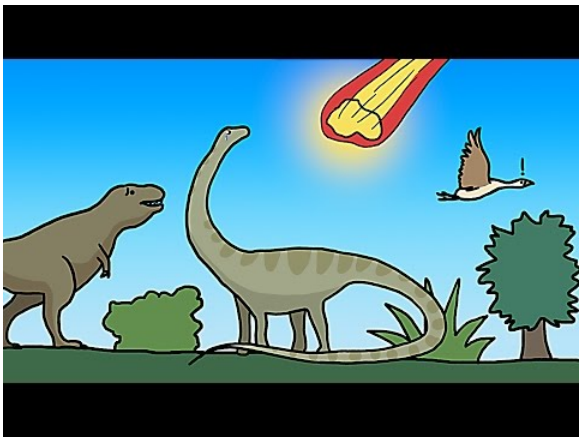


Figure ***Section*7.5.6.1**: Guadalupe National Park is made of a giant fossil reef complex.. CC BY-SA 3.0 or GFDL], via Wikimedia Commons" width="337px" height="231px"

The most important of these advancements may have been reef-building organisms. Mostly colonial coral, they took advantage of better ocean chemistry for calcite and built large structures [78], resembling modern reefs like the Great Barrier Reef off of Australia. Many of the organisms of this time swam around, hid in, or crawled over the reefs. Reefs are so important because of their preservation potential, size (some reef fossils are the size of mountains), and the ability to create an in-place ecosystem in and around them. Few other fossil assemblages in the geologic record can offer more diversity and complexity than reefs. Warm temperatures and high sea levels in the Ordovician most likely helped spur this diversification.

A small ice age based on evidence of glacial deposits and associated falling sea levels led to the dramatic mass extinction by the end of the Ordovician, the first one documented in the fossil record. **Mass extinction** is when an unusually large number of species abruptly vanish and go extinct, and this can be observed in the fossil record (see video below). Life bounced back in the Silurian [78]. The major evolutionary event was the development of the forward pair of gill arches into jaws, allowing fish new feeding strategies and opening up new ecological niches.





3-minute video describing mass extinctions and how they are defined.



Figure *Section*7.5.6.1: The armor-plated fish (placoderm) Bothriolepis panderi from the Devonian of Russia.. GFDL or CC BY-SA 3.0], via Wikimedia Commons" width="300"

The Silurian provides the first evidence of land plants and animals [80; 81]. This includes the first-ever vascular plant, *Cooksonia*, with woody tissues, veins for transporting water and food, seeds, and roots. The first bony fish and shark are also Silurian, which includes the first primitive jaws. This also saw the start of armored fish, known as the placoderms. Insects, spiders, scorpions, and crustaceans began to inhabit dry-land and freshwater habitats.

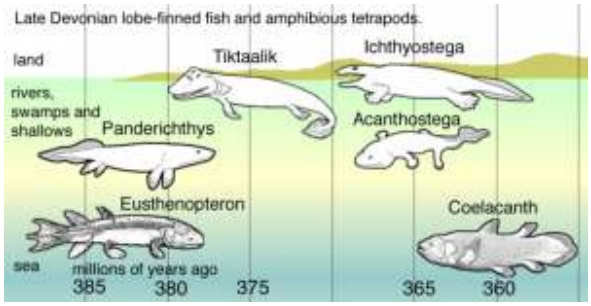


Figure *Section*7.5.6.1: Several different types of fish and amphibians that led to walking on land.. GFDL or CC BY-SA 4.0-3.0-2.5-2.0-1.0], via Wikimedia Commons" width="487px" height="248px"

The Devonian, called the age of fishes, saw a rise in plated fish and jawed fish [85], along with the lobe-finned fish. The lobe-finned fish (relatives of the modern lungfish and coelacanth) are important for their eventual evolution into tetrapods, the four-limbed creatures that went on to dominate the land. The first evidence of walking fish, named *Tiktaalik* (about 375 million years ago), gave rise to amphibians. [87]. Most amphibians live on land but lay soft eggs in water. They would later evolve into reptiles that lay hard-shelled eggs on land. Land plants had also evolved into the first trees and forests [88]. Toward the end of the Devonian, another mass extinction event occurred. This extinction, while severe, is the least temporally defined, with wide variations in the timing of the event or events. Reef-building organisms were the hardest hit, leading to dramatic changes in marine ecosystems [89].



Figure *Section*7.5.6.1: A reconstruction of the giant arthropod (insects and their relatives) Arthropleura.. CC BY-SA 4.0], via Wikimedia Commons" width="381px" height="198px"

The next time period called the Carboniferous (North American geologists have subdivided this into the Mississippian and Pennsylvanian periods), saw the highest levels of oxygen ever known, with forests (e.g., ferns, clubmosses) and swamps dominating the landscape [90]. This helped cause the largest arthropods ever, like the millipede *Arthropleura*, at 2.5 meters (6.4 feet) long! It also saw the rise of a new group of animals, the reptiles. The evolutionary advantage that reptiles have over amphibians is the amniote egg (egg with a protective shell), which allows them to rely on non-aquatic environments for reproduction. This widened the terrestrial reach of reptiles compared to amphibians. This booming life, especially plants life, created cooling temperatures as carbon dioxide was removed from the atmosphere [92]. By the middle Carboniferous, these cooler temperatures led to an ice age (called the Karoo Glaciation) and less-productive forests. The reptiles fared much better than the amphibians, leading to their diversification [93]. This glacial event lasted into the early Permian [94].

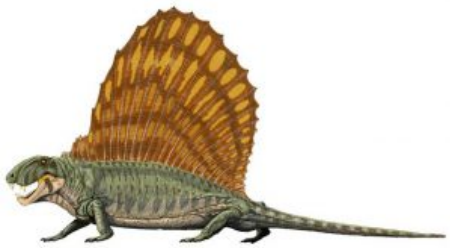


Figure *Section*7.5.6.1: Reconstruction of Dimetrodon.. DiBgd at English Wikipedia [GFDL, CC-BY-SA-3.0 or CC BY 2.5], via Wikimedia Commons" width="378px" height="213px"

By the Permian, with Pangea assembled, the supercontinent led to a dryer climate and even more diversification and domination by the reptiles [95]. The groups that developed in this warm-climate eventually radiated into dinosaurs. Another group, known as the synapsids, eventually evolved into mammals. Synapsids, including the famous sail-backed *Dimetrodon* are commonly confused with dinosaurs. Pelycosaurs (of the Pennsylvanian to early Permian like *Dimetrodon)* are the first group of synapsids that exhibit

the beginnings of mammalian characteristics such as well-differentiated dentition: incisors, highly developed canines in lower and upper jaws and cheek teeth, premolars and molars. Starting in the late Permian, the second group of synapsids, called the therapsids (or mammal-like reptiles) evolve, and become the ancestors to mammals.

Section 7.5.6.2.1 Permian Mass Extinction

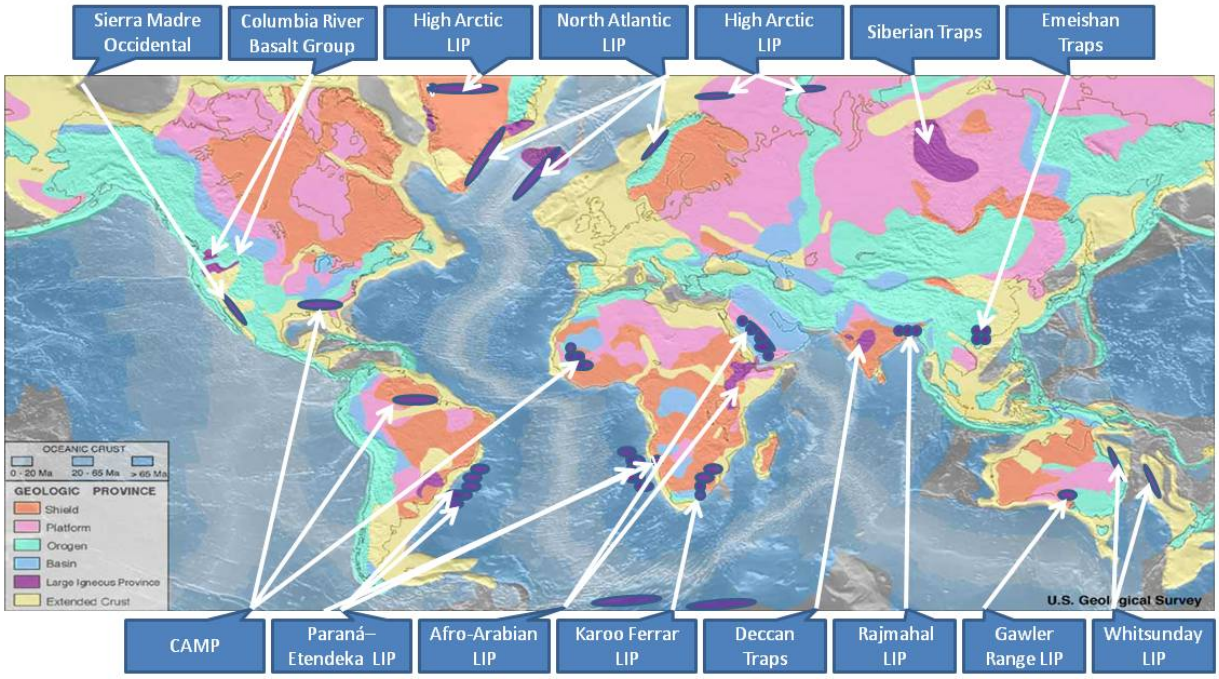


Figure ***Section*7.5.6.1**: Map of global flood basalts. Note the largest is the Siberian Traps.

The end of the Paleozoic era is marked by the largest mass extinction in earth history. The Paleozoic era had two smaller mass extinctions, but these were not as large as the **Permian Mass Extinction**, also known as the Permian-Triassic Extinction Event. It is estimated that up to 96% of marine species and 70% of land-dwelling (terrestrial) vertebrates went extinct. Many famous organisms, like sea scorpions and trilobites, were never seen again in the fossil record. What caused such a widespread extinction event? The exact cause is still debated, though the leading idea relates to extensive volcanism associated with the **Siberian Traps**, which are one of the largest deposits of flood basalts known on Earth, dating to the time of the extinction event [100]. The eruption size is estimated at over 3 million cubic kilometers [101] that is approximately 4,000,000 times larger than the famous 1980 Mt. St. Helens eruption in Washington. The unusually large volcanic eruption would have contributed a large amount of toxic gases, aerosols, and greenhouse gasses into the atmosphere. Further, some evidence suggests that volcanism burned vast coal deposits releasing methane (a greenhouse gas) into the atmosphere. As discussed in Chapter 15, greenhouse gases cause the climate to warm. This extensive addition of greenhouse gases from the Siberian Traps may have caused a runaway greenhouse effect that rapidly changed the climate, acidified the oceans, disrupted food chains, disrupted carbon cycling, and caused the largest mass extinction].

Section 7.5.6.3 References

66. Rodgers J (1971) The Taconic Orogeny. Geol Soc Am Bull 82:1141–1178

68. McKerrow WS, Mac Niocaill C, Dewey JF (2000) The Caledonian orogeny redefined. J Geol Soc London 157:1149–1154

71. Speed RC, Sleep NH (1982) Antler orogeny and foreland basin: A model. Geol Soc Am Bull 93:815–828

72. Schiffbauer JD, Huntley JW, O'Neil GR, et al (2016) The latest Ediacaran Wormworld fauna: Setting the ecological stage for the Cambrian Explosion. GSA Today 26

73. Morris SC (1998) The crucible of creation: the Burgess Shale and the rise of animals. Peterson's

76. Morris SC, Caron J-B (2012) Pikaia gracilens, a stem-group chordate from the Middle Cambrian of British Columbia. Biol Rev Camb Philos Soc 87:480–512

77. Webby BD, Paris F, Droser ML, Percival IG (2012) The Great Ordovician Biodiversification Event. Columbia University Press

78. Munnecke A, Calner M, Harper DAT, Servais T (2010) Ordovician and Silurian sea–water chemistry, sea level, and climate: A synopsis. Palaeogeogr Palaeoclimatol Palaeoecol 296:389–413

80. Niklas KJ (1976) Chemical examinations of some non-vascular Paleozoic plants. Brittonia 28:113–137

81. Selden P, Read H (2007) The oldest land animals: Silurian millipedes from Scotland. Editors 36

85. Rücklin M, Donoghue PCJ, Johanson Z, et al (2012) Development of teeth and jaws in the earliest jawed vertebrates. Nature 491:748–751

87. Niedźwiedzki G, Szrek P, Narkiewicz K, et al (2010) Tetrapod trackways from the early Middle Devonian period of Poland. Nature 463:43–48

88. Stein WE, Mannolini F, Hernick LV, et al (2007) Giant cladoxylopsid trees resolve the enigma of the Earth's earliest forest stumps at Gilboa. Nature 446:904–907

89. McGhee GR (1996) The Late Devonian Mass Extinction: The Frasnian/Famennian Crisis. Columbia University Press

90. Beerling D (2008) The emerald planet: how plants changed Earth's history. OUP Oxford

92. Montañez IP, Tabor NJ, Niemeier D, et al (2007) CO2-forced climate and vegetation instability during Late Paleozoic deglaciation. Science 315:87–91

93. Sahney S, Benton MJ, Falcon-Lang HJ (2010) Rainforest collapse triggered Carboniferous tetrapod diversification in Euramerica. Geology

94. López-Gamundí OR, Buatois LA (2010) Introduction: Late Paleozoic glacial events and postglacial transgressions in Gondwana. Geological Society of America Special Papers 468:v–viii

95. Parrish JT (1993) Climate of the supercontinent Pangea. J Geol 101:215–233

100. Burgess, S. D.; Muirhead, J. D.; Bowring, S. A. (2017) Initial pulse of Siberian Traps sills as the trigger of the end-Permian mass extinction. Nature Communications 8

101. Reichow MK, Pringle MS, Al'Mukhamedov AI, et al (2009) The timing and extent of the eruption of the Siberian Traps large igneous province: Implications for the end-Permian environmental crisis. Earth Planet Sci Lett 277:9–20

This page titled Section 7.5.6: Paleozoic is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Chris Johnson, Matthew D. Affolter, Paul Inkenbrandt, & Cam Mosher (OpenGeology) via source content that was edited to the style and standards of the LibreTexts platform.

- **8.6: Paleozoic** by Chris Johnson, Matthew D. Affolter, Paul Inkenbrandt, & Cam Mosher is licensed CC BY-NC-SA 4.0. Original source: https://opengeology.org/textbook/.

Section 7.5.7: Mesozoic



Figure *Section*7.5.7.1: Perhaps the greatest fossil ever found, a velociraptor attacked a protoceratops, and both were fossilized mid sequence.

Following the Permian Mass Extinction, the **Mesozoic** ("middle life") was from 252 million years ago to 66 million years ago. As Pangea started to break apart, mammals, birds, and flowering plants developed. The Mesozoic is probably best known as the age of reptiles, most notably, the dinosaurs.

Section 7.5.7.1 Mesozoic Tectonics and Paleogeography

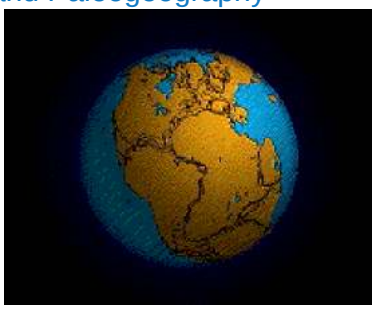


Figure *Section*7.5.7.1: Animation showing Pangea breaking up.

Pangea started breaking up (in a region that would become eastern Canada and United States) around 210 million years ago in the Late Triassic. Clear evidence for this includes the age of the sediments in the Newark Supergroup rift basins and the Palisades sill of the eastern part of North America and the age of the Atlantic ocean floor. Due to sea-floor spreading (Chapter 3), the oldest rocks on the Atlantic's floor are along the coast of northern Africa and the east coast of North America, while the youngest are along the mid-ocean ridge.

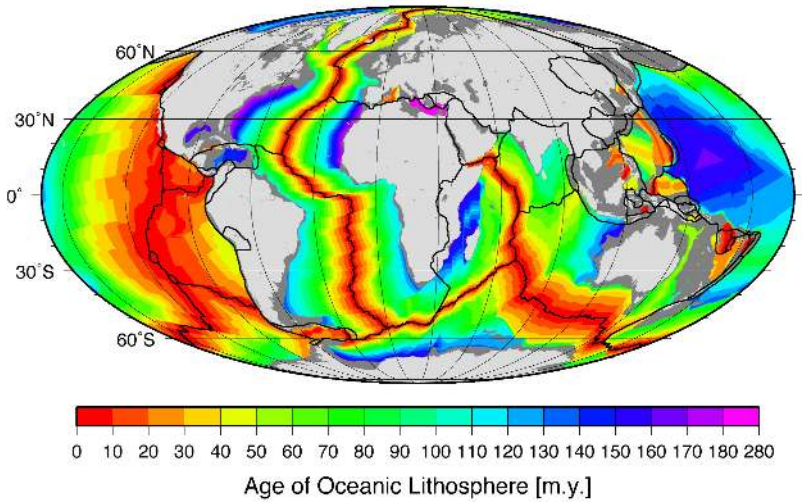


Figure *Section*7.5.7.1: Age of oceanic lithosphere, in millions of years. Notice the differences in the Atlantic Ocean along the coasts of the continents.

This age pattern shows how the Atlantic Ocean opened as the young Mid-Atlantic Ridge began to create the seafloor. This means the Atlantic ocean started opening and was first formed here. The southern Atlantic opened next, with South America separating

from central and southern Africa. Last (happening after the Mesozoic ended) was the northernmost Atlantic, with Greenland and Scandinavia parting ways. The breaking points of each rifted plate margin eventually turned into the passive plate boundaries of the east coast of the Americas today

Video of Pangea breaking apart and plates moving to their present locations. By Tanya Atwater.

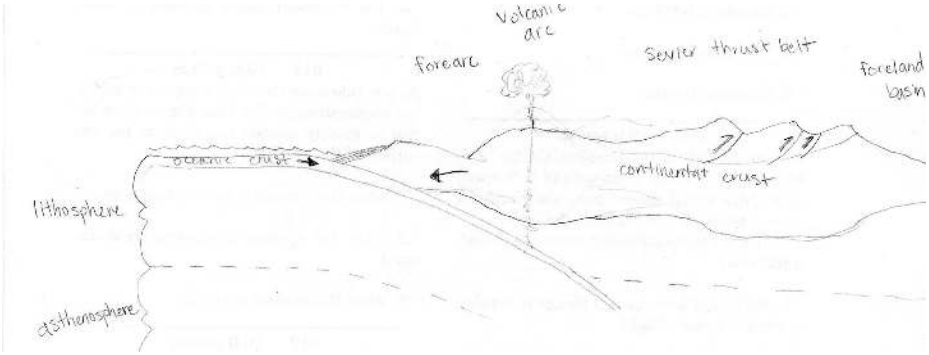


Figure *Section*7.5.7.1: Sketch of the major features of the Sevier Orogeny.

In western North America, an active plate margin had started with subduction, controlling most of the tectonics of that region in the Mesozoic. Another possible island-arc collision created the Sonoman Orogeny in Nevada during the latest Paleozoic to the Triassic. In the Jurassic, another island-arc collision caused the Nevadan Orogeny, a large Andean-style volcanic arc and thrust belt [105]. The Sevier Orogeny followed in the Cretaceous, which was mainly a volcanic arc to the west and a thin-skinned fold and thrust belt to the east, meaning stacks of shallow faults and folds built up the topography. Many of the structures in the Rocky Mountains today date from this orogeny.



Figure *Section*7.5.7.1: The Cretaceous Interior Seaway in the mid-Cretaceous.

Tectonics had an influence in one more important geographic feature in North America: the Cretaceous Western Interior Foreland Basin, which flooded during high sea levels forming the **Cretaceous Interior Seaway**. Subduction from the west was the Farallon Plate, an oceanic plate connected to the Pacific Plate (seen today as remnants such as the Juan de Fuca Plate, off the coast of the Pacific Northwest). Subduction was shallow at this time because a very young, hot and less dense portion of the Farallon plate was subducted. This shallow subduction caused a down warping in the central part of North America [107]. High sea levels due to shallow subduction, and increasing rates of seafloor spreading and subduction, high temperatures, and melted ice also contributed to the high sea levels [108]. These factors allowed a shallow epicontinental seaway that extended from the Gulf of Mexico to the Arctic Ocean to divide North America into two separate landmasses [109], Laramidia to the west and Appalachia to the east, for 25 million years [59]. Many of the coal deposits in Utah and Wyoming formed from swamps along the shores of this seaway [111]. By the end of the Cretaceous, cooling temperatures caused the seaway to regress [112].



Figure *Section*7.5.7.1: A Mesozoic scene from the late Jurassic.. CC BY-SA 2.5], via Wikimedia Commons" width="372px" height="279px"

The Mesozoic era is dominated by reptiles, and more specifically, the dinosaurs. The Triassic saw devastated ecosystems that took over 30 million years to fully re-emerge after the Permian Mass Extinction [113]. The first appearance of many modern groups of animals that would later flourish occurred at this time. This includes frogs (amphibians), turtles (reptiles), marine ichthyosaurs and plesiosaurs (marine reptiles), mammals, and the archosaurs. The archosaurs ("ruling reptiles") include ancestral groups that went extinct at the end of the Triassic, as well as the flying pterosaurs, crocodilians, and the dinosaurs. Archosaurs, like the placental mammals after them, occupied all major environments: terrestrial (dinosaurs), in the air (pterosaurs), aquatic (crocodilians) and even fully marine habitats (marine crocodiles). The pterosaurs, the first vertebrate group to take flight, like the dinosaurs and mammals, start small in the Triassic.

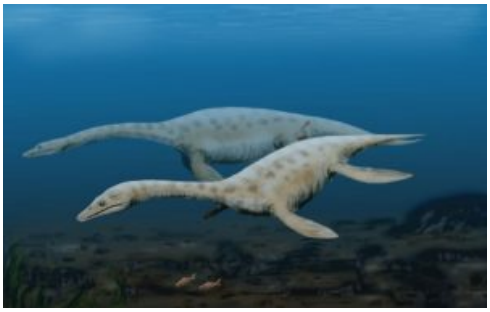


Figure *Section*7.5.7.1: A drawing of the early plesiosaur Agustasaurus from the Triassic of Nevada.. GFDL or CC BY 3.0], via Wikimedia Commons" width="404px" height="255px"

At the end of the Triassic, another mass extinction event occurred [114], the fourth major mass extinction in the geologic record. This was perhaps caused by the Central Atlantic Magmatic Province flood basalt [115]. The end-Triassic extinction made certain lineages go extinct and helped spur the evolution of survivors like mammals, pterosaurs (flying reptiles), ichthyosaurs/plesiosaurs/mosasaurs (marine reptiles), and dinosaurs.



Figure *Section*7.5.7.1: Reconstruction of the small (<5″) Megazostrodon, one of the first animals considered to be a true mammal.. CC BY-SA 4.0], via Wikimedia Commons" width="364px" height="243px"

Mammals, as previously mentioned, got their start from a reptilian synapsid ancestor possibly in the late Paleozoic. Mammals stayed small, in mainly nocturnal niches, with insects being their largest prey. The development of warm-blooded circulation and fur may have been a response to this lifestyle [118].

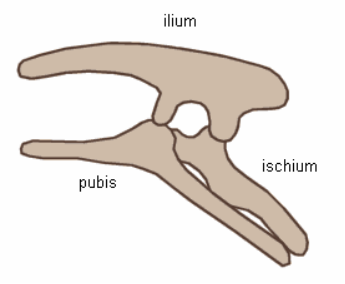


Figure *Section*7.5.7.1: Closed structure of an ornithischian hip, which is similar to birds'.. GFDL or CC-BY-SA-3.0], via Wikimedia Commons" width="288px" height="237px"

In the Jurassic, species that were previously common flourished due to a warmer and more tropical climate. The dinosaurs were relatively small animals in the Triassic period of the Mesozoic but became truly massive in the Jurassic. Dinosaurs are split into two groups based on their hip structure [120], i.e. orientation of the pubis and ischium bones in relationship to each other. This is referred to as the “reptile hipped” saurischians and the “bird-hipped” ornithischians. This has recently been brought into question by a new idea for dinosaur lineage [121].

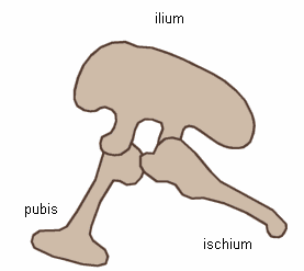


Figure *Section*7.5.7.1: Open structure of a saurischian hip, which is similar to lizards'.. CC BY-SA 4.0], via Wikimedia Commons" width="254px" height="239px"

Most of the dinosaurs of the Triassic were saurischians, but all of them were bipedal. The major adaptive advantage dinosaurs had was changes in the hip and ankle bones, tucking the legs under the body for improved locomotion as opposed to the semi-erect gait of crocodiles or the sprawling posture of reptiles. In the Jurassic, limbs (or a lack thereof) were also important to another group of reptiles, leading to the evolution of *Eophis*, the oldest snake.



Figure *Section*7.5.7.1: Therizinosaurs, like Beipiaosaurus (shown in this restoration), are known for their enormous hand claws.. CC BY-SA 3.0], via Wikimedia Commons" width="359px" height="189px"

There is a paucity of dinosaur fossils from the Early and Middle Jurassic but by the Late Jurassic, they were dominating the planet. The saurischians diversified into the giant herbivorous (plant-eating) long-necked sauropods weighing up to 100 tons and bipedal carnivorous theropods, with the possible exception of the *Therizinosaurs* [125]. All of the ornithischians (e.g *Stegosaurus*, *Iguanodon*, *Triceratops*, *Ankylosaurus*, *Pachycephalosaurus*) were herbivorous with a strong tendency to have a “turtle-like” beak at the tips of their mouths.



Figure *Section*7.5.7.1: Iconic “Berlin specimen” Archaeopteryx lithographica fossil from Germany.. CC BY-SA 3.0 or GFDL], via Wikimedia Commons" width="243px" height="328px"

The pterosaurs grew and diversified in the Jurassic, and another notable arial organism developed and thrived in the Jurassic: birds. When *Archaeopteryx* was found in the Solnhofen Lagerstätte of Germany, a seeming dinosaur-bird hybrid, it started the conversation on the origin of birds. The idea that birds evolved from dinosaurs occurred very early in the history of research into evolution, only a few years after Darwin’s *On the Origin of Species* [127]. This study used a remarkable fossil of *Archeopteryx* from a transitional animal between dinosaurs and birds. Small meat-eating theropod dinosaurs were likely the branch that became birds due to their similar features [128]. A significant debate still exists over how and when powered flight evolved. Some have stated a running-start model [129], while others have favored a tree-leaping gliding model or even a semi-combination: flapping to aid in climbing.



Figure *Section*7.5.7.1: Reconstructed skeleton of Argentinosaurus, from Naturmuseum Senckenberg in Germany.. GFDL 1.2 or FAL], via Wikimedia Commons" width="219px" height="330px"

The Cretaceous saw a further diversification, specialization, and domination of the dinosaurs and other fauna. One of the biggest changes on land was the transition to angiosperm-dominated flora. Angiosperms, which are plants with flowers and seeds, had originated in the Cretaceous [132], switching many plains to grasslands by the end of the Mesozoic [133]. By the end of the period, they had replaced gymnosperms (evergreen trees) and ferns as the dominant plant in the world’s forests. Haplodiploid eusocial insects (bees and ants) are descendants from Jurassic wasp-like ancestors that co-evolved with the flowering plants during this time period. The breakup of Pangea not only shaped our modern world’s geography but biodiversity at the time as well. Throughout the Mesozoic, animals on the isolated, now separated island continents (formerly parts of Pangea), took strange evolutionary turns. This includes giant titanosaurian sauropods (*Argentinosaurus*) and theropods (*Giganotosaurus*) from South America.

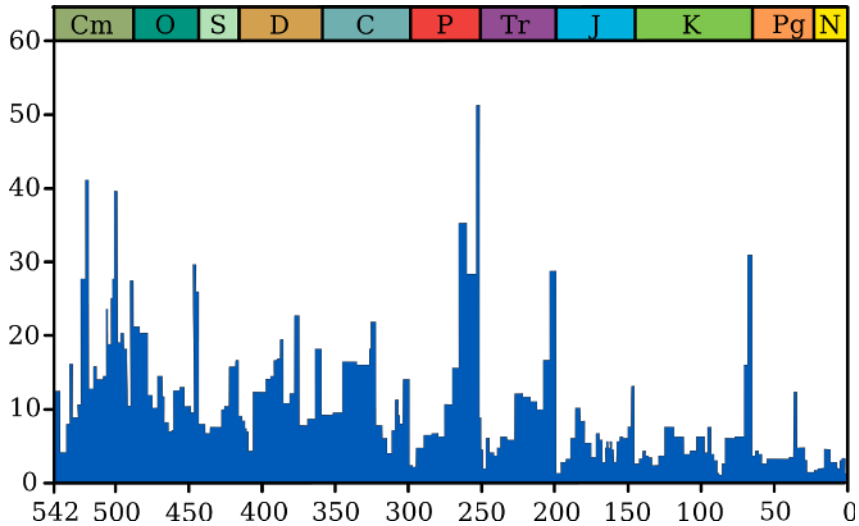


Figure *Section*7.5.7.1: Graph of the rate of extinctions. Note the large spike at the end of the Cretaceous (labeled as K).

Similar to the end of the Paleozoic era, the Mesozoic Era ended with the **K-Pg Mass Extinction** (previously known as the **K-T Extinction**) 66 million years ago [136]. This extinction event was likely caused by a large **bolide** (an extraterrestrial impactor such as an asteroid, meteoroid, or comet) that collided with earth. Ninety percent of plankton species, 75% of plant species, and all the dinosaurs went extinct at this time.



Figure *Section*7.5.7.1: Artist's depiction of the impact event. via Wikimedia Commons" width="300"

One of the strongest pieces of evidence comes from the element iridium. Quite rare on Earth, and more common in meteorites, it has been found all over the world in higher concentrations at a particular layer of rock that formed at the time of the K-T boundary. Soon other scientists started to find evidence to back up the claim. Melted rock spheres [138], a special type of "shocked" quartz called stishovite, that only is found at impact sites, was found in many places around the world. The huge impact created a strong thermal pulse that could be responsible for global forest fires [141], strong acid rains [142], a corresponding abundance of ferns, the first colonizing plants after a forest fire [143], enough debris thrown into the air to significantly cool temperatures afterward [144; 145], and a 2-km high tsunami inferred from deposits found from Texas to Alabama.

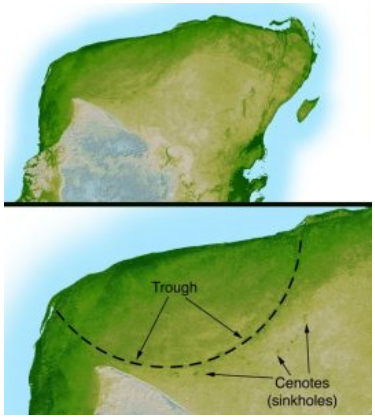


Figure *Section*7.5.7.1: The land expression of the Chicxulub crater. The other side of the crater is within the Gulf of México.. via Wikimedia Commons" width="307px" height="344px"

Still, with all this evidence, one large piece remained missing: the crater where the bolide impact. It was not until 1991 that the crater was confirmed using petroleum company geophysical data. Even though it is the third-largest confirmed crater on Earth at roughly 180 km wide, the **Chicxulub Crater** was hard to find due to being partially underwater and partially obscured by the dense forest canopy of the Yucatan Peninsula. Coring of the center of the impact called the peak ring contained granite, indicating the impact was so powerful that it lifted basement sediment from the crust several miles toward the surface [149]. In 2010, an international team of scientists reviewed 20 years of research and blamed the impact for the extinction [150].

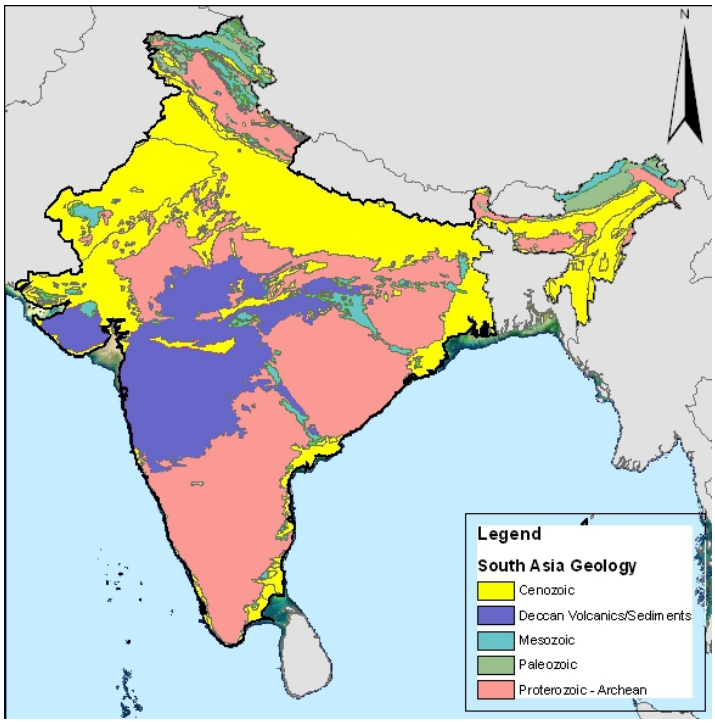


Figure *Section*7.5.7.1: Geology of India, showing purple as Deccan Traps-related rocks.

With all of this information, it seems like the case would be closed. However, there are other events at this time which could have partially aided the demise of so many organisms. For example, sea levels are known to be slowly decreasing at the time of the K-T event, which is tied to marine extinctions [151], though any study on gradual vs. sudden changes in the fossil record is flawed due to the incomplete nature of the fossil record [152]. Another big event at this time was the **Deccan Traps** flood basalt volcanism in India. At over 1.3 million cubic kilometers of material, it was certainly a large source of material hazardous to ecosystems at the time, and it has been suggested as at least partially responsible for the extinction [153]. Some have found the impact and eruptions too much of a coincidence, and have even linked the two together [154].

Section 7.5.7.3 References

59. Sampson SD (2009) Dinosaur odyssey: Fossil threads in the web of life. University of California Press

105. Schweickert RA, Bogen NL, Girty GH, et al (1984) Timing and structural expression of the Nevadan orogeny, Sierra Nevada, California. Geol Soc Am Bull 95:967–979

107. Miller KG, Kominz MA, Browning JV, et al (2005) The Phanerozoic record of global sea-level change. Science 310:1293–1298

108. Miall AD (2008) Chapter 5 The Paleozoic Western Craton Margin. In: Andrew D. Miall (ed) Sedimentary Basins of the World. Elsevier, pp 181–209

109. Mitrovica JX, Beaumont C, Jarvis GT (1989) Tilting of continental interiors by the dynamical effects of subduction. Tectonics

111. Ryer TA (1983) Transgressive-regressive cycles and the occurrence of coal in some Upper Cretaceous strata of Utah. Geology 11:207–210

112. Mörner N-A (1981) Revolution in Cretaceous sea-level analysis. Geology 9:344–346

113. Sahney S, Benton MJ (2008) Recovery from the most profound mass extinction of all time. Proc Biol Sci 275:759–765

114. Lucas SG, Tanner LH (2004) Late Triassic extinction events. Albertiana

115. Tanner LH, Lucas SG, Chapman MG (2004) Assessing the record and causes of Late Triassic extinctions. Earth-Sci Rev 65:103–139

118. Ruben JA, Jones TD (2000) Selective factors associated with the origin of fur and feathers. Am Zool 40:585–596

120. Seeley HG (1887) On the classification of the fossil animals commonly named Dinosauria. Proc R Soc Lond 43:165–171

121. Matthew G. Baron, David B. Norman, Paul M. Barrett (2017) A new hypothesis of dinosaur relationships and early dinosaur evolution. Nature 543:501–506

125. Maryanska T, Farlow JO, Brett-Surman MK (1997) Segnosaurs (Therizinosaurs). The Complete Dinosaur Indiana University Press, Bloomington, Indiana 234–241

127. Owen (1863) On the Archeopteryx of Von Meyer, with a Description of the Fossil Remains of a Long-Tailed Species, from the Lithographic Stone of Solenhofen. Philosophical Transactions of the Royal Society of London 153:33–47

128. Chiappe LM (2009) Downsized dinosaurs: The evolutionary transition to modern birds. Evo Edu Outreach 2:248–256

129. Ostrom JH (1974) Archaeopteryx and the Origin of Flight. Q Rev Biol 49:27–47

132. Sun G, Ji Q, Dilcher DL, et al (2002) Archaefructaceae, a new basal angiosperm family. Science 296:899–904

133. Piperno DR, Sues H-D (2005) Dinosaurs dined on grass. Science 310:1126–1128. https://doi.org/10.1126/science.1121020

136. Renne PR, Deino AL, Hilgen FJ, et al (2013) Time scales of critical events around the Cretaceous-Paleogene boundary

138. Smit J, Klaver G (1981) Sanidine spherules at the Cretaceous–Tertiary boundary indicate a large impact event. Nature

141. Melosh HJ, Schneider NM, Zahnle KJ, Latham D (1990) Ignition of global wildfires at the Cretaceous/Tertiary boundary. Nature 343:251–254

142. Ohno S, Kadono T, Kurosawa K, et al (2014) Production of sulphate-rich vapour during the Chicxulub impact and implications for ocean acidification. Nat Geosci 7:279–282

143. Vajda V, Raine JI, Hollis CJ (2001) Indication of global deforestation at the Cretaceous-Tertiary boundary by New Zealand fern spike. Science 294:1700–1702

144. Pope KO, Baines KH, Ocampo AC, Ivanov BA (1997) Energy, volatile production, and climatic effects of the Chicxulub Cretaceous/Tertiary impact. J Geophys Res 102:21645–21664

145. Pollack JB, Toon OB, Ackerman TP, et al (1983) Environmental effects of an impact-generated dust cloud: implications for the cretaceous-tertiary extinctions. Science 219:287–289

149. Morgan JV, Gulick S, Bralower T, et al (2016) The formation of peak rings in large impact craters

150. Schulte P, Alegret L, Arenillas I, et al (2010) The Chicxulub asteroid impact and mass extinction at the Cretaceous-Paleogene boundary. Science 327:1214–1218

151. Marshall CR, Ward PD (1996) Sudden and Gradual Molluscan Extinctions in the Latest Cretaceous of Western European Tethys. Science 274:1360–1363

152. MacLeod N, Rawson PF, Forey PL, et al (1997) The Cretaceous-tertiary biotic transition. J Geol Soc London 154:265–292

153. Schoene B, Samperton KM, Eddy MP, et al (2015) U-Pb geochronology of the Deccan Traps and relation to the end-Cretaceous mass extinction. Science 347:182–184

154. Richards MA, Alvarez W, Self S, et al (2015) Triggering of the largest Deccan eruptions by the Chicxulub impact. Geol Soc Am Bull 127:1507–1520

This page titled Section 7.5.7: Mesozoic is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Chris Johnson, Matthew D. Affolter, Paul Inkenbrandt, & Cam Mosher (OpenGeology) via source content that was edited to the style and standards of the LibreTexts platform.

- **8.7: Mesozoic** by Chris Johnson, Matthew D. Affolter, Paul Inkenbrandt, & Cam Mosher is licensed CC BY-NC-SA 4.0. Original source: https://opengeology.org/textbook/.

Section 7.5.8: Cenozoic



Figure *Section*7.5.8.1: Paraceratherium, seen in this reconstruction, was a massive (15-20 ton, 15 foot tall) ancestor of rhinos.

The **Cenozoic**, meaning “new life,” is known as the age of mammals because it is in this era that mammals came to be a dominant and large life form, including human ancestors. Birds, as well, flourished in the open niches left by the dinosaur’s demise. Most of the Cenozoic has been relatively warm, with the main exception being the ice age that started about 2.558 million years ago and (despite recent warming) continues today. Tectonic shifts in the west caused volcanism but eventually changed the long-standing subduction zone into a transform boundary.

Section 7.5.8.1 Cenozoic Tectonics and Paleogeography



Animation of the last 38 million years of movement in western North America. Note, that after the ridge is subducted, convergent turns to transform (with divergent inland).

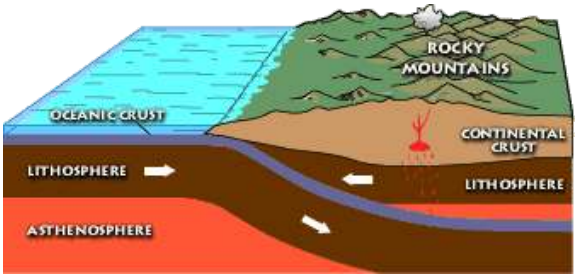


Figure *Section*7.5.8.1: Shallow subduction during the Laramide Orogeny.

In the Cenozoic, the plates of the Earth moved into more familiar places, with the biggest change being the closing of the Tethys Sea with collisions such as the Alps, Zagros, and Himalaya, a collision that started about 57 million years ago and continues today.

Maybe the most significant tectonic feature that occurred in the Cenozoic of North America was the conversion of the west coast of California from a convergent boundary subduction zone to a transform boundary. Subduction off the coast of the western United States, which had occurred throughout the Mesozoic, had continued in the Cenozoic. After the Sevier Orogeny in the late Mesozoic, a subsequent orogeny called the Laramide Orogeny occurred in the early Cenozoic. The Laramide was thick-skinned, different than the Sevier Orogeny. It involved deeper crustal rocks and produced bulges that would become mountain ranges like the Rockies, Black Hills, Wind River Range, Uinta Mountains, and the San Rafael Swell. Instead of descending directly into the mantle, the subducting plate shallowed out and moved eastward beneath the continental plate affecting the overlying continent hundreds of miles east of the continental margin and building high mountains. This occurred because the subducting plate was so young and near the spreading center and the density of the plate was therefore low and subduction was hindered [156].



Figure *Section*7.5.8.1: Map of the San Andreas fault, showing relative motion.. via Wikimedia Commons" width="250px" height="346px"

As the mid-ocean ridge itself started to subduct, the relative motion had changed. Subduction caused a relative convergence between the subducting Farallon plate and the North American plate. On the other side of the mid-ocean ridge from the Farallon plate was the Pacific plate, which was moving away from the North American plate. Thus, as the subduction zone consumed the mid-ocean ridge, the relative movement became transform instead of convergent, which went on to become the San Andreas Fault System. As the San Andreas grew, it caused east-west directed extensional forces to spread over the western United States, creating the Basin and Range province. The transform fault switched position over the last 18 million years, twisting the mountains around Los Angeles, and new faults in the southeastern California deserts may become a future San Andreas-style fault [160]. During this switch from subduction to transform, the nearly horizontal Farallon slab began to sink into the mantle. This caused magmatism as the subducting slab sank, allowing asthenosphere material to rise around it. This event is called the Oligocene ignimbrite flare-up, which was one of the most significant periods of volcanism ever, including the largest single confirmed eruption, the 5000 cubic kilometer Fish Canyon Tuff [162].

Section 7.5.8.2 Cenozoic Evolution

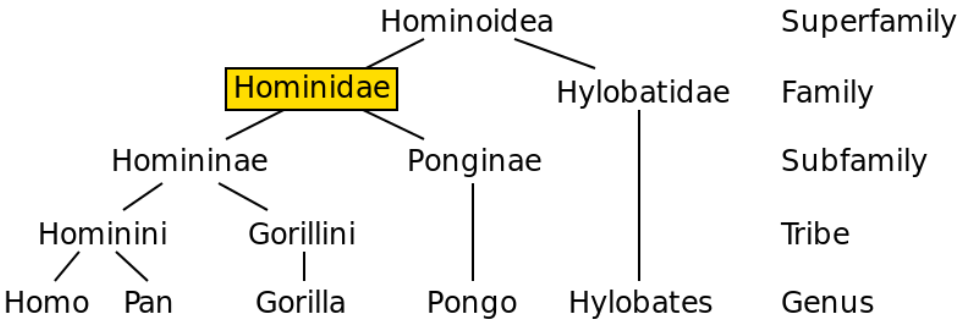


Figure *Section*7.5.8.1: Family tree of Hominids (Hominidae).

There are five groups of early mammals in the fossil record, based primarily on fossil teeth, the hardest bone in vertebrate skeletons. For the purpose of this text, the most important group is the Eupantotheres, which diverges into the two main groups of mammals, the marsupials (*Sinodelphys*) and placentals or eutherians (*Eomaia*) in the Cretaceous and then diversified in the

Cenozoic. The marsupials dominated on the isolated island continents of South America and Australia, and many went extinct in South America with the introduction of placental mammals. Some well-known mammal groups have been highly studied with interesting evolutionary stories in the Cenozoic. For example, horses started small with four toes, ended up larger and having just one toe [163]. Cetaceans (marine mammals like whales and dolphins) started on land from small bear-like (mesonychids) creatures in the early Cenozoic and gradually took to water [164]. However, no study of evolution has been more studied than human evolution. **Hominids**, the name for human-like primates, started in eastern Africa several million years ago.



Figure ***Section*7.5.8.1**: Lucy skeleton from the Cleveland Natural History Museum, showing real fossil (brown) and reconstructed skeleton (white).. CC BY-SA 2.0], via Wikimedia Commons" width="243px" height="366px"

The first critical event in this story is an environmental change from jungle to more of a savanna, probably caused by changes in Indian Ocean circulation. While bipedalism is known to have evolved before this shift, it is generally believed that our bipedal ancestors (like *Australopithecus*) had an advantage by covering ground more easily in a more open environment compared to their non-bipedal evolutionary cousins. There is also a growing body of evidence, including the famous “Lucy” fossil of an Australopithecine, that our early ancestors lived in trees. Arboreal animals usually demand a high intelligence to navigate through a three-dimensional world. It is from this lineage that humans evolved, using endurance running as a means to acquire more resources and possibly even hunt. This can explain many uniquely human features, from our long legs, strong achilles, lack of lower gut protection, and our wide range of running efficiencies.

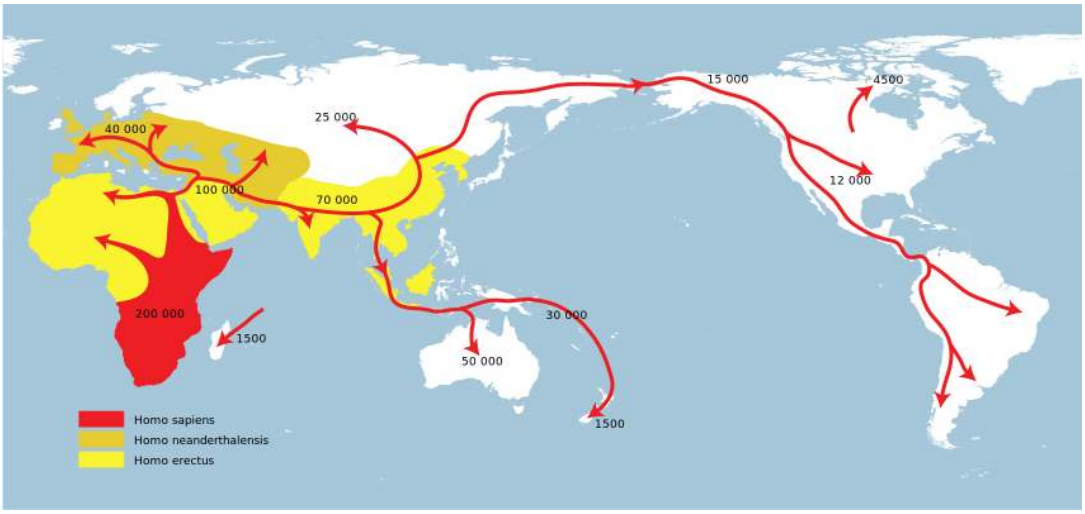


Figure ***Section*7.5.8.1**: The hypothesized movement of the homo genus. Years are marked as to the best guess of the timing of movement.

Now that the hands are freed up, the next big step is a large brain. There have been arguments from a switch to more meat-eating, cooking with fire [170], tool usage, and even the construct of society itself to explain this increase in brain size. Regardless of how, it was this increased cognitive power that allowed humans to reign as their ancestors moved out of Africa and explored the world,

ultimately entering the Americas through land bridges like the Bering Land Bridge. The details of this worldwide migration and the different branches of the hominid evolutionary tree are very complex, and best reserved for its own course.

Section 7.5.8.2.1 Anthropocene and Extinction

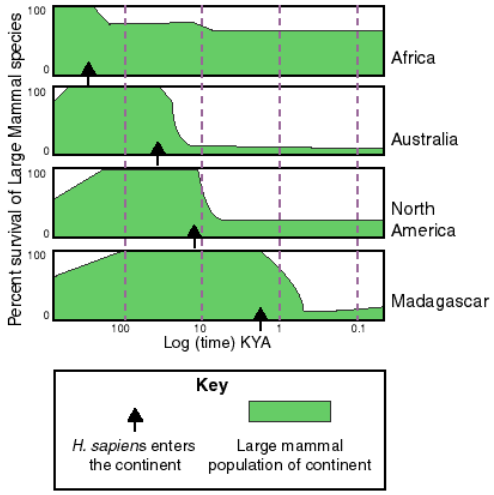


Figure *Section*7.5.8.1: Graph showing the abundance of large mammals and the introduction of humans.

Humans have had an influence on the Earth, its ecosystems and climate. Yet, human activity can not explain all of the changes that have occurred in the recent past. The start of the Quaternary period, the last and current period of the Cenozoic, is marked by the start of our current ice age 2.58 million years ago. During this time period, ice sheets advanced and retreated, most likely due to Milankovitch cycles (see Chapter 15). Also at this time, various cold-adapted megafauna emerged (like giant sloths, saber-tooth cats, and woolly mammoths), and most of them went extinct as the Earth warmed from the most recent glacial maximum. A long-standing debate is over the cause of these and other extinctions. Is climate warming to blame, or were they caused by humans [175]? Certainly, we know of recent human extinctions of animals like the dodo or passenger pigeon. Can we connect modern extinctions to extinctions in the recent past? If so, there are several ideas as to how this happened. Possibly the most widely accepted and oldest is the hunting/overkill hypothesis [176]. The idea behind this hypothesis is that humans hunted large herbivores for food, then carnivores could not find food, and human arrival times in locations have been shown to be tied to increased extinction rates in many cases.



Figure *Section*7.5.8.1: Bingham Canyon Mine, Utah. This open-pit mine is the largest man-made removal of rock in the world.. CC BY 2.0], via Wikimedia Commons" width="355px" height="213px"

Modern human impact on the environment and the Earth as a whole is unquestioned. In fact, many scientists are starting to suggest that the rise of human civilization ended and/or replaced the Holocene epoch and defines a new geologic time interval: the **Anthropocene** [177]. Evidence for this change includes extinctions, increased tritium (hydrogen with two neutrons) due to nuclear testing, rising pollutants like carbon dioxide, more than 200 never-before-seen mineral species that have occurred only in this epoch, materials such as plastic and metals which will be long-lasting “fossils” in the geologic record, and large amounts of earthen material moved. The biggest scientific debate with this topic is the starting point. Some say that humans’ invention of agriculture would be recognized in geologic strata and that should be the starting point, around 12,000 years ago. Others link the start of the industrial revolution and the subsequent addition of vast amounts of carbon dioxide in the atmosphere [180]. Either way, the idea is

that alien geologists visiting Earth in the distant future would easily recognize the impact of humans on the Earth as the beginning of a new geologic period.

Section 7.5.8.3 References

156. Schellart WP, Stegman DR, Farrington RJ, et al (2010) Cenozoic tectonics of western North America controlled by evolving width of Farallon slab. Science 329:316–319. https://doi.org/10.1126/science.1190366

160. Powell RE, Weldon RJ (1992) Evolution of the San Andreas fault. Annu Rev Earth Planet Sci 20:431

162. Johnson MC, Rutherford MJ (1989) Experimentally determined conditions in the Fish Canyon Tuff, Colorado, magma chamber. J Petrol 30:711–737. https://doi.org/10.1093/petrology/30.3.711

163. MacFadden BJ (2005) Fossil Horses--Evidence for Evolution. Science 307:1728–1730. https://doi.org/10.1126/science.1105458

164. Uhen MD (2010) The origin(s) of whales. Annu Rev Earth Planet Sci 38:189–219

170. Organ C, Nunn CL, Machanda Z, Wrangham RW (2011) Phylogenetic rate shifts in feeding time during the evolution of Homo. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A 108:14555–14559

175. Koch PL, Barnosky AD (2006) Late Quaternary extinctions: State of the debate. Annu Rev Ecol Evol Syst

176. Martin PS (1984) Prehistoric overkill: the global model. Quaternary extinctions: a prehistoric revolution 354–403

177. Waters CN, Zalasiewicz J, Summerhayes C, et al (2016) The Anthropocene is functionally and stratigraphically distinct from the Holocene. Science 351:aad2622

180. Zalasiewicz J, Williams M, Smith A, et al (2008) Are we now living in the Anthropocene? GSA Today 18:4

This page titled Section 7.5.8: Cenozoic is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Chris Johnson, Matthew D. Affolter, Paul Inkenbrandt, & Cam Mosher (OpenGeology) via source content that was edited to the style and standards of the LibreTexts platform.

- **8.8: Cenozoic** by Chris Johnson, Matthew D. Affolter, Paul Inkenbrandt, & Cam Mosher is licensed CC BY-NC-SA 4.0. Original source: https://opengeology.org/textbook/.

CHAPTER OVERVIEW

Chapter 8: Crustal Deformation and Earthquakes

Learning Objectives

- Differentiate between stress and strain.
- Identify the three major types of stress.
- Differentiate between brittle, ductile, and elastic deformation.
- Describe the geological map symbol used for strike and dip of strata.
- Name and describe different fold types.
- Differentiate the three major fault types and describe their associated movements.
- Explain how elastic rebound relates to earthquakes.
- Describe different seismic wave types and how they are measured.
- Explain how humans can induce seismicity.
- Describe how seismographs work to record earthquake waves.
- From seismograph records, locate the epicenter of an earthquake.
- Explain the difference between earthquake magnitude and intensity.
- List earthquake factors that determine ground shaking and destruction.
- Identify secondary earthquake hazards.
- Describe notable historical earthquakes.

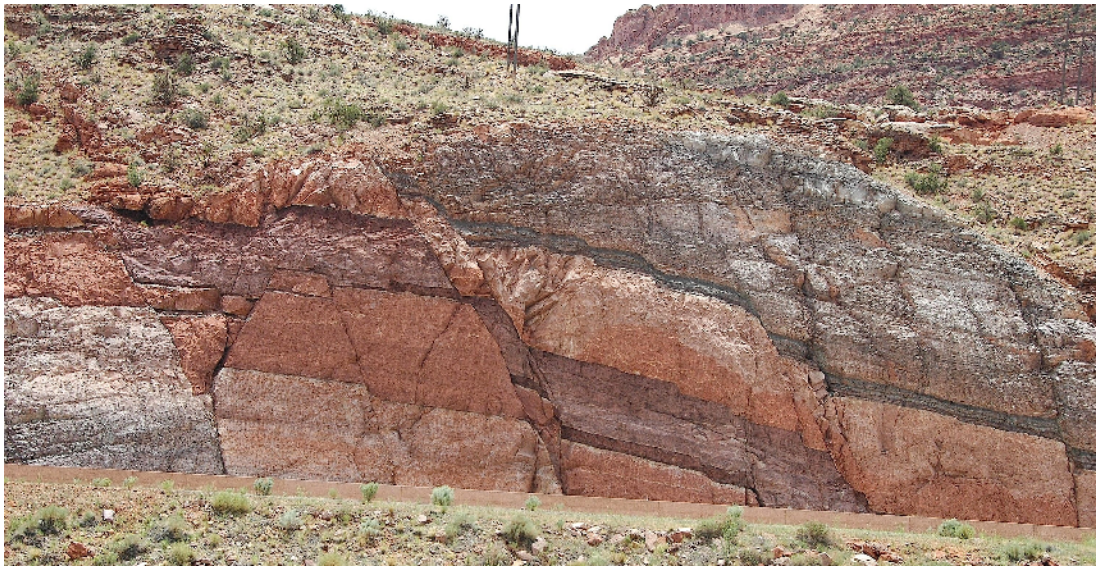


Figure *Chapter*8.1: Example of normal faulting in an outcrop of the Pennsylvanian Honaker Trail Formation near Moab, Utah.

Crustal deformation occurs when applied forces exceed the internal strength of rocks, physically changing their shapes. These forces are called stress, and the physical changes they create are called strain. Forces involved in tectonic processes as well as gravity and igneous pluton emplacement produce strains in rocks that include folds, fractures, and faults. When rock experiences large amounts of shear stress and breaks with rapid, brittle deformation, energy is released in the form of seismic waves, commonly known as an earthquake.

Section 8.1: Stress and Strain

Section 8.2: Deformation

Section 8.3: Geological Maps

Section 8.4: Folds

Section 8.5: Faults
Section 8.6: Earthquake Essentials
Section 8.7: Measuring Earthquakes
Section 8.8: Earthquake Risk
Section 8.9: Case Studies
Section 8.S: Summary

This page titled Chapter 8: Crustal Deformation and Earthquakes is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Chris Johnson, Matthew D. Affolter, Paul Inkenbrandt, & Cam Mosher (OpenGeology) via source content that was edited to the style and standards of the LibreTexts platform.

Section 8.1: Stress and Strain

Stress is the force exerted per unit area and **strain** is the physical change that results in response to that force. When the applied stress is greater than the internal strength of rock, strain results in the form of deformation of the rock caused by the stress. Strain in rocks can be represented as a change in rock volume and/or rock shape, as well as fracturing the rock. There are three types of stress: tensional, compressional, and shear [1]. **Tensional stress** involves forces pulling in opposite directions, which results in strain that stretches and thins rock. **Compressional stress** involves forces pushing together, and the compressional strain shows up as rock folding and thickening. **Shear stress** involves transverse forces; the strain shows up as opposing blocks or regions of the material moving past each other.

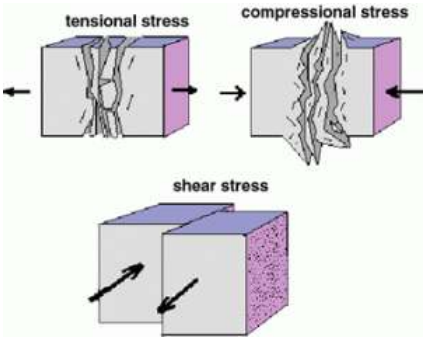


Figure *Section*8.1.1: Types of stress. Clockwise from top left: tensional stress, compressional stress, and shear stress, and some examples of resulting strain.

Table *Section*8.1.1: Types of stress and resulting strain.

Type of Stress	Associated Plate Boundary type	Resulting Strain	Associated fault and offset types
Tensional	divergent	Stretching and thinning	Normal
Compressional	convergent	Shortening and thickening	Reverse
Shear	transform	Tearing	Strike-slip

Section 8.1.1 References

1. Earle S (2015) Physical geology OER textbook. BC Campus OpenEd

This page titled Section 8.1: Stress and Strain is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Chris Johnson, Matthew D. Affolter, Paul Inkenbrandt, & Cam Mosher (OpenGeology) via source content that was edited to the style and standards of the LibreTexts platform.

- **9.1: Stress and Strain** by Chris Johnson, Matthew D. Affolter, Paul Inkenbrandt, & Cam Mosher is licensed CC BY-NC-SA 4.0. Original source: https://opengeology.org/textbook/.

Section 8.2: Deformation

When rocks are stressed, the resulting strain can be elastic, ductile, or brittle. This change is generally called **deformation**. **Elastic deformation** is a strain that is reversible after the stress is released. For example, when you stretch a rubber band, it elastically returns to its original shape after you release it. **Ductile deformation** occurs when enough stress is applied to a material that the changes in its shape are permanent, and the material is no longer able to revert to its original shape. For example, if you bend a metal bar too far, it can be permanently bent out of shape. The point at which elastic deformation is surpassed and strain becomes permanent is called the **yield point**. In the figure, the yield point is where the line transitions from elastic deformation to ductile deformation (the end of the dashed line). **Brittle deformation** is another critical point of no return when rock integrity fails and the rock fractures under increasing stress.

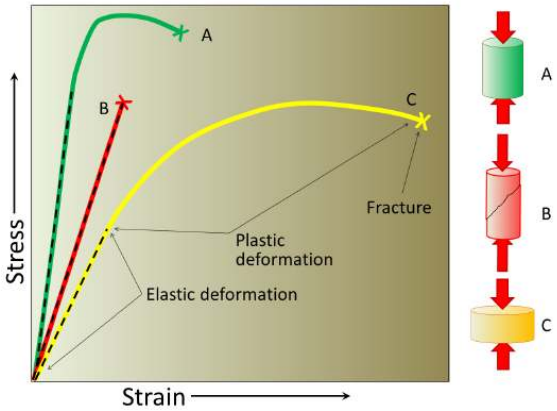


Figure *Section*8.2.1: Different materials deform differently when stress is applied. Material A has relatively little deformation when undergoing large amounts of stress, before undergoing plastic deformation, and finally brittle failure. Material B only elastically deforms before brittle failure. Material C undergoes significant plastic deformation before finally brittle failure.

The type of deformation a rock undergoes depends on pore pressure, strain rate, rock strength, temperature, stress intensity, time, and confining pressure. **Pore pressure** is exerted on the rock by fluids in the open spaces or pores embedded within rock or sediment. **Strain rate** measures how quickly material is deformed. For example, applying stress slowly makes it is easier to bend a piece of wood without breaking it. **Rock strength** measures how easily a rock deforms under stress. Shale has low strength and granite has high strength. Removing heat, or decreasing the temperature, makes materials more rigid and susceptible to brittle deformation. On the other hand, heating materials make them more ductile and less brittle. Heated glass can be bent and stretched.

Table *Section*8.2.1: Relationship between factors operating on rock and the resulting strains

Factor	Strain Response
Increase Temperature	More Ductile
Increase Strain Rate	More Brittle
Increase Rock Strength	More Brittle

This page titled Section 8.2: Deformation is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Chris Johnson, Matthew D. Affolter, Paul Inkenbrandt, & Cam Mosher (OpenGeology) via source content that was edited to the style and standards of the LibreTexts platform.

- **9.2: Deformation** by Chris Johnson, Matthew D. Affolter, Paul Inkenbrandt, & Cam Mosher is licensed CC BY-NC-SA 4.0. Original source: https://opengeology.org/textbook/.

Section 8.3: Geological Maps

Geologic maps are two-dimensional (2D) representations of geologic formations and structures at the Earth's surface, including faults, folds, inclined strata, and rock types. Geologists use geologic maps to represent where geologic formations, faults, folds, and inclined rock units are. **Geologic formations** are recognizable, mappable rock units. Each formation on the map is indicated by a color and a label. For examples of geologic maps, see the California Geological Survey (CGS) geologic map viewer.

Formation labels include symbols that follow a specific protocol. The first one or more letters are uppercase and represent the geologic time period of the formation. More than one uppercase letter indicates the formation is associated with multiple time periods. The following lowercase letters represent the formation name, abbreviated rock description, or both.

Section 8.3.1 Cross Sections

Cross sections are subsurface interpretations made from surface and subsurface measurements. Maps display geology in the horizontal plane while cross sections show subsurface geology in the vertical plane. For more information on cross sections, check out the AAPG wiki.

Section 8.3.2 Strike and Dip

Geologists use a special symbol called strike and dip to represent inclined beds. Strike and dip map symbols look like the capital letter T, with a short trunk and extra-wide top line. The short trunk represents the dip and the top line represents the strike. **Dip** is the angle that a bed plunges into the Earth from the horizontal. A number next to the symbol represents dip angle. One way to visualize the strike is to think about a line made by standing water on the inclined layer. That line is horizontal and lies on a compass direction that has some angle with respect to true north or south (see figure). The **strike** angle is that angle measured by a compass. For example, N30°E (read north 30 degrees east) means the horizontal line points northeast at an angle of 30° from true north. The strike and dip symbol is drawn on the map at the strike angle with respect to true north on the map. The dip of the inclined layer represents the angle down to the layer from horizontal, in the figure 45° SE (read dipping 45 degrees to the SE). The direction of dip would be the direction a ball would roll if set on the layer and released. A horizontal rock bed has a dip of 0° and a vertical bed has a dip of 90°. Strike and dip considered together are called **rock attitude**.

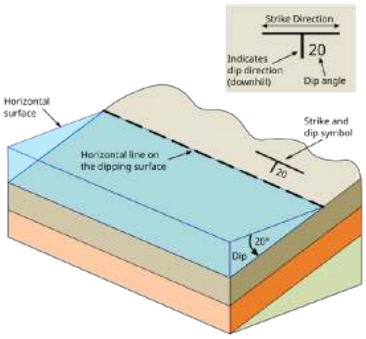


Figure *Section*8.3.1: "Strike" and "dip" are words used to describe the orientation of rock layers with respect to North/South and Horizontal. (By Karla Panchuk; CC BY 4.0 via Physical Geology.)

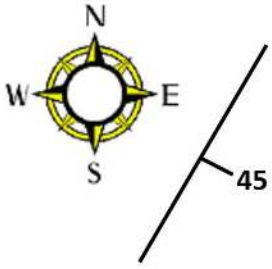


Figure *Section*8.3.2: Attitude symbol on a geologic map (with compass directions for reference) showing strike of N30°E and dip of 45° to the SE.

This page titled Section 8.3: Geological Maps is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Chris Johnson, Matthew D. Affolter, Paul Inkenbrandt, & Cam Mosher (OpenGeology) via source content that was edited to the style and standards of

the LibreTexts platform.

- **9.3: Geological Maps** by Chris Johnson, Matthew D. Affolter, Paul Inkenbrandt, & Cam Mosher is licensed CC BY-NC-SA 4.0. Original source: https://opengeology.org/textbook/.

Section 8.4: Folds

Geologic **folds** are layers of rock that are curved or bent by ductile deformation. Folds are most commonly formed by compressional forces at depth, where hotter temperatures and higher confining pressures allow ductile deformation to occur.

Folds are described by the orientation of their axes, axial planes, and limbs. The plane that splits the fold into two halves is known as the **axial plane**. The **fold axis** is the line along which the bending occurs and is where the axial plane intersects the folded strata. The **hinge line** follows the line of greatest bend in a fold. The two sides of the fold are the fold **limbs**.

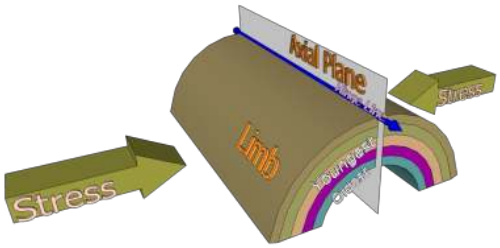


Figure *Section*8.4.1: Model of anticline. Oldest beds are in the center and youngest on the outside. The axial plane intersects the center angle of bend. The hinge line follows the line of greatest bend, where the axial plane intersects the outside of the fold.

Symmetrical folds have a vertical axial plane and limbs have equal but opposite dips. **Asymmetrical folds** have dipping, non-vertical axial planes, where the limbs dip at different angles. **Overturned folds** have steeply dipping axial planes and the limbs dip in the same direction but usually at different dip angles. **Recumbent folds** have horizontal or nearly horizontal axial planes. When the axis of the fold plunges into the ground, the fold is called a **plunging fold**. Folds are classified into five categories: anticline, syncline, monocline, dome, and basin.

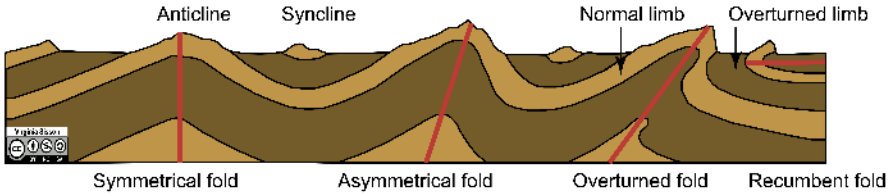


Figure *Section*8.4.2: Types of folds. (By Virginia Sisson; CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 via Exercises for Physical Geology.)

Section 8.4.1 Anticline

Anticlines are arch-like, or A-shaped folds that are convex-upward in shape. They have downward curving limbs and beds that dip down and away from the central fold axis. In anticlines, the oldest rock strata are in the center of the fold, along the axis, and the younger beds are on the outside. Since geologic maps show the intersection of surface topography with underlying geologic structures, an anticline on a geologic map can be identified by both the attitude of the strata forming the fold and the older age of the rocks inside the fold. An **antiform** has the same shape as an anticline, but the relative ages of the beds in the fold cannot be determined. Oil geologists are interested in anticlines because they can form oil traps, where oil migrates up along the limbs of the fold and accumulates in the high point along the fold axis.



Figure *Section*8.4.3: Anticline near Bcharre, Lebanon. (By Not home at English Wikipedia; public domain via Wikimedia Commons.)

Section 8.4.2 Syncline

Synclines are trough-like, or U shaped, folds that are concave-upward in shape. They have beds that dip down and in toward the central fold axis. In synclines, older rock is on the outside of the fold and the youngest rock is inside of the fold axis. A **synform** has the shape of a syncline but like an antiform, does not have distinguishable age zones.



Synclinal fold – Macigno Formation by **alanpitts** on **Sketchfab**

Section 8.4.3 Monocline

Monoclines are step-like folds, in which flat rocks are upwarped or downwarped, then continue flat. Monoclines are relatively common on the Colorado Plateau where they form "**reefs**," which are ridges that act as topographic barriers and should not be confused with ocean reefs. Capitol Reef is an example of a monocline in Utah. Monoclines can be caused by bending of shallower sedimentary strata as faults grow below them. These faults are commonly called "blind faults" because they end before reaching the surface and can be either normal or reverse faults.



Figure *Section*8.4.4: Monocline at Colorado National Monument. (By Anky-man at the English Wikipedia; CC BY-SA 3.0 via Wikimedia Commons.)

Section 8.4.4 Dome

A **dome** is a symmetrical to semi-symmetrical upwarping of rock beds. Domes have a shape like an inverted bowl, similar to an architectural dome on a building. Examples of domes in Utah include the San Rafael Swell, Harrisburg Junction Dome, and Henry Mountains [2; 3]. Domes are formed from compressional forces, underlying igneous intrusions [2], by salt diapirs, or even impacts, like upheaval dome in Canyonlands National Park.



Figure *Section*8.4.5: This prominent circular feature with a diameter of almost 50 km (30 mi) in the Sahara desert of Mauritania has attracted attention since the earliest space missions because it forms a conspicuous bulls-eye in the otherwise rather featureless expanse of the desert. Initially interpreted as a meteorite impact structure because of its high degree of circularity, it is now thought to be merely a dome that has been laid bare by erosion. (By NASA; public domain via Wikimedia Commons.)

Section 8.4.5 Basin

A **basin** is the inverse of a dome, a bowl-shaped depression in a rock bed. The Los Angeles Basin in California is an example of a basin. Some structural basins are also sedimentary basins that collect large quantities of sediment over time. Sedimentary basins can form as a result of folding but are much more commonly produced in mountain building, forming between mountain blocks or via faulting. Regardless of the cause, as the basin sinks or subsides, it can accumulate more sediment because the weight of the sediment causes more subsidence in a positive-feedback loop. There are active sedimentary basins all over the world [4]. An example of a rapidly subsiding basin in Utah is the Oquirrh Basin, dated to the Pennsylvanian-Permian age, which has accumulated over 9,144 m (30,000 ft) of fossiliferous sandstones, shales, and limestones. These strata can be seen in the Wasatch Mountains along the east side of Utah Valley, especially on Mt. Timpanogos and in Provo Canyon.



Figure *Section*8.4.6: The Denver Basin is an active sedimentary basin at the eastern extent of the Rocky Mountains. As sediment accumulates, the basin subsides, creating basin-shaped beds that are all dipping towards the center of the basin.

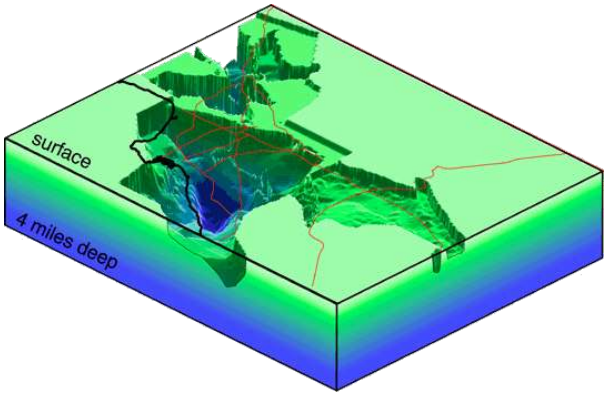


Figure *Section*8.4.7: The depth of sedimentary basins in the Los Angeles region. Major freeways are drawn in red. (By Ned Field; public domain via SCEC.)

Section 8.4.6 References

2. Gilbert GK, Dutton CE (1877) Report on the geology of the Henry Mountains. U.S. Government Printing Office, Washington

3. Ressetar R (2013) The San Rafael Swell and Henry Mountains Basin: geologic centerpiece of Utah. Utah Geological Association, Utah Geological Association

4. Coleman JL, Cahan SM (2012) Preliminary catalog of the sedimentary basins of the United States. U.S. Geological Survey

---

This page titled Section 8.4: Folds is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Chris Johnson, Matthew D. Affolter, Paul Inkenbrandt, & Cam Mosher (OpenGeology) via source content that was edited to the style and standards of the LibreTexts platform.

- **9.4: Folds** by Chris Johnson, Matthew D. Affolter, Paul Inkenbrandt, & Cam Mosher is licensed CC BY-NC-SA 4.0. Original source: https://opengeology.org/textbook/.

Section 8.5: Faults

Faults are the places in the crust where brittle deformation occurs as two blocks of rocks move relative to one another. Normal and reverse faults display vertical, also known as dip-slip, motion. **Dip-slip motion** consists of relative up-and-down movement along a dipping fault between two blocks, the hanging wall, and footwall. In a dip-slip system, the **footwall** is below the fault plane and the **hanging wall** is above the fault plane. A good way to remember this is to imagine a mine tunnel running along a fault; the hanging wall would be where a miner would hang a lantern and the footwall would be at the miner's feet.

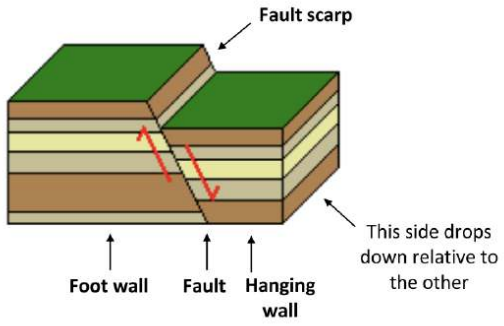


Figure *Section*8.5.1: Common terms used for normal faults. Normal faults form when the hanging wall moves down relative to the footwall. (By Kindred Grey; CC BY-SA 3.0 via Introduction to Earth Science.)

Faulting as a term refers to the rupture of rocks. Such ruptures occur at plate boundaries but can also occur in plate interiors as well. Faults slip along the **fault plane**. The **fault scarp** is the offset of the surface produced where the fault breaks through the surface. **Slickensides** are polished, often grooved surfaces along the fault plane created by friction during the movement.

A **joint** or **fracture** is a plane of brittle deformation in the rock created by the movement that is not offset or sheared. Joints can result from many processes, such as cooling, depressurizing, or folding. Joint systems may be regional affecting many square miles.

Section 8.5.1 Normal Faults

Normal faults move by a vertical motion where the hanging wall moves downward relative to the footwall along the dip of the fault. Normal faults are created by tensional forces in the crust. Normal faults and tensional forces commonly occur at divergent plate boundaries, where the crust is being stretched by tensional stresses. Examples of normal faults in Utah are the Wasatch Fault, the Hurricane Fault, and other faults bounding the valleys in the Basin and Range province.



Figure *Section*8.5.2: Example of a normal fault in an outcrop of the Pennsylvanian Honaker Trail Formation near Moab, Utah.

Grabens, horsts, and half-grabens are blocks of crust or rock bounded by normal faults. **Grabens** drop down relative to adjacent blocks and create valleys. **Horsts** rise up relative to adjacent down-dropped blocks and become areas of higher topography. Where occurring together, horsts and grabens create a symmetrical pattern of valleys surrounded by normal faults on both sides and mountains. **Half-grabens** are a one-sided version of a horst and graben, where blocks are tilted by a normal fault on one side,

creating an asymmetrical valley-mountain arrangement. The mountain-valleys of the Basin and Range Province of Western Utah and Nevada consist of a series of full and half-grabens from the Salt Lake Valley to the Sierra Nevada Mountains.

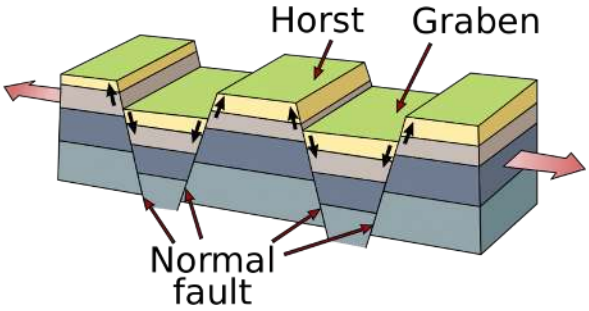


Figure *Section*8.5.3: Faulting that occurs in the crust under tensional stress forming horsts and grabens.

Normal faults do not continue to clear into the mantle. In the Basin and Range Province, the dip of a normal fault tends to decrease with depth, i.e., the fault angle becomes shallower and more horizontal as it goes deeper. Such decreasing dips happen when large amounts of extension occur along very low-angle normal faults, known as **detachment faults**. The normal faults of the Basin and Range, produced by tension in the crust, appear to become detachment faults at greater depths.

Section 8.5.2 Reverse Faults

In **reverse faults**, compressional forces cause the hanging wall to move up relative to the footwall. A **thrust fault** is a reverse fault where the fault plane has a low dip angle of less than 45°. Thrust faults carry older rocks on top of younger rocks and can even cause the repetition of rock units in the stratigraphic record.

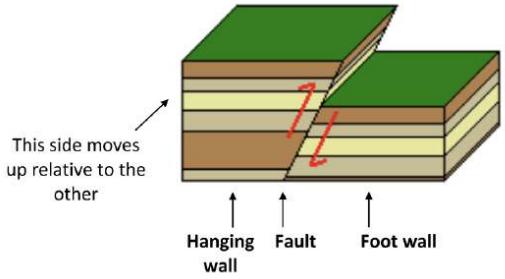


Figure *Section*8.5.4: Simplified block diagram of a reverse fault. (By Kindred Grey; CC BY-SA 3.0 via Introduction to Earth Science.)

Convergent plate boundaries with subduction zones create a special type of “reverse” fault called a **megathrust fault** where denser oceanic crust drives down beneath less dense overlying crust. Megathrust faults cause the largest magnitude earthquakes yet measured and commonly cause massive destruction and tsunamis.

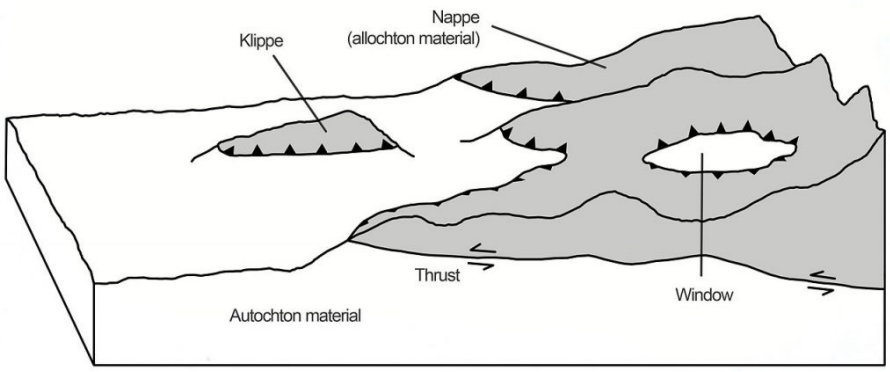


Figure *Section*8.5.5: Terminology of thrust faults (low-angle reverse faults). A klippe is the remnant of the hangingwall (aka nappe), where the surrounding material has been eroded away. A window is where part of the hanging wall has been eroded away to expose the footwall (autochthon). Note the symbol shows flags on the overlying thrust plate.



Figure *Section*8.5.6: Ketobe Knob in the San Rafael Swell of Utah displays an example of a thrust fault. (CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 International; Ron Schott via Flickr)

Section 8.5.3 Strike-Slip Faults

Strike-slip faults have side-to-side motion. Strike-slip faults are most commonly associated with transform plate boundaries and are prevalent in transform fracture zones along mid-ocean ridges. In pure strike-slip motion, fault blocks on either side of the fault do not move up or down relative to each other, rather move laterally, side to side. The direction of the strike-slip movement is determined by an observer standing on a block on one side of the fault. If the block on the opposing side of the fault moves left relative to the observer's block, this is called **sinistral** (or left-lateral) motion. If the opposing block moves right, it is **dextral** (or right-lateral) motion. An example of a dextral, right-lateral strike-slip fault is the San Andreas Fault, which denotes a transform boundary between the North American and Pacific plates. An example of a sinistral, left-lateral strike-slip fault is the Dead Sea fault in Jordan and Israel.

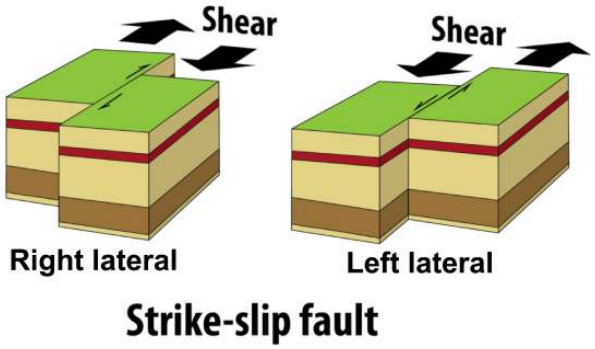


Figure *Section*8.5.7: Right-lateral and left-lateral strike-slip faults resulting from shear stress. (By Karla Panchuk; CC BY-SA 4.0 via Physical Geology)

Bends along strike-slip faults create areas of compression or tension between the sliding blocks. Tensional stresses create **transtensional** features with normal faults and basins, such as the Salton Sea in California. Compressional stresses create **transpressional** features with reverse faults and cause small-scale mountain building, such as the San Gabriel Mountains in California. The faults that splay off transpression or transtension features are known as **flower structures**.

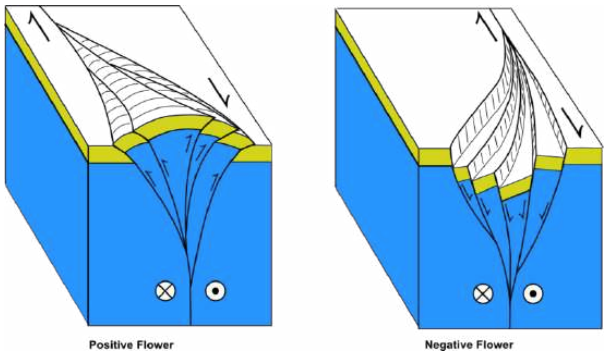
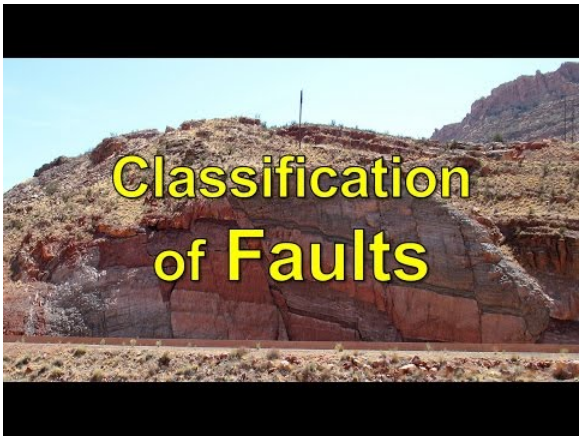


Figure *Section*8.5.8: Flower structures created by strike-slip faults. Depending on the relative movement in relation to the bend in the fault, flower structures can create basins or mountains.

Video showing how faults are classified.





This page titled Section 8.5: Faults is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Chris Johnson, Matthew D. Affolter, Paul Inkenbrandt, & Cam Mosher (OpenGeology) via source content that was edited to the style and standards of the LibreTexts platform.

- **9.5: Faults** by Chris Johnson, Matthew D. Affolter, Paul Inkenbrandt, & Cam Mosher is licensed CC BY-NC-SA 4.0. Original source: https://opengeology.org/textbook/.

Section 8.6: Earthquake Essentials

Earthquakes are felt at the surface of the Earth when energy is released by blocks of rock sliding past each other, i.e. faulting has occurred. **Seismic energy** thus released travels through the Earth in the form of seismic waves. Most earthquakes occur along active plate boundaries. Intraplate earthquakes (not along plate boundaries) occur and are still poorly understood. The USGS Earthquakes Hazards Program has a real-time map showing the most recent earthquakes.

Section 8.6.1 How Earthquakes Happen

The release of seismic energy is explained by the **elastic rebound theory**. When the rock is strained to the point that it undergoes brittle deformation, the place where the initial offsetting rupture occurs between the fault blocks is called the **focus**. This offset propagates along the fault, which is known as the fault plane.

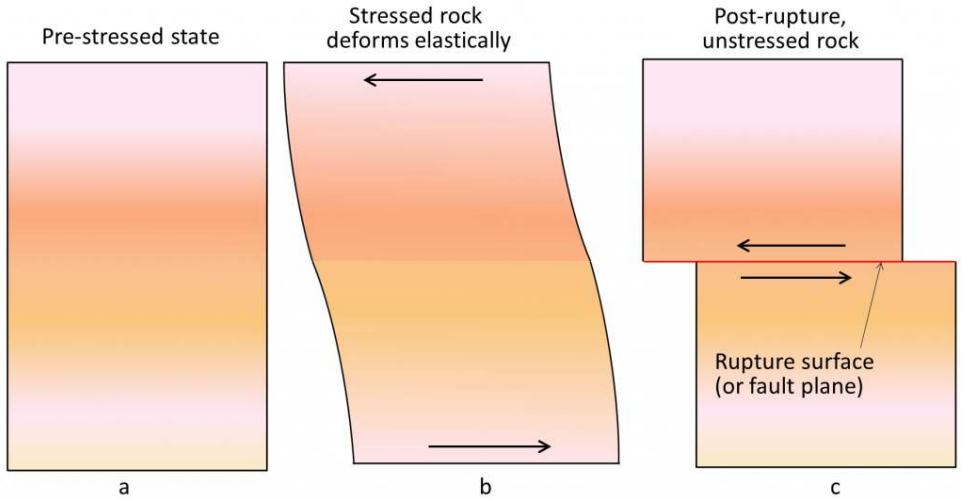


Figure *Section*8.6.1: Process of elastic rebound: a) Undeformed state, b) accumulation of elastic strain, and c) brittle failure and release of elastic strain.

The fault blocks of persistent faults, like the Wasatch Fault (Utah), that show recurring movements are locked together by friction. Over hundreds to thousands of years, stress builds up along the fault until it overcomes frictional resistance, rupturing the rock and initiating fault movement. The deformed, unbroken rocks snap back toward their original shape in a process called elastic rebound**.** Think of bending a stick until it breaks; stored energy is released, and the broken pieces return to near their original orientation.

Bending, the ductile deformation of the rocks near a fault reflects a build-up of stress. In earthquake-prone areas like California, strain gauges are used to measure this bending and help **seismologists**, scientists who study earthquakes, understand more about forecasting them. In locations where the fault is not locked, seismic stress causes continuous, gradual displacement between the fault blocks called **fault creep**. Fault creep occurs along some parts of the San Andreas Fault (California).

After an initial earthquake, continuous application of stress in the crust causes elastic energy to begin to build again during a period of inactivity along the fault. The accumulating elastic strain may be periodically released to produce small earthquakes on or near the main fault called **foreshocks**. Foreshocks can occur hours or days before a large earthquake, or may not occur at all. The main release of energy during the major earthquake is known as the **mainshock**. **Aftershocks** may follow the mainshock to adjust new strain produced during the fault movement and they generally decrease over time.

Section 8.6.2 Focus and Epicenter

The earthquake focus, also called the **hypocenter**, is the initial point of rupture, and displacement of the rock moves from the hypocenter along the fault surface. The earthquake focus or hypocenter is the point along the fault plane from which initial seismic waves spread outward and is always at some depth below the ground surface. From the focus, rock displacement propagates up, down, and laterally along the fault plane. This displacement produces shock waves called seismic waves. The larger the displacement between the opposing fault blocks and the further the displacement propagates along the fault surface, the more seismic energy is released and the greater the amount and time of shaking is produced. The **epicenter** is the location on the Earth's

surface vertically above the focus. This is the location that most news reports give because it is the center of the area where people are affected.

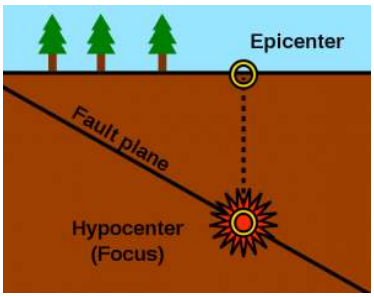


Figure *Section*8.6.2: The hypocenter is the point along the fault plane in the subsurface from which seismic energy emanates. The epicenter is the point on the land surface vertically above the hypocenter.

Section 8.6.3 Seismic Waves

To understand earthquakes and how earthquake energy moves through the Earth, consider the basic properties of waves. **Waves** describe how energy moves through a medium, such as rock or unconsolidated sediments in the case of earthquakes. **Wave amplitude** indicates the magnitude or height of earthquake motion. **Wavelength** is the distance between two successive peaks of a wave. **Wave frequency** is the number of repetitions of the motion over a period of time, cycles per time unit. **Period**, which is the amount of time for a wave to travel one wavelength, is the inverse of frequency. When multiple waves combine, they can interfere with each other (see figure). When waves combine in sync, they produce **constructive interference**, where the influence of one wave adds to and magnifies the other. If waves are out of sync, they produce **destructive interference**, which diminishes the amplitudes of both waves. If two combined waves have the same amplitude and frequency but are one-half wavelength out of sync, the resulting destructive interference can eliminate each wave. These processes of wave amplitude, frequency, period, and constructive and destructive interference determine the magnitude and intensity of earthquakes.

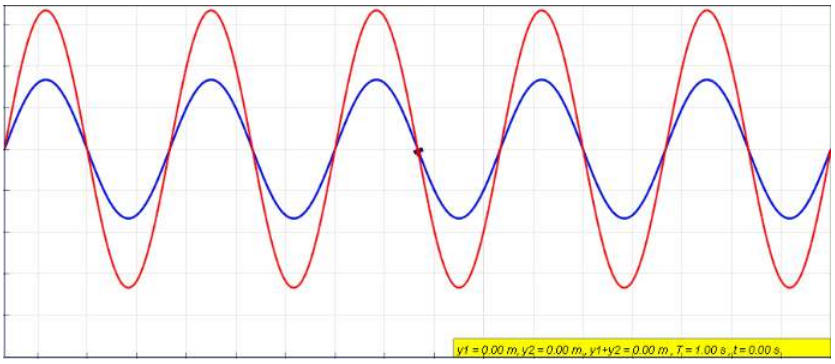


Figure *Section*8.6.3: Example of constructive and destructive interference; note red line representing the results of interference.

Seismic waves are the physical expression of energy released by the elastic rebound of rock within displaced fault blocks and are felt as an earthquake. Seismic waves occur as body waves and surface waves. **Body waves** pass underground through the Earth's interior body and are the first seismic waves to propagate out from the focus. Body waves include primary (P) waves and secondary (S) waves. **P waves** are the fastest body waves and move through the rock via compression, very much like sound waves move through air. Rock particles move forward and back during the passage of the P waves, enabling them to travel through solids, liquids, plasma, and gases. **S waves** travel slower, following P waves, and propagate as shear waves that move rock particles from side to side. Because they are restricted to lateral movement, S waves can only travel through solids but not liquids, plasma, or gases.

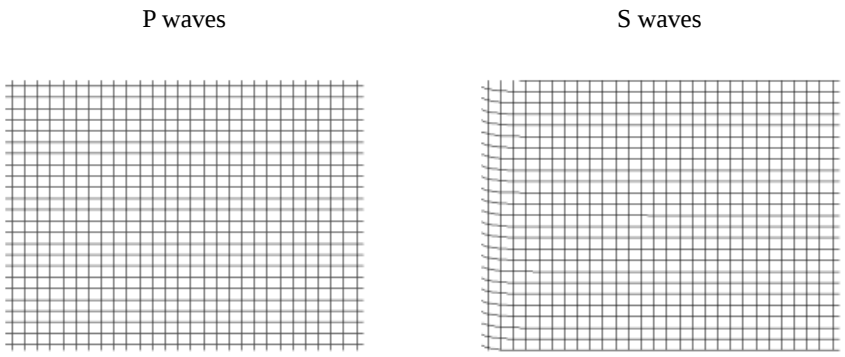


Figure *Section*8.6.4: Left: P waves are compressional. Right: S waves are shear.

During an earthquake, body waves pass through the Earth and into the mantle as a sub-spherical wavefront. Considering a point on a wavefront, the path followed by a specific point on the spreading wavefront is called a **seismic ray**. A seismic ray reaches a specific **seismograph** located at one of thousands of seismic monitoring stations scattered over the Earth. Density increases with depth in the Earth, and since **seismic velocity** increases with density, a process called **refraction** causes earthquake rays to curve away from the vertical and bend back toward the surface, passing through different bodies of rock along the way.

Surface waves are produced when body waves from the focus strike the Earth's surface. Surface waves travel along the Earth's surface, radiating outward from the epicenter. Surface waves take the form of rolling waves called Raleigh Waves and side to side waves called Love Waves (watch videos for wave propagation animations). Surface waves are produced primarily as the more energetic S waves strike the surface from below with some surface wave energy contributed by P waves (videos courtesy blog.Wolfram.com). Surface waves travel more slowly than body waves and because of their complex horizontal and vertical movement, surface waves are responsible for most of the damage caused by an earthquake. Love waves produce predominantly horizontal ground shaking and, ironically from their name, are the most destructive. Rayleigh waves produce an elliptical motion with longitudinal dilation and compression, like ocean waves. However, Raleigh waves cause rock particles to move in a direction opposite to that of water particles in ocean waves.

The Earth has been described as ringing like a bell after an earthquake with earthquake energy reverberating inside it. Like other waves, seismic waves refract (bend) and bounce (reflect) when passing through rocks of differing densities. S waves, which cannot move through liquids, are blocked by the Earth's liquid outer core, creating an **S wave shadow zone** on the side of the planet opposite to the earthquake focus. P waves, on the other hand, pass through the core but are refracted into the core by the difference of density at the core-mantle boundary. This has the effect of creating a cone-shaped **P wave shadow zone** on parts of the other side of the Earth from the focus.

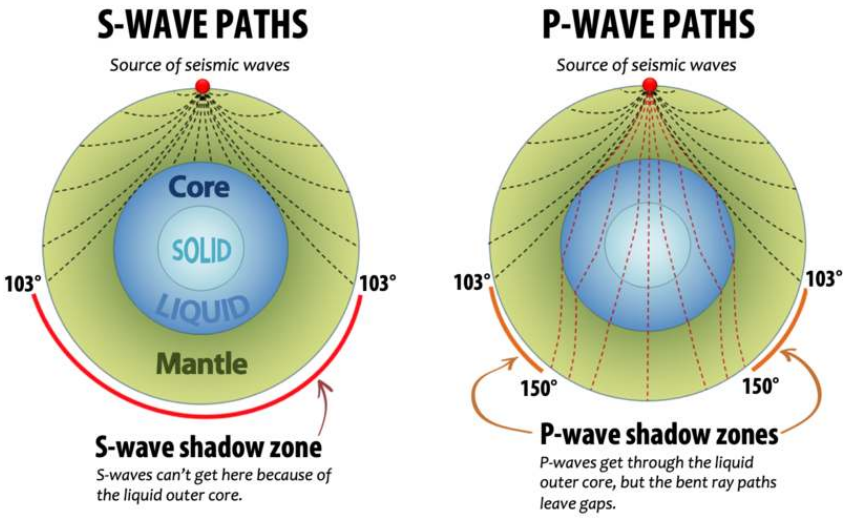
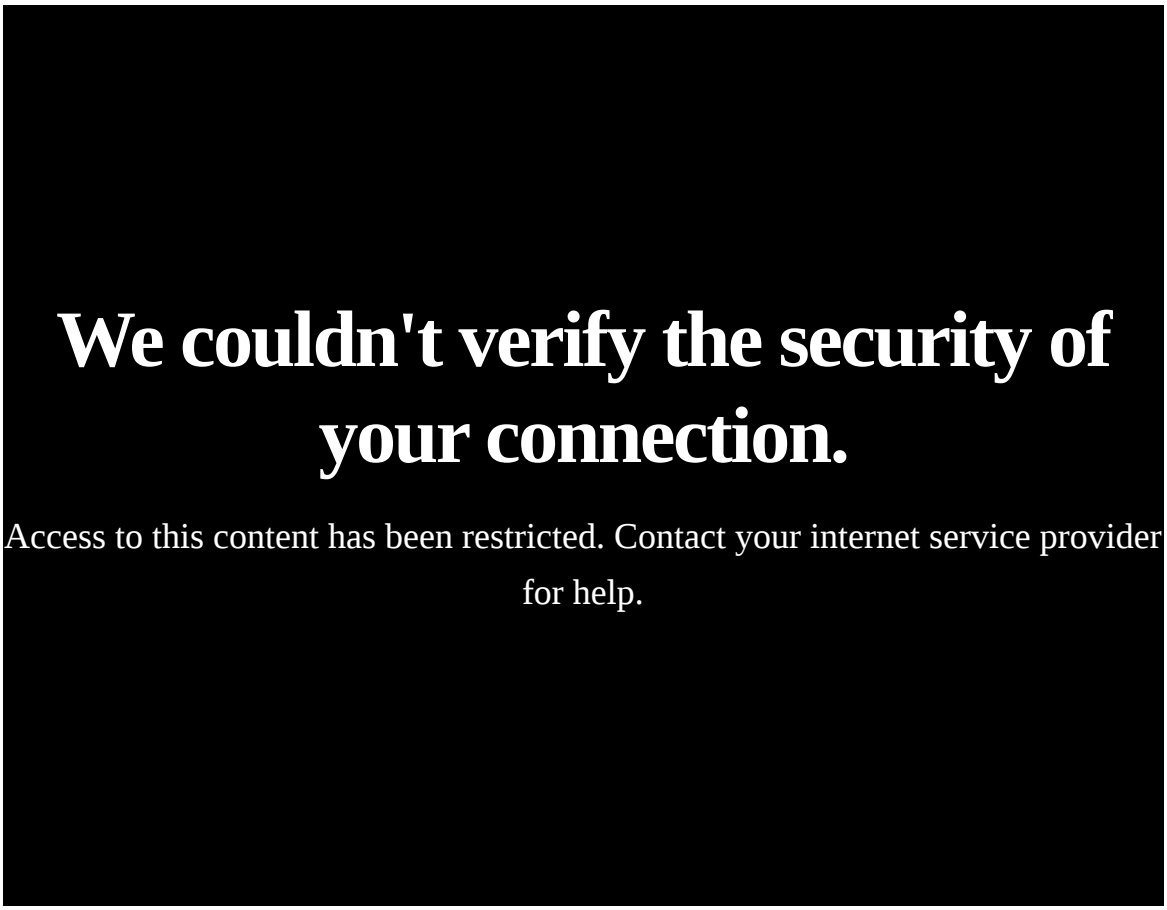


Figure *Section*8.6.5: Patterns of seismic waves travel through Earth's mantle and core. S waves can't travel through the liquid outer core, so they leave a shadow zone opposite the focus. P waves do travel through the core but refraction beds them and creates a P wave shadow zone. (By Karla Panchuk, Steven Earle; CC BY 4.0 via Physical Geology.)

2011 Tohoku Earthquake, Mag. 9.0. Body and Surface Waves from seismicsoundlab on Vimeo.



Section 8.6.4 Induced Seismicity

Earthquakes known as **induced seismicity** occur near natural gas extraction sites because of human activity. Injection of waste fluids in the ground, commonly a byproduct of an extraction process for natural gas known as **fracking**, can increase the outward pressure that liquid in the pores of a rock exerts, known as **pore pressure** [5; 6]. The increase in pore pressure decreases the frictional forces that keep rocks from sliding past each other, essentially lubricating fault planes. This effect is causing earthquakes

to occur near injection sites, which is induced seismicity due to human activity [5]. The significant increase in drilling activity in the central United States has spurred the requirement for the disposal of significant amounts of waste drilling fluid, resulting in a measurable change in the cumulative number of earthquakes experienced in the region.

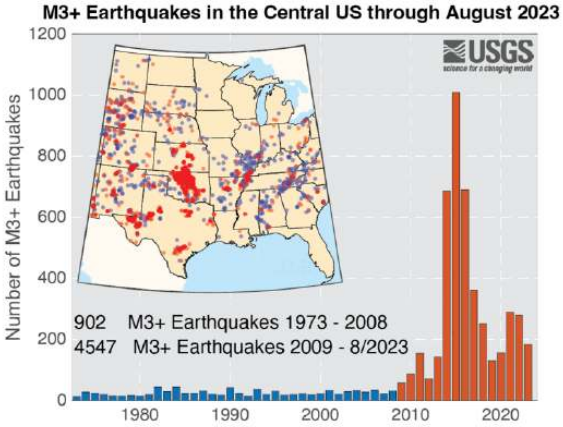


Figure *Section*8.6.6: Frequency of earthquakes in the central United States. Note the sharp increase in the number of earthquakes from 2009 to 2018.

Section 8.6.5 References

5. Ellsworth WL (2013) Injection-Induced Earthquakes. Science 341:1225942. https://doi.org/10.1126/science.1225942

6. Rubinstein JL, Mahani AB (2015) Myths and facts on wastewater injection, hydraulic fracturing, enhanced oil recovery, and induced seismicity. Seismological research letters 86:1060–1067

This page titled Section 8.6: Earthquake Essentials is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Chris Johnson, Matthew D. Affolter, Paul Inkenbrandt, & Cam Mosher (OpenGeology) via source content that was edited to the style and standards of the LibreTexts platform.

- **9.6: Earthquake Essentials** by Chris Johnson, Matthew D. Affolter, Paul Inkenbrandt, & Cam Mosher is licensed CC BY-NC-SA 4.0. Original source: https://opengeology.org/textbook/.

Section 8.7: Measuring Earthquakes

Section 8.7.1 Seismographs

People feel approximately 1 million earthquakes a year, usually when they are close to the source and the earthquake registers at least moment magnitude 2.5. Major earthquakes of moment magnitude 7.0 and higher are extremely rare. The U. S. Geological Survey (USGS) Earthquakes Hazards Program real-time map shows the location and magnitude of recent earthquakes around the world.

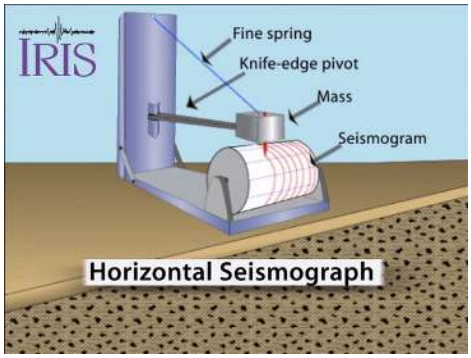


Figure *Section*8.7.1: Animation of a horizontal seismograph.

To accurately study seismic waves, geologists use seismographs that can measure even the slightest ground vibrations. Early 20th-century seismographs used a weighted pen (pendulum) suspended by a long spring above a recording device fixed solidly to the ground. The recording device is a rotating drum mounted with a continuous strip of paper. During an earthquake, the suspended pen stays motionless and records ground movement on the paper strip. The resulting graph is a **seismogram**. Digital versions use magnets, wire coils, electrical sensors, and digital signals instead of mechanical pens, springs, drums, and paper. A **seismograph array** is multiple seismographs configured to measure vibrations in three directions: north-south (x-axis), east-west (y-axis), and up-down (z-axis).

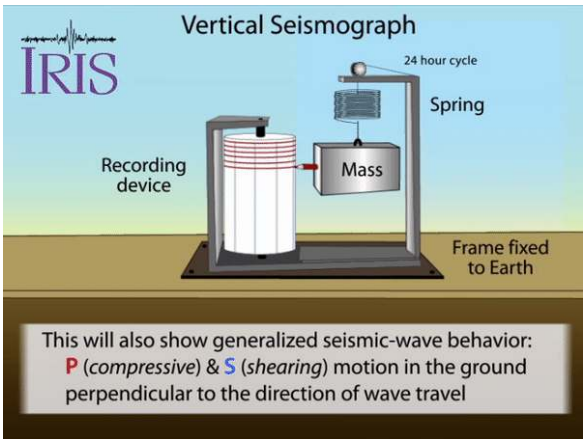


Figure *Section*8.7.2: Animation of how a basic vertical seismograph records seismic waves.

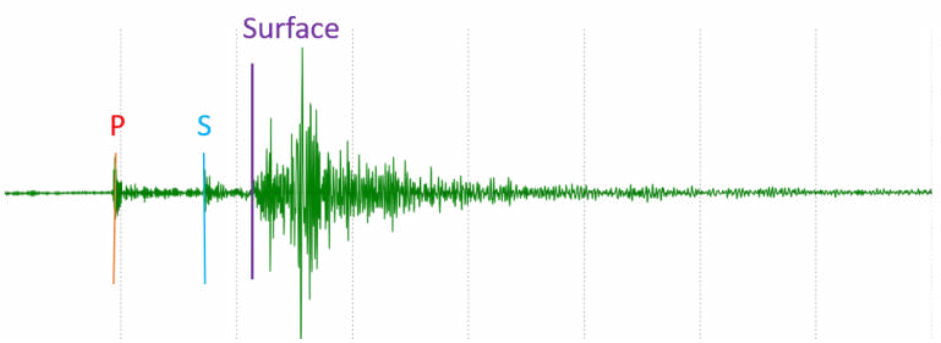


Figure *Section*8.7.3: A seismogram showing the arrivals of the P, S, and surface waves

To pinpoint the location of an earthquake epicenter, seismologists use the differences in arrival times of the P, S, and surface waves. After an earthquake, P waves will appear first on a seismogram, followed by S waves, and finally surface waves, which have the largest amplitude. It is important to note that surface waves lose energy quickly, so they are not measurable at great distances from the epicenter. These time differences determine the distance to but not the direction of the epicenter. By using wave arrival times recorded on seismographs at multiple stations, seismologists can apply **triangulation** to pinpoint the location of the epicenter of an earthquake. At least three seismograph stations are needed for triangulation. The distance from each station to the epicenter is plotted as the radius of a circle. The epicenter is located where all of the circles intersect. This method also works in 3D, using multi-axis seismographs and sphere radii to calculate the underground depth of the focus.

This video shows the method of triangulation to locate the epicenter of an earthquake.





Section 8.7.2 Seismograph Network

The International Registry of Seismograph Stations lists more than 20,000 seismographs on the planet. By comparing data from multiple seismographs, scientists can map the properties of the inside of the Earth, detect detonations of large explosive devices, and predict tsunamis. The **Global Seismographic Network**, a worldwide set of linked seismographs that electronically distribute real-time data, includes more than 150 stations that meet specific design and precision standards. The USArray is a network of hundreds of permanent and transportable seismographs in the United States that are used to map the subsurface activity of earthquakes (see video).

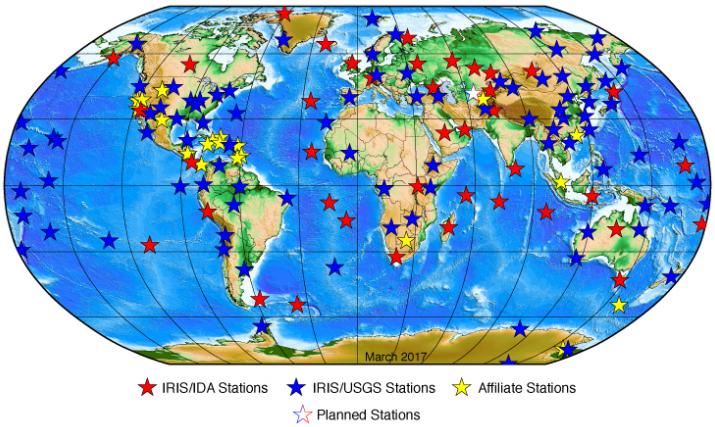
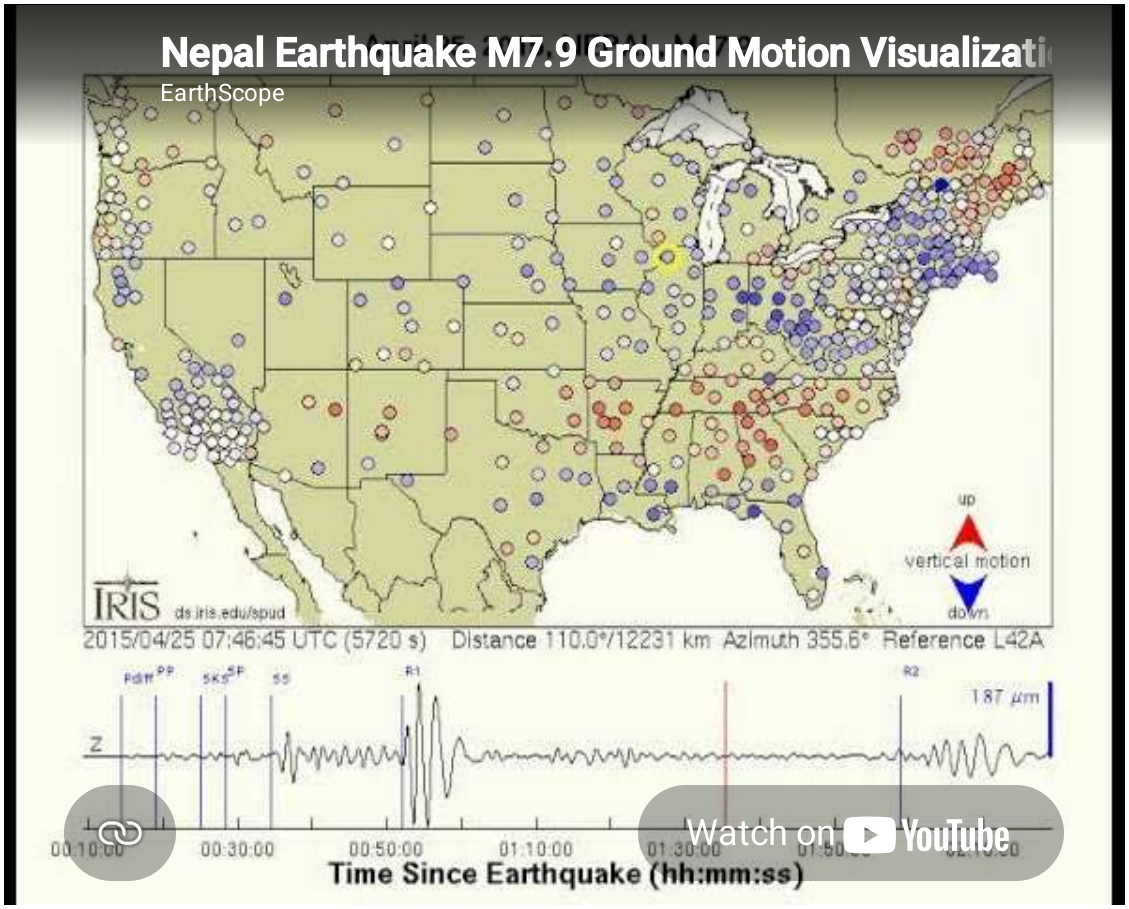
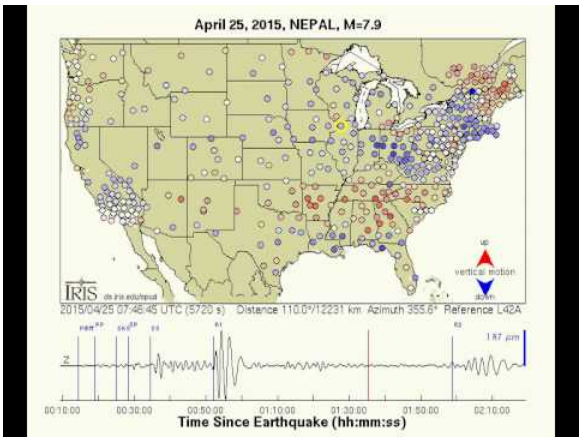


Figure *Section*8.7.4: Global network of seismic stations. Note that this map does not show all of the world's seismic stations, just some of the networks of stations scientists use to measure seismic activity.

Along with monitoring for earthquakes and related hazards, the Global Seismographic Network helps detect nuclear weapons testing, which is monitored by the Comprehensive Nuclear Test Ban Treaty Organization. Most recently, seismographs have been used to determine nuclear weapons testing by North Korea.

Nepal Earthquake M7.9 Ground Motion Visualization





Section 8.7.3 Seismic Tomography

Very much like a CT (Computed Tomography) scan uses X-rays at different angles to image the inside of a body, **seismic tomography** uses seismic rays from thousands of earthquakes that occur each year, passing at all angles through masses of rock, to generate images of internal Earth structures.

Using the assumption that the Earth consists of homogenous layers, geologists developed a model of expected properties of Earth materials at every depth within the Earth called the PREM (**Preliminary Reference Earth Model**). These properties include seismic wave **transmission velocity**, which is dependent on rock density and elasticity. In the mantle, temperature differences affect rock density. Cooler rocks have a higher density and therefore transmit seismic waves faster. Warmer rocks have a lower density and transmit earthquake waves slower. When the arrival times of seismic rays at individual seismic stations are compared to arrival times predicted by PREM, differences are called **seismic anomalies** and can be measured for bodies of rock within the

Earth from seismic rays passing through them at stations of the seismic network. Because seismic rays travel at all angles from lots of earthquakes and arrive at lots of stations of the seismic network, like CT scans of the body, variations in the properties of the rock bodies allow 3D images to be constructed of the rock bodies through which the rays passed. Seismologists are thus able to construct 3D images of the interior of the Earth.

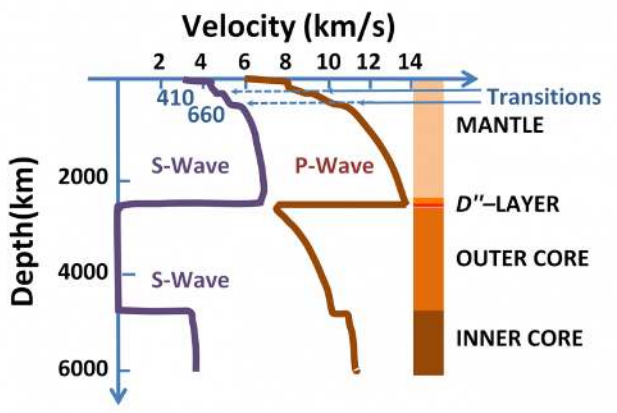


Figure *Section*8.7.5: Speed of seismic waves with depth in the Earth as predicted by the PREM. Two thousand kilometers is 1240 miles.

For example, seismologists have mapped the Farallon Plate, a tectonic plate that subducted beneath North America during the last several million years, and the Yellowstone magma chamber, which is a product of the Yellowstone hot spot under the North American continent. Peculiarities of the Farallon Plate subduction are thought to be responsible for many features of western North America including the Rocky Mountains.

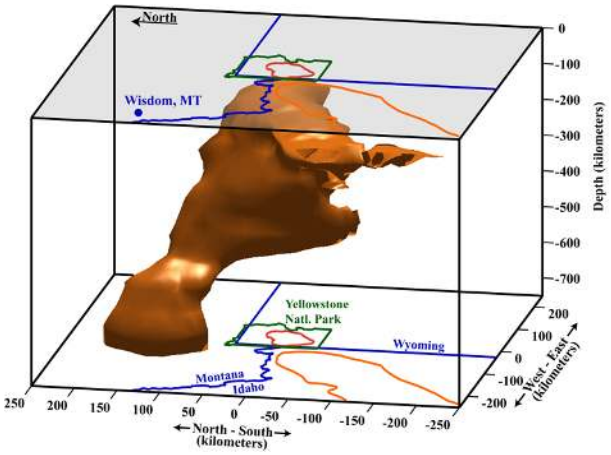


Figure *Section*8.7.6: Seismic tomography showing the magma chamber beneath Yellowstone National Park.

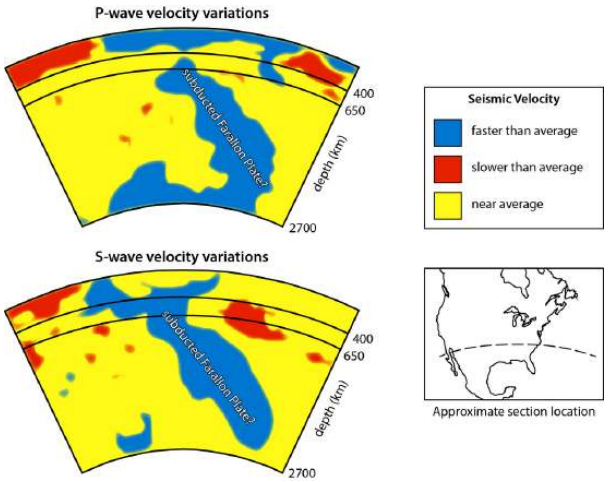


Figure ***Section*8.7.7**: Simplified and interpreted P and S wave velocity variations in the mantle across southern North America showing the subducted Farallon Plate. (By Oilfieldvegetarian; CC BY-SA 4.0 via Wikimedia Commons.)

Section 8.7.4 Earthquake Magnitude and Intensity

Section 8.7.4.1 Richter Scale

Magnitude is the measure of the energy released by an earthquake. The **Richter scale** (M_L), the first and most well-known magnitude scale, was developed by Charles F. Richter (1900-1985) at the California Institute of Technology. This was the magnitude scale used historically by early seismologists. Richter magnitude (M_L) is determined from the maximum amplitude of the pen tracing on the seismogram recording. Adjustments for epicenter distance from the seismograph are made using the arrival-time differences of S and P waves [7].

The Richter Scale is logarithmic, based on powers of 10. This means an increase of one Richter unit represents a 10-fold increase in seismic-wave amplitude or in other words, a magnitude 6 earthquake shakes the ground 10 times more than a magnitude 5. However, the *actual energy released* for each magnitude unit is 32 times greater, which means a magnitude 6 earthquake releases 32 times more energy than a magnitude 5.

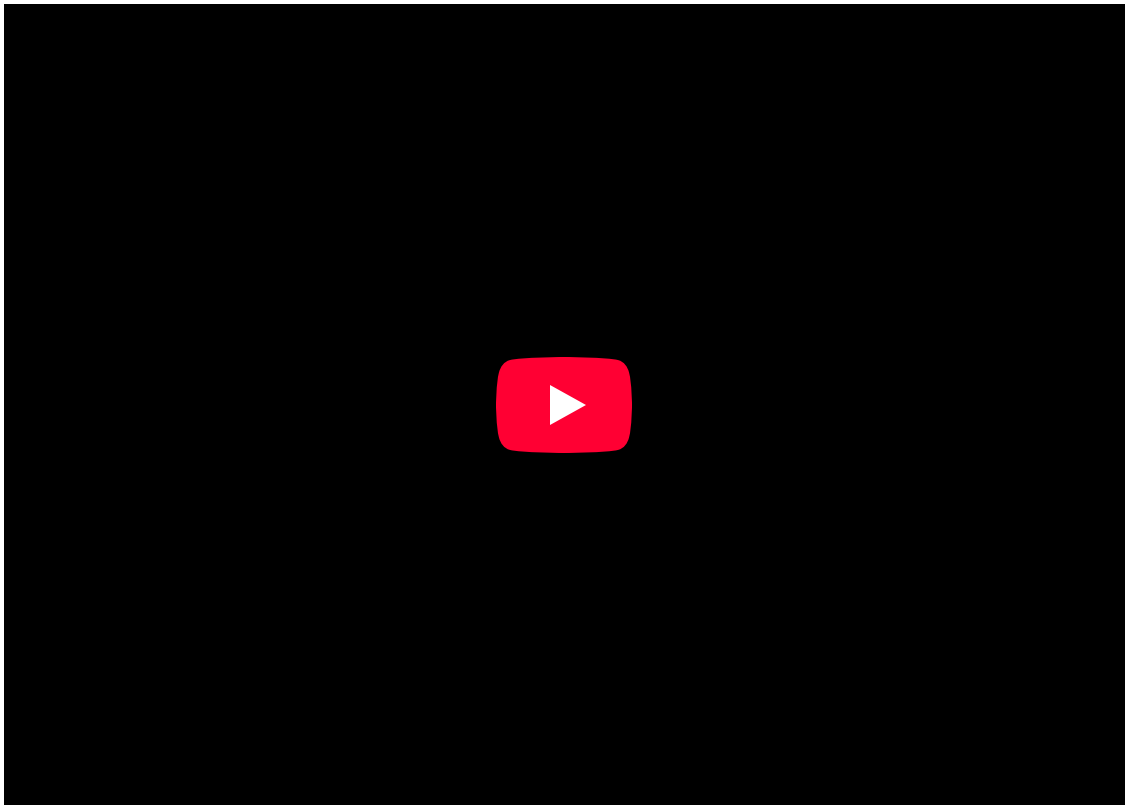
The Richter Scale was developed for earthquakes in Southern California, using local seismographs. It has limited applications for larger distances and very large earthquakes. Therefore, most agencies no longer use the Richter Scale. The moment magnitude (M_W), which is measured using seismic arrays and generates values comparable to the Richter Scale, is more accurate for measuring earthquakes across the Earth, including large earthquakes, although they require more time to calculate. News media often report Richter magnitudes right after an earthquake occurs even though scientific calculations now use moment magnitudes.

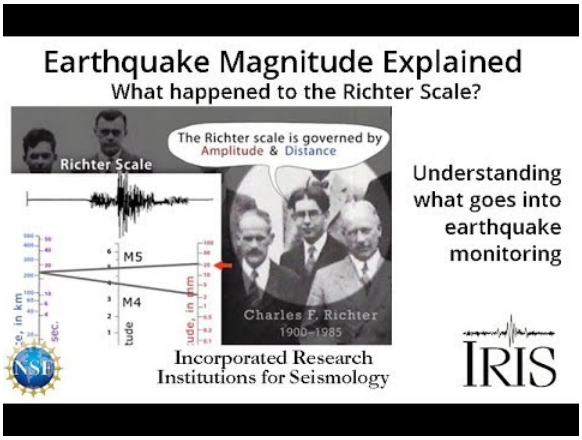
Section 8.7.4.2 Moment Magnitude Scale

The **moment magnitude scale** depicts the absolute size of earthquakes, comparing information from multiple locations and using a measurement of actual energy released calculated from the cross-sectional area of rupture, amount of slippage, and the rigidity of the rocks. Because each earthquake occurs in a unique geologic setting and the rupture area is often hard to measure, estimates of moment magnitude can take days or even months to calculate.

Like the Richter Scale, the moment magnitude scale is logarithmic. The magnitude values of the two scales are approximately equal, except for very large earthquakes. Both scales are used for reporting earthquake magnitude. The Richter Scale provides a quick magnitude estimate immediately following the quake and thus, is usually reported in news accounts. Moment magnitude calculations take much longer but are more accurate and thus, more useful for scientific analysis.

Watch this video that explains the moment magnitude scale.





Section 8.7.4.2.1 **Modified Mercalli Intensity Scale**

The **Modified Mercalli Intensity Scale** (MMI) is a qualitative rating of ground-shaking intensity based on observable structural damage and people's perceptions. This scale uses a *I* (Roman numeral one) rating for the lowest intensity and *X* (ten) for the highest (see table) and can vary depending on epicenter location and population density, such as urban versus rural settings. Historically, scientists used the MMI Scale to categorize earthquakes before they developed quantitative measurements of magnitude. Intensity maps show locations of the most severe damage, based on residential questionnaires, local news articles, and on-site assessment reports.

Table ***Section*8.7.1**: Abridged Mercalli Scale from USGS General Interest Publication 1989-288-913.

Intensity	Shaking	Description/Damage
I	Not felt	Not felt except by a very few under especially favorable conditions.
II	Weak	Felt only by a few persons at rest, especially on upper floors of buildings.
III	Weak	Felt quite noticeably by persons indoors, especially on upper floors of buildings. Many people do not recognize it as an earthquake. Standing motor cars may rock slightly. Vibrations similar to the passing of a truck. Duration estimated.
IV	Light	Felt indoors by many, outdoors by few during the day. At night, some awakened. Dishes, windows, doors disturbed; walls make cracking sound. Sensation like heavy truck striking building. Standing motor cars rocked noticeably.
V	Moderate	Felt by nearly everyone; many awakened. Some dishes, windows broken. Unstable objects overturned. Pendulum clocks may stop.
VI	Strong	Felt by all, many frightened. Some heavy furniture moved; a few instances of fallen plaster. Damage slight.
VII	Very strong	Damage negligible in buildings of good design and construction; slight to moderate in well-built ordinary structures; considerable damage in poorly built or badly designed structures; some chimneys broken.
VIII	Severe	Damage slight in specially designed structures; considerable damage in ordinary substantial buildings with partial collapse. Damage great in poorly built structures. Fall of chimneys, factory stacks, columns, monuments, walls. Heavy furniture overturned.
IX	Violent	Damage considerable in specially designed structures; well-designed frame structures thrown out of plumb. Damage great in substantial buildings, with partial collapse. Buildings shifted off foundations.
X	Extreme	Some well-built wooden structures destroyed; most masonry and frame structures destroyed with foundations. Rails bent.

Section 8.7.4.3 ShakeMaps

Shake maps, written ShakeMaps by the USGS, use high-quality, computer-interpolated data from seismograph networks to show areas of intense shaking. Shake maps are useful in the crucial minutes after an earthquake, as they show emergency personnel where the greatest damage likely occurred and help them locate possibly damaged gas lines and other utility facilities.

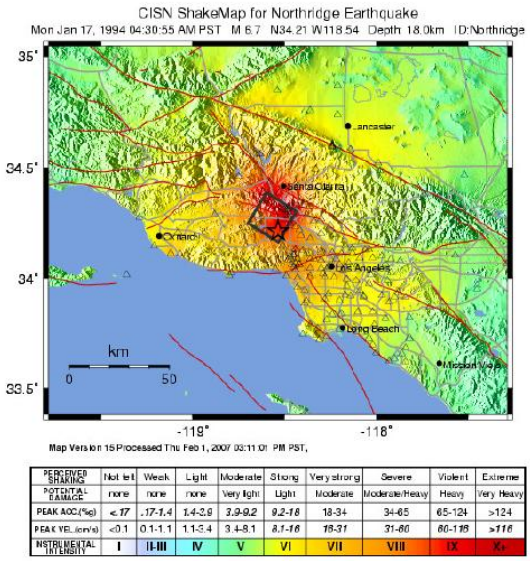


Figure *Section*8.7.8: Example of a shake map. (By CISN; CC BY-SA 4.0 via Wikimedia Commons.)

Section 8.7.5 Reference

7. Richter CF (1935) An instrumental earthquake magnitude scale. Bulletin of the Seismological Society of America 25:1–32

This page titled Section 8.7: Measuring Earthquakes is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Chris Johnson, Matthew D. Affolter, Paul Inkenbrandt, & Cam Mosher (OpenGeology) via source content that was edited to the style and standards of the LibreTexts platform.

- **9.7: Measuring Earthquakes** by Chris Johnson, Matthew D. Affolter, Paul Inkenbrandt, & Cam Mosher is licensed CC BY-NC-SA 4.0. Original source: https://opengeology.org/textbook/.

Section 8.8: Earthquake Risk

Section 8.8.1 Factors that Determine Shaking

Earthquake magnitude is an absolute value that measures pure energy release. **Intensity**, however, i.e. how much the ground shakes, is determined by several factors.

Earthquake magnitude—In general, the larger the magnitude, the stronger the shaking and the longer the shaking will last.

This table is taken from the USGS and shows scales of magnitude and Mercalli Intensity and descriptions of shaking and resulting damage.

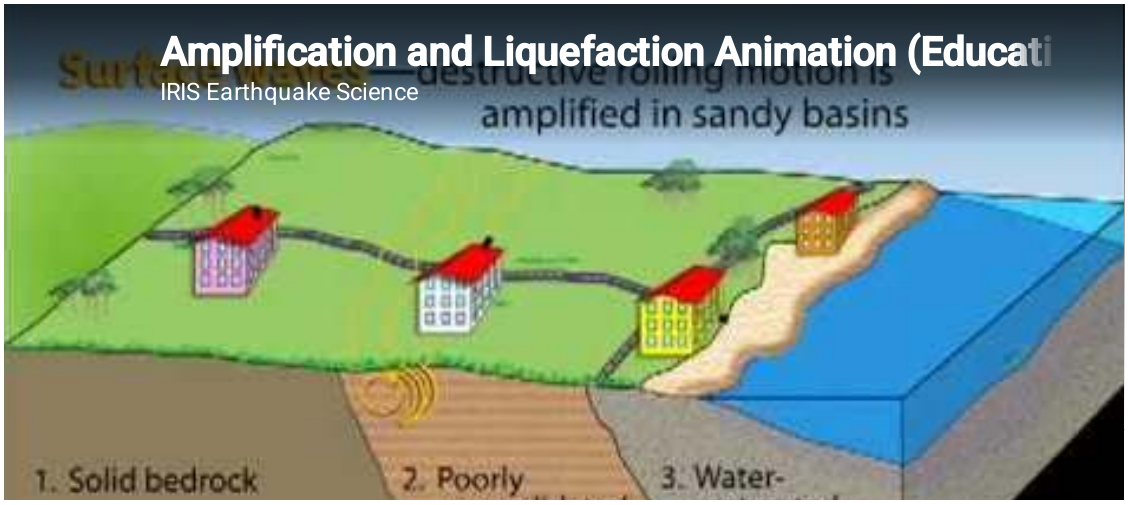
Table *Section*8.8.1: Mercalli Intensity as it relates to magnitude.

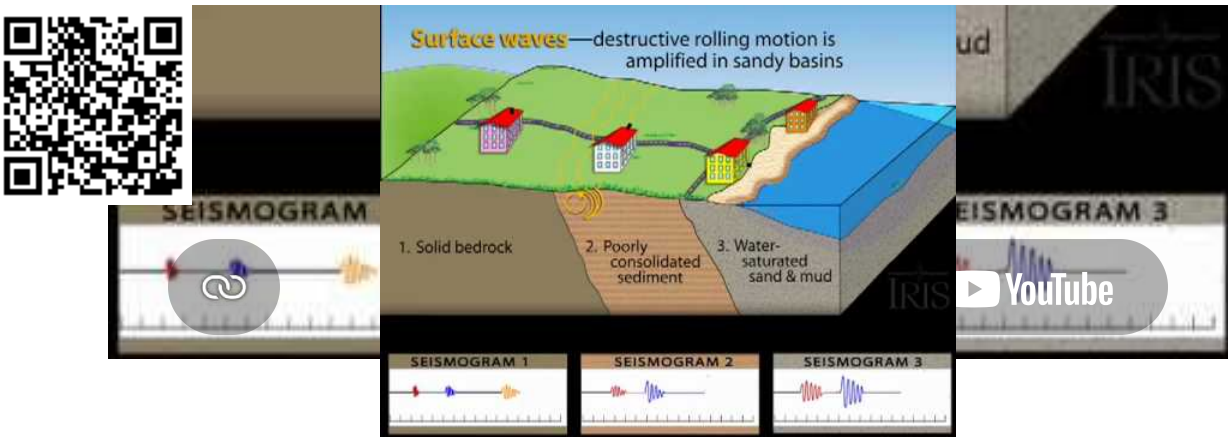
Magnitude	Modified Mercalli Intensity	Shaking/Damage Description
1.0 – 3.0	**I**	Only felt by a very few.
3.0 – 3.9	**II – III**	Noticeable indoors, especially on upper floors.
4.0 – 4.9	**IV – V**	Most to all feel it. Dishes, doors, cars shake and possibly break.
5.0 – 5.9	**VI – VII**	Everyone feels it. Some items knocked over or broken. Building damage possible.
6.0 – 6.9	**VII – VIII**	Frightening amounts of shaking. Significant damage especially with poorly constructed buildings.
≥ 7.0	**≥ VIII**	Significant destruction of buildings. Potential for objects to be thrown in the air from shaking.

Location and direction—Shaking is more severe closer to the epicenter. The severity of shaking is influenced by the location of the observer relative to the epicenter, the direction of rupture propagation, and the path of greatest rupture.

Local geologic conditions—Seismic waves are affected by the nature of the ground materials through which they pass. Different materials respond differently to an earthquake. Think of shaking a block of Jello versus meatloaf, one will jiggle much more when hit by waves of the same amplitude. The ground's response to shaking depends on the degree of substrate consolidation. Solid sedimentary, igneous, or metamorphic bedrock shakes less than unconsolidated sediments.

This video shows how different substrates behave in response to different seismic waves and their potential for destruction.





Seismic waves move fastest through consolidated bedrock, slower through unconsolidated sediments, and slowest through unconsolidated sediments with a high water content. Seismic energy is transmitted by wave velocity and amplitude. When seismic waves slow down, energy is transferred to the amplitude, increasing the motion of surface waves, which in turn amplifies ground shaking.

Focus depth—Deeper earthquakes cause less surface shaking because much of their energy, transmitted as body waves, is lost before reaching the surface. Recall that surface waves are generated by P and S waves impacting the Earth's surface.

Section 8.8.2 Factors that Determine Destruction

Just as certain conditions will impact the intensity of ground shaking, several factors affect how much destruction is caused.



Figure *Section*8.8.1: Example of devastation on unreinforced masonry by seismic motion.

Building materials—The flexibility of a building material determines its resistance to earthquake damage. Unreinforced masonry (URM) is the material most devastated by ground shaking. Wood framing fastened with nails bends and flexes during seismic wave passage and is more likely to survive intact. Steel also has the ability to deform elastically before brittle failure.

Intensity and duration—Greater shaking and duration of shaking causes more destruction than lower and shorter shaking.

Resonance—**Resonance** occurs when seismic wave frequency matches a building's natural shaking frequency and increases the shaking. This happened in the 1985 Mexico City earthquake, where buildings of heights between 6 and 15 stories were especially vulnerable to earthquake damage. Skyscrapers designed with earthquake resilience have dampers and base isolation features to reduce resonance.

Resonance is influenced by the properties of the building materials. Changes in the structural integrity of a building can alter resonance [8]. Conversely, changes in measured resonance can indicate a potentially altered structural integrity.

These two videos discuss why buildings fall during earthquakes and a modern procedure to reduce potential earthquake destruction for larger buildings.


Why do buildings fall in earthquakes? - Vicki V. Ma
TED-Ed
WHY DO BUILDINGS FALL IN EARTHQUAKES?
TED-Ed
Watch on YouTube


WHY DO BUILDINGS FALL IN EARTHQUAKES?
TED-Ed


Utah State Capital Building - Base Isolators
ReadySetPrepShow
Watch on YouTube



Section 8.8.3 Earthquake Recurrence

A long hiatus in activity along a fault segment with a history of recurring earthquakes is known as a **seismic gap**. The lack of activity may indicate the fault segment is locked, which may produce a buildup of strain and a higher probability of an earthquake recurring. Geologists dig earthquake trenches across faults to estimate the frequency of past earthquake occurrences. Trenches are effective for faults with relatively long **recurrence intervals**, roughly 100s to 10,000s of years between significant earthquakes. Trenches are less useful in areas with more frequent earthquakes because they usually have more recorded data.



Figure ***Section*8.8.2**: Fault trench near Draper Utah. Trenches allow geologists to see a cross-section of a fault and to use dating techniques to determine how frequently earthquakes occur.

Section 8.8.4 Earthquake Distribution

This video shows the distribution of earthquakes with magnitude 6 or more on Earth during the years 1900 through 2019. Like volcanoes, earthquakes tend to aggregate around active boundaries of tectonic plates. The exception is intraplate earthquakes, which are comparatively rare.





Subduction Zones—Subduction zones, found at convergent plate boundaries, are where the largest and deepest earthquakes, called **megathrust earthquakes**, occur. Examples of subduction-zone earthquake areas include the Sumatran Islands, Aleutian Islands, west coast of South America, and Cascadia Subduction Zone off the coast of Washington and Oregon.

Collision Zones—Collisions between converging continental plates create broad earthquake zones that may generate deep, large earthquakes from the remnants of past subduction events or other deep-crustal processes. The Himalayan Mountains (northern border of the Indian subcontinent) and Alps (southern Europe and Asia) are active regions of collision-zone earthquakes.

Transform Boundaries—Strike-slip faults created at transform boundaries produce moderate-to-large earthquakes, usually having a maximum moment magnitude of about 8. The San Andreas fault (California) is an example of a transform-boundary earthquake zone. Haiti's Enriquillo-Plantain Garden fault system, which caused the 2010 earthquake near Port-au-Prince, and Septentrional Fault, which destroyed Cap-Haïtien in 1842 and shook Cuba in 2020, are also transform faults. Other examples are the Alpine Fault (New Zealand) and Anatolian Faults (Turkey).

Divergent Boundaries—Continental rifts and mid-ocean ridges found at divergent boundaries generally produce moderate earthquakes. Examples of active earthquake zones include the East African Rift System (southwestern Asia through eastern Africa), Iceland, and Basin and Range province (Nevada, Utah, California, Arizona, and northwestern Mexico).

Intraplate Earthquakes—Intraplate earthquakes are not found near tectonic plate boundaries, but generally occur in areas of weakened crust or concentrated tectonic stress. The New Madrid seismic zone, which covers Missouri, Illinois, Tennessee, Arkansas, and Indiana, is thought to represent the failed Reelfoot rift [9]. The failed rift zone weakened the crust, making it more

responsive to tectonic plate movement and interaction. Geologists theorize the infrequently occurring earthquakes are produced by low strain rates.

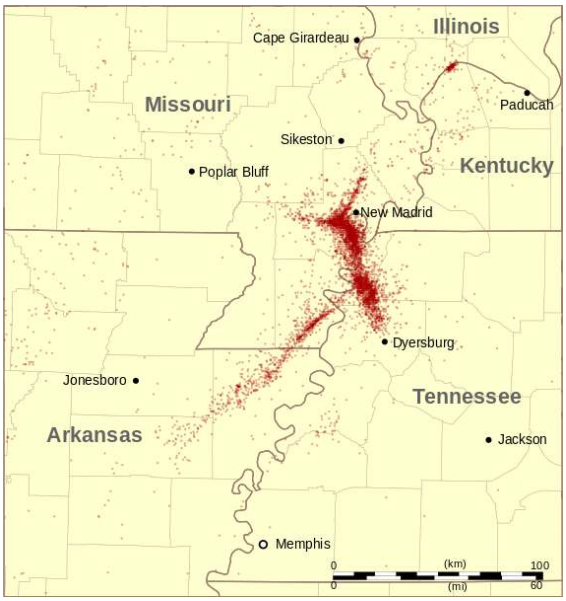


Figure *Section*8.8.3: High density of earthquakes in the New Madrid seismic zone.

Section 8.8.5 Secondary Hazards Caused by Earthquakes

Most earthquake damage is caused by ground shaking and fault-block displacement. In addition, there are secondary hazards that endanger structures and people, in some cases after the shaking stops.

Liquefaction—**Liquefaction** occurs when water-saturated, unconsolidated sediments, usually silt or sand, become fluid-like from shaking. The shaking breaks the cohesion between grains of sediment, creating a slurry of particles suspended in water. Buildings settle or tilt in the liquefied sediment, which looks very much like quicksand in the movies. Liquefaction also creates sand volcanoes, cone-shaped features created when liquefied sand is squirted through an overlying and usually finer-grained layer.



Figure *Section*8.8.4: Buildings toppled from liquefaction during a 7.5 magnitude earthquake in Japan.

This video demonstrates how liquefaction takes place.





Tsunamis—Among the most devastating natural disasters are **tsunamis**, earthquake-induced ocean waves. When the seafloor is offset by fault movement or an underwater landslide, the ground displacement lifts a volume of ocean water and generates the tsunami wave. Tsunami waves are fast-moving with low amplitude in deep ocean water but grow significantly in amplitude in the shallower waters approaching the shore. When a tsunami is about to strike land, the drawback of the trough preceding the wave crest causes the water to recede dramatically from shore. Tragically, curious people wander out and follow the disappearing water, only to be overcome by an oncoming wall of water that can be upwards of a 30 m (100 ft) high. Early warning systems help mitigate the loss of life caused by tsunamis.

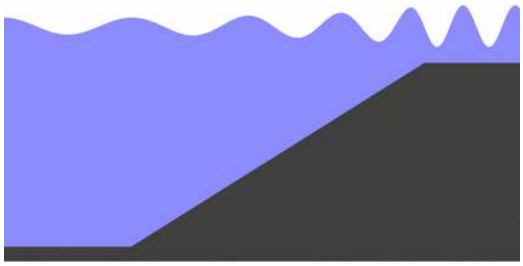


Figure *Section*8.8.5: As the ocean depth becomes shallower, the wave slows down and pile up on top of itself, making large, high-amplitude waves.

Landslides—Shaking can trigger landslides. In 1992 a moment magnitude 5.9 earthquake in St. George, Utah, caused a landslide that destroyed several structures in the Balanced Rock Hills subdivision in Springville, Utah [10].



Figure *Section*8.8.6: House in Springdale, Utah destroyed by an earthquake-triggered landslide.

Seiches—**Seiches** are waves generated in lakes by earthquakes. The shaking may cause water to slosh back-and-forth or sometimes change the lake depth. Seiches in Hebgen Lake during a 1959 earthquake caused major destruction to nearby structures and roads.

This video shows a seiche generated in a swimming pool by an earthquake in Nepal in 2015.





Land Elevation Changes—Elastic rebound and displacement along the fault plane can cause significant land elevation changes, such as subsidence or upheaval. The 1964 Alaska earthquake produced significant land elevation changes, with the differences in height between the hanging wall and footwall ranging from one to several meters (3–30 ft). The Wasatch Mountains in Utah represent an accumulation of fault scarps created a few meters at a time, over a few million years.

Section 8.8.6 References

8. Starr AM (2015) Ambient resonance of rock arches. M.S. thesis, University of Utah

9. Hildenbrand TG, Hendricks JD (1995) Geophysical setting of the Reelfoot rift and relations between rift structures and the New Madrid seismic zone. U.S. Geological Survey, Washington; Denver, CO

10. Christenson GE (1995) The September 2, 1992 ML 5.8 St. George earthquake, Washington County, Utah. Utah Geological Survey, Salt Lake City, Utah

---

This page titled Section 8.8: Earthquake Risk is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Chris Johnson, Matthew D. Affolter, Paul Inkenbrandt, & Cam Mosher (OpenGeology) via source content that was edited to the style and standards of the LibreTexts platform.

- **9.8: Earthquake Risk** by Chris Johnson, Matthew D. Affolter, Paul Inkenbrandt, & Cam Mosher is licensed CC BY-NC-SA 4.0. Original source: https://opengeology.org/textbook/.

Section 8.9: Case Studies

Section 8.9.1 North American Earthquakes

Basin and Range Earthquakes—Earthquakes in the Basin and Range Province, from the Wasatch Fault (Utah) to the Sierra Nevada (California), occur primarily in normal faults created by tensional forces. The Wasatch Fault, which defines the eastern extent of the Basin and Range province, has been studied as an earthquake hazard for more than 100 years.

New Madrid Earthquakes (1811-1812)—Historical accounts of earthquakes in the New Madrid seismic zone date as far back as 1699 and earthquakes continue to be reported in modern times [11]. A sequence of large (M_w >7) occurred from December 1811 to February 1812 in the New Madrid area of Missouri [12]. The earthquakes damaged houses in St. Louis, affected the stream course of the Mississippi River, and leveled the town of New Madrid. These earthquakes were the result of intraplate seismic activity [9].

Charleston (1868)—The 1868 earthquake in Charleston South Carolina was a moment magnitude 7.0, with a Mercalli intensity of X, caused significant ground motion, and killed at least 60 people. This intraplate earthquake was likely associated with ancient faults created during the breakup of Pangea. The earthquake caused significant liquefaction [13]. Scientists estimate the recurrence of destructive earthquakes in this area with an interval of approximately 1500 to 1800 years.

Great San Francisco Earthquake and Fire (1906)—On April 18, 1906, a large earthquake, with an estimated moment magnitude of 7.8 and MMI of X, occurred along the San Andreas fault near San Francisco California. There were multiple aftershocks followed by devastating fires, resulting in about 80% of the city being destroyed. Geologists G.K. Gilbert and Richard L. Humphrey, working independently, arrived the day following the earthquake and took measurements and photographs [14].



Figure *Section* **8.9.1**: Remains of San Francisco after the 1906 earthquake and fire.

Alaska (1964)—The 1964 Alaska earthquake, moment magnitude 9.2, was one of the most powerful earthquakes ever recorded. The earthquake originated in a megathrust fault along the Aleutian subduction zone. The earthquake caused large areas of land subsidence and uplift, as well as significant mass wasting.

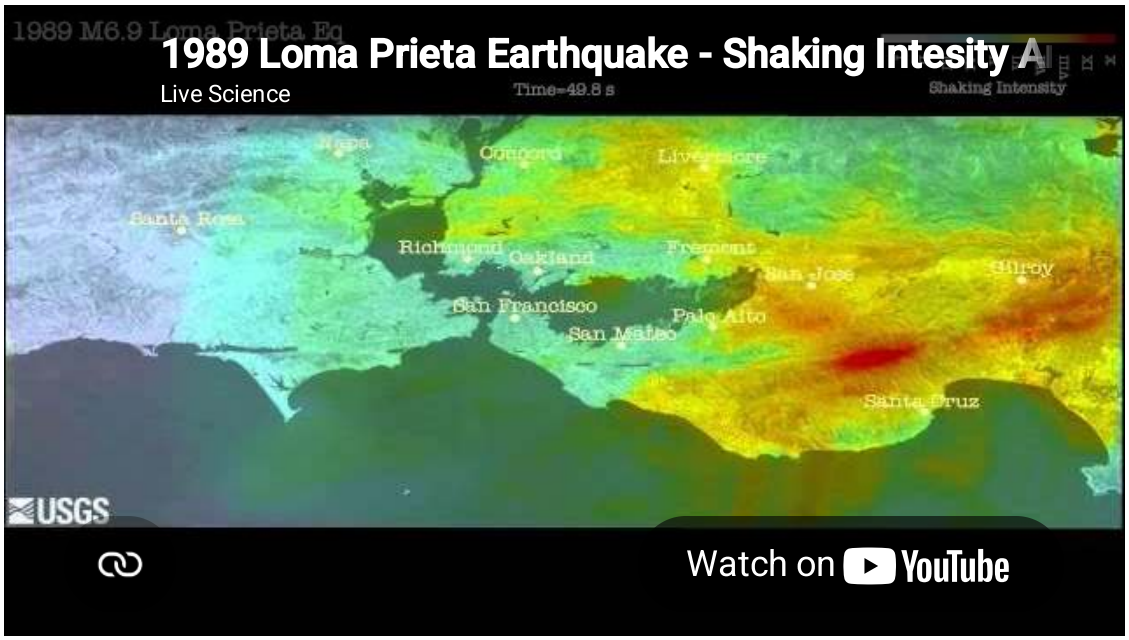
Video from the USGS about the 1964 Alaska earthquake.

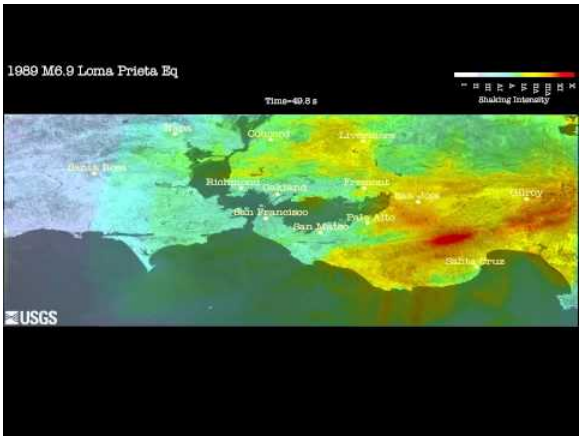




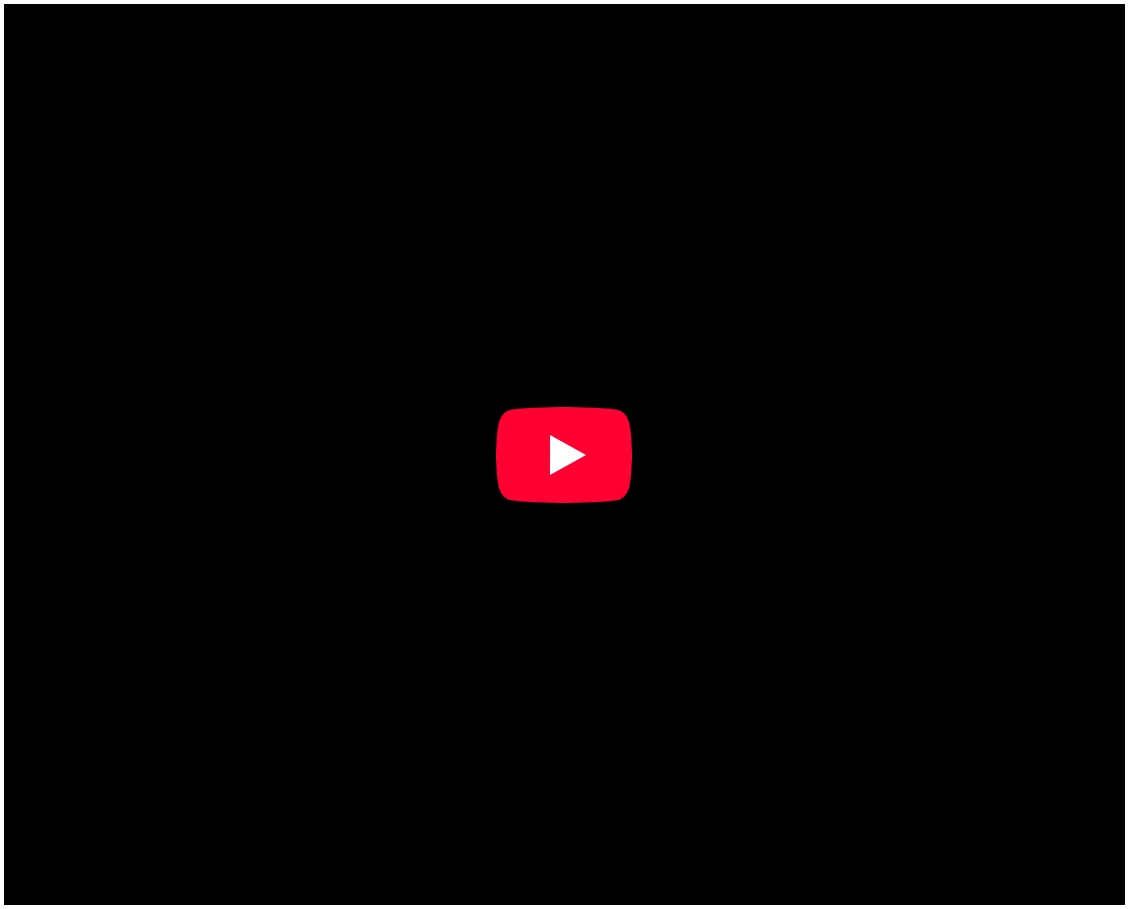
Loma Prieta (1989)—The Loma Prieta, California, earthquake was created by movement along the San Andreas Fault. The moment magnitude 6.9 earthquake was followed by a magnitude of 5.2 aftershock. It caused 63 deaths, buckled portions of the several freeways, and collapsed part of the San Francisco-Oakland Bay Bridge.

This video shows how shaking propagated across the Bay Area during the 1989 Loma Prieta earthquake.





This video shows the destruction caused by the 1989 Loma Prieta earthquake.





Section 8.9.2 Global Earthquakes

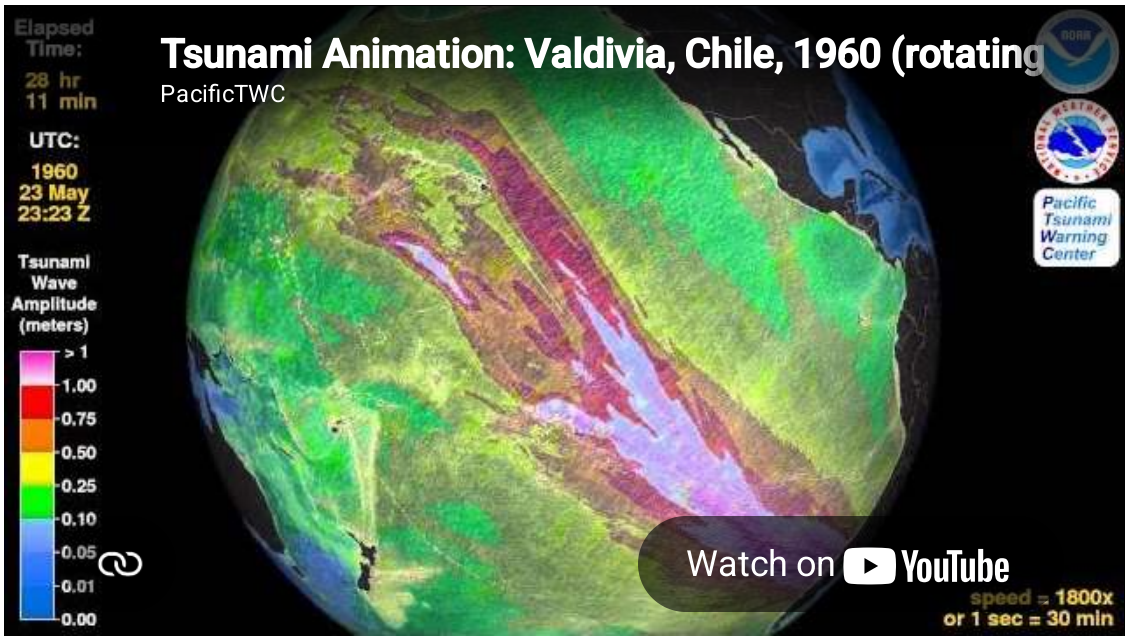
Many of history's largest earthquakes occurred in megathrust zones, such as the estimated magnitude 9 earthquake that occurred on the Cascadia Subduction Zone (Washington and Oregon coasts) in 1700.

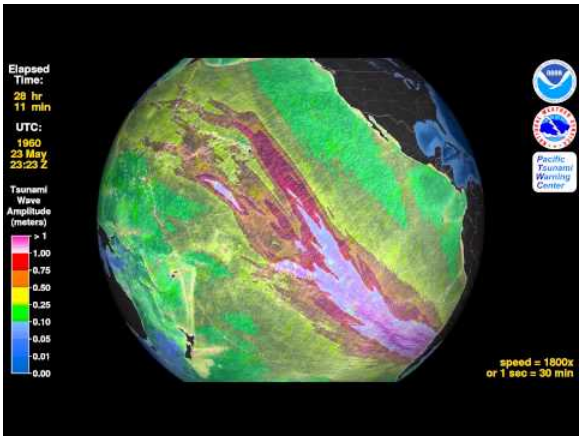
Shaanxi, China (1556)—On January 23, 1556 an earthquake of an approximate moment magnitude 8 hit central China, killing approximately 830,000 people in what is considered the most deadly earthquake in history. The high death toll was attributed to the collapse of cave dwellings (*yaodong*) built in loess deposits, which are large banks of windblown, compacted sediment. Earthquakes in this are region are believed to have a recurrence interval of 1000 years. [15].

Lisbon, Portugal (1755)—On November 1, 1755 an earthquake with an estimated moment magnitude range of 8–9 struck Lisbon, Portugal [13], killing between 10,000 to 17,400 people [16]. The earthquake was followed by a tsunami, which brought the total death toll to between 30,000 to 70,000 people.

Valdivia, Chile (1960)—The May 22, 1960 earthquake was the most powerful earthquake ever measured, with a moment magnitude of 9.4–9.6 and lasting an estimated 10 minutes. It triggered tsunamis that destroyed houses across the Pacific Ocean in Japan and Hawaii and caused vents to erupt on the Puyehue-Cordón Caulle (Chile).

This video describes the tsunami produced by the 1960 Chili earthquake.





Tangshan, China (1976)—Just before 4 a.m. (Beijing time) on July 28, 1976 a moment magnitude 7.8 earthquake struck Tangshan (Hebei Province), China, and killed more than 240,000 people. The high death toll is attributed to people still being asleep or at home and most buildings being made of unreiforced masonry.

Sumatra, Indonesia (2004)—On December 26, 2004, slippage of the Sunda megathrust fault generated a moment magnitude 9.0–9.3 earthquake off the coast of Sumatra, Indonesia [17]. This megathrust fault is created by the Australia plate subducting below the Sunda plate in the Indian Ocean [18]. The resultant tsunamis created massive waves as tall as 24 m (79 ft) when they reached the shore and killed more than an estimated 200,000 people along the Indian Ocean coastline.

Haiti (2010)—The moment magnitude 7 earthquake that occurred on January 12, 2010, was followed by many aftershocks of magnitude 4.5 or higher. More than 200,000 people are estimated to have died as a result of the earthquake. The widespread infrastructure damage and crowded conditions contributed to a cholera outbreak, which is estimated to have caused thousands more deaths.

Tōhoku, Japan (2011)—Because most Japanese buildings are designed to tolerate earthquakes, the moment magnitude 9.0 earthquake on March 11, 2011, was not as destructive as the tsunami it created. The tsunami caused more than 15,000 deaths and tens of billions of dollars in damage, including the destructive meltdown of the Fukushima nuclear power plant.

Section 8.9.3 References

9. Hildenbrand TG, Hendricks JD (1995) Geophysical setting of the Reelfoot rift and relations between rift structures and the New Madrid seismic zone. U.S. Geological Survey, Washington; Denver, CO

11. Feldman J (2012) When the Mississippi Ran Backwards: Empire, Intrigue, Murder, and the New Madrid Earthquakes of 1811 and 1812. Free Press

12. Fuller ML (1912) The New Madrid earthquake. Central United States Earthquake Consortium, Washington, D.C.

13. Talwani P, Cox J (1985) Paleoseismic evidence for recurrence of Earthquakes near Charleston, South Carolina. Science 229:379–381

14. Gilbert GK, Holmes JA, Humphrey RL, et al (1907) The San Francisco earthquake and fire of April 18, 1906 and their effects on structures and structural materials. U.S. Geological Survey, Washington, D.C.

15. Boer JZ de, Sanders DT (2007) Earthquakes in human history: The far-reaching effects of seismic disruptions. Princeton University Press, Princeton

16. Aguirre B.E. (2012) Better disaster statistics: The Lisbon earthquake. J Interdiscip Hist 43:27–42

17. Rossetto T, Peiris N, Pomonis A, et al (2007) The Indian Ocean tsunami of December 26, 2004: observations in Sri Lanka and Thailand. Nat Hazards 42:105–124

18. Satake K, Atwater BF (2007) Long-Term Perspectives on Giant Earthquakes and Tsunamis at Subduction Zones. Annual Review of Earth and Planetary Sciences 35:349–374. https://doi.org/10.1146/annurev.earth.35.031306.140302

This page titled Section 8.9: Case Studies is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Chris Johnson, Matthew D. Affolter, Paul Inkenbrandt, & Cam Mosher (OpenGeology) via source content that was edited to the style and standards of the LibreTexts platform.

- **9.9: Case Studies** by Chris Johnson, Matthew D. Affolter, Paul Inkenbrandt, & Cam Mosher is licensed CC BY-NC-SA 4.0. Original source: https://opengeology.org/textbook/.

Section 8.S: Summary

Section 8.S.1 Summary

Geologic stress, applied force, comes in three types: tension, shear, and compression. Strain is produced by stress and produces three types of deformation: elastic, ductile, and brittle. Geological maps are two-dimensional representations of surface formations which are the surface expression of three-dimensional geologic structures in the subsurface. The map symbol called strike and dip or rock attitude indicates the orientation of rock strata with reference to north-south and horizontal. Folded rock layers are categorized by the orientation of their limbs, fold axes and axial planes. Faults result when stress forces exceed rock integrity and friction, leading to brittle deformation and breakage. The three major fault types are described by the movement of their fault blocks: normal, strike-slip, and reverse.

Earthquakes, or seismic activity, are caused by sudden brittle deformation accompanied by elastic rebound. The release of energy from an earthquake focus is generated as seismic waves. P and S waves travel through the Earth's interior. When they strike the outer crust, they create surface waves. Human activities, such as mining and nuclear detonations, can also cause seismic activity. Seismographs measure the energy released by an earthquake using a logarithmic scale of magnitude units; the Moment Magnitude Scale has replaced the original Richter Scale. Earthquake intensity is the perceived effects of ground shaking and physical damage. The location of earthquake foci is determined from triangulation readings from multiple seismographs.

Earthquake rays passing through rocks of the Earth's interior and measured at the seismographs of the worldwide Seismic Network allow 3-D imaging of buried rock masses as seismic tomographs.

Earthquakes are associated with plate tectonics. They usually occur around the active plate boundaries, including zones of subduction, collision, and transform and divergent boundaries. Areas of intraplate earthquakes also occur. The damage caused by earthquakes depends on a number of factors, including magnitude, location and direction, local conditions, building materials, intensity and duration, and resonance. In addition to damage directly caused by ground shaking, secondary earthquake hazards include liquefaction, tsunamis, landslides, seiches, and elevation changes.

Section 8.S: Summary is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

- **9: Crustal Deformation and Earthquakes** by Chris Johnson, Matthew D. Affolter, Paul Inkenbrandt, & Cam Mosher is licensed CC BY-NC-SA 4.0. Original source: https://opengeology.org/textbook/.

CHAPTER OVERVIEW

Chapter 9: Mass Wasting

Learning Objectives

At the end of this chapter, students should be able to:

- Explain what mass wasting is and why it occurs on a slope.
- Explain the basic triggers of mass-wasting events and how they occur.
- Identify types of mass wasting.
- Identify risk factors for mass-wasting events.
- Evaluate landslides and their contributing factors.



Figure *Chapter*9.1: The 1983 Thistle landslide (foreground) dammed the Spanish Fork River creating a lake that covered the town of Thistle, Utah. The slide covered Hwy 6 and the main railroad between Salt Lake and Denver. (By R.L. Schuster; public domain via Wikimedia Commons.)

This chapter discusses the fundamental processes driving mass-wasting, types of mass wasting, examples, and lessons learned from famous mass-wasting events, how mass wasting can be predicted, and how people can be protected from this potential hazard. **Mass wasting** is the downhill movement of rock and soil material due to gravity. The term landslide is often used as a synonym for mass wasting, but mass wasting is a much broader term referring to all movement downslope. Geologically, a **landslide** is a general term for mass wasting that involves fast-moving geologic material. Loose material along with overlying soils are what typically moves during a mass-wasting event. Moving blocks of bedrock are called rock topples, rock slides, or rock falls, depending on the dominant motion of the blocks. Movements of dominantly liquid material are called flows. Movement by mass wasting can be slow or rapid. Rapid movement can be dangerous, such as during debris flows. Areas with steep topography and rapid rainfall, such as the California coast, Rocky Mountain Region, and Pacific Northwest, are particularly susceptible to hazardous mass-wasting events.

Section 9.1: Slope Strength

Section 9.2: Mass-Wasting Triggers and Mitigation

Section 9.3: Landslide Classification and Identification

Section 9.4: Examples of Landslides

Section 9.S: Summary

This page titled Chapter 9: Mass Wasting is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Chris Johnson, Matthew D. Affolter, Paul Inkenbrandt, & Cam Mosher (OpenGeology) via source content that was edited to the style and standards of the LibreTexts platform.

Section 9.1: Slope Strength

Mass wasting occurs when a slope fails. A **slope failure** occurs when it is too steep and unstable for existing materials and conditions. **Slope stability** is ultimately determined by two principal factors: the **slope angle** and the strength of the underlying material. The force of gravity, which plays a part in mass wasting, is constant on the Earth's surface for the most part, although small variations exist depending on the elevation and density of the underlying rock. In the figure below, a block of rock situated on a slope is pulled down toward the Earth's center by the force of gravity (fg). The **gravitational force** acting on a slope can be divided into two components: the **shear** or **driving force** (fs) pushing the block down the slope, and the **normal** or **resisting force** (fn) pushing into the slope, which produces **friction**. The relationship between shear force and normal force is called **shear strength**. When the normal force, i.e., friction, is greater than the shear force, then the block does *not* move downslope. However, if the slope angle becomes steeper or if the earth material is weakened, shear force exceeds normal force, compromising shear strength, and downslope movement occurs.

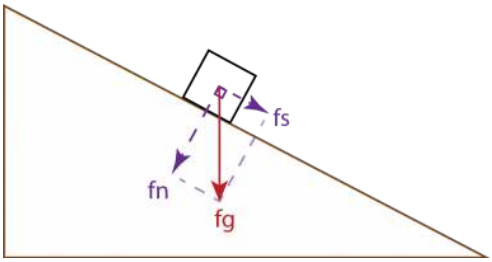


Figure *Section*9.1.1: Forces on a block on an inclined plane (fg = force of gravity; fn = normal force; fs = shear force).

In the figure, the force vectors change as the slope angle increases. The gravitational force doesn't change, but the shear force increases while the normal force decreases. The steepest angle at which rock and soil material is stable and will *not* move downslope is called the **angle of repose.** The angle of repose is measured relative from the horizontal. When a slope is at the angle of repose, the shear force is in equilibrium with the normal force. If the slope becomes just slightly steeper, the shear force exceeds the normal force, and the material starts to move downhill.

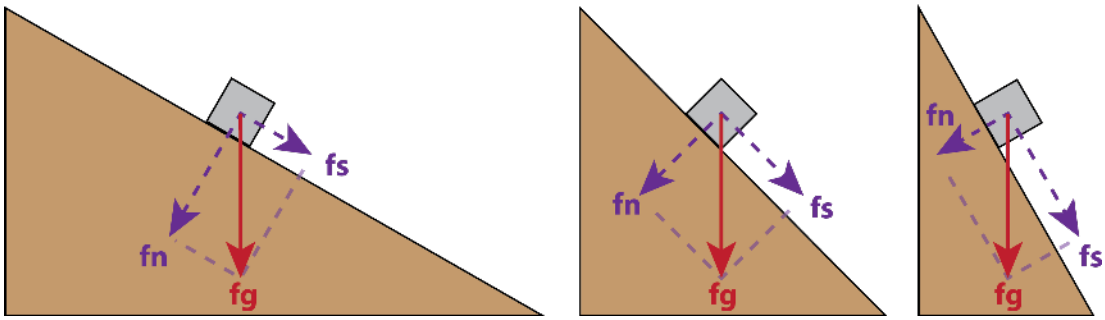


Figure *Section*9.1.2: As slope increases, the force of gravity (fg) stays the same and the normal force decreases while the shear force proportionately increases.

The angle of repose varies for all material and slopes depending on many factors such as grain size, grain composition, and water content. The figure shows the angle of repose for sand that is poured into a pile on a flat surface. The sand grains cascade down the sides of the pile until coming to rest at the angle of repose. At that angle, the base and height of the pile continue to increase, but the angle of the sides remains the same.

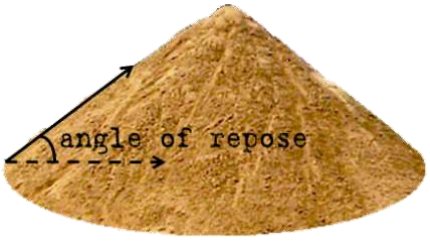


Figure *Section*9.1.3: Angle of repose in a pile of sand.

Water is a common factor that can significantly change the shear strength of a particular slope. Water is located in **pore spaces**, which are empty air spaces between the grains in sediments or rocks. For example, assume a dry sand pile has an angle of repose of 30°. If water is added to the sand, the angle of repose will increase, possibly to 60° or even 90°, such as a sandcastle being built at a beach. But if too much water is added to the pore spaces of the sandcastle, the water decreases the shear strength, lowers the angle of repose, and the sandcastle collapses.

Another factor influencing shear strength is planes of weakness in sedimentary rocks. Bedding planes can act as significant planes of weakness when they are parallel to the slope but less so if they are perpendicular to the slope [1]. At locations A and B, the bedding is nearly perpendicular to the slope and relatively stable. At location D, the bedding is nearly parallel to the slope and quite unstable. At location C, the bedding is nearly horizontal, and the stability is intermediate between the other two extremes [1]. Additionally, if clay minerals form along bedding planes, they can absorb water and become slick. When a bedding plane of shale (clay and silt) becomes saturated, it can lower the shear strength of the rock mass and cause a landslide, such as at the 1925 Gros Ventre, Wyoming rock slide. See the case studies section for details on this and other landslides.

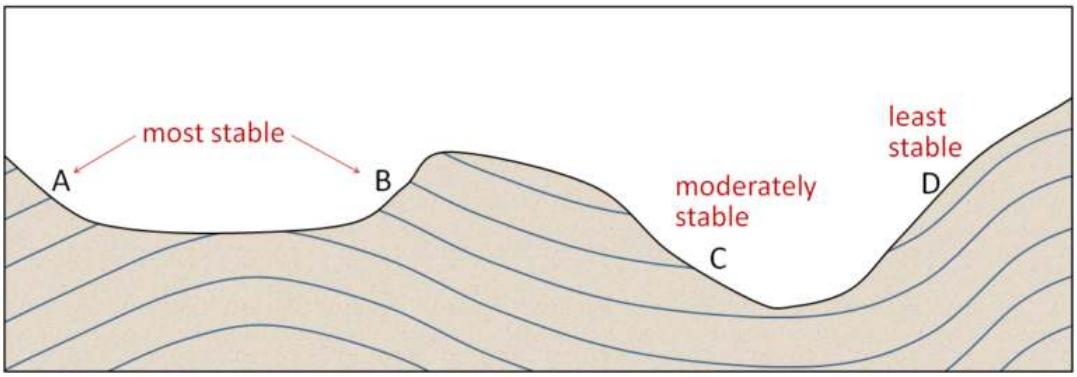


Figure *Section*9.1.4: Locations A and B have bedding nearly perpendicular to the slope, making for a relatively stable slope. Location D has bedding nearly parallel to the slope, increasing the risk of slope failure. Location C has bedding nearly horizontal and the stability is relatively intermediate.

Section 9.1.1 Reference

1. Earle, S. *Physical geology OER textbook*. (BC Campus OpenEd, 2015).

This page titled Section 9.1: Slope Strength is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Chris Johnson, Matthew D. Affolter, Paul Inkenbrandt, & Cam Mosher (OpenGeology) via source content that was edited to the style and standards of the LibreTexts platform.

- **10.1: Slope Strength** by Chris Johnson, Matthew D. Affolter, Paul Inkenbrandt, & Cam Mosher is licensed CC BY-NC-SA 4.0. Original source: https://opengeology.org/textbook/.

Section 9.2: Mass-Wasting Triggers and Mitigation

Mass wasting events often have a **trigger**: something changes that cause a landslide to occur at a specific time. It could be rapid snowmelt, intense rainfall, earthquake shaking, volcanic eruption, storm waves, rapid-stream erosion, or human activities, such as grading a new road. Increased water content within the slope is the most common mass wasting trigger. Water content can increase due to rapidly melting snow or ice or an intense rain event. Intense rain events can occur more often during El Niño years. The west coast of North America receives more precipitation than normal, and landslides become more common. Changes in surface-water conditions resulting from earthquakes, previous slope failures that dam up streams or human structures that interfere with runoff, such as buildings, roads, or parking lots [2] can provide additional water to a slope. In the case of the 1959 Hebgen Lake rock slide, Madison Canyon, Montana, the shear strength of the slope may have been weakened by earthquake shaking. Most landslide mitigation efforts divert and drain water away from slide areas. Tarps and plastic sheeting are often used to drain water off of slide bodies and prevent infiltration into the slide. Drains are used to dewater landslides and shallow wells are used to monitor the water content of some active landslides.

An **oversteepened slope** may also trigger landslides. Slopes can be made excessively steep by natural processes of erosion or when humans modify the landscape for building construction. An example of how a slope may be oversteepened during development occurs where the bottom of the slope is cut into, perhaps to build a road or level a building lot, and the top of the slope is modified by depositing excavated material from below. If done carefully, this practice can be very useful in land development, but in some cases, this can result in devastating consequences. For example, this might have been a contributing factor in the 2014 North Salt Lake City, Utah landslide. A former gravel pit was regraded to provide a road and several building lots. These activities may have oversteepened the slope, which resulted in a slow-moving landslide that destroyed one home at the bottom of the slope. Natural processes such as excessive stream erosion from a flood or coastal erosion during a storm can also oversteepen slopes. For example, natural undercutting of the riverbank was proposed as part of the trigger for the famous 1925 Gros Ventre, Wyoming rock slide.

Slope **reinforcement** can help prevent and mitigate landslides. For rockfall-prone areas, sometimes it is economical to use long steel bolts. Bolts, drilled a few meters into a rock face, can secure loose pieces of material that could pose a hazard. **Shotcrete**, a reinforced spray-on form of concrete, can strengthen a slope face when applied properly. **Buttressing** a slide by adding weight at the toe of the slide and removing weight from the head of the slide, can stabilize a landslide. **Terracing**, which creates a stairstep topography, can be applied to help with slope stabilization, but it must be applied at the proper scale to be effective.

A different approach in reducing landslide hazard is to shield, catch, and divert the runout material. Sometimes the most economical way to deal with a landslide hazard is to divert and slow the falling material. Special stretchable fencing can be applied in areas where rockfall is common to protect pedestrians and vehicles. Runout channels, diversion structures, and check dams can be used to slow debris flows and divert them around structures. Some highways have special tunnels that divert landslides over the highway. In all of these cases, the shielding has to be engineered to a scale that is greater than the slide, or catastrophic loss in property and life could result.

Section 9.2.1 Reference

2. Highland, L. *Landslide types and processes*. (pubs.er.usgs.gov, 2004).

This page titled Section 9.2: Mass-Wasting Triggers and Mitigation is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Chris Johnson, Matthew D. Affolter, Paul Inkenbrandt, & Cam Mosher (OpenGeology) via source content that was edited to the style and standards of the LibreTexts platform.

- **10.2: Mass-Wasting Triggers and Mitigation** by Chris Johnson, Matthew D. Affolter, Paul Inkenbrandt, & Cam Mosher is licensed CC BY-NC-SA 4.0. Original source: https://opengeology.org/textbook/.

Section 9.3: Landslide Classification and Identification

Mass wasting events are classified by type of movement and type of material, and there are several ways to classify these events. The figure and table show the terms used. In addition, mass wasting types often share common morphological features observed on the surface, such as the head scarp—commonly seen as crescent shapes on a cliff face; hummocky or uneven surfaces; accumulations of talus—loose rocky material falling from above; and toe of the slope, which covers existing surface material.

Section 9.3.1 Types of Mass Wasting

The most common mass wasting types are falls, rotational and translational slides, flows, and creep [2]. **Falls** are abrupt rock movements that detach from steep slopes or cliffs. Rocks separate along existing natural breaks such as fractures or bedding planes. Movement occurs as free-falling, bouncing, and rolling. Falls are strongly influenced by gravity, mechanical weathering, and water. **Rotational slides** commonly show slow movement along a curved rupture surface. **Translational slides** often are rapid movements along a plane of distinct weakness between the overlying slide material and the more stable underlying material. Slides can be further subdivided into **rock slides**, **debris slides**, or **earth slides** depending on the type of the material involved (see table).

Table *Section* **9.3.1**: Table of Mass Wasting Types. Mass wasting movement type and primary earth material. Modified from [2; 3].

Type of movement	Bedrock	Soil: mostly coarse-grained	Soil: mostly fine-grained
Falls	Rock fall	—	—
Rock avalanche	Rock avalanche	—	—
Rotational slide (slump)	—	Rotational debris slide (slump)	Rotational earth slide (slump)
Translational slide	Translational rock slide	Translational debris slide	Translational earth slide
Flows	—	debris flow	earthflow
Soil creep	—	creep	creep

Flows are rapidly moving mass wasting events in which the loose material is typically mixed with abundant water, creating long runouts at the slope base. Flows are commonly separated into **debris flow** (coarse material) and **earthflow** (fine material) depending on the type of material involved and the amount of water. Some of the largest and fastest flows on land are called **sturzstroms**, or long-runout landslides. They are still poorly understood but are known to travel for long distances, even in places without significant atmospheres like the Moon.

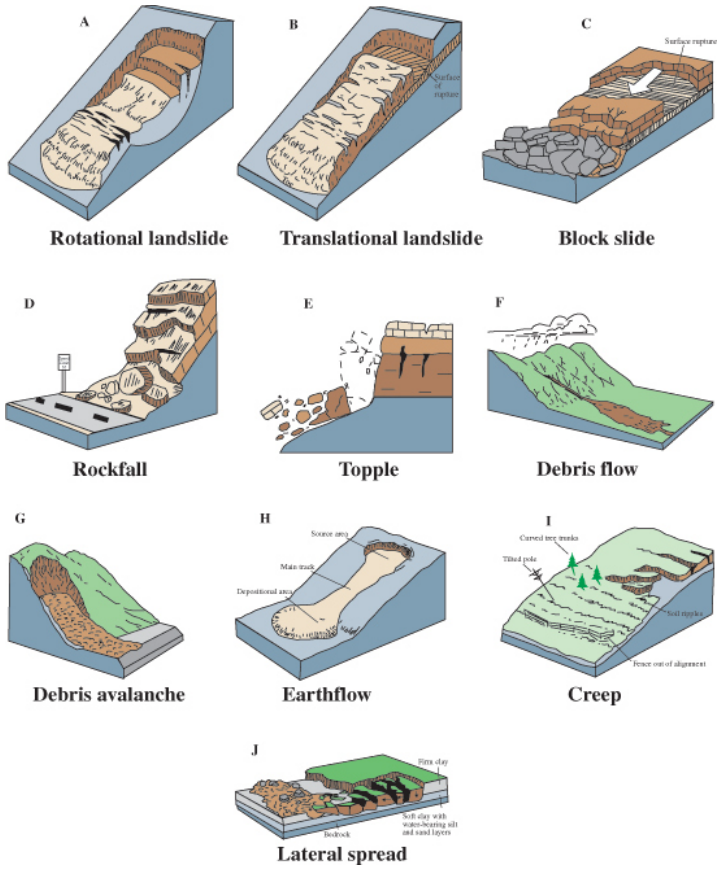


Figure ***Section*9.3.1**: Examples of some of the types of landslides.

Creep is the imperceptibly slow downward movement of material caused by shear stress sufficient to produce permanent deformation in unconsolidated material [2]. Creep is indicated by curved tree trunks, bent fences or retaining walls, tilted poles or fences, and small soil ripples or ridges. A special type of soil creep is **solifluction**, which is the slow movement of soil lobes on low-angle slopes due to soil repeatedly freezing and thawing in high-latitude, typically sub-Arctic, Arctic, and Antarctic locations.



Landslide Hazards, David Applegate

Section 9.3.2 Parts of a Landslide

Landslides have several identifying features that can be common across the different types of mass wasting. Note that there are many exceptions, and a landslide does not need to have these features. Displacement of material by landslides causes the absence of material uphill and the deposition of new material downhill, and careful observation can identify the evidence of that

displacement. Other signs of landslides include tilted or offset structures or natural features that would normally be vertical or in place.

Many landslides have escarpments or **scarps**. Landslide scarps, like fault scarps, are steep terrain created when the movement of the adjacent land exposes a part of the subsurface. The most prominent scarp is the **main scarp**, which marks the uphill extent of the landslide. As the disturbed material moves out of place, a step slope forms and develops a new hillside escarpment for the undisturbed material. Main scarps are formed by the movement of the displaced material away from the undisturbed ground and are the visible part of the slide rupture surface.

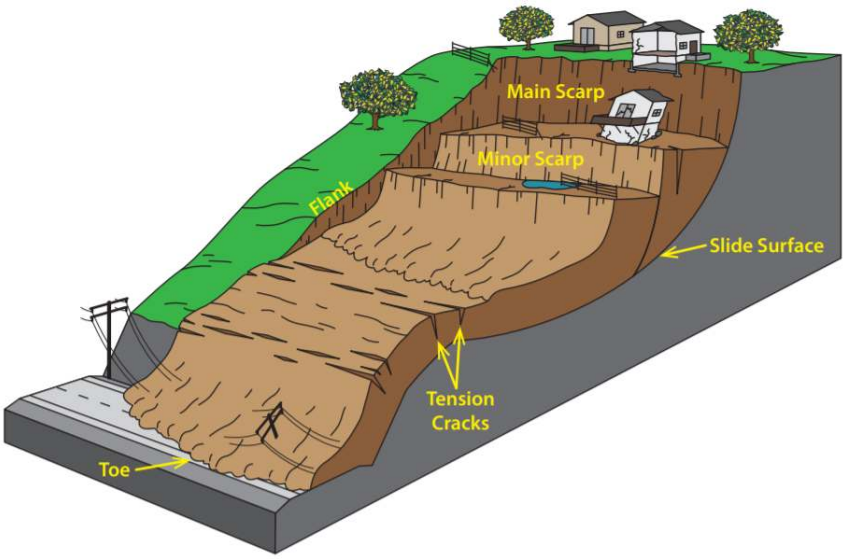


Figure *Section*9.3.2: Diagram of a rotational landslide.

Parts	Description
Crown	The undisturbed material uphill of the scarp. (i.e. the brown house at the top of the hill)
Main Scarp	Steep slope at the upper edge of the landslide (at the head), caused by the movement of displaced material away from the undisturbed ground. The visible part of the slide surface.
Flank	Undisplaced materials adjacent to the sides of the landslide. Flank usually describes the left and right lateral extents of the mass-wasting material.
Rupture Surface/Slide Surface	The lower boundary of the movement below the original ground surface. This is the surface along which material slides. Also known as the surface of rupture.
Main Body	Part of the landslide that overlies the rupture surface.
Tension Cracks	Cracks formed as the result of the middle part of the slide being pulled apart. Usually found in the middle of the slide.
Separation Surface	Part of the original ground surface that is now covered by landslide material (i.e. the location of the landslide where the green and gray surfaces meet)
Foot	The part of the landslide that overlies the original ground surface (i.e. right below the separation surface).
Toe	The downhill end of the slide. The most distant part of the slide from the main scarp.

The **slide rupture surface** is the boundary of the body of the movement of the landslide. The geologic material below the slide surface does not move, and is marked on the sides by the **flanks** of the landslide and at the end by the toe of the landslide.

The **toe** of the landslide marks the end of the moving material. The toe marks the runout, or maximum distance traveled, of the landslide. In rotational landslides, the toe is often a large, disturbed mound of geologic material, forming as the landslide moves past its original rupture surface.

Rotational and translational landslides often have extensional cracks, sag ponds, hummocky terrain, and pressure ridges. **Extensional cracks** form when a landslide's toe moves forward faster than the rest of landslide, resulting in tensional forces. **Sag ponds** are small bodies of water filling depressions formed where landslide movement has impounded drainage. **Hummocky terrain** is undulating and uneven topography that results from the ground being disturbed. **Pressure ridges** develop on the margins of the landslide where the material is forced upward into a ridge structure [4].

Section 9.3.3 References

2. Highland, L. *Landslide types and processes*. (pubs.er.usgs.gov, 2004).

3. Hungr, O., Leroueil, S. & Picarelli, L. The Varnes classification of landslide types, an update. *Landslides* **11**, 167–194 (2013).

4. Highland, L. M. & Bobrowsky, P. *The Landslide Handbook - A Guide to Understanding Landslides*. 147 (U.S. Geological Survey, 2008).

This page titled Section 9.3: Landslide Classification and Identification is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Chris Johnson, Matthew D. Affolter, Paul Inkenbrandt, & Cam Mosher (OpenGeology) via source content that was edited to the style and standards of the LibreTexts platform.

- **10.3: Landslide Classification and Identification** by Chris Johnson, Matthew D. Affolter, Paul Inkenbrandt, & Cam Mosher is licensed CC BY-NC-SA 4.0. Original source: https://opengeology.org/textbook/.

Section 9.4: Examples of Landslides

1925, Gros Ventre, Wyoming: On June 23, 1925, a 38 million cubic meter (50 million yd^3) translational rock slide occurred next to the Gros Ventre River (pronounced “grow vont”) near Jackson Hole, Wyoming. Large boulders dammed the Gros Ventre River and ran up the opposite side of the valley several hundred vertical feet. The dammed river created Slide Lake, and two years later in 1927, lake levels rose high enough to destabilize the dam. The dam failed and caused a catastrophic flood that killed six people in the small downstream community of Kelly, Wyoming [5].



Figure *Section*9.4.1: Scar of the Gros Ventre landslide in the background with landslide deposits in the foreground.

A combination of three factors caused the rock slide: 1) heavy rains and rapidly melting snow saturated the Tensleep Sandstone causing the underlying shale of the Amsden Formation to lose its shear strength, 2) the Gros Ventre River cut through the sandstone creating an oversteepened slope, and 3) soil on top of the mountain became saturated with water due to poor drainage [6]. The cross-section diagram shows how the parallel bedding planes between the Tensleep Sandstone and Amsden Formation offered little friction against the slope surface as the river undercut the sandstone. Lastly, the rockslide may have been triggered by an earthquake.

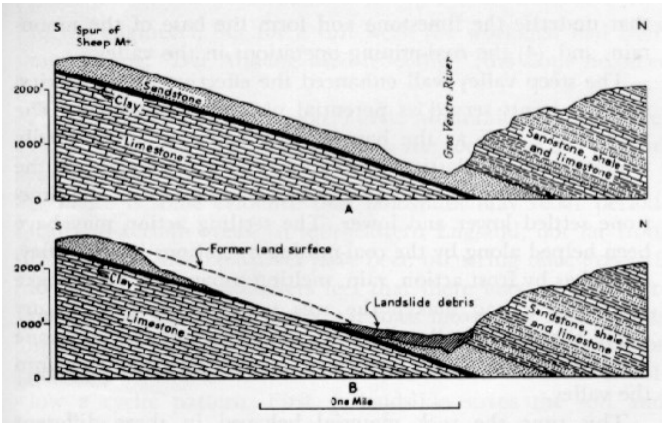


Figure *Section*9.4.2: Cross-section of 1925 Gros Ventre slide showing sedimentary layers parallel with the surface and undercutting (oversteepening) of the slope by the river.

1959, Madison Canyon, Montana: In 1959, the largest earthquake in Rocky Mountain recorded history, magnitude 7.5, struck the Hebgen Lake, Montana area. The earthquake caused a rock avalanche that dammed the Madison River, creating Quake Lake, and ran up the other side of the valley hundreds of vertical feet. Today, there are still house-sized boulders visible on the slope opposite their starting point. The slide moved at a velocity of up to 160.9 kph (100 mph), creating an incredible air blast that swept through the Rock Creek Campground. The slide killed 28 people, most of whom were in the campground and remain buried there [5]. In a manner like the Gros Ventre slide, foliation planes of weakness in metamorphic rock outcrops were parallel with the surface, compromising shear strength.



Figure *Section*9.4.3: 1959 Madison Canyon landslide scar. Photo taken from landslide material.

1980, Mount St. Helens, Washington: On May 18, 1980, a 5.1-magnitude earthquake triggered the largest landslide observed in the historical record. This landslide was followed by the lateral eruption of Mount St. Helens volcano, and the eruption was followed by volcanic debris flows known as lahars. The volume of material moved by the landslide was 2.8 cubic kilometers (0.67 mi^3) [7].

1995 and 2005, La Conchita, California: On March 4, 1995, a fast-moving earthflow damaged nine houses in the southern California coastal community of La Conchita. A week later, debris flow in the same location damaged five more houses. Surface-tension cracks at the top of the slide gave early warning signs in the summer of 1994. During the rainy winter season of 1994/1995, the cracks grew larger. The likely trigger of the 1995 event was unusually heavy rainfall during the winter of 1994/1995 and rising groundwater levels. Ten years later, in 2005, a rapid-debris flow occurred at the end of a 15-day period of near-record rainfall in southern California. Vegetation remained relatively intact as it was rafted on the surface of the rapid flow, indicating that much of the landslide mass simply was being carried on a presumably much more saturated and fluidized layer beneath. The 2005 slide damaged 36 houses and killed 10 people [8].

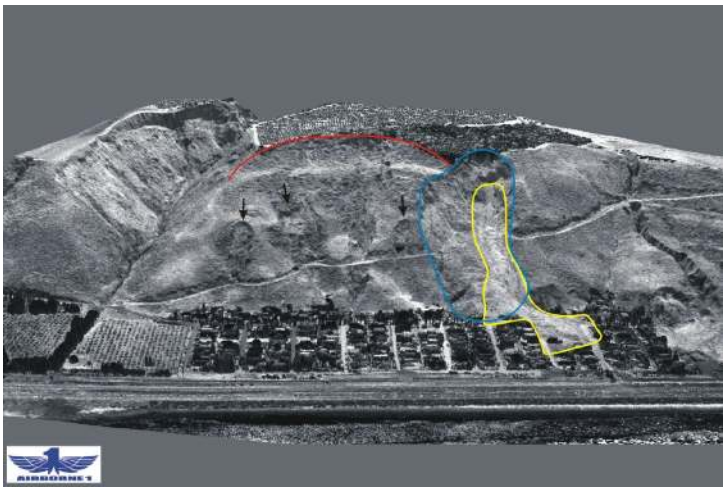


Figure *Section*9.4.4: Oblique LIDAR image of La Conchita after the 2005 landslide. Outline of 1995 (blue) and 2005 (yellow) landslides shown; arrows show examples of other landslides in the area; red line outlines main scarp of an ancient landslide for the entire bluff. Source: Todd Stennett, Airborne 1 Corp., El Segundo. Public domain

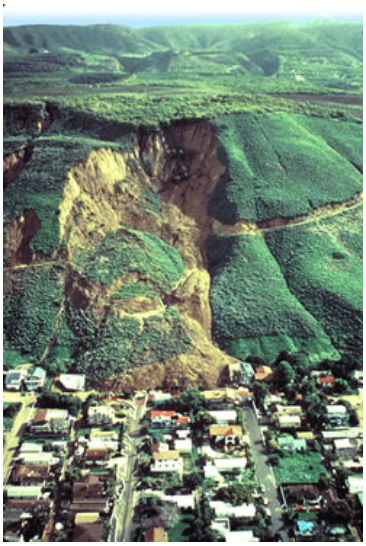


Figure ***Section*9.4.5**: 1995 La Conchita slide. Source: USGS.

2014, Oso Landslide, Washington: On March 22, 2014, a landslide of approximately 18 million tons (10 million yd^3) traveled at 64 km/hr (40 mph), extended for nearly 1.6 km (1 mi), and dammed the North Fork of the Stillaguamish River. The landslide covered 40 homes and killed 43 people in the Steelhead Haven community near Oso, Washington. It produced a volume of material equivalent to 600 football fields covered in material 3 m (10 ft) deep. The winter of 2013-2014 was unusually wet with almost double the average amount of precipitation. The landslide occurred in an area of the Stillaguamish River Valley historically active with many landslides, but previous events had been small [11].



Figure ***Section*9.4.6**: 2014 Oso slide in Washington killed 43 people and buried many homes (source: USGS, public domain).

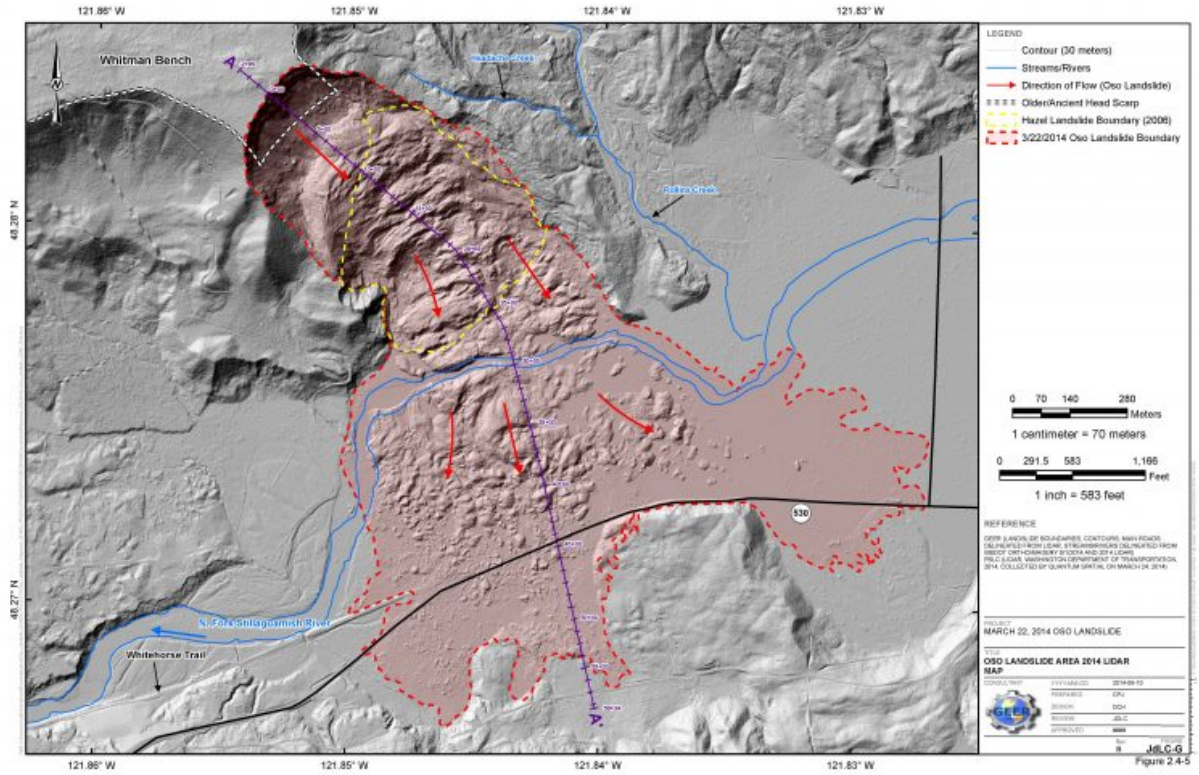


Figure ***Section*9.4.7**: Annotated LiDAR map of 2014 Oso slide in Washington.

Yosemite National Park Rock Falls: The steep cliffs of Yosemite National Park cause frequent rock falls. Fractures created by tectonic stresses and exfoliation are expanded by frost wedging and can cause house-sized blocks of granite to detach from the cliff faces of Yosemite National Park. The park models potential runout, the distance landslide material travels, to better assess the risk posed to the millions of park visitors.



Rockfalls in Yosemite.

Section 9.4.0.1 Utah Landslides

Markagunt Gravity Slide: About 21–22 million years ago, one of the biggest land-based landslides yet discovered in the geologic record displaced more than 1,700 km^3 (408 mi^3) of material in one relatively fast event. Evidence for this slide includes breccia conglomerates, glassy pseudotachylyte, slip surfaces (similar to faults), and dikes. The landslide is estimated to encompass an area the size of Rhode Island and to extend from near Cedar City, Utah to Panguitch, Utah. This landslide was likely the result of material released from the side of a growing laccolith (a type of igneous intrusion), after being triggered by an eruption-related earthquake.

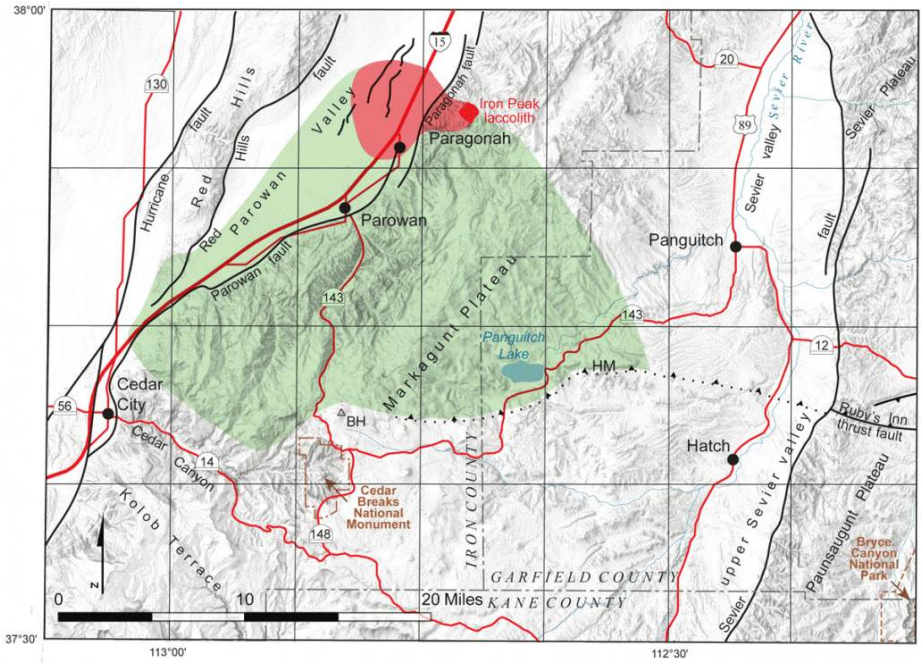


Figure *Section*9.4.8: Approximate extent of Markagunt Gravity slide.

1983, Thistle Slide: Starting in April of 1983 and continuing into May of that year, a slow-moving landslide traveled 305 m (1000 ft) downhill and blocked Spanish Fork Canyon with an earthflow dam 61 m (200 ft) high. This caused disastrous flooding upstream in the Soldier Creek and Thistle Creek valleys, submerging the town of Thistle. As part of the emergency response, a spillway was constructed to prevent the newly formed lake from breaching the dam. Later, a tunnel was constructed to drain the lake, and currently, the river continues to flow through this tunnel. The rail line and US-6 highway had to be relocated at a cost of more than $200 million [13].



Figure *Section*9.4.9: The 1983 Thistle landslide (foreground) dammed the Spanish Fork River creating a lake.

2013, Rockville Rock Fall: Rockville, Utah is a small community near the entrance to Zion National Park. In December of 2013, a 2700 ton (1400 yd^3) block of Shinarump Conglomerate fell from the Rockville Bench cliff, landed on the steep 35° slope below, and shattered into several large pieces that continued downslope at a high speed. These boulders completely destroyed a house located 375 feet below the cliff (see the before and after photographs) and killed two people inside the home. The topographic map shows other rockfalls in the area prior to this catastrophic event [14].



Figure *Section*9.4.10: House before and after destruction from 2013 Rockville rockfall.

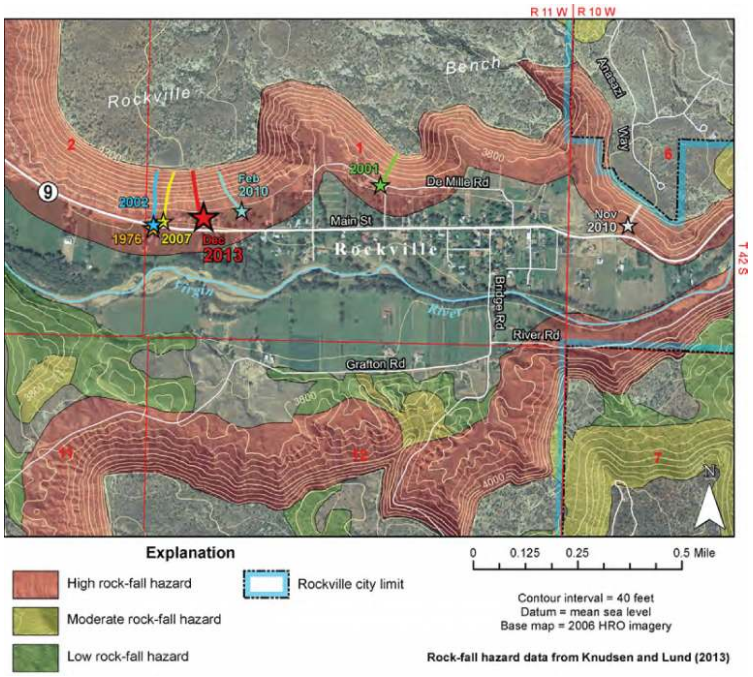


Figure *Section*9.4.11: Tracks of deadly 2013 Rockville rockfall and earlier documented rockfall events.

2014, North Salt Lake Slide: In August 2014 after a particularly wet period, a slow-moving rotational landslide destroyed one home and damaged nearby tennis courts.



Figure *Section*9.4.12: Scarp and displaced material from the North Salt Lake (Parkview) slide of 2014.

Reports from residents suggested that ground cracks had been seen near the top of the slope at least a year prior to the catastrophic movement. The presence of easily-drained sands and gravels overlying more impermeable clays weathered from volcanic ash, along with recent regrading of the slope, may have been contributing causes of this slide. Local heavy rains seem to have provided the trigger. In the two years after the landslide, the slope has been partially regraded to increase its stability. Unfortunately, in January 2017, parts of the slope have shown reactivation movement. Similarly, in 1996 residents in a nearby subdivision started reporting distress to their homes. This distress continued until 2012 when 18 homes became uninhabitable due to extensive damage and were removed. A geologic park was constructed in the now vacant area.





North Salt Lake Landslide

2013, Bingham Canyon Copper Mine Landslide, Utah: At 9:30 pm on April 10, 2013, more than 65 million cubic meters of steep terraced mine wall slid down into the engineered pit of Bingham Canyon mine, making it one of the largest historic landslides not associated with volcanoes. Radar systems maintained by the mine operator warned of movement of the wall, preventing the loss of life and limiting the loss of property.



Figure *Section*9.4.13: Before (left) vs. After (right)

Section 9.4.1 References

5. Highland, L. M. & Schuster, R. L. *Significant landslide events in the United States*. (United States Geological Survey, 2000).

6. United States Forest Service. *A Brief History of the Gros Ventre Slide Geological Site*. (United States Forest Service, 2016).

7. Lipman, P. W. & Mullineaux, D. R. *The 1980 eruptions of Mount St. Helens, Washington*. 844 (US Geological Survey, 1981). doi:10.3133/pp1250

8. Jibson, R. W. *Landslide hazards at La Conchita, California*. (United States Geological Survey, 2005).

11. Haugerud, R. A. *Preliminary interpretation of pre-2014 landslide deposits in the vicinity of Oso, Washington*. (US Geological Survey, 2014).

13. Duncan, J. M., Fleming, R. W. & Patton, F. D. *Report of the Thistle Slide Committee to State of Utah, Department of Natural Resources, Division of Water Rights*. (U.S. Geological Survey, 1986).

14. Lund, W. R., Knudsen, T. R. & Bowman, S. D. *Investigation of the December 12, 2013, Fatal Rock Fall at 368 West Main Street, Rockville, Utah*. 24 (Utah Geological Survey, 2014).

This page titled Section 9.4: Examples of Landslides is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Chris Johnson, Matthew D. Affolter, Paul Inkenbrandt, & Cam Mosher (OpenGeology) via source content that was edited to the style and standards of the LibreTexts platform.

- **10.4: Examples of Landslides** by Chris Johnson, Matthew D. Affolter, Paul Inkenbrandt, & Cam Mosher is licensed CC BY-NC-SA 4.0. Original source: https://opengeology.org/textbook/.

Section 9.S: Summary

Section 9.S.1 Summary

Mass wasting is a geologic term describing all downhill rock and soil movement due to gravity. Mass wasting occurs when a slope is too steep to remain stable with existing material and conditions. Loose rock and soil, called regolith, are what typically move during a mass-wasting event. Slope stability is determined by two factors: the angle of the slope and the shear strength of the accumulated materials. Mass-wasting events are triggered by changes that oversteepen slope angles and weaken slope stability, such as rapid snow melt, intense rainfall, earthquake shaking, volcanic eruption, storm waves, stream erosion, and human activities. Excessive precipitation is the most common trigger. Mass-wasting events are classified by their type of movement and material, and they share common morphological surface features. The most common types of mass-wasting events are rockfalls, slides, flows, and creep.

Mass-wasting movement ranges from slow to dangerously rapid. Areas with steep topography and rapid rainfall, such as the California coast, Rocky Mountain Region, and Pacific Northwest, are particularly susceptible to hazardous mass-wasting events. By examining examples and lessons learned from famous mass-wasting events, scientists have a better understanding of how mass-wasting occurs. This knowledge has brought them closer to predicting where and how these potentially hazardous events may occur and how people can be protected.

Section 9.S: Summary is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

- **10: Mass Wasting** by Chris Johnson, Matthew D. Affolter, Paul Inkenbrandt, & Cam Mosher is licensed CC BY-NC-SA 4.0. Original source: https://opengeology.org/textbook/.

CHAPTER OVERVIEW

Chapter 10: Water

Learning Objectives

- Components and definition of the hydrologic cycle
- Water users and volume of water used
- How water is shared among people
- Distribution of water on the planet
- Define aquifer and confining layer
- Properties required for a good aquifer

All life requires water. The hydrosphere (Earth's water) is an important agent of geologic change. It shapes our planet through weathering and erosion, deposits minerals that aid in lithification, and alters rocks after they are lithified. Water carried by subducted oceanic plates causes melting in the upper mantle material. Communities rely on suitable water sources for consumption, power generation, crop production, and many other things.

Section 10.1: Prelude to Water
Section 10.2: Properties of Water
Section 10.3: Surface Water
Section 10.4: Groundwater
Section 10.5: Glaciers
Section 10.5.1: Prelude to Galciers
Section 10.5.2: Types of Glaciers
Section 10.5.3: Glacier Formation and Movement
Section 10.5.4: Glacial Budget
Section 10.5.5: Glacial Landforms
Section 10.5.6: Ice Age Glaciations
Section 10.6: Waves and Wave Processes
Section 10.7: Shoreline Features

This page titled Chapter 10: Water is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Chris Johnson, Matthew D. Affolter, Paul Inkenbrandt, & Cam Mosher (OpenGeology) via source content that was edited to the style and standards of the LibreTexts platform.

Section 10.1: Prelude to Water



Figure ***NaN*.1.1**: Entrenched meander of the Colorado River, downstream of Page, Arizona.

All life requires water. The hydrosphere (Earth's water) is an important agent of geologic change. It shapes our planet through weathering and erosion, deposits minerals that aid in lithification, and alters rocks after they are lithified. Water carried by subducted oceanic plates causes melting in the upper mantle material. Communities rely on suitable water sources for consumption, power generation, crop production, and many other things.



Figure ***NaN*.1.1**: Example of a Roman aqueduct in Segovia, Spain.

In pre-industrial civilizations, control of water resources was a symbol of power [1; 2]. Two thousand-year-old Roman aqueducts still grace European, Middle Eastern, and North African skylines. Ancient Mayan kings used water imagery such as frogs, water-lilies, waterfowl to show their divine power over their societies' water resources [3]. Mask facades of the hooked-nosed rain god, *Chac*, are prominent on Mayan buildings such as the Kodz-Poop (Temple of the Masks) at Kabah in the drier northern lowlands of the Yucatan peninsula but much rarer in the tropical, wet regions to the south. Control over water continues to be an integral part of the governmental duties of most modern societies.



Figure ***NaN*.1.1**: Chac mask in Mexico.

Section 10.1.1 References

1. Fagan B (2012) Elixir: A history of water and humankind, Reprint edition. Bloomsbury Press

2. Solomon S (2011) Water: The Epic Struggle for Wealth, Power, and Civilization, Reprint edition. Harper Perennial

3. Schele L, Miller ME, Kerr J, et al (1992) The Blood of Kings: Dynasty and Ritual in Maya Art, Reprint edition. George Braziller Inc.

Section 10.1: Prelude to Water is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

- **11.1: Prelude to Water** is licensed CC BY-NC-SA 4.0.

Section 10.2: Properties of Water

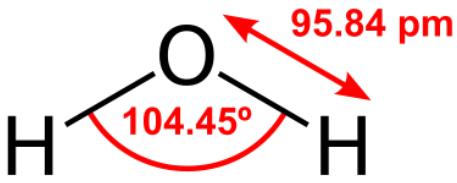


Figure ***NaN*.2.1**: A model of a water molecule, showing the bonds between the hydrogen and oxygen.

The physical and chemical properties of water are what make it essential to life and useful to civilization. Water is a molecule made of one negatively charged (-2) oxygen ion and two positively-charged (+1) hydrogen ions, giving it the chemical formula H^2O, with strong covalent bonds between the oxygen and two hydrogen ions. The shape of the water molecule allows for an uneven distribution of charge, where one side is slightly positive and one side is slightly negative. Because of this **polarity**, water molecules form hydrogen bonds with each other. Hydrogen bonds are electrostatic intermolecular bonds that are weaker than ionic and covalent bonds (see discussion in the Minerals chapter). Water is amphoteric, that is it can self-ionize, breaking down into an acidic hydrogen ion (H^+) and a hydroxyl ion (OH^-), chemically a base. Because of its polarity and its ability to be **amphoteric**, water is a **universal solvent**—a chemical that can dissolve a wide range of other chemicals.



Figure ***NaN*.2.1**: Surface tension keeps the paperclip on top of the water.

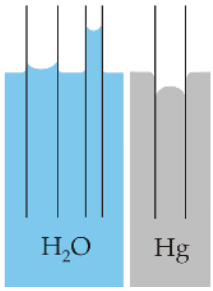


Figure ***NaN*.2.1**: Capillary action by water in a narrow tube. Unlike water, mercury does not rise up in the tube.

Other side-effects of water's polarity are **cohesion** (water likes to stick to itself) and **adhesion** (water likes to stick to other things). Water has the highest cohesion of all nonmetallic liquids. Cohesion gives water surface tension, allowing water glider insects to float on the water surface. Surface tension is what gives raindrops a spherical shape. Capillary action occurs when a combination of adhesive and cohesive forces causes water to move up narrow passages and tubes, rising higher than surrounding liquid. Capillary action happens when the adhesion of water to the tube is greater than the water's internal cohesive forces. Paper towels have small pores that use capillary forces to clean up water spills. Plants use capillary forces to pump water into their tissues.

Water has a high specific heat capacity. Specific-heat is the amount of heat required to raise the temperature of a substance. Compared to many other substances, water requires a large amount of heat to raise its temperature. The high specific heat of water allows it to act as an energy buffer to extreme changes in air temperature. It also allows the oceans to soak up solar heat without changing temperature much and distribute that heat over the Earth by currents thus making the Earth habitable.

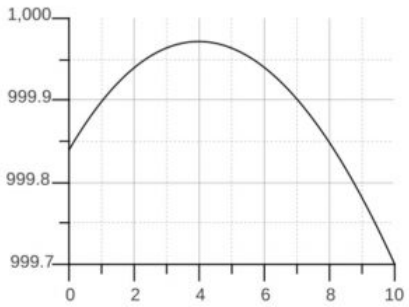


Figure ***NaN*.2.1**: Density curve of water showing the greatest density at 3.98 degrees Celcius. Density is shown as kg/m_3.

The density curve of water shows that as water is cooled, it becomes more dense, as do most other substances, but its greatest density occurs at about 4 degrees Celsius while most other substances continue to increase in density until they freeze. This unique density curve means that water is most dense just above its freezing point and sinks. Thus the oceans remain liquid. If water behaved like other substances, the oceans would be frozen.

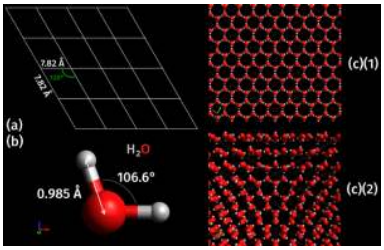


Figure ***NaN*.2.1**: Molecular arrangement of hydrogen dioxide (water) molecules in ice.

When water freezes, the molecules arrange themselves in a well-ordered crystal structure, creating a spacing between molecules that is greater than if the water is in liquid form. The difference in molecular spacing causes ice to be less dense than water, making it more buoyant than liquid water, causing it to float on water. Because of its high specific heat capacity, ice floating on a lake's surface insulates the liquid water beneath and keeps it from freezing.

Because of its hydrogen bonds, water also has a high heat of vaporization. A significant amount of energy is required to evaporate water. As water evaporates, energy is absorbed by the breaking of hydrogen bonds and the air around the evaporating water is cooled. This energy is stored in the water vapor.

This page titled Section 10.2: Properties of Water is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Chris Johnson, Matthew D. Affolter, Paul Inkenbrandt, & Cam Mosher (OpenGeology) via source content that was edited to the style and standards of the LibreTexts platform.

- **11.2: Properties of Water** by Chris Johnson, Matthew D. Affolter, Paul Inkenbrandt, & Cam Mosher is licensed CC BY-NC-SA 4.0. Original source: https://opengeology.org/textbook/.

Section 10.3: Surface Water

A **stream** or **river** is a body of flowing surface water confined to a channel. Terms such as creeks and brooks are social terms not used in geology. Streams are the most important agents of erosion and transportation of sediments on the earth's surface. They create much of the surface topography and are an important water resource. Most of this section will focus on stream location, processes, landforms, and flood hazards. Water resources and groundwater processes will be discussed in later sections.

Section 10.3.1 Discharge

Several factors cause streams to erode and transport sediment, but the two main factors are stream channel gradient and velocity. The stream **gradient** is the slope of the river channel. A steeper gradient promotes downward stream erosion. When tectonic forces lift up a mountain, the increased stream gradient causes the stream to erode downward and make a valley. Stream velocity is the speed of the flowing water in the channel. Velocity can increase by increasing the gradient, decreasing cross-sectional area (narrowing) of the channel (reducing friction), or by increasing the discharge.

Stream size is measured in terms of **discharge,** i.e. the volume of water flowing past a point in the stream over a defined time interval. Smaller streams have a smaller discharge, therefore generally stream discharge increase downstream**.** Volume is commonly measured in cubic feet (length x width x depth), shown as feet^3 or ft^3. Therefore, the units of discharge are cubic feet per second (ft^3/sec or cfs). Smaller streams have less discharge than larger streams. For example, the Mississippi River is the largest river in North America, with an average flow of about 600,000 cfs [19]. For comparison, the average discharge for the Jordan River at Utah Lake is about 574 cfs [20] and for the Amazon River (the world's largest river), annual discharge is about 6,200,000 cfs [21].

Discharge can be expressed by the following equation:

Q = V A

- Q = discharge (ft^3/sec),
- A = cross-sectional area of the stream channel [width times average depth] (in ft^2),
- V = average velocity (ft/sec).

When the channel narrows but discharge remains constant, the same volume of water flows through a narrower space causing the velocity to increase, similar to putting a thumb over the end of a backyard water hose. In addition, during rainstorms or heavy snowmelt, runoffs will increase which increases stream discharge and thus velocity.

Velocity varies within the stream channel as well. Generally, when the channel is straight and uniform in-depth, the highest velocity is in the center of the channel along the top of the water where it is the farthest from frictional contact with the channel bottom and sides. When the channel curves, the highest velocity will be on the outside of the bend.

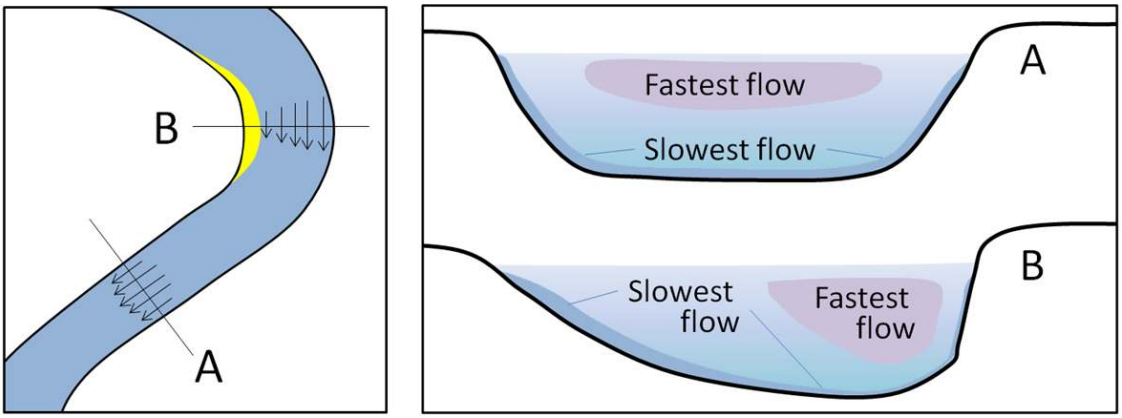


Figure ***NaN*.3.1**: Thalweg of a river. In a river bend, the fastest moving particles are on the outside of the bend, near the cutbank. Stream velocity is higher on the outside bend and the surface which is farthest from the friction of the stream bed. Longer arrows indicate faster velocity (Earle 2015).

Section 10.3.2 Runoff vs. Infiltration

There are many factors dictating whether water will infiltrate into the ground or runoff over the land after precipitation. These include but are not limited to the amount, type, and intensity of precipitation, the type and amount of vegetative cover, the slope of the land, the temperature and aspect of the land, preexisting conditions, and the type of soil in the area of infiltration. High-intensity precipitation as rain will cause more runoff than the same amount of rain spread out over a longer duration. If the rain falls faster than the properties of the soil allow it to infiltrate, then the water that cannot infiltrate becomes runoff. Dense vegetation can increase infiltration, as the vegetative cover slows the overland flow of water particles, giving them more time to infiltrate. If a parcel of land has more direct solar radiation and/or higher seasonal temperatures, there will likely be less infiltration and runoff, as evapotranspiration rates will be higher. As the slope of the land increases, so does runoff, as the water is more inclined to move downslope than infiltrate into the ground. Extreme examples are a basin and a cliff, where water infiltrates much quicker into a basin than a cliff having the same soil properties. Because saturated soil does not have the capacity to take more water, runoff is generally greater over-saturated soil. Clay rich soil cannot accept infiltration as quickly as gravel-rich soil.

Section 10.3.3 Drainage Patterns

The pattern of tributaries within a region is called a **drainage pattern**. They depend largely on the type of rock beneath, and on structures within that rock (such as folds and faults). The main types of drainage patterns are dendritic, trellis, rectangular, radial, and deranged. **Dendritic patterns** are the most common and develop in areas where the underlying rock or sediments are uniform in character, mostly flat-lying, and can be eroded equally easily in all directions. Examples are alluvial sediments or flat-lying sedimentary rocks. **Trellis patterns** typically develop where sedimentary rocks have been folded or tilted and then eroded to varying degrees depending on their strength. The Appalachian Mountains in the eastern United States have many good examples of trellis drainage. **Rectangular patterns** develop in areas that have very little topography and a system of bedding planes, joints, or faults that form a rectangular network. A **radial pattern** forms when streams flow away from a central high point such as a mountain top or volcano, with the individual streams typically having dendritic drainage patterns. In places with extensive limestone deposits, streams can disappear into the groundwater via caves and subterranean drainage and this creates a **deranged pattern**.

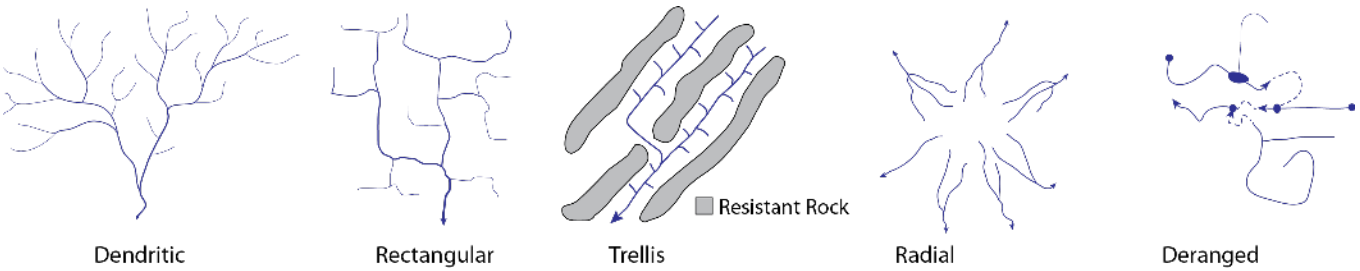


Figure ***NaN*.3.1**: Various stream drainage patterns.

Section 10.3.4 Fluvial Processes

Fluvial processes are the mechanisms that dictate how a stream functions and include factors controlling fluvial sediment production, transport, and deposition. Fluvial processes include velocity, slope and gradient, erosion, transportation, deposition, stream equilibrium, and base level.

Streams can be divided into three main sections: the many smaller tributaries in the source area, the main trunk stream in the floodplain and the distributaries at the mouth of the stream. These can be defined as zones of sediment production (erosion), transport, and deposition. The zone of sediment production is located in the headwaters of the stream. Downstream of the **headwaters**, the stream erodes less sediment but transports the sediment provided from the headwaters in the zone of sediment transfer. Lastly, most streams eventually flow into the ocean by a delta which is a zone of sediment deposition located at the **mouth** of a stream [6]. The **longitudinal profile** of a stream is a plot of the elevation of the stream channel at all points along its course and illustrates the location of the three zones [22].

Section 10.3.4.1 Zone of Sediment Production (Erosion)

The zone of sediment production is located in the headwaters of a stream where rills and gullies erode sediment and contribute to larger tributary streams. These tributaries carry sediment and water further downstream to the main trunk of the stream. Tributaries at the headwaters have the steepest gradient and most sediment production and erosion, especially downward erosion, occur in the headwaters zone. Headwater streams tend to be narrow and straight with small or non-existent floodplains adjacent to the channel. Since the zone of sediment production is generally the steepest part of the stream, many headwaters are located in relatively high elevations. For example, the Rocky Mountains of Wyoming and Colorado contain much of the headwaters for the Colorado River which then flows from Colorado through Utah, Arizona, to Mexico.

Section 10.3.4.2 Zone of Sediment Transfer (Transportation)

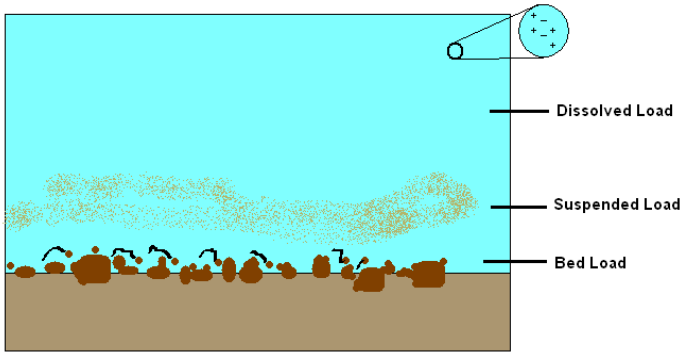


Figure ***NaN*.3.1**: A stream carries dissolved load, suspended load, and bedload.

Streams transport sediment great distances from the headwaters to the ocean, the ultimate depositional basins. Sediment transportation is directly related to stream gradient and velocity. Faster and steeper streams can transport larger sediment grains. When velocity slows down, larger sediments settle to the channel bottom. When the velocity increases, those larger sediments are entrained and move again.

Transported sediments are grouped into bedload, suspended load, and dissolved load. Sediments moved along the channel bed are the **bedload** and typically are the largest and densest. Bedload is moved by saltation (bouncing) and traction (being pushed or rolled along by the force of the flow). When stream velocity increases, smaller bedload sediments can be picked up by flowing water and held in suspension as **suspended load**. The faster streams can carry larger grains as suspended load. **Dissolved load** in a stream is the sum of the ions in solution from chemical weathering. The dissolved load includes ions such as bicarbonate (HCO_3^-), calcium (Ca^{2+}), chloride (Cl^-), potassium (K^+), and sodium (Na^+). The solubility of these ions is not affected by flow velocity.





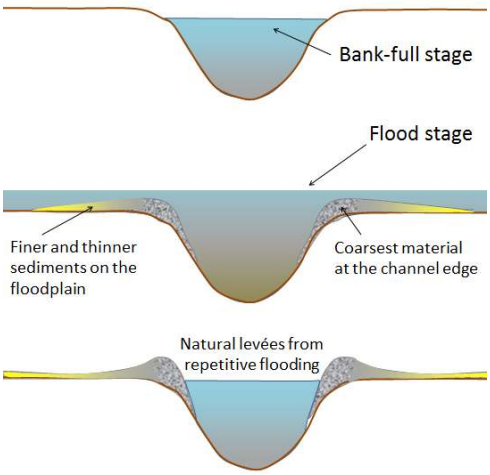


Figure ***NaN*.3.1**: Profile of stream channel at bank-full stage, flood stage, and deposition of natural levee

Stream flooding is a natural process that adds sediment to floodplains. A **floodplain** is the generally flat area of land located adjacent to a stream channel that is inundated with floodwater on a regular basis. A stream typically reaches its greatest velocity when it is close to flooding, known as the **bank-full stage**. As soon as the flooding stream overtops its banks and occupies the wide area of its floodplain, the velocity decreases. At this point, sediment that was being carried by the swiftly moving water is deposited

near the edge of the channel, forming a low ridge or **natural levée.** In addition, sediments are added to the floodplain during this flooding process.

Section 10.3.4.3 Zone of Disposition

The process of **deposition** occurs when bedload and suspended load come to rest on the bottom of the water column in a stream channel, lake, or ocean. The two major factors causing deposition are the decrease in stream gradient and the reduction in velocity. These can be associated with a decrease in discharge or increased in cross-sectional area. Deposition occurs temporarily in the zone of transportation such as along meandering stream point bars, floodplains, and alluvial fans (discussed later), however, ultimate deposition occurs at the mouth of the stream where it reaches a lake or ocean. These deposits at the mouth of a stream form landforms called **deltas**. Deposition at the mouth of a stream is generally of the finest sediment such as fine sand, silt, and clay, because as the stream exits its channel, the energy of the water is completely dispersed, causing the deposition of all particles in the stream.

Section 10.3.4.4 Equilibrium and Base Level

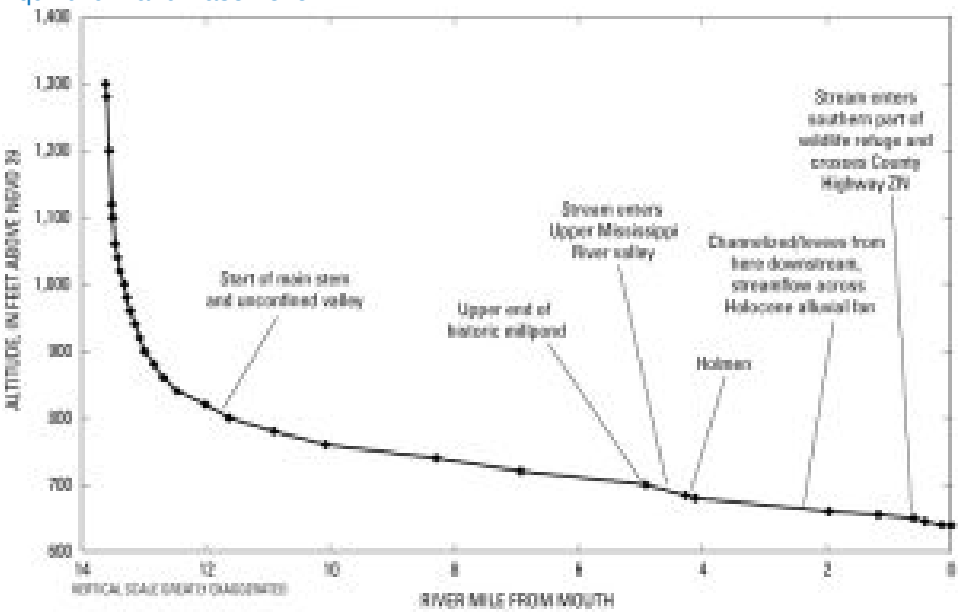


Figure $NaN.3.1$: Example of a longitudinal profile of a stream; Halfway Creek, Indiana

All three stream zones are present in the typical **longitudinal profile** of a stream which plots the elevation of the channel at all points along its course (see figure). All streams have a long profile, some of which have been measured, plotted, and published. The long profile shows the stream gradient from headwater to mouth and represents the balance among erosion, transport, gradient, velocity, discharge, and channel characteristics at each point along the stream's course. This balance is called **equilibrium**. When mountains are uplifted, streams become steeper which erodes downward cutting a valley. This uplift is balanced against downward erosion of the stream. Eventually, streams erode enough downward that the gradient is reduced, downward erosion slows, and the river starts to erode from side to side. This point is generally characterized by a stream with a **floodplain** [6].

Another factor influencing equilibrium is the **base level**, the elevation of the stream's mouth. The base level represents the lowest level to which a stream can erode. The ultimate base level is, of course, sea-level. A lake or reservoir may also represent the base level for a stream entering it. The Great Basin of western Utah, Nevada, and parts of some surrounding states contains no outlets to the sea and provides internal base levels for streams within it. The base level for a stream entering the ocean can change if sea-level rises or falls or if a natural or human-made dam is added along its profile. When base level is lowered, a stream will downcut and deepen its channel, perhaps into a canyon. When base level is raised, deposition increases along the stream profile as the river adjusts to the change and establishes a new state of equilibrium. River equilibrium is dynamic as the river adjusts to changes in base level, tectonics, climate, precipitation, sea level, and human activities along its course.

Section 10.3.5 Landforms

Stream landforms are the land features formed on the surface by either erosion or deposition. The primarily stream-related landforms described here are related to channel types.

Section 10.3.5.1 Channel Types



Figure ***NaN*.3.1**: Braided stream pattern on the Waimakariri River in New Zealand.



Figure ***NaN*.3.1**: Air photo of the meandering river, Río Cauto, Cuba.

Stream channels can be straight, braided, meandering, or entrenched. The gradient, sediment load, discharge, and location of the base level all influence channel type. **Straight channels** are relatively straight, located near the headwaters, have steep gradients, low discharge, and narrow V-shaped valleys. Good examples of these are located in mountainous areas. Anastomosing streams, forming a network of branching and reconnecting channels are a variety of straight channels, formed in areas of high vegetation where the plant growth keeps the channel straight.

Braided channels have multiple smaller channels splitting and recombining downstream creating numerous mid-channel bars. These are found in broad terrain with low gradients near sediment source areas such as mountains or in front of glaciers, for example in Alaska.

Meandering channels are composed of a single channel that curves back and forth like a snake within its floodplain. Meandering channels tend to have a wide floodplain, high discharge, natural levees, and flood regularly. Meandering channels are usually located on low gradient slopes where the stream emerges from its headwaters into the zone of transportation and extends close to the zone of deposition at the stream's mouth. In areas of uplift, like has occurred on the Colorado Plateau, meanders that formed on the upland can become entrenched or incised as the stream cuts its meandering pattern down into bedrock.



Figure ***NaN*.3.1**: Panoramic view of incised meanders of the San Juan River at Gooseneck State Park, Utah.

Section 10.3.5.2 Alluvial Fans



Figure ***NaN*.3.1**: Alluvial fan in Iraq seen by a NASA satellite. A stream emerges from the canyon and creates this cone-shaped deposit.

Alluvial fans are a depositional landform created where streams emerge from mountain canyons into a valley. The channel that had been confined by the canyon walls and suddenly is no longer confined slows down and spreads out, dropping its bedload of all sizes, forming a delta in the air of the valley. As distributary channels fill with sediment, the stream is diverted laterally, and the alluvial fan develops into a cone shape with distributaries radiating from the canyon mouth. Alluvial fans are common in the dry climates of the West where ephemeral streams emerge from canyons in the ranges of the Basin and Range.

Section 10.3.5.3 Floodplains, Meandering Levels, and Natural Levees

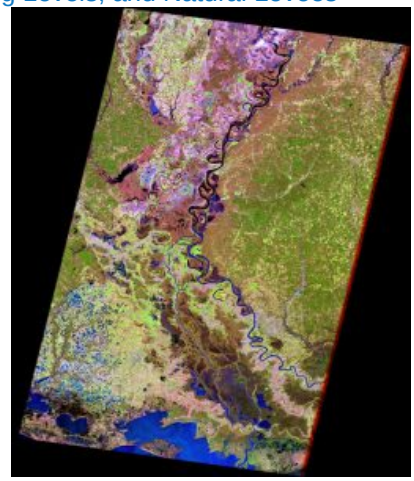
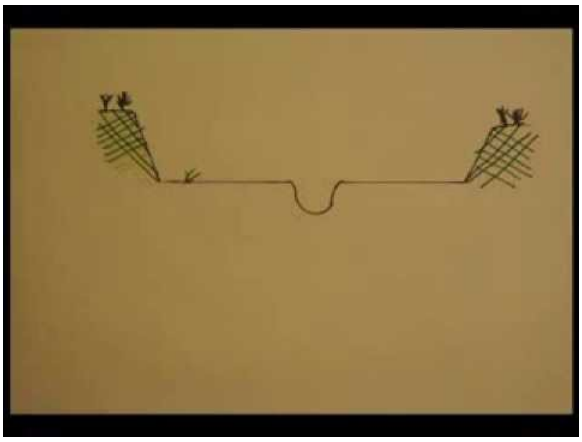


Figure ***NaN*.3.1**: Landsat image of lower Mississippi River floodplain

Many fluvial landforms occur in a floodplain near a meandering stream. A **floodplain** is the broad, mostly flat area next to a meandering river that is regularly flooded. A stream creates its floodplain as the channel meanders back and forth over thousands, even millions of years. Regular flooding contributes to creating the floodplain by eroding uplands next to the floodplain. The stream channels are confined by small **natural levees** that have been built up over many years of regular flooding. Natural levees can isolate flow from contributing channels from immediately reaching the main channel on the floodplain. The smaller isolated streams, called **yazoo streams**, will flow parallel to the main trunk stream until there is an opening in the levee to allow for a belated confluence [23].





The location and width of floodplains naturally vary, however, humans build artificial levees on flood plains to limit flooding. Sediment that breaches the levees during flood stage is called **crevasse splays** delivering silt and clay into the floodplain. Floodplains are nutrient-rich from the fine-grained deposits and thus often make good farmland. Floodplains are also easy to build on due to their flat nature, however, when floodwaters crest over human-made levees, the levees quickly erode with potentially catastrophic impacts. Because of the good soils, farmers regularly return after floods and rebuild year after year.

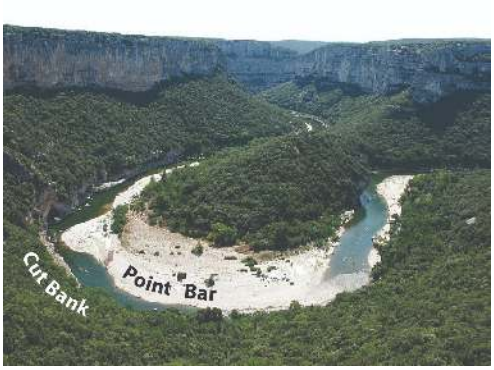


Figure *NaN.3.1*: Point bar and cut bank on the Cirque de la Madeleine in France.

Meandering rivers create additional landforms as the channel migrates within the floodplain. Meandering rivers erode side-to-side because the highest velocity water having the most capacity to erode is located on the outside of the bend. Erosion of the outside of

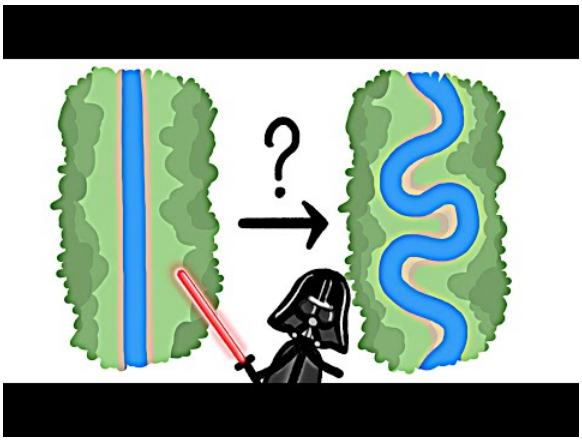
the bend of a stream channel is called a **cut bank** and the meander extends its loop by this erosion. The **thalweg** of the stream is the deepest part of the stream channel. In the straight parts of the channel, the thalweg and highest velocity are in the center of the channel. But at the bend of a meandering stream, the thalweg moves to the cut bank. Opposite the cut bank on the inside bend of the channel is the lowest stream velocity and therefore becomes an area of deposition call a **point bar**.



Figure ***NaN*.3.1**: Meander nearing cutoff on the Nowitna River in Alaska

Through erosion on the outsides of the meanders and deposition on the insides, the channels of meandering streams move back and forth across their floodplain over time. Sometimes on very broad floodplains with very low gradients, the meander bends can become so extreme that they cut across themselves at a narrow neck (see figure). The former channel becomes isolated from streamflow and forms an **oxbow lake** seen on the right of the figure. Eventually, the oxbow lake fills in with sediment and becomes a wetland and eventually a **meander scar**. Stream meanders can migrate and form oxbow lakes in a relatively short amount of time. Where stream channels form geographic and political boundaries, this shifting of channels can cause conflicts.





Section 10.3.5.4 Deltas



Figure ***NaN*.3.1**: Location of the Mississippi River drainage basin and Mississippi River delta.

When a stream reaches a low energy body of water such as a lake or some parts of the ocean, the velocity slows and the bedload and suspended load sediment come to rest, forming a **delta**. If wave erosion from the water body is greater than deposition from the river, the deposition will not occur and a delta will not form. The largest and most famous delta in the United States is the Mississippi River delta formed where the Mississippi River flows into the Gulf of Mexico. The Mississippi River drainage basin is the largest in North America, draining 41% of the contiguous U.S. [24]. Because of the large drainage area, the river carries a large amount of sediment that is supplied to the delta. The Mississippi River is a major shipping route and human engineering has ensured that the channel no longer meanders significantly within the floodplain. In addition, the river has been artificially straightened so that it meanders less and is now 229 km shorter than it was before humans began engineering it [24]. Because of these restraints, the delta is now solely focused in one area and thus has created a “bird’s foot” pattern. These two NASA images of the delta (follow the link) show how the shoreline has retreated and the land was inundated with water while deposition of sediment was located at end of the delta. These images have changed over a 25 year period from 1976 to 2001. These are stark changes illustrating sea level rise and land subsidence from the compaction of peat due to the lack of sediment resupply [25].

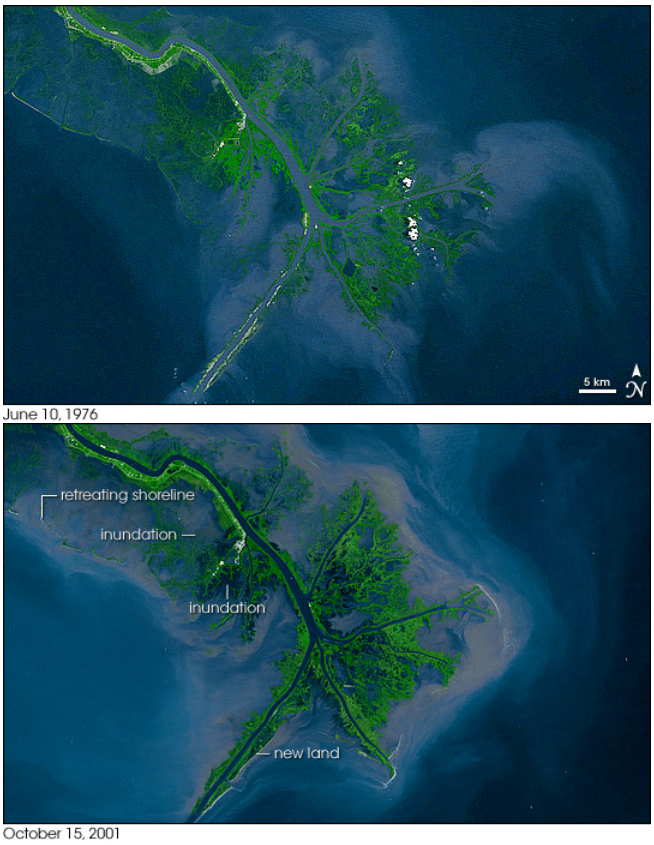


Figure ***NaN*.3.1**: Before (left) vs. After (right)

The formation of the Mississippi River delta started about 7500 years ago when postglacial sea level stopped rising. In the past 7000 years, prior to anthropogenic modifications, the Mississippi River delta had several lobes that were sequentially created by the river, abandoned for a shorter route to the Gulf of Mexico, then reworked by the ocean waves of the Gulf of Mexico [26]. After the lobes were abandoned by the river, isostatic depression and compaction of the sediments caused basin subsidence (e.g. the mass and compaction of the new sediments caused the land to sink).



Figure ***NaN*.3.1**: Delta in Quake Lake Montana. The deposition of this delta began in 1959 when the Madison River was dammed by the landslide caused by the 7.5 magnitude earthquake.

A clear example of how deltas form came from an unlikely source, an earthquake. During the 1959 Madison Canyon 7.5 magnitude earthquake in Montana, a large landslide dammed the Madison River forming Quake Lake [27], which is still there today. A small tributary stream that once flowed into the Madison River now flows into Quake Lake where a delta has been forming since. This a modern example of a Gilbert-type delta, which is a delta composed primarily of coarse material actively eroded from the mountainous upthrown block to the north.

Deltas represent stream deposits protruding into a quiet water body and can be further categorized as wave-dominated or tide-dominated. Wave-dominated deltas occur where the tides are small and wave energy dominates. An example is the Nile River delta

in the Mediterranean Sea that has the classic shape like the Greek character (Δ) from which the landform is named. A tide-dominated delta is when ocean tides are powerful and influence the shape of the delta. For example, Ganges-Brahmaputra Delta in the Bay of Bengal (near India and Bangladesh) is the world's largest delta and mangrove swamp called the Sundarban.



Sundarban Delta in Bangladesh, a tide-dominated delta of the Ganges River Tidal forces creates linear segments in the delta shoreline by ocean intrusion into the delta deposits. This delta also holds the world's largest mangrove swamp, and incidentally is the only place where the Bengal tiger still actively hunts humans as prey.



Figure ***NaN*.3.1**: Nile Delta showing its classic "delta" shape.

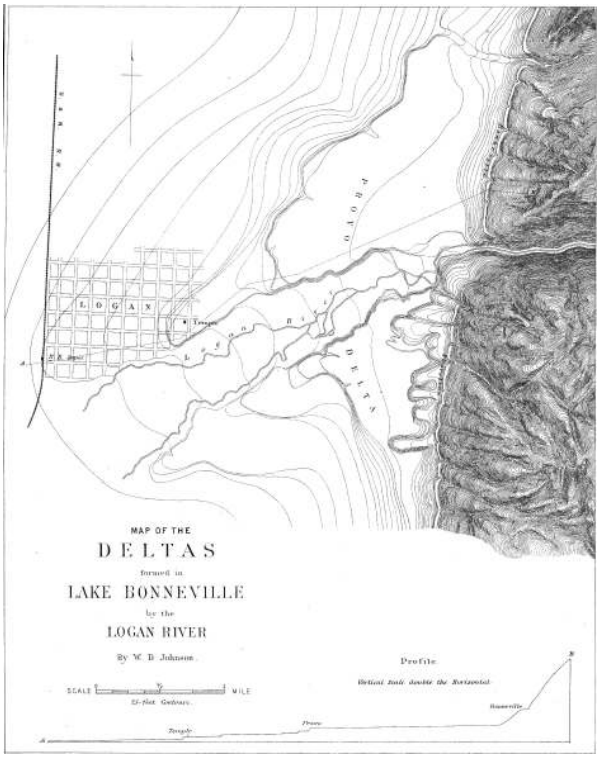


Figure ***NaN*.3.1**: Map of the Logan Delta

Lake Bonneville was a large, pluvial lake that occupied the western half of Utah and parts of eastern Nevada from about 30,000 to 12,000 years ago [30]. The lake filled to a maximum elevation as great as approximately 5100 feet above the mean sea level, covering the basins, leaving the mountains exposed, many as islands. The presence of the lake allowed for deposition of fine-grained lake mud and silt, as well as coarse gravels entrained by mountain streams that lost their sediment load and energy to the open water of the lake. The lake's average surface elevation varied over its existence. The variations in lake level were controlled by regional climate and a catastrophic failure of Lake Bonneville's main outlet, Red Rock Pass [31]. Extended periods of time where the lake level remained stable caused wave-cut terraces that can be seen today on the flanks of many mountains in the region and allowed for the development of large deltaic deposits at the mouths of major canyons in Salt Lake, Cache, and other valleys. As the lake regressed to its remnant, the Great Salt Lake, the rivers that created the deltaic deposits incised stream valleys through the same deposits.



Figure ***NaN*.3.1**: Deltaic deposits of Lake Bonneville near Logan, Utah.

Section 10.3.5.6 Entrenched Meanders



Figure ***NaN*.3.1**: Entrenched meander of the Colorado River, downstream of Page, Arizona.

In some rare cases, uplift will occur on a low-gradient landscape with a meandering river. This effectively increases the gradient of the stream causing it to erode downward instead of side-to-side. An example of this process is where the Colorado River and other streams crossed the Colorado Plateau as meandering streams. As the Colorado Plateau has uplifted over the past several million years, the Colorado River has incised into the flat-lying rocks of the plateau by hundreds of feet.

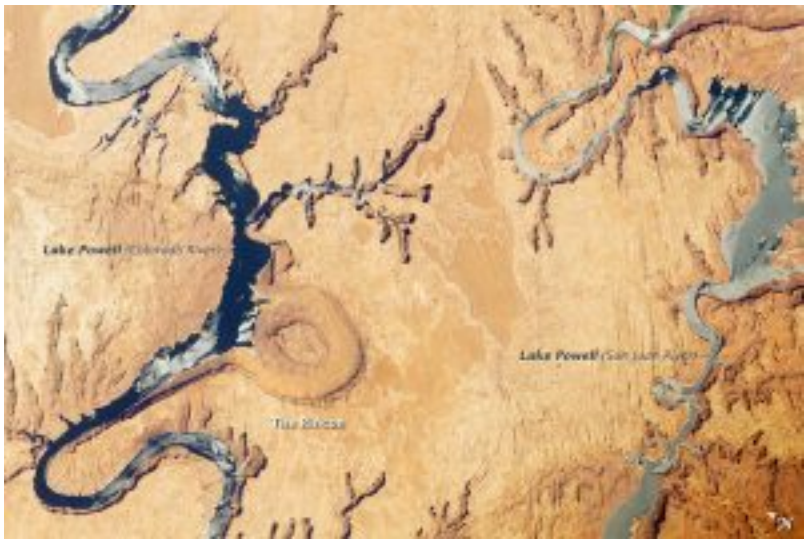


Figure ***NaN*.3.1**: The Rincon is an abandoned meaner loop on the entrenched Colorado River in Lake Powell.

The entrenched meanders continue to experience lateral erosion. The Rincon on the entrenched Colorado River at Lake Powell is an incised oxbow lake. Another excellent example of entrenched meanders is Goosenecks State Park, Utah, where the San Juan River is deeply entrenched into the Colorado Plateau.

To summarize, an **entrenched channel** occurs when a meandering channel rapidly down cuts due to a drop in base level. This causes the original meandering shape to be preserved within a deeply entrenched channel. This channel type is rare worldwide but is common in the Colorado Plateau region which is a broad flat area near four-corners where Utah, Colorado, Arizona, and New Mexico meet. For example, the Green, Colorado, and San Juan Rivers famously form entrenched channels.



Figure ***NaN*.3.1**: The San Juan River has incised meanders into the flat Colorado Plateau at Goosenecks State Park, southeastern Utah.. CC BY 3.0], via Wikimedia Commons" width="1067px" height="359px"

Section 10.3.5.7 Terraces

Stream terraces are remnants of older floodplains located above the existing floodplain and river. Like entrenched meanders, stream terraces form when uplift occurs or base level drops and streams erode downward, leaving behind their old floodplains. In other cases, stream terraces can form from extreme flood events associated with retreating glaciers. A classic example of multiple stream terraces is along the Snake River in Grand Teton National Park in Wyoming [32, 33].



Figure $NaN.3.1$: Terraces along the Snake River, Wyoming.



Figure $NaN.3.1$: Terraces in Glen Roy, Scotland

Section 10.3.6 References

6. Charlton R (2007) Fundamentals of fluvial geomorphology. Taylor & Francis

20. Cirrus Ecological Solutions (2009) Jordan River TMDL. Utah State Division of Water Quality

21. United States Geological Survey (1967) The Amazon: Measuring a Mighty River. United States Geological Survey

22. Brush LM Jr (1961) Drainage basins, channels, and flow characteristics of selected streams in central Pennsylvania. pubs.er.usgs.gov

23. Fairbridge RW (1968) Yazoo rivers or streams. In: Geomorphology. Springer Berlin Heidelberg, pp 1238–1239

24. Turner RE, Rabalais NN (1991) Changes in Mississippi River water quality this century. Bioscience 41:140–147

25. Törnqvist TE, Wallace DJ, Storms JEA, et al (2008) Mississippi Delta subsidence primarily caused by compaction of Holocene strata. Nat Geosci 1:173–176

26. Galloway WE, Whiteaker TL, Ganey-Curry P (2011) History of Cenozoic North American drainage basin evolution, sediment yield, and accumulation in the Gulf of Mexico basin. Geosphere 7:938–973

27. Myers WB, Hamilton W (1964) The Hebgen Lake, Montana, earthquake of August 17, 1959. US Geol Surv Prof Pap 435:51

30. Oviatt CG (2015) Chronology of Lake Bonneville, 30,000 to 10,000 yr B.P. Quat Sci Rev 110:166–171

31. Gilbert GK (1890) Lake Bonneville. United States Geological Survey, Washington, D.C.

32. Reed JC, Love D, Pierce K (2003) Creation of the Teton landscape: a geologic chronicle of Jackson Hole and the Teton Range. pubs.er.usgs.gov

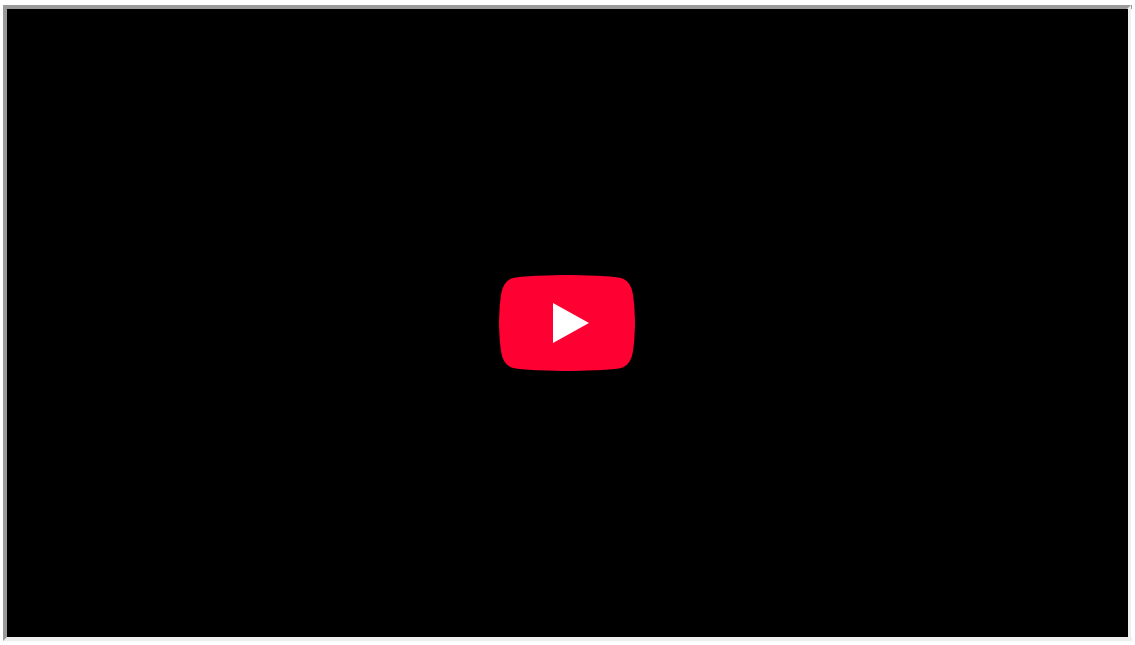
33. Marston RA, Mills JD, Wrazien DR, et al (2005) Effects of Jackson lake dam on the Snake River and its floodplain, Grand Teton National Park, Wyoming, USA. Geomorphology 71:79–98

This page titled Section 10.3: Surface Water is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Chris Johnson, Matthew D. Affolter, Paul Inkenbrandt, & Cam Mosher (OpenGeology) via source content that was edited to the style and standards of the LibreTexts platform.

- **11.7: Surface Water** by Chris Johnson, Matthew D. Affolter, Paul Inkenbrandt, & Cam Mosher is licensed CC BY-NC-SA 4.0. Original source: https://opengeology.org/textbook/.

Section 10.4: Groundwater

Groundwater is an important source of freshwater. It can be found in all places under the ground but is limited by extractable quantity and quality.





Section 10.4.1 Properties

Section 10.4.1.1 Permeability and Porosity

Most rocks are not entirely solid and contain a certain amount of open space between grains or crystals, known as pores. **Porosity** is a measure of the open space in rocks –expressed as the percentage of open space that makes up the total volume of the rock or sediment material. Porosity can occur as primary porosity, which represents the original pore spaces in the rock (e.g. space between sand grains, vesicles in volcanic rocks), or secondary porosity which occurs after the rock forms (e.g. fractures, dissolved portions of rock). Lithification of unconsolidated sediments will reduce porosity because it compacts grains and adds cement (see chapter 5.3). Water trapped in the unconnected pores of the rock during the processes of deposition and lithification is called **connate water**.

Permeability is a measure of the interconnectedness of pores in a rock or sediment. The connections between pores allows for that material to transmit water. A combination of a place to put water (porosity) and the ability to move water (permeability) makes a good **aquifer**—a rock unit or sediment that contains extractable groundwater. Well-sorted sediments have higher porosity because

there are not smaller sediment particles filling in the spaces between the larger particles. Clays generally have very high porosity, but the pores are poorly connected, thereby causing low permeability.





While permeability is important as a measure of the ability to transmit fluids, it is generally not the most commonly used descriptor among geologists for this property. **Hydraulic conductivity** is another common measure of the connectedness of pore spaces and is a function of both permeability and fluid properties. Because it considers fluid properties, hydraulic conductivity is used by both petroleum geologists and hydrogeologists to describe the production capability of oil reservoirs and aquifers. A high hydraulic conductivity indicates a rapid transmission of fluid through an aquifer. Unconsolidated gravels, highly fractured and dissolved rocks, and well-sorted sandstones have high hydraulic conductivities.

Section 10.4.2 Aquifers and Confining Layers

An **aquifer** is a geologic material capable of delivering water in usable quantities. Geologic material includes any rock or sediment. In order for a geologic material to be considered an aquifer, it must be at least partially saturated, where its open spaces are filled with water, and be permeable, i.e. able to transmit water. For drinking water aquifers, the water must also be **potable**. Aquifers can vary dramatically in scale, from spanning several formations to being limited to a small area on the side of a hill. Aquifers adequate for water supply are both permeable and porous.

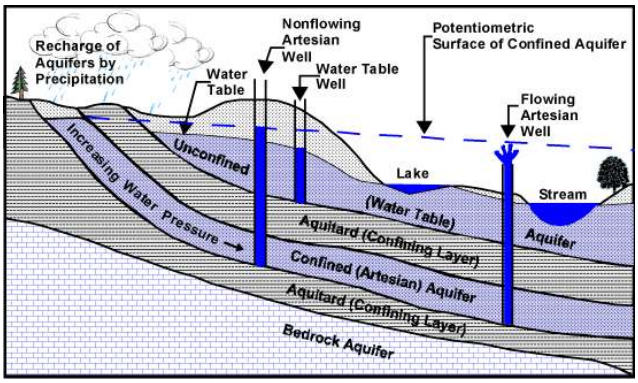


Figure ***NaN*.4.1**: Potentiometric surface and water table in an aquifer system.

A good aquifer will provide a sufficient quantity of water to meet demand. The quantity of water that an aquifer can hold and transmit is governed by its physical properties. Most simply, the aquifer's porosity and permeability (defined above) are variables that govern its hydraulic conductivity and **storativity**.

A **confining layer** is a layer of low permeability geologic material that restricts the flow of water to or from the aquifer. Confining layers include **aquicludes** (a.k.a. aquifuges), which are so impermeable that no water travels through them, and **aquitards**, which significantly decrease the speed at which water travels through them due to their low permeability.

Section 10.4.3 Groundwater Flow

Section 10.4.3.1 From the Surface into the Ground

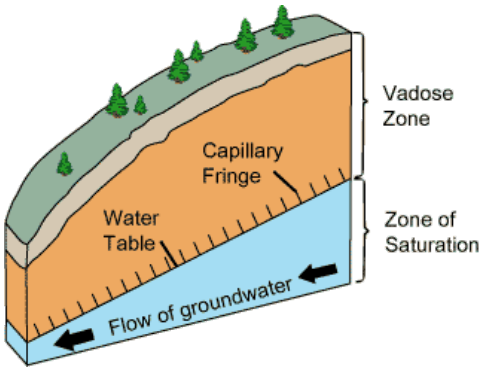


Figure ***NaN*.4.1**: Zone of saturation.. via Wikimedia Commons" width="397px" height="302px"

When surface water infiltrates or seeps into the ground, it usually enters the unsaturated zone (a.k.a. vadose zone, a.k.a. zone of aeration). The **vadose zone** is the volume of material between the land surface and the zone of saturation, which consists of geologic materials in which the pore spaces are not completely filled with water [34]. Plants' roots inhabit the upper vadose zone. In the vadose zone, fluid pressure in the pores is less than atmospheric pressure. Below the vadose zone is the capillary fringe. The capillary fringe is the usually thin zone below the vadose zone where the pores are completely filled with water (saturation), but the fluid pressure is less than atmospheric pressure. The pores in the capillary fringe are filled because of capillary action, described in the Properties of Water section above. Below the capillary fringe is the saturated zone (a.k.a. phreatic zone), where the pores are completely saturated and the fluid in the pores is at or above atmospheric pressure [34]. The interface between the capillary fringe and the saturated zone marks the location of the water table.

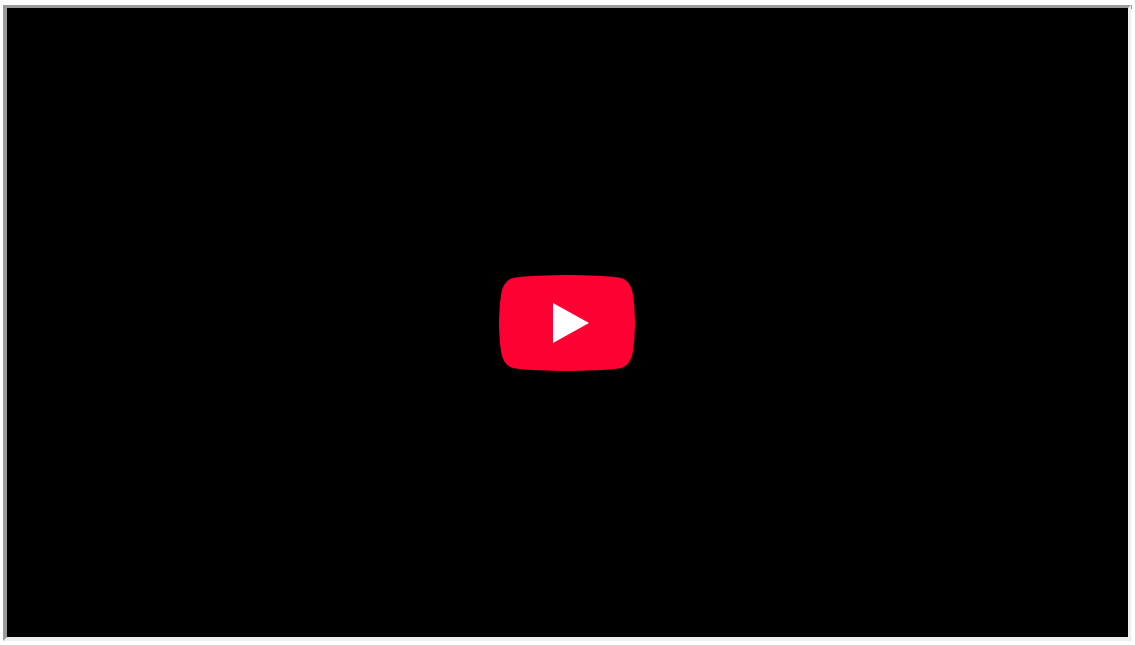
Section 10.4.3.2 Water Table

Wells are conduits that extend into the ground with openings to the aquifers, to extract from, measure, and sometimes add water to the aquifer. Wells are generally the way that geologists and hydrologists measure the depth to groundwater from the land surface as well as withdraw water from aquifers.

Water is found throughout porosity in sediments and bedrock. The **water table** is the area at which the pores are fully saturated with water. The most simple case of a water table is when the aquifer is unconfined, meaning it does not have a confining layer above it. Confining layers can pressurize aquifers by trapping water that is recharged at a higher elevation underneath the confining

layer, allowing for a potentiometric surface higher than the top of the aquifer, and sometimes higher than the land surface. The **potentiometric surface** represents the height that water would rise in a well penetrating the pressurized aquifer system. Breaches in the pressurized aquifer system, like faults or wells, can cause **springs** or **flowing wells**, also known as **artesian wells**.

The water table will generally mirror surface topography, though more subdued because hydrostatic pressure is equal to atmospheric pressure along the surface of the water table. If the water table intersects the ground surface the result will be water at the surface in the form of a gaining stream, spring, lake, or wetland. The water table intersects the channel for **gaining streams** which then gains water from the water table. The channels for **losing streams** lie below the water table, thus losing streams lose water to the water table. Losing streams may be seasonal during a dry season or **ephemeral** in dry climates where they may normally be dry and carry water only after rainstorms. Ephemeral streams pose a serious danger of flash flooding in dry climates.





Mentioned in the video is the USGS Groundwater Watch site. Here is the link to that site: groundwaterwatch.usgs.gov/

Geologists measure the height of the water table and potentiometric surface using wells. Graphs of the depth to groundwater over time are known as **hydrographs**. Hydrographs can indicate changes in the water table over time. The water level in a well can change very frequently (every minute), seasonally, and over long periods of time, and is controlled by many forces.

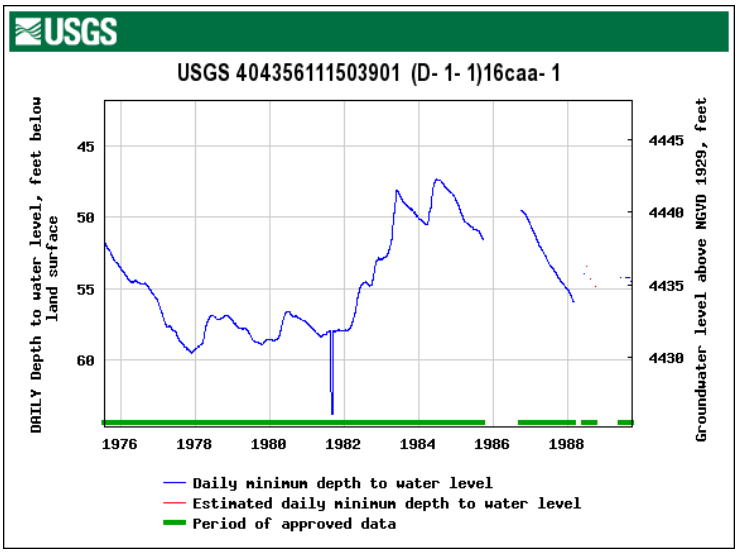


Figure ***NaN*.4.1**: Example of a hydrograph.

Section 10.4.3.3 Darcy's Law

Darcy's Law was an empirical relationship established by Henry Darcy in 1856 showing how to discharge through a porous medium is controlled by permeability, pressure, and cross-sectional area. In his experiment, Darcy used tubes of packed sediment with water running through them. The relationships described by Darcy's Law have close similarities to Fourier's law in the field of heat conduction, Ohm's law in the field of electrical networks, or Fick's law in diffusion theory. Darcy's Law provides a quantitative measure of hydraulic conductivity and discharge.

$$Q = K * A * \frac{\Delta h}{L} \qquad \text{(NaN.4.1)}$$

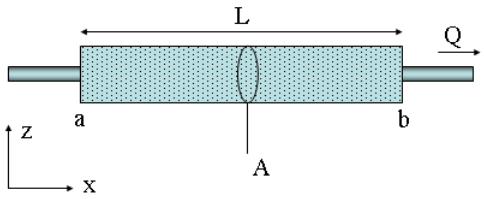


Figure ***NaN*.4.1**: Pipe showing apparatus that would demonstrate Darcy's Law. Δh would be measured across L from a to b.. CC BY-SA 2.5], via Wikimedia Commons" width="431"

- Q = flow (volume/time)
- K = hydraulic conductivity (length/time)
- A = cross-sectional area of flow (area)
- Δh = change in pressure head (pressure difference)
- L = distance between pressure (h) measurements (length)
- Δh/L is commonly referred to as the hydraulic gradient

Section 10.4.3.4 Cone of Depression

Pumping water from an aquifer lowers the water table or potentiometric surface around the well. In an unconfined aquifer, the water table is lowered as water is removed from the aquifer near the well. In a confined aquifer, the pressure around the well is reduced. The amount of change from before pumping to pumping level is termed drawdown. Drawdown is the greatest nearest the well, resulting in a concentric pattern of drawdown termed the **cone of depression**.

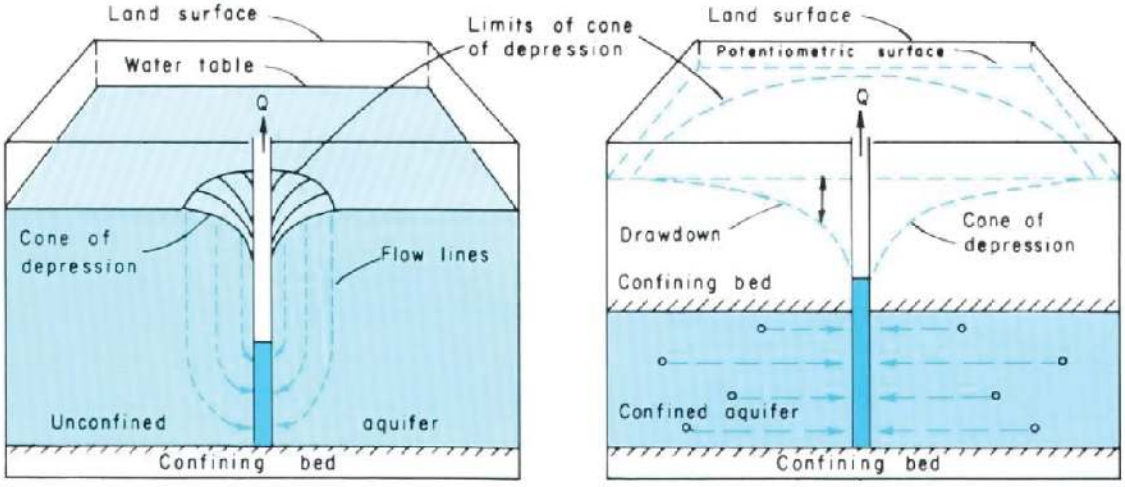


Figure *NaN*.4.1: Cones of depression (Heath 1983).

When one cone of depression intersects another cone of depression or a barrier feature like an impermeable mountain block, drawdown is intensified. When a cone of depression intersects a recharge zone, the cone of depression is lessened.

Section 10.4.4 Recharge

The **recharge** area is where surface water enters an aquifer through the process of infiltration. Recharge areas are generally the topographically highest location of an aquifer. They are characterized by losing streams and sediment or rock that allows infiltration into the subsurface. Recharge areas mark the beginning of groundwater flow paths.

In the Basin and Range region, the recharge zones for the unconsolidated aquifers of the valley areas are along the valley margins, near the foothills of the mountains. In Salt Lake Valley, as mountain streams leave the mountainous areas, they lose water to the gravel-rich deltaic deposits of ancient Lake Bonneville.

Recharge can be induced through the aquifer management practice of aquifer storage and recovery. Injection wells and infiltration galleries (basins) allow for humans to increase the rate of recharge into an aquifer system [35]. Injection wells pump water into an aquifer. Injection wells are regulated by state and federal governments to ensure that the injected water is not negatively impacting the quality or supply of the existing groundwater in the aquifer. Some aquifers are capable of storing significant quantities of water, allowing water managers to use the aquifer system like a surface reservoir. Water is stored in the aquifer during periods of low water demand and high water supply and later extracted during times of high water demand and low water supply.

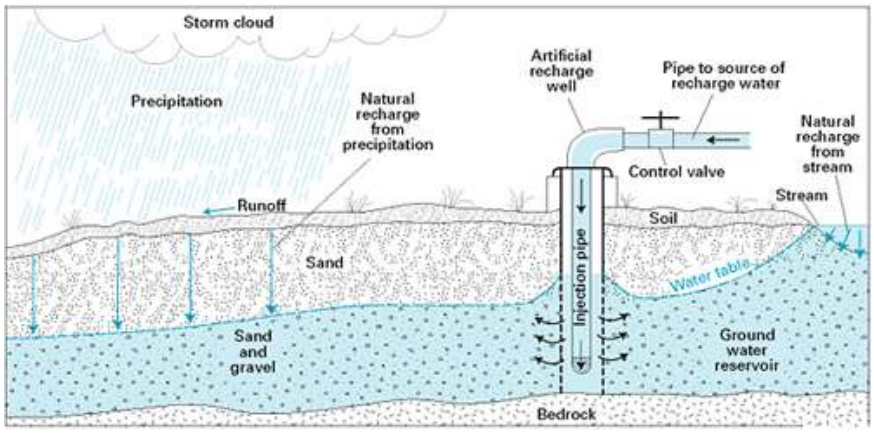


Figure *NaN*.4.1: Different ways an aquifer can be recharged.

Section 10.4.5 Discharge

Discharge areas are where groundwater emerges at the land surface. Groundwater emerges at the land surface when the potentiometric surface or water table intersects the land surface. These areas are characterized by springs, flowing (artesian) wells,

gaining streams, and playas. Discharge areas mark the end of groundwater flow paths. In the Basin and Range of the western United States, discharge zones are typically in the middle of the valley basins, where playa lakes, springs, and gaining streams signify groundwater emerging at the land surface.

Section 10.4.6 Groundwater Mining and Subsidence

Section 10.4.6.1 Groundwater as a Limited Resource

Like other natural resources on our planet, the quantity of fresh and potable water is finite. The only natural source of water on land is from the sky in the form of precipitation. Because of a slow rate of travel, limited recharge areas, and intensifying extraction and demand, in many places groundwater is being extracted faster than it is being replenished. When groundwater is extracted faster than recharge can renew it, groundwater levels (potentiometric surfaces) decline and areas of discharge can diminish or dry up completely. Regional pumping-induced groundwater decline is known as **groundwater mining** or groundwater overdraft. Groundwater mining can lead to dry wells, reduced spring and streamflow, and subsidence. Where there is a continual lowering of the water table in an area, e.g. extraction by pumping is greater than replenishment by precipitation, groundwater mining is happening.



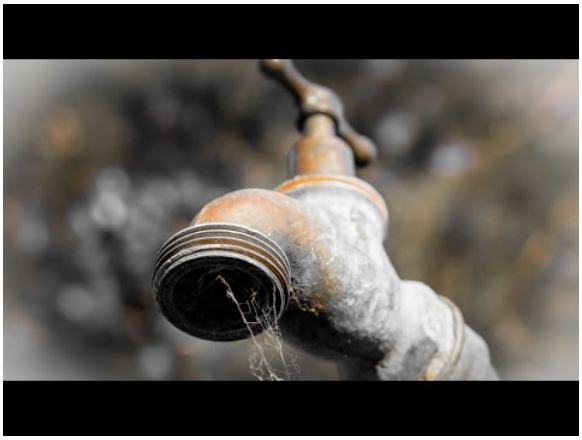




Figure *NaN*.4.1: Example of an earth fissure in Cedar City.

In many places, water actually helps hold up the skeleton of the aquifer by the water pressure exerted on the grains in an aquifer. If pore pressure decreases because of groundwater mining, the aquifer can compact, causing the surface of the ground to sink. Areas especially susceptible to this effect are aquifers made of unconsolidated sediments. Unconsolidated sediments with multiple layers of clay and other fine-grained material are at higher risk because clay can compact considerably when drained of water [36, 37].



Figure *NaN*.4.1: The pole shows subsidence from groundwater pumping for irrigation in the San Joaquin Valley of California.

In many cases, the amount of compaction in one area will be greater than the amount of compaction in an adjacent area. The different amounts of compaction in areas that are next to each other can cause the land to offset and develop cracks and fissures.

Subsidence from groundwater mining has been documented in southwestern Utah, notably Cedar Valley, Iron County, Utah. Groundwater levels have declined more than 100 feet in certain parts of Cedar Valley, causing earth fissures and measurable amounts of land subsidence.

The photo shows documentation of subsidence from the pumping of groundwater for irrigation in the Central Valley in California. The dates marked on the pole show land elevation in the past.

Section 10.4.7 References

34. Freeze AR, Cherry JA (1979) Groundwater, 1 edition. Prentice Hall

35. Reese RS (2014) Review of Aquifer Storage and Recovery in the Floridan Aquifer System of Southern Florida

36. Galloway D, Jones DR, Ingebritsen SE (1999) Land subsidence in the United States. U.S. Geological Survey

37. Knudsen T, Inkenbrandt P, Lund W, et al (2014) Investigation of land subsidence and earth fissures in Cedar Valley, Iron County, Utah: Utah Geological Survey

This page titled Section 10.4: Groundwater is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Chris Johnson, Matthew D. Affolter, Paul Inkenbrandt, & Cam Mosher (OpenGeology) via source content that was edited to the style and standards of the LibreTexts platform.

- **11.8: Groundwater** by Chris Johnson, Matthew D. Affolter, Paul Inkenbrandt, & Cam Mosher is licensed CC BY-NC-SA 4.0. Original source: https://opengeology.org/textbook/.

SECTION OVERVIEW

Section 10.5: Glaciers

Learning Objectives

- Differentiate the different types of glaciers and contrast them with sea ice.
- Describe how glaciers move, erode, and create landforms.
- Identify glacial erosional and depositional landforms and interpret their origin.
- Describe the history and causes of past glaciations and their relationship to climate and sea-level changes.

The hydrosphere, liquid water, is the single most important agent of erosion and deposition. The cryosphere, the solid state of water in the form of ice also has its own unique erosional and depositional features. Large accumulations of year-round ice on the land surface are called **glaciers**. Masses of ice floating on the ocean as sea ice or icebergs are not glaciers, although they may have had their origin in glaciers.

Section 10.5.1: Prelude to Galciers

Section 10.5.2: Types of Glaciers

Section 10.5.3: Glacier Formation and Movement

Section 10.5.4: Glacial Budget

Section 10.5.5: Glacial Landforms

Section 10.5.6: Ice Age Glaciations

This page titled Section 10.5: Glaciers is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Chris Johnson, Matthew D. Affolter, Paul Inkenbrandt, & Cam Mosher (OpenGeology) via source content that was edited to the style and standards of the LibreTexts platform.

Section 10.5.1: Prelude to Galciers

The hydrosphere, liquid water, is the single most important agent of erosion and deposition. The cryosphere, the solid state of water in the form of ice also has its own unique erosional and depositional features. Large accumulations of year-round ice on the land surface are called **glaciers**. Masses of ice floating on the ocean as sea ice or icebergs are not glaciers, although they may have had their origin in glaciers.



Figure ***NaN*.5.1.1**: Avalanche Lake in Glacier National Park, Montana is an example of a glacially-carved cirque basin.

Glaciers cover about 10% of the surface of the Earth, and are powerful erosional agents that sculpt the planet's surface. Glaciers form when more snow accumulates over a long span of time than melts and eventually turns into ice. This usually occurs in mountainous areas that have both cold temperatures and high precipitation. But snow can also accumulate and turn into ice in extremely cold low lying areas such as Greenland and Antarctica. This chapter focuses on types of glaciers, how glaciers function, erosional and depositional landforms created by glaciers, and how glaciers are connected to past climates and modern day climate change.

Section 10.5.1: Prelude to Galciers is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

- **14.1: Prelude to Galciers** is licensed CC BY-NC-SA 4.0.

Section 10.5.2: Types of Glaciers



Figure ***NaN*.5.2.1**: Glacier in the Bernese Alps.

There are two general types of glaciers – alpine glaciers and ice sheets. **Alpine glaciers** form in mountainous areas either at high elevations or near cool and wet coastal areas like the Olympic Peninsula of Washington. A common type of alpine glacier is a **valley glacier** which is confined to a long, narrow valley located in mountainous areas especially at higher latitudes (closer to either the north or south pole). Most alpine glaciers are located in the major mountain ranges of the world such as the Andes, Rockies, Alps, and Himalayas.



Figure ***NaN*.5.2.1**: Greenland ice sheet.

The other major glacier type is **ice sheets** (also called **continental glaciers**). These are thick accumulations of ice that occupy a large geographical area. The main ice sheets on the earth today are located on Greenland and Antarctica. The Greenland Ice Sheet has an extensive surface area and thickness up to 3,300 meters (10,800 feet or two miles) and has a volume estimated at nearly 3 million cubic kilometers (~102 billion cubic feet) [1].

The Antarctic Ice Sheet is much larger and covers almost the entire continent. The thickest parts of this massive ice sheet are over 4,000 meters thick (>13,000 feet or 2.5 miles) and its weight depresses the Antarctic bedrock to below sea level in many places beneath the ice [2]. The Antarctic Ice Sheet contains the most ice as illustrated by the figure below comparing cross-sectional views of both ice sheets.

Former ice sheets, present during the last glacial maximum event (also known as the last ice age) in North America, are called the Laurentide Ice Sheet.

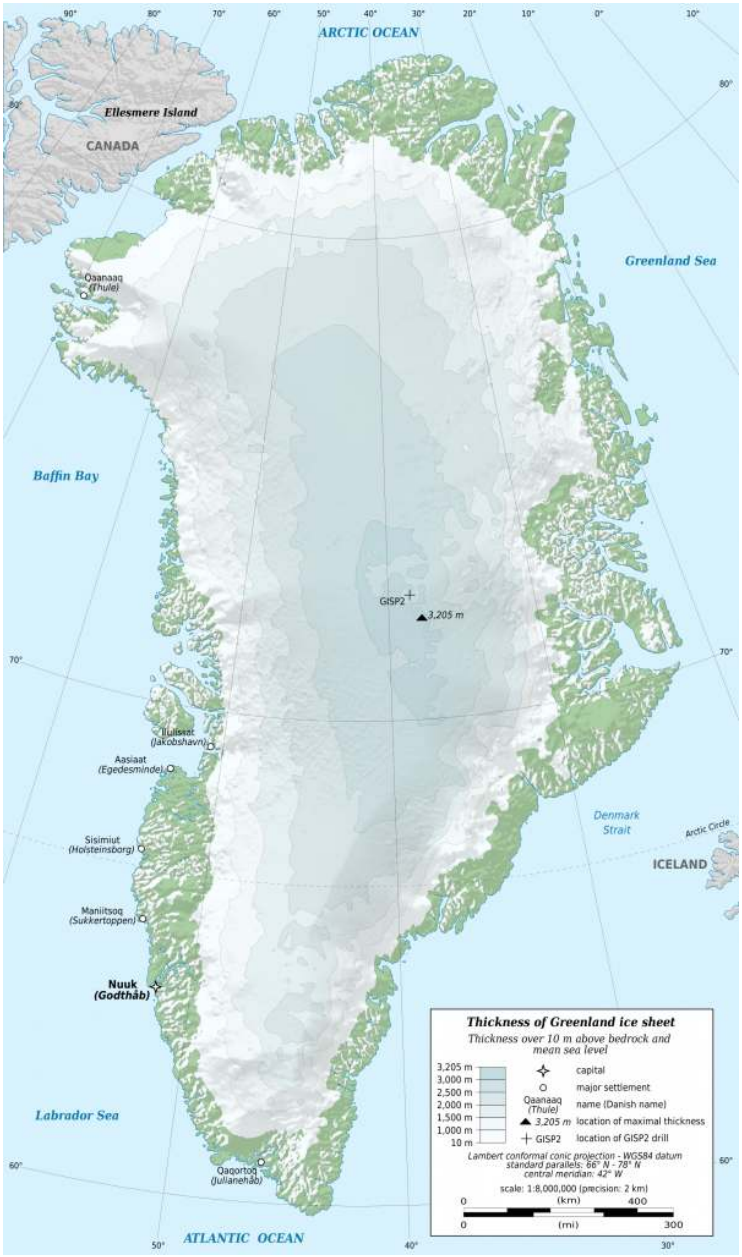


Figure ***NaN*.5.2.1**: Thickness of Greenland ice sheet in meters (Source: Eric Gaba).

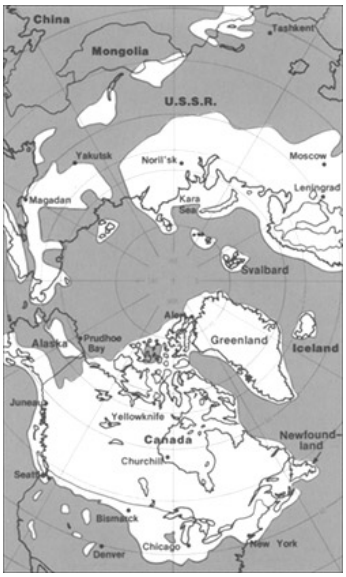


Figure ***NaN*.5.2.1**: Maximum extent of Laurentide Ice Sheet

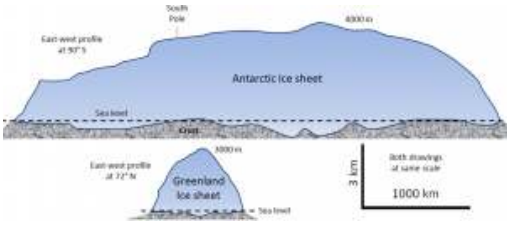


Figure ***NaN*.5.2.1**: Cross-sectional view of both Greenland and Antarctic ice sheets drawn to scale for size comparison (Source: Steve Earle)

Section 10.5.2.1 References

1. Bamber, J. L., Layberry, R. L. & Gogineni, S. P. A new ice thickness and bed data set for the Greenland ice sheet: 1. Measurement, data reduction, and errors. *J. Geophys. Res.* **106**, 33773–33780 (2001).

2. Lythe, M. B. & Vaughan, D. G. BEDMAP: A new ice thickness and subglacial topographic model of Antarctica. *J. Geophys. Res.* **106**, 11335–11351 (2001).

This page titled Section 10.5.2: Types of Glaciers is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Chris Johnson, Matthew D. Affolter, Paul Inkenbrandt, & Cam Mosher (OpenGeology) via source content that was edited to the style and standards of the LibreTexts platform.

- **14.2: Types of Glaciers** by Chris Johnson, Matthew D. Affolter, Paul Inkenbrandt, & Cam Mosher is licensed CC BY-NC-SA 4.0. Original source: https://opengeology.org/textbook/.

Section 10.5.3: Glacier Formation and Movement

Glaciers form when accumulating snow compresses into firn and eventually turns into ice. In some cases, perennial snow accumulates on the ground and lasts all year. This makes a snowfield and not a glacier since it is a thin accumulation of snow. Snow and glacial ice actually have a fair amount of void space (porosity) that traps air. As the snow settles, compacts, and bonds with underlying snow, the amount of void space diminishes. When the snow gets buried by more snow, it compacts into granular **firn** (or névé) with less air and it begins to resemble ice more than snow. Continual burial, compression, and recrystallization make the firn denser and more ice-like. Eventually, the accumulated snow turns fully to ice, however, small air pockets remain trapped in the ice and form a record of the past atmosphere.



Figure ***NaN*.5.3.1**: Glacial crevasses.



Figure ***NaN*.5.3.1**: Cravasse on the Easton Glacier in the North Cascades

As the ice accumulates, it begins to flow downward under its own weight. An early study of glacier movement conducted in 1948 on the Jungfraufirn Glacier in the Alps installed hollow vertical rods in the ice and measured the tilt over two years. The study found that the top part was fairly rigid and the bottom part flowed internally. A P-T diagram of ice shows that ice actually melts under pressure (one of the unique properties of water) so ice at the base of a typical glacier is actually melting. About half of the overall glacial movement was from sliding on a film of meltwater along the bedrock surface and a half from internal flow [3]. These studies show that the ice near the surface (about the upper 165 feet [50 meters] depending on location, temperature, and flow rate) is rigid and brittle [4]. This upper zone is the **brittle zone**, the portion of the ice in which ice breaks when it moves to form large cracks along the top of a glacier called **crevasses**. These crevasses can be covered and hidden by a snow bridge and thus are a hazard for glacier travelers.

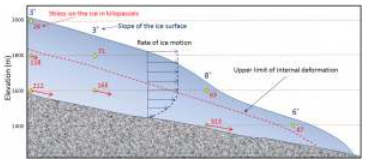


Figure **NaN.5.3.1**: Cross-section of a valley glacier showing stress (red numbers) increases with depth under the ice. The ice will deform and flow where the stress is greater than 100 kilopascals, and the relative extent of that deformation is depicted by the red arrows. Downslope movement is shown with blue arrows. The upper ice above the red dashed line does not flow but is pushed along en masse. (Source: Steve Earle)

Below the brittle zone, there is so much weight of the overlying ice (typically exceeding 100 kilopascals-approximately 100,000 times atmospheric pressure) that it no longer breaks when force is applied to it but rather it bends or flows. This is the **plastic zone** and, within this zone, the ice flows. The plastic zone represents the great majority of the ice of a glacier and often contains a fair amount of sediment from as large as boulders and as small as silt and clay which act as grinding agents. The bottom of the plastic zone slides and grinds across the bedrock surface and represents the zone of erosion.

Section 10.5.3.1 References

3. Gerrard, J. A. F., Perutz, M. F. & Roch, A. Measurement of the velocity distribution along a vertical line through a glacier. *Proceedings of the Royal Society of London A: Mathematical, Physical and Engineering Sciences* **213**, 546–558 (1952).

4. Nye, J. F. The Distribution of Stress and Velocity in Glaciers and Ice-Sheets. *Proceedings of the Royal Society of London A: Mathematical, Physical and Engineering Sciences* **239**, 113–133 (1957).

This page titled Section 10.5.3: Glacier Formation and Movement is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Chris Johnson, Matthew D. Affolter, Paul Inkenbrandt, & Cam Mosher (OpenGeology) via source content that was edited to the style and standards of the LibreTexts platform.

- **14.3: Glacier Formation and Movement** by Chris Johnson, Matthew D. Affolter, Paul Inkenbrandt, & Cam Mosher is licensed CC BY-NC-SA 4.0. Original source: https://opengeology.org/textbook/.

Section 10.5.4: Glacial Budget

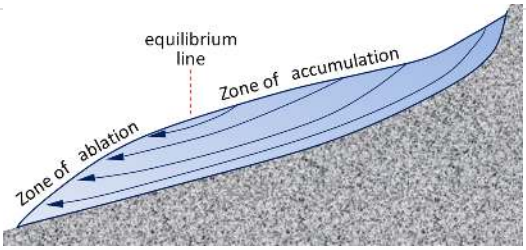


Figure ***NaN*.5.4.1**: Cross-sectional view of an alpine glacier showing internal flow lines, zone of accumulation, snow line, and zone of melting.

Glaciers gain mass during the winter as snow accumulates. During summer the snow melts. The glacier is like a bank account, if more money is coming in (snow accumulating in winter) than going out (snow melting in summer), then the bank account grows. The glacial budget works in a similar way. The **glacial budget** describes how ice accumulates and melts on a glacier which ultimately determines whether a glacier advances or retreats. The balance of accumulating ice (**zone of accumulation**) is weighed against melting ice (**zone of melting** or **zone of ablation**), and whichever is greater determines whether the glacier will advance or retreat. In the zone of accumulation, the rate of annual snowfall is greater than the rate of melting. In other words, not all of the snow that falls each winter melts during the following summer, and the ice surface is always covered with snow. In the zone of melting or ablation, more ice melts then accumulates as snow during the year. The equilibrium line (or **snowline**, also called the **firnline**) marks the boundary between the zones of accumulation and ablation. Below the equilibrium line, in the zone of melting, bare ice is exposed because last winter's snow has all melted; above that line, the ice is still mostly covered with snow from last winter. The position of the equilibrium line changes from year to year as a function of the balance between snow accumulation in the winter and snowmelt during the summer. More winter snow and less summer melting obviously favors the advance of the equilibrium line (and of the glacier's leading-edge (or **terminus**), but of these two variables, it is the summer melt that matters most to a glacier's budget. Cool summers promote glacial advance and warm summers promote glacial retreat [5].

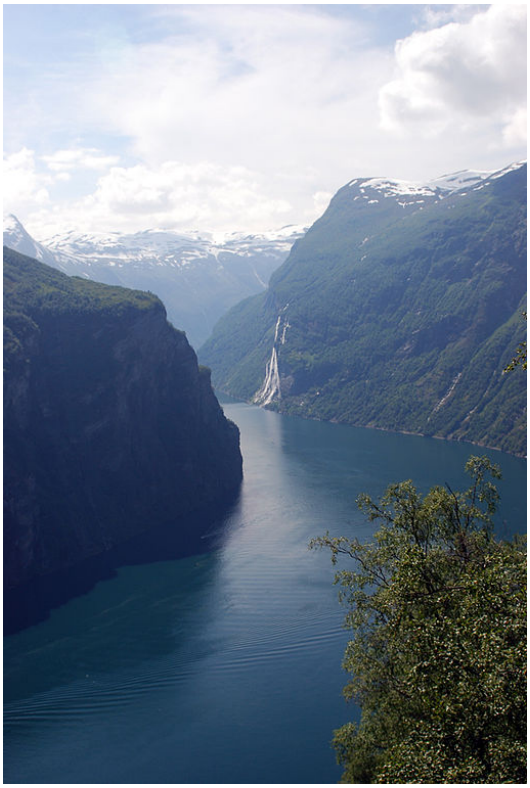


Figure ***NaN*.5.4.1**: Fjord

If warmer summers promote glacial retreat, then overall climate warming over many decades and centuries causes the glacier to melt and retreat significantly. Since the global climate has been warming due to human burning of fossil fuels [6], this warming is

likely causing the ice sheets to melt (or lose mass) at an increasing rate over years and decades rather than over centuries [7]. This means that as time goes on, the glaciers are melting faster and contributing more to rising sea-level than expected based on the previous history.

When ice sheets start to melt, such as those in Antarctica and Greenland, their flow into the ocean speeds up eventually creating floating ice sheets. The edges of the glacier or its extension as floating ice break off in a process called **calving**. In cases like these, the end of the glacier in the fjord may retreat but it will also lose thickness or deflate [8; 9]. A **fjord** is a narrow ocean-flooded valley with steep walls that were carved by a recent glacier. The retreating glacier or glaciers may add to sea level, and this increased sea level can also add to the flooding of the former glacially-carved valleys. Glacial retreat and deflation are well-illustrated in the 2009 TED Talk by James Balog.



Section 10.5.4.1 References

5. Earle, S. *Physical geology OER textbook*. (BC Campus OpenEd, 2015).

6. Stocker, T. F. *Climate change 2013: the physical science basis: Working Group I contribution to the Fifth assessment report of the Intergovernmental Panel on Climate Change*. (Cambridge University Press, 2014).

7. Velicogna, I. Increasing rates of ice mass loss from the Greenland and Antarctic ice sheets revealed by GRACE. *Geophys. Res. Lett.* **36**, L19503 (2009).

8. Nick, F. M., Vieli, A., Howat, I. M. & Joughin, I. Large-scale changes in Greenland outlet glacier dynamics triggered at the terminus. *Nat. Geosci.* **2**, 110–114 (2009).

9. Jensen, T. S., Box, J. E. & Hvidberg, C. S. A sensitivity study of annual area change for Greenland ice sheet marine terminating outlet glaciers: 1999–2013. *J. Glaciol.* **62**, 72–81 (2016).

This page titled Section 10.5.4: Glacial Budget is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Chris Johnson, Matthew D. Affolter, Paul Inkenbrandt, & Cam Mosher (OpenGeology) via source content that was edited to the style and standards of the LibreTexts platform.

- **14.4: Glacial Budget** by Chris Johnson, Matthew D. Affolter, Paul Inkenbrandt, & Cam Mosher is licensed CC BY-NC-SA 4.0. Original source: https://opengeology.org/textbook/.

Section 10.5.5: Glacial Landforms

Glacial landforms are of two kinds, erosional and depositional landforms. Erosional landforms are formed by removing material. The internal pressure and movement within glacial ice cause some melting and glaciers to slide over bedrock on a thin film of water. Glacial ice also contains a large amount of sediments such as sand, gravel, and boulders. Together, the movement plucks off bedrock and grinds the bedrock producing a polished surface and fine sediment called rock flour as well as other poorly-sorted sediments. Characteristic depositional landscapes are produced when the ice melts and retreats and leaves behind these sediments with distinct shapes and compositions. Because glaciers are among the earliest geological processes studied by geologists whose studies were in Europe, the terminology applied to glaciers and glacial features contains many terms from European languages.

Section 10.5.5.1 Erosional Glacial Landforms

Both alpine and continental glaciers erode bedrock and create erosional landforms. Glaciers are heavy masses of abrasive ice that grind over the surface. Elongated grooves are created by fragments of rock embedded in the ice at the base of a glacier scraping along the bedrock surface called **glacial striations**. In addition, rock flour as fine grit in the ice can polish a hard granite or quartzite bedrock to a smooth surface called **glacial polish**. This figure illustrates these glacial landforms.



Figure *NaN*.5.5.1: A polished and striated rock in Yosemite.



Figure *NaN*.5.5.1: Glacial striations in Mt. Rainier National Park.

Following is a description of erosional landforms produced by alpine glaciers. Since glaciers are typically much wider than rivers of similar length, and since they tend to erode more at their bases than their sides, they transform former V-shaped stream valleys into broad valleys that have relatively flat bottoms and steep sides with a distinctive “U” shape [5]. Little Cottonwood Canyon near Salt Lake City, Utah was occupied by a large glacier that extended down to the mouth of the canyon and into Salt Lake Valley [10]. Today, that canyon is the location of many erosional landforms including the U-shaped valley, as well as polished and striated rock surfaces. In contrast, river-carved canyons have a V-shaped profile when viewed in cross-section. Big Cottonwood Canyon, its neighbor to the north, has that V-shape in its lower parts, indicating that its glacier did not extend clear to its mouth but was confined to its upperparts.



Figure $\boldsymbol{NaN.5.5.1}$: The U-shape of the Little Cottonwood Canyon, Utah, as it enters into the Salt Lake Valley.. via Wikimedia Commons" width="483"



Figure $\boldsymbol{NaN.5.5.1}$: V-shaped Big Cottonwood Canyon, carved by a stream.

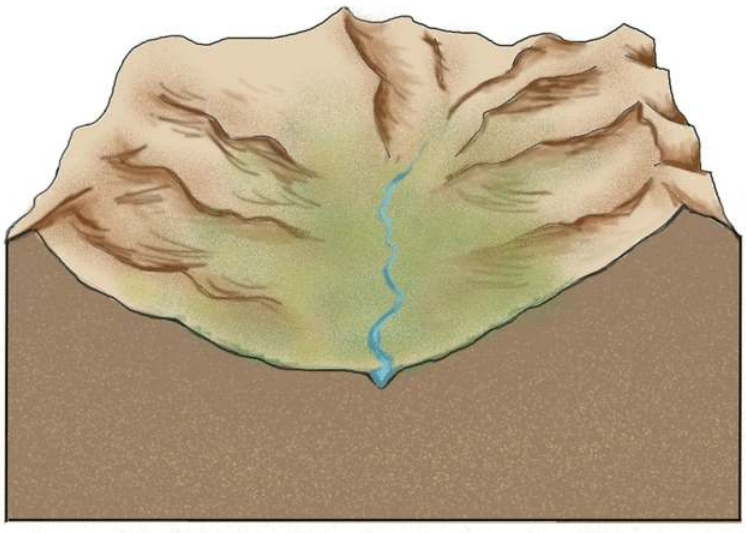


Figure $\boldsymbol{NaN.5.5.1}$: Formation of a glacial valley. Glaciers change the shape of the valley from a “V” shape to a “U”.

When two U-shaped valleys are adjacent to each other, the ridge between them can be carved into a sharp ridge called an **arête**. Since glaciers erode a broad valley, the arêtes are left behind with steep walls separating them. At the head of a glacially carved valley is a bowl-shaped feature called a **cirque** representing where the head of the glacier is eroding against the mountain by plucking rock away from it and the weight of the thick ice is eroding out a bowl. After the glacier is gone, the bowl at the bottom of the cirque is often occupied by a lake called a **tarn.** Headward cirque erosion by three or more mountain glaciers produces **horns,** which are steep-sided, spire-shaped mountains with pronounced cirques on three or more sides. Low points along arêtes or between horns (also mountain passes) are termed **cols**. When a smaller tributary glacier intersects a larger trunk glacier, the smaller glacier erodes down less. Therefore, once the ice has been removed, the tributary valley is left as a **hanging valley**, sometimes with a waterfall. Where the trunk glacier straightens and widens the former V-shaped valley and erodes the ends of side ridges, the result is a steep triangle-shaped cliff called a **truncated spur**.



Figure *NaN.5.5.1*: Cirque with Upper Thornton Lake in the North Cascades National Park, Washington. Photo by Walter Siegmund.. GFDL, CC-BY-SA-3.0 or CC BY 2.5], via Wikimedia Commons" width="556"



Figure *NaN.5.5.1*: An example of a horn, Kinnerly Peak, Glacier National Park, Montana. Photo by USGS.. via Wikimedia Commons" width="473"

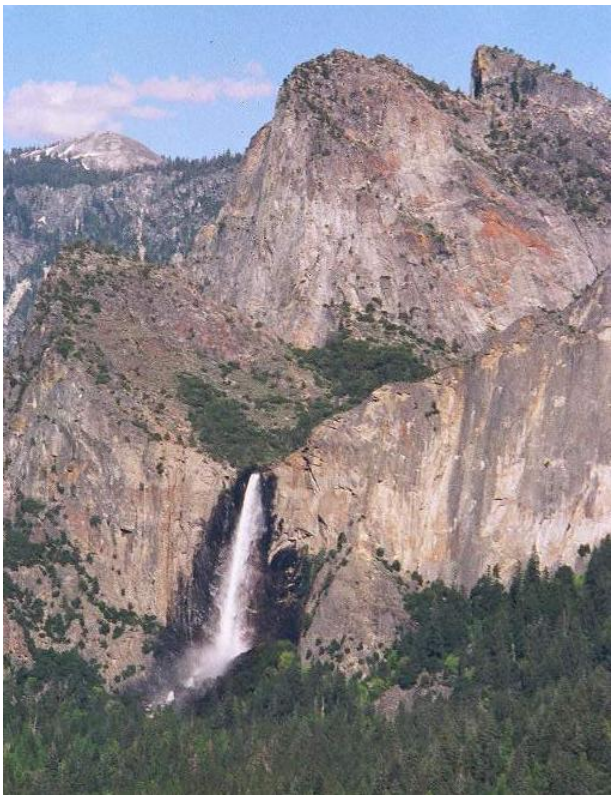


Figure ***NaN*.5.5.1**: Bridalveil Falls in Yosemite National Park, California, is a good example of a hanging valley.. CC BY-SA 1.0, GFDL or CC-BY-SA-3.0], via Wikimedia Commons" width="508"

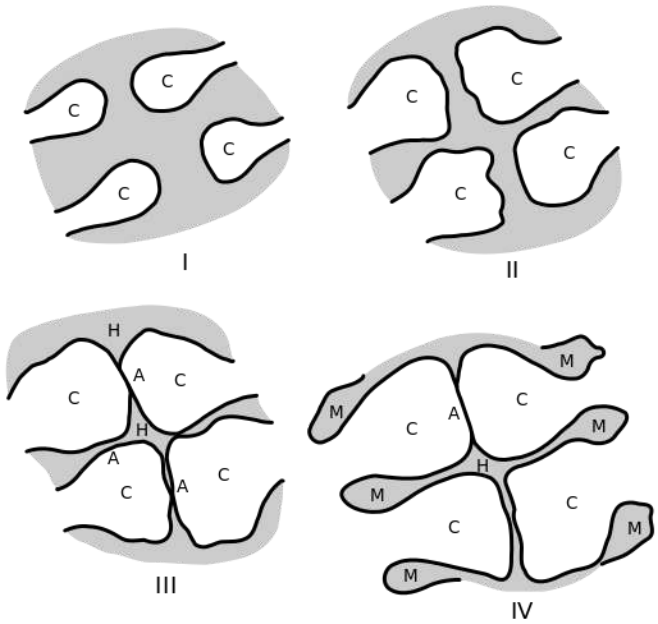


Figure ***NaN*.5.5.1**: Key: **A** = Arête, **C** = Cirque, **H** = Horn, **M** = Monument, Preglacial surface shaded

Stage Number	Stage Name	Description
I	Grooved Upland	Early-stage. Only cirques (C) developed at this point.
II	Early-Fretted Upland	Cirque (C) development moves headward, very much like a stream and headward erosion. Still no ridge-like glacial features.
III	Mature-Fretted Upland	Classic mountain glacial landscape. Horns (H) and Arêtes (A) have developed.
IV	Monumented Upland	Final stage of mountain glacial erosion. Erosion so extensive that monuments (M) of the mountain and knife-like ridges are some of the only features remaining.

Section 10.5.5.2 Depositional Glacial Landforms



Figure ***NaN*.5.5.1**: Boulder of diamictite of the Mineral Fork Formation, Antelope Island, Utah, United States.. via Wikimedia Commons" width="390"

Sediment is deposited by glaciers in both alpine and continental environments. Since ice is responsible for a large amount of erosion, there is a lot of sediment in glacial ice. When sediment is left behind by a melting glacier, it is called **till** and is characteristically poorly sorted with grain sizes ranging from clay and silt to subrounded pebbles and boulders, possibly striated. Many of the depositional landforms described in this section are composed of till. Lithified rocks of this type are sometimes referred to as **tillites**, though that implies an interpretation of glacial origin. A more objective and descriptive term is **diamictite**, meaning a rock with a wide range of clast sizes.

Material carried by the glacier is called **moraine**, which is an accumulation of glacial till produced by the grinding and erosive effects of a glacier. In valley glaciers, moraine also includes material falling on the sides of the glacier by mass wasting from the valley walls. The glacier acts like a conveyor belt, carrying sediment inside and on the ice and depositing it at the end and sides of the glacier. Because ice in the glacier is always flowing downslope, the deposited moraines build up even if the end of the glacier doesn't advance. The type of moraine depends on its location. A **terminal moraine** is a ridge of unsorted till at the maximum extent of a glacier or the farthest extent of a glacier [11]. When glaciers retreat in episodes, they may leave behind deposits called **recessional moraines**. The recessional moraines look similar to terminal moraines but are formed when the glacier retreat pauses. Moraines located along the side of a glacier are called **lateral moraines** and mostly represent material that fell on the sides of the glacier from the mass wasting of the valley walls. When two tributary glaciers join together, the two lateral moraines combine to

form a **medial moraine**. Behind the terminal and recessional moraines is a veneer (or thin sheet) of till on top of bedrock called the **till sheet** (or **ground moraine**).



Figure *NaN*.5.5.1: Lateral moraines of Little Cottonwood and Bell canyons, Utah.



Figure *NaN*.5.5.1: Medial moraines where tributary glaciers meet. At least seven tributary glaciers from upstream have joined to form the trunk glacier flowing on out of the upper left of the picture.

In addition to moraines, as glaciers melt they leave behind other depositional landforms. The intense grinding process creates a lot of silt. Streams of water melting from the glacier carry this silt (along with sand and gravel) and deposit it in front of the glacier in an area called an **outwash plain**. In addition, when glaciers retreat, they may leave behind large boulders of a type of rock that doesn't match the local bedrock. These are called **glacial erratics**. When continental glaciers melt, large blocks of ice can be left behind to melt within the impermeable till and can create a depression called a **kettle** that can be later filled with surface water like a **kettle lake**. As glaciers melt, the meltwater flows over the ice surface until it descends into crevasses, perhaps finding channels within the ice or continuing to the base of the glacier into channels along the bottom. Such streams located under continental glaciers carry sediment in a sinuous channel within or under the ice, similar to a river. When the ice recedes, the sediment remains as a long sinuous ridge known as an **esker**. Meltwater descending down through the ice or along the margins of the ice may deposit mounds of sediment that remain as hills called **kames**.



Figure ***NaN*.5.5.1**: A small group of Ice Age drumlins in Germany.

Also common in continental glacial areas of New York state and Wisconsin are drumlins. A **drumlin** is an elongated asymmetrical drop-shaped hill with its steepest side pointing upstream to the flow of ice and streamlined side (low angle side) pointing in the direction the ice is flowing.

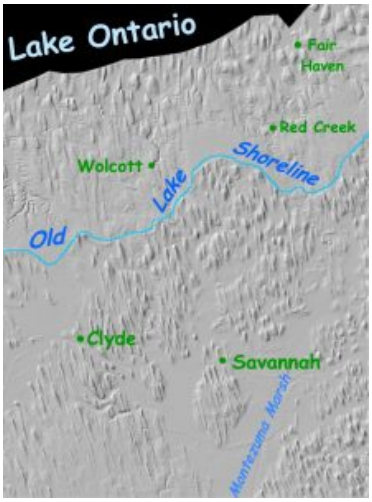
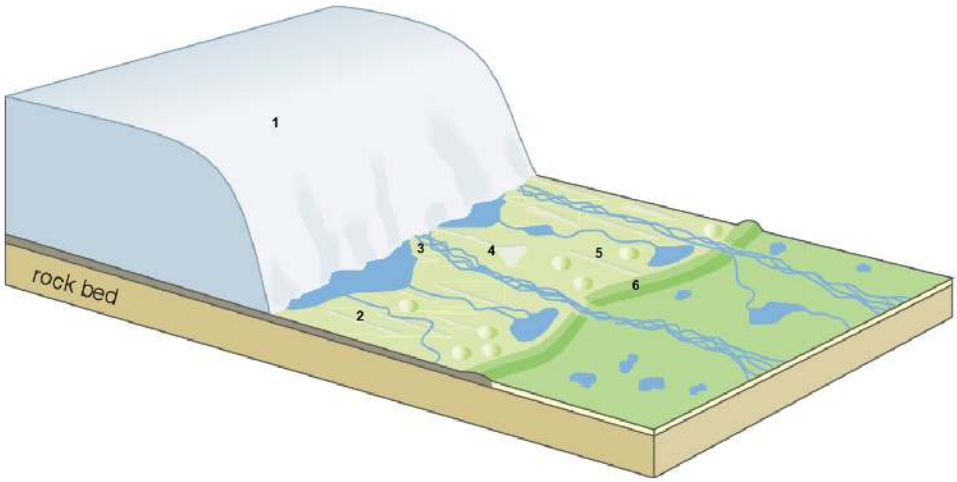


Figure ***NaN*.5.5.1**: Drumlin field in Wayne County, New York. Their shape indicates the glacier moved in a NNW to SSE direction.

Drumlins can occur in great numbers in drumlin fields. The origin of drumlins is still debated and some leading ideas are the incremental accumulation of till under the glacier, large catastrophic meltwater floods located under the glacier, and surface deformation by the weight of the overlying glacial ice [12; 13].



Number	Name	Note
1	Receding Glacier	Sheet of ice with a terminus that is moving back with time.
2	Ground Morraine	N/A
3	Esker	N/A
4	Esker	
5	Drumlin	N/A
6	Terminal Morraine	

Section 10.5.5.3 Glacial Lakes



Figure $NaN.5.5.1$: Tarn in a cirque.. CC BY-SA 4.0], via Wikimedia Commons" width="291"

Lakes are common features in alpine glacial environments. A lake that is confined to a glacial cirque is known as a **tarn** such as Silver Lake near Brighton Ski resort located in Big Cottonwood Canyon or Avalanche Lake in Glacier National Park. Tarns are common in areas of alpine glaciation because the thick ice that carves out a cirque also typically hollows out a depression in bedrock that after the glacier is gone, fills with precipitated water.



Figure ***NaN*.5.5.1**: Paternoster lakes

In some cases, recessional moraines may isolate a series of basins within a glaciated valley, and the resulting chain of lakes is called **paternoster lakes**.



Figure ***NaN*.5.5.1**: Satellite view of Finger Lakes region of New York

Lakes that occupy long glacially carved depressions are known as **finger lakes** [5].

In areas of continental glaciation, the crust is depressed isostatically by crustal loading from the weight of thick glacial ice. Basins are formed along the edges of continental glaciers (except for those that cover entire continents like Antarctica and Greenland), and these basins fill with glacial meltwater forming **proglacial lakes**. The classic example of a proglacial lake is Lake Agassiz, located mostly in Manitoba, Canada, with Lake Winnipeg serving as the remnant of the lake. Many such lakes, some of them huge, existed at various times along the southern edge of the Laurentide Ice Sheet.

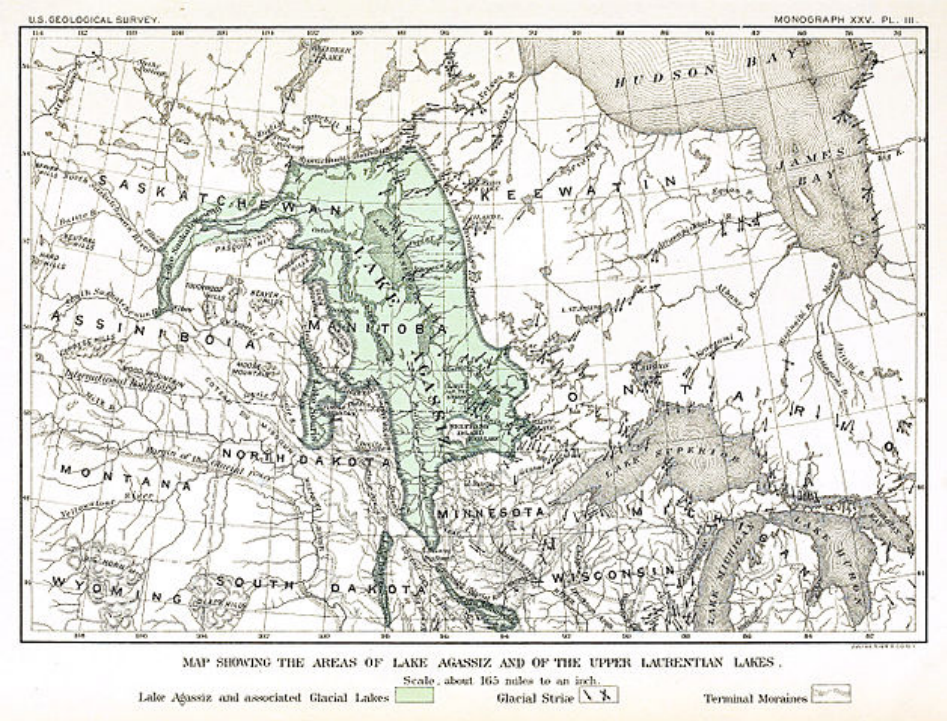


Figure ***NaN*.5.5.1**: Extent of Lake Agassiz

Other proglacial lakes formed when glaciers dammed rivers causing the valley to be flooded. The classic example is Glacial Lake Missoula, which formed in Idaho and Montana when the Clark Fork River was dammed by the ice sheet. During the latter part of the last glaciation about 18,000 years ago, the ice holding back Lake Missoula was breached enough to allow some of the lake water to start flowing out, which escalated into a massive and rapid outflow (over days to weeks) during which much of the volume of the lake drained along the valley of the Columbia River to the Pacific Ocean. The ice dam and the lake then formed again. It is estimated that this process of massive flooding happened at least 25 times over that span. In many cases, the rate of outflow was equivalent to the discharge of all of Earth's current rivers combined.



Figure ***NaN*.5.5.1**: View of Channeled Scablands in eastern Washington showing huge potholes and massive erosion

The landscape produced by these massive floods is preserved in the Channelled Scablands of Idaho, Washington, and Oregon [5].

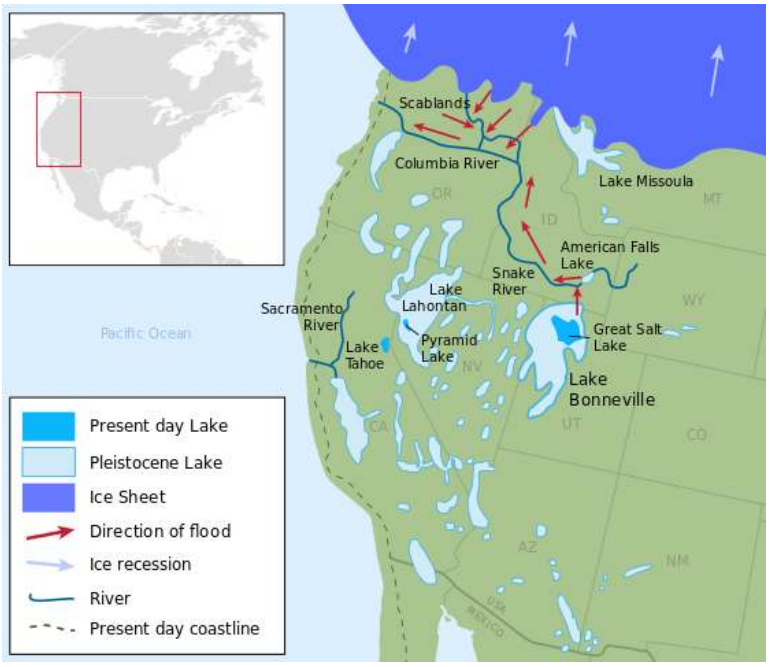


Figure ***NaN*.5.5.1**: Pluvial lakes in the western United States

During the last glaciation, most of the western United States had a cooler and wetter climate. Due to less evaporation and more precipitation, many large lakes formed in the basins of the Basin and Range Province called **pluvial lakes**. Two of the largest pluvial lakes were Lake Bonneville and Lake Lahontan. Lake Bonneville occupied much of western Utah and eastern Nevada (Figure from Miller et al 2013) and filled Salt Lake Valley, which is densely urbanized today, with water hundreds of feet deep. During the last glaciation, the level of the lake fluctuated many times leaving several pronounced old shorelines in the western portion of Utah including Salt Lake Valley identified by wave-cut terraces. Lake level peaked around 18,000 years ago [14] and spilled over Red Rock Pass in Idaho into the Snake River causing rapid erosion and a very large flood that rapidly lowered the lake level and scoured the land in Pocatello Valley, Snake River Plain, and Twin Falls Idaho. The flood ultimately flowed into the Columbia River across part of the scablands area and had an incredible discharge of about 4,750 km^3 [15] which is about the volume of Lake Michigan. This would be as if one of the Great Lakes completely emptied within days. Lake Lahontan existed at about the same time mostly in northwestern Nevada.



Figure ***NaN*.5.5.1**: The great lakes

The five great lakes in the upper Midwest of North America occupy five basins carved by the ice sheet in a large depression during the Ice Age and were exposed as the ice retreated about 14,000 years ago. They form a naturally interconnected body of freshwater that drains into the Atlantic through the St. Lawrence River. Emergent coastline features are forming on the lakes due to isostatic rebound since the ice retreated (see Chapter 12).

Section 10.5.5.4 References

5. Earle, S. *Physical geology OER textbook*. (BC Campus OpenEd, 2015).

10. Laabs, B. J. C. *et al.* Chronology of latest Pleistocene mountain glaciation in the western Wasatch Mountains, Utah, U.S.A. *Quat. Res.* **76**, 272–284 (2011).

11. Lewis, R. S. & Stone, J. R. Late Quaternary stratigraphy and depositional history of the Long Island Sound Basin: Connecticut and New York. *J. Coast. Res.* 1–23 (1991).

12. Englert, R. G. *et al.* Quantifying Eroded Sediment Volume during Drumlin Formation in Simcoe County. *Cartographica: The International Journal for Geographic Information and Geovisualization* **50**, 172–178 (2015).

13. Maclachlan, J. C. & Eyles, C. H. Quantitative geomorphological analysis of drumlins in the Peterborough drumlin field, Ontario, Canada. *Geogr. Ann. Ser. A. Phys. Geogr.* **95**, 125–144 (2013).

14. Miller, D. M., Oviatt, C. G. & Mcgeehin, J. P. Stratigraphy and chronology of Provo shoreline deposits and lake-level implications, Late Pleistocene Lake Bonneville, eastern Great Basin, USA. *Boreas* **42**, 342–361 (2013).

15. O'Connor, J. E. Hydrology, hydraulics, and geomorphology of the Bonneville flood. *Geological Society of America Special Papers* **274**, 1–84 (1993).

This page titled Section 10.5.5: Glacial Landforms is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Chris Johnson, Matthew D. Affolter, Paul Inkenbrandt, & Cam Mosher (OpenGeology) via source content that was edited to the style and standards of the LibreTexts platform.

- **14.5: Glacial Landforms** by Chris Johnson, Matthew D. Affolter, Paul Inkenbrandt, & Cam Mosher is licensed CC BY-NC-SA 4.0. Original source: https://opengeology.org/textbook/.

Section 10.5.6: Ice Age Glaciations

A **glaciation** (or ice age) occurs when the Earth's climate is cold enough that large ice sheets grow on continents. There have been four major, well-documented glaciations in Earth's history: one during the Archean-early Proterozoic (~2.5 billion years ago), another in late Proterozoic (~700 million years ago), another in the Pennsylvanian (323 to 300 million years ago), and the most recent Pliocene-Quaternary glaciation (Chapter 15). A minor glaciation that occurred around 440 million years ago in modern-day Africa is also mentioned by some authors. The best-studied glaciation is, of course, the most recent. The Pliocene-Quaternary glaciation is a series of many glacial cycles, possibly 18, during the last 2.5 million years. There is especially strong evidence for eight glacial advances within the last 420,000 years as recorded in the Antarctic ice core record [16]. The last of these, known in popular media as "The Ice Age" but known by geologists as the last glacial maximum, reached its height between 26,500 and 19,000 years ago [10; 17]. Follow this link to an **infographic** that illustrates the glacial and climate changes over the last 20,000 years ending with the human influences since the Industrial Revolution.

Section 10.5.6.1 Causes of Glaciations

Why do glaciations occur? The causes include both long-term and short-term factors. In the geologic sense, long-term means a scale of 10's to 100's of millions of years and short-term means a 100 to 200,000-year scale. Ideas about long-term causes of glaciations over geologic time include the positioning of continents near poles by plate tectonics and the Wilson Cycle and changes in ocean circulation due to re-positioning of the continents such as the closing of the Panama Strait. Short-term factors are more recognizable for the most recent Pliocene-Quaternary Glaciation and are most relevant to today's anthropogenic climate change, but may have taken place in the earlier glaciations.

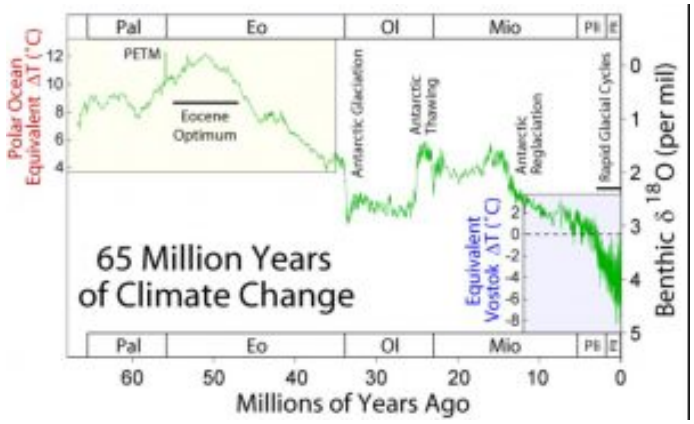
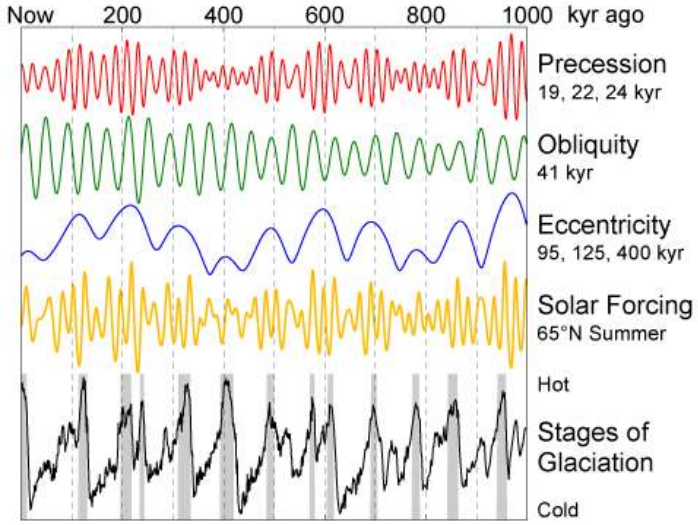
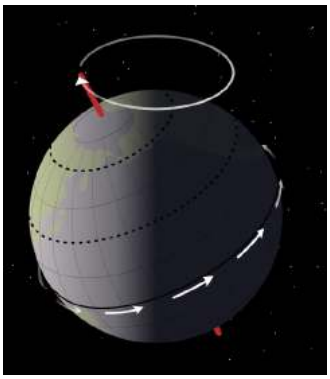
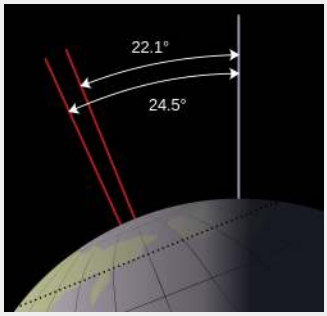
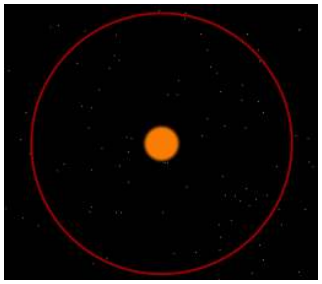


Figure *NaN*.5.6.1: Atmospheric CO_2 has declined during the Cenozoic from a maximum in the Paleocene-Eocene to its dramatic rise since the Industrial Revolution.

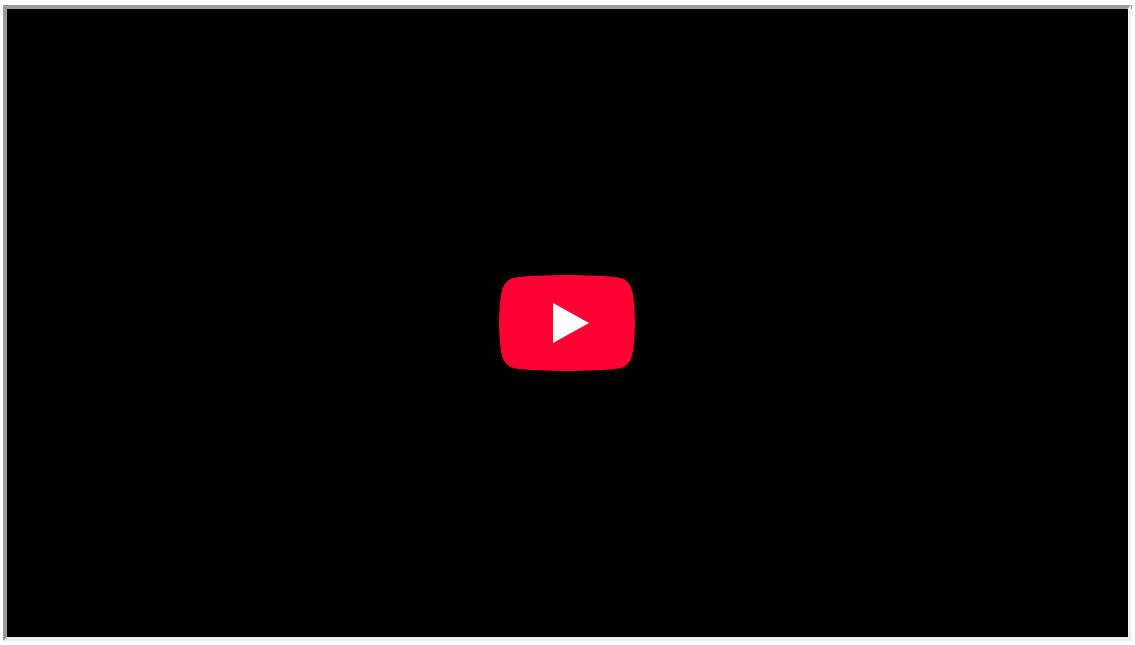
Short-term causes of glacial fluctuations are attributed to cycles in the rotational axis of the Earth and in Earth-Sun relations due to variations in the earth's orbit called **Milankovitch Cycles**. These cycles affect the amount of incoming solar radiation, and changes in carbon dioxide in the atmosphere. During the Cenozoic, carbon dioxide levels steadily decreased from a maximum in the Paleocene causing a gradual climatic cooling [18]. As the climate cooled, the effects of the Milankovitch Cycles began to influence climate with regular cycles of warming and cooling. Milankovitch Cycles are three orbital changes named after the Serbian astronomer Milutin Milankovitch. The three orbital changes are the wobbling of Earth's axis called **precession** with a span of 21,000 years, the angle of Earth's axis called **obliquity** with a span of about 41,000 years, and variations of the distance from the sun in Earth's orbit around the sun referred to as **eccentricity** with a span of 93,000 years [19]. These orbital changes created a glacial-interglacial cycle of 41,000 years from 2.5 to 1.0 million years ago and a longer cycle of ~100,000 years from 1.0 million years ago to today (for detail, see this **chart**). The combination of these three Milankovitch Cycles changes the angle at which the sun's energy strikes the surface of the earth near the poles and the amount of energy (insolation) received by Earth (for detail, see this **chart**). As the climate cooled during the Cenozoic Era, the subtle changes in energy received by the planet were expressed as a warmer and cooler climate cycle, thus the glacial-interglacial cycles.

This chart illustrates the effect of the Milankovitch Cycles.



Name	Illustration
Precession	
Obliquity	
Eccentricity	

This video summarizes ice ages: their characteristics and causes.

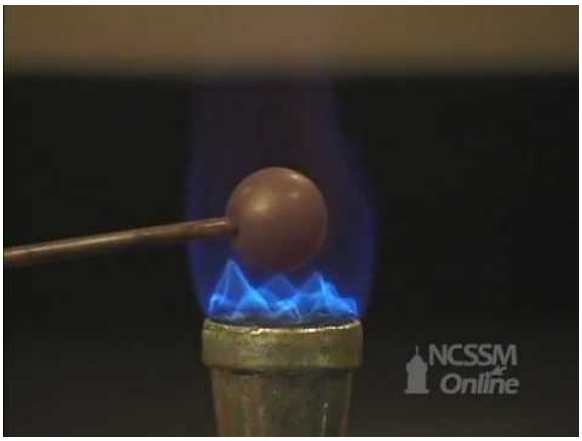




Section 10.5.6.2 Sea-Level Change and Isostatic Rebound

Since glaciers are ice located on land (not floating in the ocean), when glaciers melt and retreat two things happen, sea-level rises globally and the land rises locally due to isostatic rebound. Melting glacial water runs off into the ocean and sea-level worldwide will rise. For example, since the last glacial maximum about 19,000 years ago [17] sea-level has risen about 400 feet (125 meters) [20]. An overall global change in sea level is called **eustatic** sea-level change. More water in the ocean causes a eustatic sea-level rise. Another important factor causing eustatic sea-level rise is thermal expansion. According to basic physics, thermal expansion occurs when a solid, liquid, or gas expands in volume when the temperature increases. Watch this **30-second video** demonstrating thermal expansion with the classic brass ball and ring experiment. About half of the eustatic sea-level rise during the last century has been the result of thermal expansion, the rest from the melting of glaciers [21; 22].





However, tectonics and isostatic rebound can move the land up and down. The change of sea level as it relates to a more local continental landscape is called relative sea-level change. The relative sea-level change includes both the vertical movement of the eustatic sea-level and the vertical movement of land, so that the sea-level change is measured *relative* to the land. Therefore, if the land rises a lot and sea-level rises only a little, then the sea-level would appear to go down.

The lithosphere can move vertically as a result of two main processes, tectonics, and isostatic rebound. Tectonic uplift occurs when tectonic plates collide as discussed in the Plate Tectonics chapter. **Isostasy** describes the equilibrium that exists for the earth's lithosphere, where denser lithosphere "sinks" lower on top of the asthenosphere and less dense lithosphere "floats" higher on the asthenosphere. **Isostatic rebound** is when some weight is removed from the continental lithosphere causing it to "float" higher on the asthenosphere. Erosion can remove this weight very slowly or the relatively rapid removal of glaciers can remove a lot of weight in a short amount of time. Melting glaciers removes weight from the continental lithosphere causing it to rise or "rebound" from being previously depressed. Most glacial isostatic rebound is occurring where glaciers recently melted (19,000 years ago) such as Canada and Scandinavia. Glacial isostatic rebound causes the relative sea-level to fall or rise less quickly as seen from the land. Isostatic rebound also occurred in Utah when the water from Lake Bonneville was removed [23]. Isostatic rebound is still taking place wherever Ice Age ice or water bodies were present on continental surfaces. Its effects can be seen in terraces forming on river floodplains that cross these areas.

This map shows the rates of vertical crustal movement worldwide. Note that the greatest upward movement occurs in regions affected by recent glaciation, isostatic rebound. Also, note that crustal depression has also occurred in adjacent regions as subcrustal material displaced by isostatic lowering from the weight of the ice has flowed back in under the rebound.



Rates of isostatic rebound worldwide, greatest in regions of recent glaciation.

Section 10.5.6.3 References

10. Laabs, B. J. C. *et al*. Chronology of latest Pleistocene mountain glaciation in the western Wasatch Mountains, Utah, U.S.A. *Quat. Res.* **76**, 272–284 (2011).

16. Augustin, L. *et al*. Eight glacial cycles from an Antarctic ice core. *Nature* **429**, 623–628 (2004).

17. Clark, P. U. *et al*. The Last Glacial Maximum. *Science* **325**, 710–714 (2009).

18. McInerney, F. A. & Wing, S. L. The Paleocene-Eocene Thermal Maximum: A Perturbation of Carbon Cycle, Climate, and Biosphere with Implications for the Future. *Annu. Rev. Earth Planet. Sci.* **39**, 489–516 (2011).

19. Hays, J. D., Imbrie, J. & Shackleton, N. J. Variations in the Earth's Orbit: Pacemaker of the Ice Ages. *Science* **194**, 1121–1132 (1976).

20. Fleming, K. *et al*. Refining the eustatic sea-level curve since the Last Glacial Maximum using far- and intermediate-field sites. *Earth Planet. Sci. Lett.* **163**, 327–342 (1998).

21. Church, J. A. *et al*. Changes in sea level. , *in: J.T Houghton, Y. Ding, D.J. Griggs, M. Noguer, P.J. Van der Linden, X. Dai, K. Maskell, and C.A. Johnson (eds.): Climate Change 2001: The Scientific Basis: Contribution of Working Group I to the Third Assessment Report of the Intergovernmental Panel* 639–694 (2001).

22. Wigley, T. M. L. & Raper, S. C. B. Thermal expansion of sea water associated with global warming. *Nature* **330**, 127–131 (1987).

23.Max D Crittenden. New Data on the Isostatic Deformation of Lake Bonneville. *GEOLOGICAL SURVEY PROFESSIONAL PAPER 454-E* (1963).

This page titled Section 10.5.6: Ice Age Glaciations is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Chris Johnson, Matthew D. Affolter, Paul Inkenbrandt, & Cam Mosher (OpenGeology) via source content that was edited to the style and standards of the LibreTexts platform.

- **14.6: Ice Age Glaciations** by Chris Johnson, Matthew D. Affolter, Paul Inkenbrandt, & Cam Mosher is licensed CC BY-NC-SA 4.0. Original source: https://opengeology.org/textbook/.

Section 10.6: Waves and Wave Processes

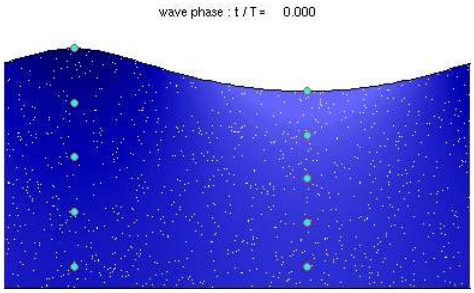


Figure *NaN*.6.1: Particle motion within a wind-blown wave.

Waves are created when wind blows over the surface of the water. Energy is transferred from wind to the water by friction and carried in the upper part of the water by waves. Waves move across the water surface with individual particles of water moving in circles, the water moving forward with the crest and moving backward in the trough. This can be demonstrated by watching the movement of a cork or some floating object as a wave passes.

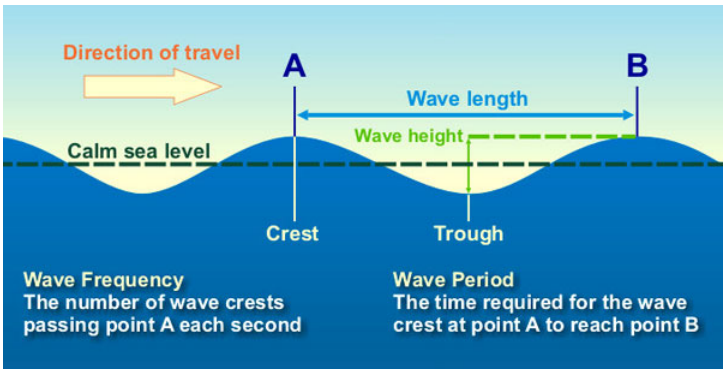


Figure *NaN*.6.1: Aspects of water waves, labeled.

Important terms to understand in the operation of waves include: **Wave crest** is the highest point of the wave; the **trough** is the lowest point of the wave. **Wave height** (equal to twice **wave amplitude**) is the vertical distance from the trough to the crest and depends on the amount of energy carried in the wave. Even before reaching shore, wave height increases with increasing wave energy. **Wavelength** is the horizontal distance between adjacent wave crests or corresponding features of the wave. **Wave velocity** is the speed by which a wave crest moves forward, which is also related to the energy carried by the wave. **Wave period** is the time interval it takes for adjacent wave crests to pass a given point.

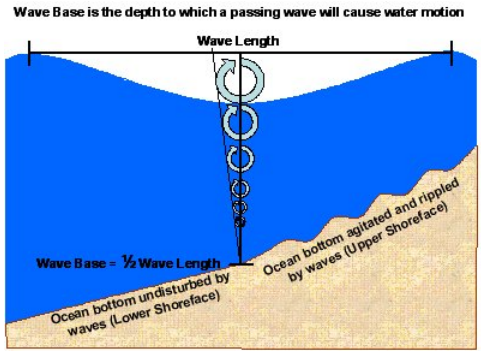


Figure *NaN*.6.1: Diagram describing the wave base.

The circular motion of water particles diminishes with depth and is negligible at about one-half wavelength, an important dimension to remember in connection with waves. The vertical reach of waves in the water is called the **wave base**. Looking at incoming waves at a beach, one will appreciate that most ocean waves have a wavelength on the order of a few tens of feet. Thus, seawater is typically disturbed by a wave motion to a depth of a few tens of feet. This is known as a **fair-weather wave base**. In

strong storms such as hurricanes, both wave length and the maximum depth of water disturbance increase dramatically. The effective depth to which waves can erode sediment is thus called a **storm wave base,** which is approximately 300 feet [1].

Waves are generated by wind blowing across the ocean surface. The amount of energy imparted to the water depends on the wind velocity and the distance across which the wind is blowing. This distance is called **fetch**. Waves striking a shore were typically generated hundreds of miles from the coast by storms and may have been traveling across the ocean for days.

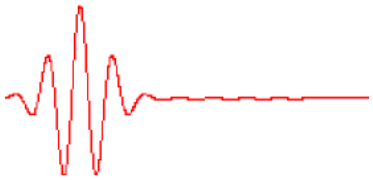


Figure ***NaN*.6.1**: Model of a wave train moving with dispersion.. via Wikimedia Commons" width="303px" height="174px"

Winds blowing in a relatively constant direction generate waves moving in that direction. Such a group of approximately parallel waves traveling together is called a **wave train**. As wave trains spread from different areas of generation, they may move in different directions and carry different amounts of energy. Interaction of these different wave trains produces the choppy sea surface seen in the open ocean. Also of interest is that many wave lengths are produced in a given wave train from a fetch region. Longer waves travel at a faster velocity than shorter wavelengths thus there is a sorting of wavelengths that takes place during travel of the wave train with the longer waves arriving first at a distant shore. This is a process called **wave dispersion**.

Section 10.6.1 Behavior of Waves Approaching Shore

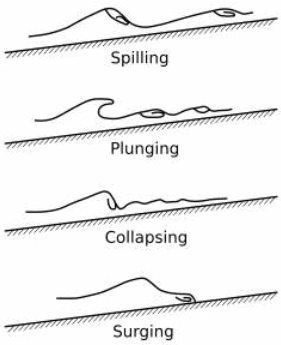


Figure ***NaN*.6.1**: Types of breakers. CC BY-SA 3.0 or GFDL], via Wikimedia Commons: This file is licensed under the Creative Commons Attribution-Share Alike 3.0 Unported license." width="238"

On the open sea, waves generally appear choppy because wave trains from many directions are interacting with each other. Where crests converge with other crests (called constructive interference) they add together producing peaks, a process referred to as wave amplification. Constructive interference of troughs produces hollows. Where crests converge with troughs, they cancel each other out (called destructive interference). As waves approach the shore and begin to make frictional contact with the seafloor (i.e., water depth is a half wavelength or less) they begin to slow down, but the energy carried by the wave remains the same so they build up higher. Remember that the water moves in a circular motion as the wave passes, with the water that feeds each circle being drawn from the trough in front of the advancing wave. As the wave encounters shallower water at the shore, there is eventually insufficient water in front of the wave to supply a complete circle, and the crest pours over creating a **breaker**.

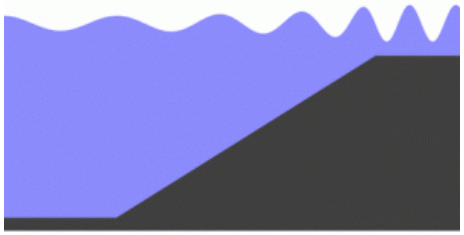


Figure ***NaN*.6.1**: All waves, like tsunamis, slow down as they reach shallow water. This causes the wave to increase in height.. GFDL or CC-BY-SA-3.0], via Wikimedia Commons" width="380px" height="199px"

A special type of wave is generated by any energetic event affecting the seafloor, such as earthquakes, submarine landslides, and volcanic eruptions. Such waves are called **tsunamis** and, in the case of earthquakes, are created when a portion of the seafloor is suddenly elevated by movement in the crustal rocks below that are involved in the earthquake. The water is suddenly lifted and a wave train spreads out in all directions from the mound carrying enormous energy and traveling very fast (hundreds of miles per hour). Tsunamis may pass unnoticed in the open ocean because the wavelength is very long and the wave height is very low. But as the wave train approaches the shore, each wave makes contact with the shallow seafloor, friction increases, and the wave slows down. Wave height builds up and the wave strikes the shore as a wall of water a hundred or more feet high. The massive wave may sweep inland well beyond the beach. This is called the tsunami runup, which destroys structures far inland. Tsunamis deliver a catastrophic blow to observers at the beach as the water in the trough in front of it is drawn back toward the tsunami wave, exposing the seafloor. Curious and unsuspecting people on the beach may run out to see exposed offshore sea life only to be overwhelmed when the breaking crest hits.

Section 10.6.2 Reference

1. Rich, J. L. THREE CRITICAL ENVIRONMENTS OF DEPOSITION, AND CRITERIA FOR RECOGNITION OF ROCKS DEPOSITED IN EACH OF THEM. *Geol. Soc. Am. Bull.* **62**, 1–20 (1951).

This page titled Section 10.6: Waves and Wave Processes is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Chris Johnson, Matthew D. Affolter, Paul Inkenbrandt, & Cam Mosher (OpenGeology) via source content that was edited to the style and standards of the LibreTexts platform.

- **12.1: Waves and Wave Processes** by Chris Johnson, Matthew D. Affolter, Paul Inkenbrandt, & Cam Mosher is licensed CC BY-NC-SA 4.0. Original source: https://opengeology.org/textbook/.

Section 10.7: Shoreline Features

Many different erosional and depositional features exist in the high energy of the coast. The **coast** or **coastline** includes all parts of the land-sea boundary area that are directly affected by the sea. This includes land far above high tide and well below normal wave base. But the **shore** or **shoreline** itself is the direct interface between water and land that migrates with the tides and with deposition and erosion of sediment. Processes at the shoreline are called **littoral** processes.

Section 10.7.1 Shoreline Zones

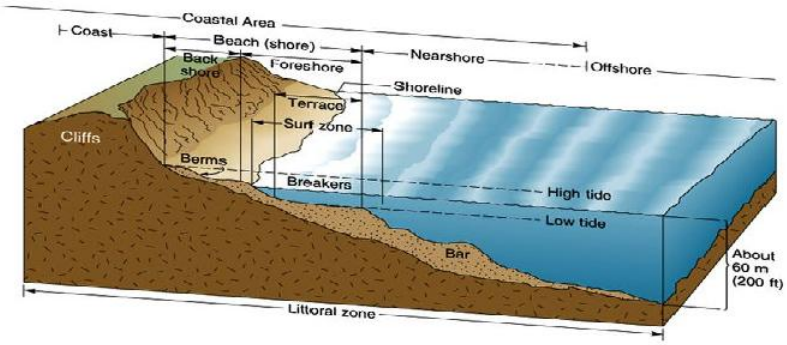


Figure $NaN.7.1$: Diagram of zones of the shoreline.

Shoreline zones can be viewed by looking at the beach profile, which is divided into four primary zones – offshore, nearshore, foreshore, and backshore. The **offshore** is below any shoreline-derived process but is still geologically active due to cascading sands of turbidites and deeper currents (with deposits called contourites). The **nearshore** is affected by the waves, i.e., that part of the shore where water depth is a half wavelength or less. The width of this zone thus depends on the maximum wavelength of the approaching wave train and with the slope of the seafloor. The nearshore area, when looking at rocks deposited in this zone, is typically called the **shoreface**, and is broken into two segments: upper shoreface, which is affected by everyday wave action, typically consisting of finely-laminated and cross-bedded sand, and lower shoreface, the area only moved by storm waves, which has hummocky cross-stratified sand. The **surf zone** is where the waves break. The area (mostly overlapping the surf zone) that is periodically wet and dry, because of wave action and tides, is called the **foreshore**, which is made of planer-laminated, well-sorted sand.

The **beach face** is where the swash of the breaking wave runs up and the backwash flows back down. Above the beach face are low ridges called **berms**. During the summer in North America, when most people visit the beach, the zone of footprints and beach umbrellas is the **summer berm**. Wave energy is typically lower in the summer, which allows sand to be piled onto the beach. Behind the summer berm is commonly a low ridge of sand representing the **winter berm**. Beachgoers walk across this winter berm from the parking lot to the summer berm where they park their items. Higher winter storm energy moves the summer berm sand off the beach and piles it in the near from which it will be replaced next year as it is moved back onto the summer berm. There may be a zone of dunes behind the berms representing sand blown behind the beach by onshore winds. This area behind the berms that is always above the ocean in normal conditions is known as the **backshore**. Shorelines are actually simplified for this discussion; they are a dynamic and geologically-complicated place.

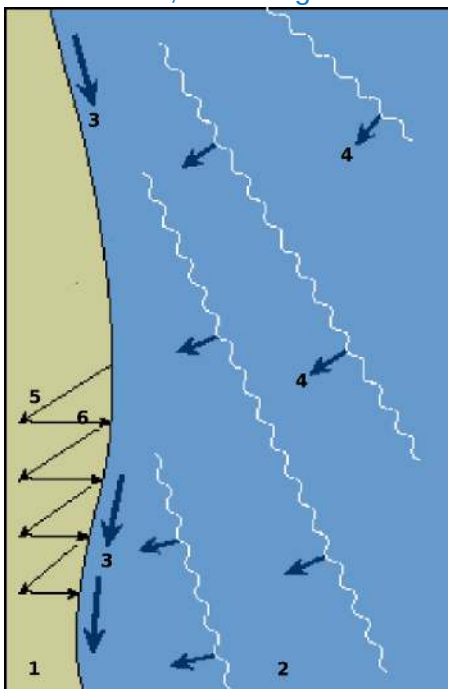


Figure ***NaN*.7.1**: Longshore Drift. 1=beach, 2=sea, 3=longshore current direction, 4=incoming waves, 5=swash, 6=backwash

As waves enter shallower water, they slow down. Waves usually approach the shoreline at an angle, with one end of the waves of the train slowing down first. This causes the waves to bend toward the beach. Such bending of the waves as they enter shallower water is called **wave refraction**, which produces the appearance from the beach that waves are approaching the beach face generally straight on, parallel to the beach. However, refracted waves on average approach the shoreline at somewhat of an angle creating a slight difference between the swash as it moves up the beach face and the backwash as it flows back down. This results in a net movement of the water along the beach creating a current called the **longshore current**. Sand stirred up by waves in the surf zone is thus moved along the shore by **longshore drift**. Longshore drift along both the west and east coasts of North America moves sand on average from north to south.



Figure ***NaN*.7.1**: Farewell Spit, New Zealand. via Wikimedia Commons" width="373px" height="240px"

Longshore drift can be carried down the coast until it reaches a bay or inlet where it begins to deposit in the quieter water. Here, a **spit** begins to form. As the spit grows, it may extend across the mouth of the bay forming a **baymouth bar**. Where the bay or inlet serves as the anchorage for boats, such spit growth and baymouth bars are a severe inconvenience. Communities thus affected attempt measures to keep their harbor open.



Figure ***NaN*.7.1**: Jetties near Carlsbad, California. Notice the left jetty is loaded with sand, while the right jetty is lacking sand. This is due to the longshore drift going left to right.

One means to do this is a **jetty**, often built of concrete or large stones, forming a long barrier to deflect the sand away from the harbor mouth or other ocean waterways in which transport is desired. If the jetty does not succeed in deflecting the sand far enough out, it may continue to flow along the shore, building a spit around the end of the jetty. A more expensive but effective method is then to dredge the sand from the growing spit, put it on barges, and deliver it back to the drift downstream of the harbor opening. An even more expensive (but effective) means is to install large pumps and pipes to draw in the sand upstream of the harbor, pump it through pipes, and discharge it back into the drift downstream of the harbor mouth. Because natural processes are at work continuously, human efforts to mitigate inconveniences are sometimes not equal to the task or require ongoing modifications. The community of Santa Barbara, California, tried several methods to keep their harbor open before settling on pumps and piping [2].

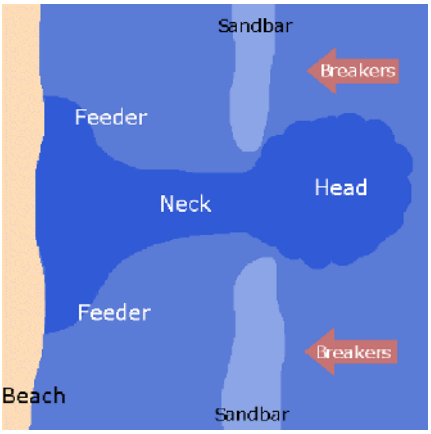


Figure ***NaN*.7.1**: Animation of rip currents.

Another coastal phenomenon related to longshore currents is the presence of **rip currents**. These involve the nearshore configuration of the seafloor and/or the arrival of wave trains straight onto the shore**.** In areas where wave motion pushes water directly toward the beach face, or the shape of the nearshore seafloor refracts and focuses the water movement toward a point on the beach, the water piling up there must find an outlet back to the sea. The outlet is provided by relatively narrow rip currents that carry the water directly away from the beach. Swimmers caught in such currents find themselves being carried out to sea. They may attempt to return to shore by swimming directly against the current. This is generally a fruitless effort because they tire against the strong current. A better solution is to ride it out to where it dissipates, then swim around it and return to the beach or swim laterally, parallel to the beach, until out of the current, then return to the beach. Awareness of the presence of rip currents with a plan is the key or avoid them altogether.

Section 10.7.3 Emergent and Submergent Coasts



Figure ***NaN*.7.1**: Island Arch, a sea arch in Victoria, Australia.. CC BY-SA 3.0 or GFDL], via Wikimedia Commons" width="393px" height="139px"

Coastlines that have a relative fall in sea level, either caused by tectonics or sea level change, are called **emergent**. Where the shoreline is rocky, perhaps with a sea cliff, waves refracting around headlands attack the rocks behind the point of the headland.



Figure ***NaN.7.1***: This tombolo, called “Angel Road,” connects the stack of Shodo Island, Japan.. GFDL, CC-BY-SA-3.0 or CC BY 2.5], via Wikimedia Commons" width="300"

They may cut out the rock at the base forming a sea arch which may collapse to isolate the point as a **stack.** Rocks behind the stack may be eroded away and sand eroded from the point collects behind it forming a **tombolo**, a sand strip that connects the stack to the shoreline. Where sand supply is low, wave energy may erode a **wave-cut platform** across the surf zone, exposed as a bare rock with tidal pools at low tide. Wave energy expended at the base of a sea cliff may cut a **wave notch**.



Figure ***NaN.7.1***: Wave notches carved by Lake Bonneville, Antelope Island, Utah.. via Wikimedia Commons" width="359px" height="124px"

Sea cliffs tend to be persistent features as the waves cut away at their base and higher rocks calve off by mass wasting. If the coast is emergent, these erosional features may be elevated relative to the wave zone. Wave-cut platforms become marine **terraces**, perhaps with remnant sea cliffs inland from them.



Figure ***NaN.7.1***: Landsat image of Chesapeake Bay, eastern United States. Note the barrier islands parallel to the coastline.. via Wikimedia Commons" width="372px" height="278px"

Tectonic subsidence or sea level rise produces a **submergent** coast. Features associated with the submergent coasts include estuaries, bays and river mouths flooded by the higher water. **Fjords** are former glacial valleys now flooded by post-Ice Age sea level rise (see chapter 14). Elongated bodies of sand called **barrier islands** form parallel to the shoreline from the old beach sands, often isolated from the mainland by lagoons behind them [3]. The formation of barrier islands is controversial; some workers believe as above that barrier islands were formed by rising sea level as the ice sheets melted after the last ice age. Accumulation of spits and far offshore bar formations are also mentioned as possible formation hypotheses for barrier islands.

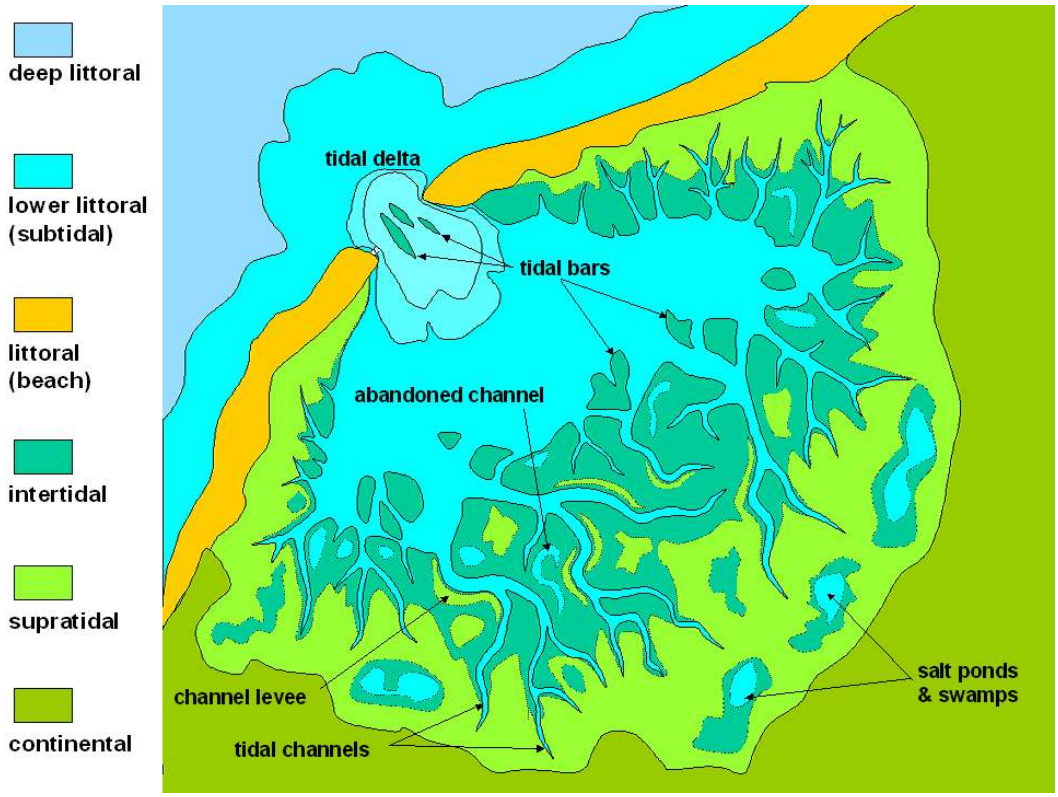


Figure *NaN*.7.1: General diagram of a tidal flat and associated features.

Tidal flats or mudflats form where tides alternately flood and expose low areas along the coast. Combinations of symmetrical ripple marks, asymmetrical ripple marks from tidal currents, and mud cracks from drying form on these flats. An example of ancient tidal flat deposits is exposed in the Precambrian strata found in the central part of the Wasatch Mountains of Utah. These ancient deposits provide an example of applying Hutton's Uniformity Principle. The presence of features common on modern tidal flats prompts the interpretation that these ancient deposits were formed in a similar environment. There were shorelines, tides, and shoreline processes acting at that time, yet the age of the ancient rocks indicates that there were no land plants to hold products of mechanical weathering in place so rates of erosion would have been different. The Uniformity Principle must be applied with some knowledge of the context of the application.

Typically tidal flats are broken into three different sections, which may be abundant or absent in each individual tidal flat. Barren zones are areas with strong, flowing water and coarser sediment, with ripples and cross-bedding common. Marshes are vegetated with common sand and mud. Salt pans are the finest-grained parts of the tidal flats, with silty sediment, mud cracks, and are less often submerged [4].



Figure *NaN*.7.1: Kara-Bogaz Gol lagoon, Turkmenistan.

Lagoons are locations where spits, barrier islands, or other features have partially cut off a body of water from the ocean. **Estuaries** are a (typically vegetated) type of lagoon where freshwater is flowing into the area as well, making the water **brackish**

(between salt and freshwater). However, terms like a lagoon, estuary, and even bay are often loosely used in place of one another [5]. Lagoons and estuaries are certainly transitional between terrestrial and marine geologic environments, where littoral, lacustrine, and fluvial processes can overlap.

Section 10.7.4 Human Impact on Coastal Beaches

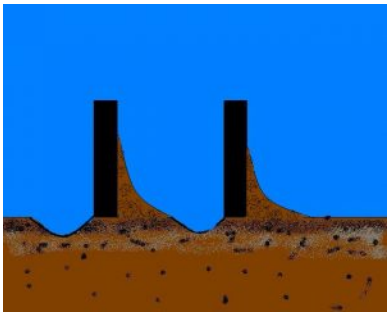


Figure ***NaN.7.1***: Groins gathering sediment from longshore drift.. CC BY-SA 3.0], via Wikimedia Commons" width="321px" height="257px"

Coasts are prime real estate land that attracts the development of beach houses, condominiums, and hotels. This kind of interest and investment leads to ongoing efforts to manage the natural processes in coastal areas. Humans who find longshore drift is removing sand from their beaches often use **groins** (also spelled groyne) in an attempt to retain it.



Figure ***NaN.7.1***: Groin system on a coast in Virginia

Similar but smaller than jetties, groins are bits of wood or concrete built across the beach perpendicular to the shoreline at the downstream end of one's property. Unlike jetties, they are used to preserve sand on a beach, rather than to divert it from an area. Sand erodes on the downstream side of the groin and collects against the upstream side. Every groin thus creates the need for another one downstream. The series of groins along a beach develops a scalloped appearance for the shoreline.

Sand for longshore drift and beaches comes from rivers flowing to the oceans from inland areas. Beaches may become starved of sand if sediment carried by streams and rivers is trapped behind dams. To mitigate this, **beach replenishment** may be employed where sand is hauled in from other areas by trucks or barges and dumped on the depleted beach. Unfortunately, this can disrupt the ecosystem that exists along the shoreline by exposing native creatures to foreign sandy material and foreign microorganisms and can even bring in foreign objects that impact humans on replenished beaches. Visitors to one replenished east coast beach found munitions and metal shards in the sand which had been brought from abandoned test ranges from which the sand had been dredged [6].



Figure ***NaN*.7.1**: A tombolo has formed behind the breakwater at Venice, CA. No restrictions], via Wikimedia Commons" width="240px" height="264px"

Another approach to reduce erosion or provide protected areas for boat anchoring is the construction of a **breakwater**, an offshore structure against which the waves break, leaving calmer waters behind it. Unfortunately, this means that waves can no longer reach the beach to keep the longshore drift of sand moving. The drift is interrupted, the sand is deposited in the quieter water, and the shoreline builds out forming a tombolo behind the breakwater, eventually covering the structure with sand [7]. The image shows this result at the breakwater constructed by the city of Venice, California in an attempt to create a quiet water harbor. The tombolo behind the breakwater is now acting as a large groin in the beach drift.

Section 10.7.5 Submarine Canyons

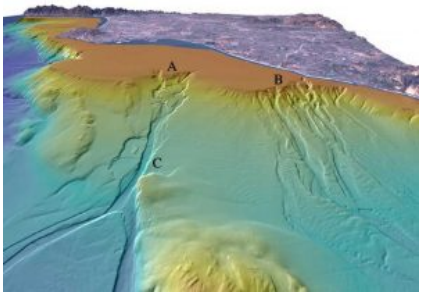


Figure ***NaN*.7.1**: Submarine canyons off of Los Angeles. A=San Gabriel Canyon, B=Newport Canyon. At point C, the canyon is 815 m wide and 25 m deep.. via Wikimedia Commons" width="346px" height="246px"

Submarine canyons are narrow and deep canyons located in the marine environment on continental shelves. They typically form at the mouths of large landward river systems, both by cutting down into the continental shelf during times of low sea level and also by continual material slumping or flowing down from the mouth of the river or a delta. Underwater currents rich in sediment pass through the canyons, erode them and drain onto the ocean floor. Steep delta faces and underwater flows of sediments are released down the continental slope as underwater landslides, called **turbidity flows**. The erosive action of this type of flow continues to cut the canyon and eventually fan-shaped deposits develop on the ocean floor beyond the continental slope [8]. See chapter 5.5.2 for more information.

Section 10.7.6 References

2. Runyan, K. & Griggs, G. Implications of Harbor Dredging for the Santa Barbara Littoral Cell. in *California and the World Ocean '02* 121–135 (American Society of Civil Engineers, 2005).

3. Davis, R. A., Jr. & Fitzgerald, D. M. *Beaches and coasts*. (John Wiley & Sons, 2009).

4. Reineck, H.-E. & Singh, I. B. *Depositional sedimentary environments: with reference to terrigenous clastics*. (Springer Science & Business Media, 2012).

5. Davis, R. A. *The evolving coast*. (Scientific American Library New York, 1997).

6. Greene, P., Follett, G. & Henker, C. Munitions and dredging experience on the United States coast. *Mar. Technol. Soc. J.* **43**, 127–131 (2009).

7. Jackson, N. L., Harley, M. D., Armaroli, C. & Nordstrom, K. F. Beach morphologies induced by breakwaters with different orientations. *Geomorphology* **239**, 48–57 (2015).

8. Normark, W. R. & Carlson, P. R. Giant submarine canyons: Is size any clue to their importance in the rock record? *Geological Society of America Special Papers* **370**, 175–190 (2003).

This page titled Section 10.7: Shoreline Features is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Chris Johnson, Matthew D. Affolter, Paul Inkenbrandt, & Cam Mosher (OpenGeology) via source content that was edited to the style and standards of the LibreTexts platform.

- **12.2: Shoreline Features** by Chris Johnson, Matthew D. Affolter, Paul Inkenbrandt, & Cam Mosher is licensed CC BY-NC-SA 4.0. Original source: https://opengeology.org/textbook/.

CHAPTER OVERVIEW

Chapter 11: Deserts

Learning Objectives

- Distinguish three broad categories of deserts.
- Explain the location of deserts
- Identify and describe desert landforms.
- Explain how desert landforms are formed by erosion and deposition.
- Describe the main types of sand dunes and the conditions that form them.

Approximately 30 percent of Earth's terrestrial surface is desert. Deserts are defined as locations of low precipitation. While temperature extremes are often associated with deserts, they do not define them. The lack of moisture, including the lack of humidity and cloud cover, allow temperature extremes to occur. The sun's energy is more absorbed by the Earth's surface without cloud cover, and nighttime cooling is more drastic without cloud cover and humidity to absorb the emitted heat, so temperature extremes are common in deserts.

Section 11.1: Prelude to Deserts
Section 11.2: The Origin of Deserts
Section 11.3: Desert Weathering and Erosion
Section 11.4: Desert Landforms

This page titled Chapter 11: Deserts is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Chris Johnson, Matthew D. Affolter, Paul Inkenbrandt, & Cam Mosher (OpenGeology) via source content that was edited to the style and standards of the LibreTexts platform.

Section 11.1: Prelude to Deserts



Figure *Section*11.1.1: A playa filled with evaporite minerals (such as gypsum) erodes and forms ripple-covered dunes in White Sands National Monument, New Mexico.

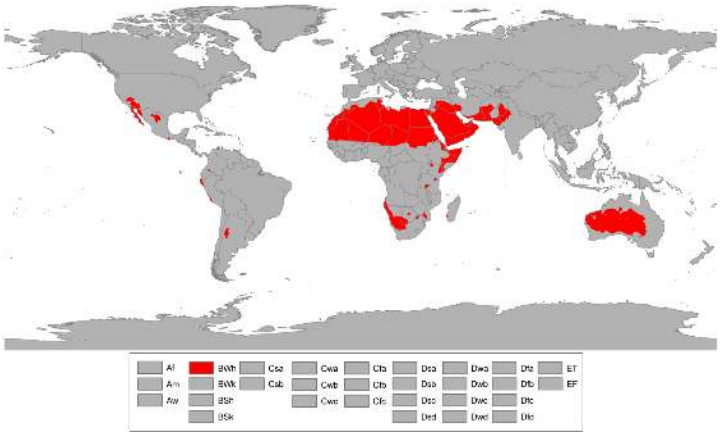


Figure *Section*11.1.1: World hot deserts (Koppen BWh)

The location of climates on Earth's surface is not random. Jungles, tundras, and deserts have scientific explanations for their locations. Approximately 30 percent of Earth's terrestrial surface is desert. Deserts are defined as locations of low precipitation. While temperature extremes are often associated with deserts, they do not define them. The lack of moisture, including the lack of humidity and cloud cover, allow temperature extremes to occur. The sun's energy is more absorbed by the Earth's surface without cloud cover, and nighttime cooling is more drastic without cloud cover and humidity to absorb the emitted heat, so temperature extremes are common in deserts.

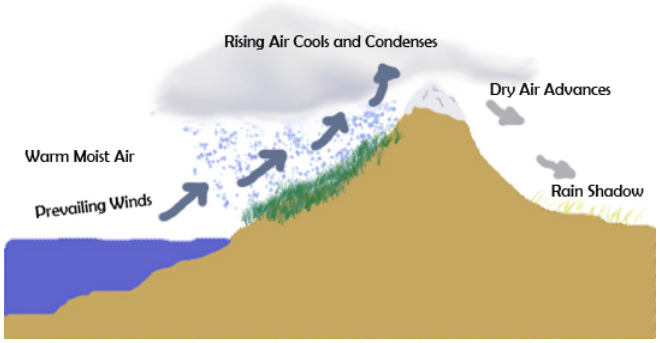


Figure *Section*11.1.1: Diagram of rain shadow.

Deserts tend to occur at latitudes of around 30° and at the poles, both north and south, driven by circulation and prevailing wind patterns in the atmosphere. At approximately 30° north and south of the equator, sinking air produces **trade wind deserts** like the Sahara and the Outback of Australia [1]. **Rainshadow deserts** are produced where prevailing winds with moist air dries as it is forced to rise over mountains.



Figure *Section*11.1.1: In this image from the ISS, the Sierra Nevada Mountains are perpendicular to prevailing westerly winds, creating a rain shadow to the east (down in the image). Note the dramatic decrease in snow on the Inyo Mountains.. via Wikimedia Commons" width="300"

The Western Interior Desert of North America and the Atacama Desert of Chile (the driest warm desert on earth) are examples of rain shadow deserts. Finally, **polar deserts**, such as the vast areas of the Antarctic and Arctic are covered by sinking cold air which is usually too cold to hold much moisture. Though covered with ice and snow, the average annual precipitation is very low, with Antarctica being Earth's driest continent.

Section 11.1.1 References

1. Walker, A. S. *Deserts: geology and resources*. (Government Printing Office, 1996).

Section 11.1: Prelude to Deserts is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

- **13.1: Prelude to Deserts** is licensed CC BY-NC-SA 4.0.

Section 11.2: The Origin of Deserts

Section 11.2.1 Atmospheric Circulation

The engine that drives circulation in the atmosphere and oceans is solar energy which is determined by the average position of the sun over the earth's surface. Direct light provides uneven heating depending on latitude and angle of incidence, with high solar energy in the tropics, and little or no energy at the poles. Atmospheric circulation and geographic location are the primary causal agents of deserts.

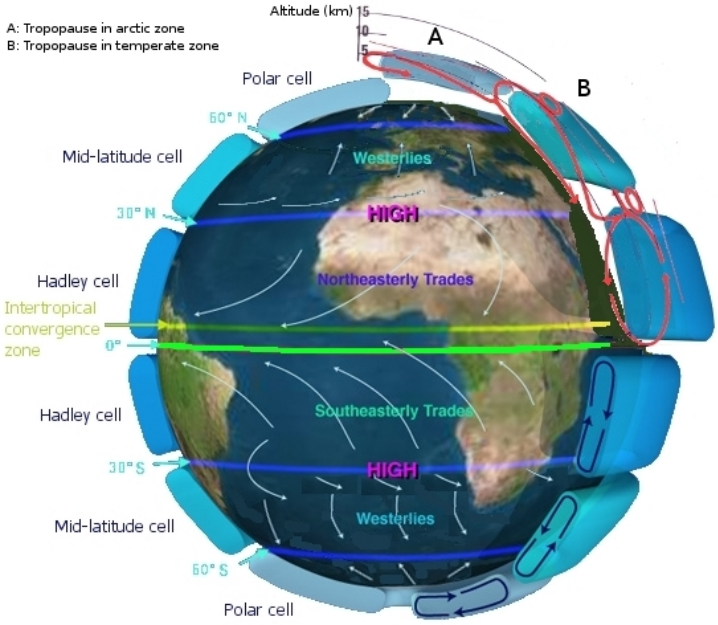


Figure ***Section*11.2.1**: Generalized atmospheric circulation

The figure shows the generalized circulation of the atmosphere. There are three generalized circulating cells of rising and sinking air called the **Hadley Cell**, the **Ferrel** or **Midlatitude Cell**, and the **Polar Cell**. Solar energy falling on the equatorial belt heats the air and causes it to rise. The rising air cools and its contained moisture falls back on the tropics as rain. The drier air then continues to spread toward the north and south where it collides with the Ferrel Cell and they sink back at about 30 degrees north and south latitudes. This sinking drier air creates belts of predominant high pressure along which desert conditions prevail in what are called the "horse latitudes." These belts of predominantly high pressure have air that descends along these belts and flows either north to become the westerlies or south to become the trade winds. These circulation cells in the atmosphere rising in the tropics and polar regions and sinking in the horse latitudes produce the desert belts along the horse latitudes at approximately 30 degrees north and south of the equator [2]. Note the arrows indicating general directions of winds in the latitude zones. The trade winds are predominant in the tropics and the westerlies in the mid-latitudes.



Figure ***Section*11.2.1**: USGS Map of the Great Basin Desert.. via Wikimedia Commons" width="347px" height="305px"

Other deserts have other atmospheric phenomena to owe (at least part of) their origin, like the desert of Utah, Nevada, and the surrounding areas called the **Great Basin Desert** [3]. This desert, while having some sinking air effects due to global circulation, is also a rain shadow desert produced as moist air from the Pacific rises by orthographic lifting over the Sierra Nevada (and other) Mountains and loses moisture from previous condensation and precipitation on the rainy side of the range(s).



Figure ***Section*11.2.1**: Map of the Atacama desert (yellow) and surrounding related climate areas (orange).. CC BY-SA 3.0 or GFDL], via Wikimedia Commons" width="230px" height="322px"

One of the driest places on earth is the **Atacama Desert** of northern Chile [4]. This is a strip along the west coast of South America, west of the Andes, lying north of 30 degrees south latitude, at the southern edge of the trade wind belt. Warm moist air moves west across the Amazon basin and rises over the Andes where it loses moisture, its precipitation falling on the rain forest side of the mountains. Once over the mountains, it descends onto the Atacama where it meets air cooled by the cold Peru (Humboldt) ocean current flowing north along the coast. This is considered to be the driest (non-polar) place on earth with locations in the Atacama having not received any precipitation for periods of years [5].

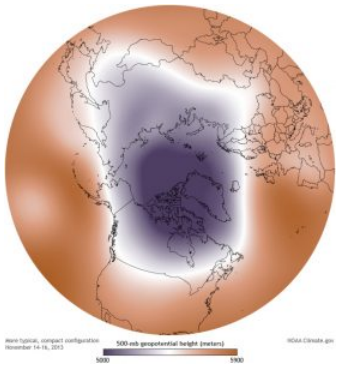
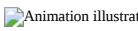


Figure ***Section*11.2.1**: The polar vortex of mid-November, 2013. This cold, descending air (shown in purple) is characteristic of polar circulation.. via Wikimedia Commons" width="277"

Referring again to the figure above, note that the polar regions are also predominantly high-pressure areas of descending cold and dry air. Another circulation cell occurs there known as the **Polar Cell** [6]. Here, air not only descends convectively because it is cold, but cold air can hold much less moisture than warm air, and thus the driest and coldest places on Earth are the polar deserts. Antarctica is not only currently the driest land on Earth today, but any land that occupies the poles in Earth history should always be dry.

Section 11.2.2 Coriolis Effect


Animation illustrating a ball thrown on a rotating disc from the center to the edge. Viewed from the perspective of a stationary viewer on the disc, it appears to follow a curved path.GFDL or CC-BY-SA-3.0], via Wikimedia Commons" width="200" src="/@api/deki/files/7714/13.2_Corioliskraftanimation.gif">

In a non-rotating Earth, air would rise at the equator, sink at the poles, creating one circulation cell. However, as noted above, Earth has three cells. Why? As objects move on a rotating sphere, an effect called the **Coriolis Effect** occurs which causes a deflection in the motion. In the northern hemisphere, this deflection is to the right; in the southern hemisphere, it is to the left. This has two consequences on masses of air (and water) moving on the earth. The lower air in the Hadley Cells moves toward the equator over the earth's surface. This air is deflected to the right in the northern hemisphere and to the left in the southern hemisphere creating

the **trade winds** that carried European explorers to South America and the Caribbean. The midlatitude cells move surface air north toward the pole in the northern hemisphere (and south in the southern hemisphere) from the horse latitudes which is deflected again to the right (or left in the southern) producing the zone of **westerlies**. High above the Earth, the rising air from the equator would attach to the sinking air at the poles, but again, it is deflected, causing instead sinking air at 30° and rising at 60°. This splits the circulation into three cells instead of one.

To understand the Coriolis Effect, first consider motion along the meridians (the lines connecting the poles and running north-south). The earth rotates toward the east, i.e. everything on Earth moves at an eastward speed depending on its latitude. At a given latitude, objects possess a certain momentum of that motion depending on the length of the radius from its latitude to the rotational axis of the Earth. In the northern hemisphere, if the object is moving north, it has greater momentum toward the east than other objects at the new more northerly latitude. If it moves south, it has less momentum than other objects at that new more southerly latitude. It, therefore, tends to move to the right compared to fixed locations at that new latitude. The opposite happens in the southern hemisphere.

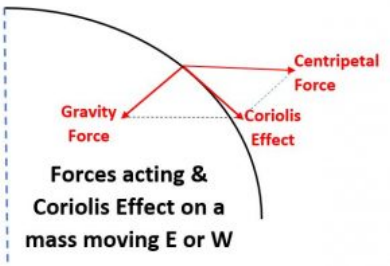
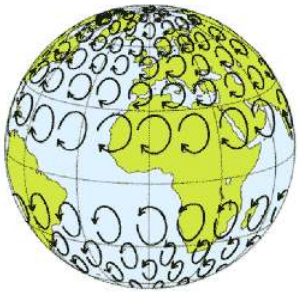
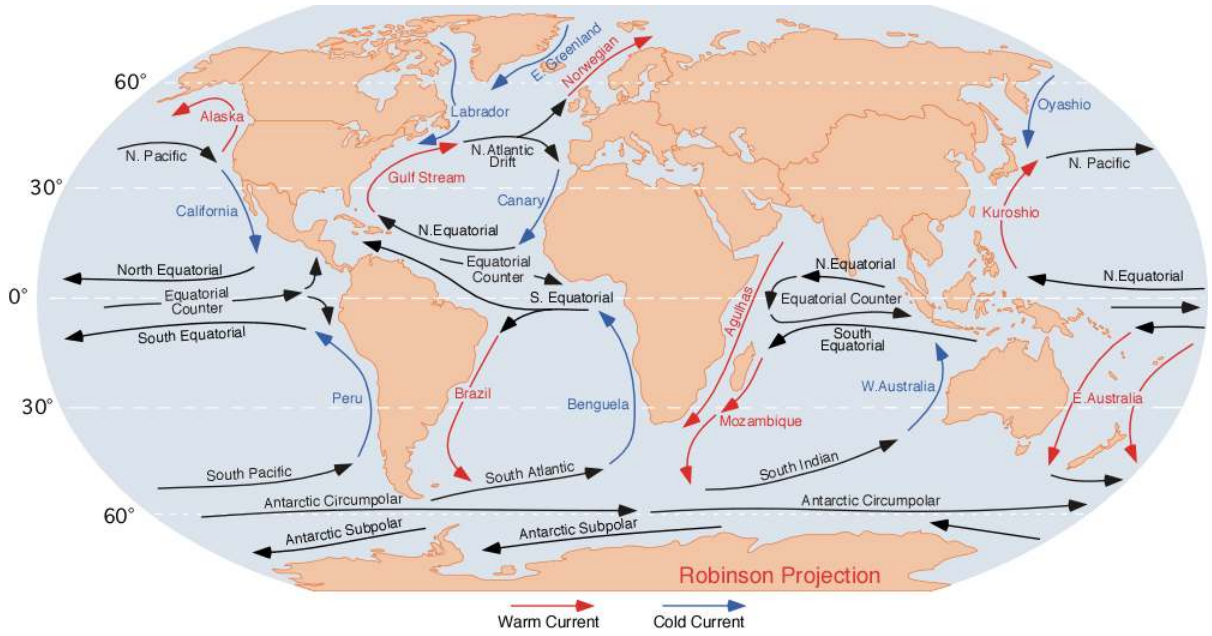


Figure *Section*11.2.1: Forces acting on a mass moving East-West in the Northern Hemisphere on the rotating Earth that produce the Coriolis Effect

Now consider motion in an east-west direction again thinking of the momentum imparted by the radius from the Earth's rotational axis. The centripetal effect of Earth's rotation causes objects on the earth to tend to be forced outward perpendicular to the rotational axis, the centripetal effect or "force." Since gravity holds things on the earth's surface (the gravitational force points toward the Earth's center, perpendicular to the surface), they do not actually fly outward of course. But considering the components of force involved acting on a mass at or above the Earth's surface, the centripetal component is perpendicular to the Earth's spin axis. The component of gravity is perpendicular to the earth's surface pointing toward the Earth's center. If the object is moving eastward, the speed of the object adds to the earth's rotational speed and the centripetal effect is enhanced, thus the net effect of gravity and the centripetal component parallel to the surface causes deflection to the right (left in the southern hemisphere). If the object is moving west, its speed subtracts from the rotational speed and reduces the centripetal effect. Deflection is again to the right (left in the southern hemisphere). At any direction of motion, the meridional and the centripetal effects combine, thus no matter which direction an object moves on the rotating earth, there is a tendency for deflection to the right in the northern hemisphere (left in the southern).



The objects of greatest interest in geoscience that are affected by the Coriolis Effect on earth are air and water masses. Since wind patterns, especially prevailing patterns, cause ocean currents, then water masses feel it as well. In reality, any object moving on the earth experiences it. For example, the Coriolis Effect must be taken into account by artillerymen calculating the trajectory of artillery shells for accuracy in hitting targets over long distances.



The Coriolis effect creates large sub-circular rotating currents called **gyres** in the oceans, turning clockwise in the northern hemisphere and counterclockwise in the southern under the Coriolis Effect. These currents bring cold water along the west coasts of both North and South America contributing to the drier climates of the Atacama and Central and Southern California. The Coriolis Effect acting on both the atmosphere and ocean is a major contributor to climate and weather on the earth.

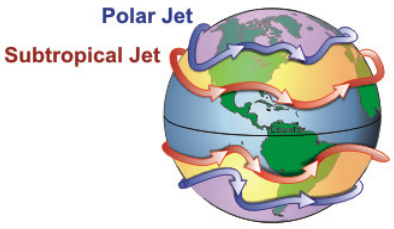


Figure ***Section*11.2.1**: Earth's two Jet Streams. The stronger Polar Jet is associated with low pressure. When the Polar Jet moves from its normal average location of 60°, it brings low pressure to desert regions near 30°. This is the main, but not only, cause of precipitation in mid-latitudes.. via Wikimedia Commons" width="336"

An application of the Coriolis Effect can be seen on the TV weather report. High-pressure systems are typically shown by a large "H" and indicate dry conditions, and low-pressure systems by a large "L" indicating clouds or precipitation. Air flows outward from a high and because of the Coriolis Effect, it rotates clockwise (to the right). It flows inward to a low and again turns to the right, rotating counterclockwise. Of course weather reports in the Southern Hemisphere show the opposite. Another interesting realization from the Coriolis Effect and the Zone of Westerlies is that weather systems tend to move from west to east across both North America and the southern part of South America. The high pressures and low pressures that exist due to uneven heating of the atmosphere and the Coriolis Effect create the high and low pressures on the weather map. The chaotic nature of the atmosphere (and fast-moving flows like the Jet Stream) makes these high and low pressures constantly and consistently move. This is important, because at 30 degrees, without this movement, low pressure would *never* exist! This means rain would never arrive. Even in the driest parts of this zone, like the Atacama, it rains on occasion. High pressure normally exists here, but just not all the time. These air movements, both prevailing and sporadic, are thus important in understanding climate and its geological implications.

Section 11.2.3 References

2. Hadley, G. Concerning the cause of the general trade-winds: By Geo. Hadley, Esq; FRS. *Philosophical Transactions* **39**, 58–62 (1735).

3. Grayson, D. K. *The desert's past: a natural prehistory of the Great Basin*. (Smithsonian Inst Pr, 1993).

4. Hartley, A. J. & Chong, G. Late Pliocene age for the Atacama Desert: Implications for the desertification of western South America. *Geology* **30**, 43–46 (2002).

5. Collado, G. A., Valladares, M. A. & Méndez, M. A. Hidden diversity in spring snails from the Andean Altiplano, the second highest plateau on Earth, and the Atacama Desert, the driest place in the world. *Zool. Stud.* **52**, 50 (2013).

6. Littell, E. & Littell, R. S. *Littell's Living Age*. (T.H. Carter & Company, 1846).

This page titled Section 11.2: The Origin of Deserts is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Chris Johnson, Matthew D. Affolter, Paul Inkenbrandt, & Cam Mosher (OpenGeology) via source content that was edited to the style and standards of the LibreTexts platform.

- **13.2: The Origin of Deserts** by Chris Johnson, Matthew D. Affolter, Paul Inkenbrandt, & Cam Mosher is licensed CC BY-NC-SA 4.0. Original source: https://opengeology.org/textbook/.

Section 11.3: Desert Weathering and Erosion

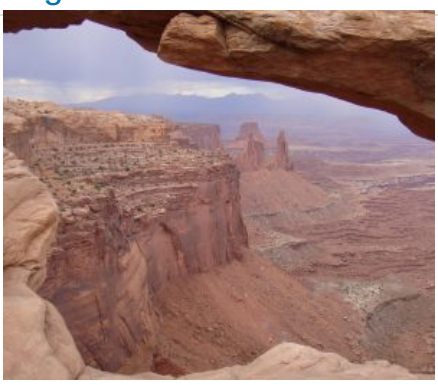


Figure *Section*11.3.1: Weathering and erosion of Canyonlands National Park have created a unique landscape, including arches, cliffs, and spires.

Weathering takes place in desert climates by the same means as other climates, only at a slower rate. This is besides the higher temperatures, which typically spur faster weathering. Water is the main agent of weathering, and lack of water slows weathering. Precipitation occurs in deserts, only less than in other climatic regions. Chemical weathering proceeds more slowly in deserts compared to more humid climates because of the lack of water. Even mechanical weathering is slowed, because of a lack of runoff and even a lack of moisture to perform ice wedging. However, when precipitation does occur, often in the form of flash floods, a large amount of mechanical weathering can happen quite quickly.



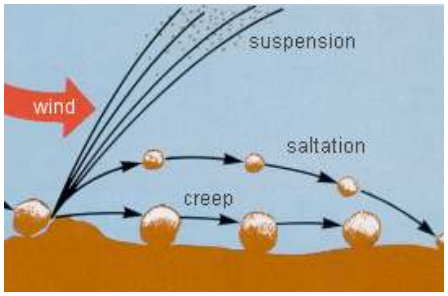
Figure *Section*11.3.1: Newspaper rock, near Canyonlands National Park, has many petroglyphs carved into the desert varnish.. CC BY-SA 3.0 or GFDL], via Wikimedia Commons" width="312px" height="208px"

One unique weathering product of deserts is **desert varnish**. Also known as desert patina or rock rust, they are thin dark brown layers of clays and iron and manganese oxides that form on very stable surfaces within arid environments. The exact cause of the material is still unknown, though cosmogenic and biologic mechanisms have been proposed.



Figure *Section*11.3.1: A dust storm (haboob) hits the Mongolian Gobi.

While water is still the dominant agent of erosion in most desert environments, wind is a notable agent of weathering and erosion in many deserts. This includes suspended sediment traveling in **haboobs**, or dust storms, that frequent deserts. Deposits of windblown dust are called **loess**. Loess deposits cover wide areas of the midwestern United States, much of it from dust that melted out of the ice sheets during the last ice age [7]. Lower energy than water, wind transport nevertheless moves sand, silt, and dust [8]. As noted in chapter 11, the load carried by a fluid (like air) is distributed among bedload and suspended load. As with water, in wind these components depend on wind velocity.



Sand size material moves by a process called **saltation** in which sand grains are lifted into the moving air and carried a short distance where they drop and splash into the surface dislodging other sand grains which are then carried a short distance and splash dislodging still others [8].

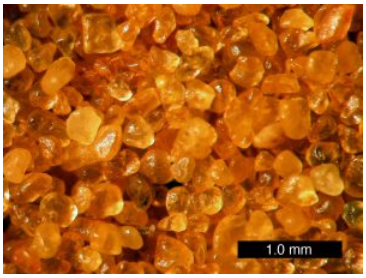


Figure ***Section*11.3.1**: Enlarged image of frosted and rounded windblown sand grains

Since saltating sand grains are constantly impacting other sand grains, windblown sand grains are commonly pretty well rounded with frosted surfaces. Saltation is a cascading effect of sand movement creating a zone of windblown sand up to a meter or so above the ground. This zone of saltating sand is a powerful erosive agent in which bedrock features are effectively sandblasted. The fine-grained suspended load is effectively removed from the sand and the surface carrying silt and dust in haboobs. Wind is thus an effective sorting agent separating sand and dust-sized (≤70 μm) particles [9]. When wind velocity is high enough to slide or roll materials along the surface, the process is called **creep**.



One extreme version of sediment movement was shrouded in mystery for years: **Sliding stones**. Also called sailing stones and sliding rocks, these are large moving boulders along flat surfaces in deserts, leaving trails. This includes the famous example of the Racetrack Playa in Death Valley National Park, California. For years, scientists and enthusiasts attempted to explain their movement, with little definitive results [10; 11]. In recent years, several experimental and observational studies have confirmed that thin layers of ice allow the stones to move with high winds providing propulsive energy [12; 13]. These studies include measurements of actual movement, as well as re-creations of the conditions, with resulting movement in the lab.



Figure *Section*11.3.1: A yardang in Bolivia. Thomas Wilken at the German language Wikipedia [GFDL or CC-BY-SA-3.0], via Wikimedia Commons" width="240px" height="178px"



Figure *Section*11.3.1: Ventifact from Mojave Desert near Barstow, CA. CC0], via Wikimedia Commons" width="217px" height="201px"

The zone of saltating sand is an effective agent of erosion through sand abrasion. A bedrock outcrop which has such a sandblasted shape is called a **yardang** [14]. Rocks and boulders lying on the surface may be blasted and polished by saltating sand. When predominant wind directions shift, multiple sandblasted and polished faces may appear. Such polished desert rocks are called **ventifacts** [15].



Figure *Section*11.3.1: Blowout in Texas

In places with sand dunes, clumps of vegetation often anchor sediment that has accumulated on the desert surface. Yet, saltation from winds may be sufficient to move or remove materials not anchored by vegetation. This causes a bowl-shaped depression in the sand called a **blowout** [16].

Section 11.3.1 References

7. Muhs, D. R. & Bettis, E. A. Quaternary loess-paleosol sequences as examples of climate-driven sedimentary extremes. *Special Papers-Geological Society of America* 53–74 (2003).

8. Bagnold, R. A. The physics of blown sand and desert dunes. *Methum, London, UK* 265 (1941).

9. Shao, Y. *Physics and Modelling of Wind Erosion*. (Springer Science & Business Media, 2008).

10. Stanley, G. M. Origin of playa stone tracks, Racetrack Playa, Inyo County, California. *Geol. Soc. Am. Bull.* **66**, 1329–1350 (1955).

11. Clements, T. Wind-blown rocks and trails on Little Bonnie Claire Playa, Nye County, Nevada. *J. Sediment. Res.* **22**, (1952).

12. Norris, R. D., Norris, J. M., Lorenz, R. D., Ray, J. & Jackson, B. Sliding rocks on Racetrack Playa, Death Valley National Park: first observation of rocks in motion. *PLoS One* **9**, e105948 (2014).

13. Kletetschka, G. *et al.* Sliding stones of Racetrack Playa, Death Valley, USA: The roles of rock thermal conductivity and fluctuating water levels. *Geomorphology* **195**, 110–117 (2013).

14. Hedin, S. A. *Central Asia and Tibet*. **1**, (Hurst and Blackett, limited, 1903).

15. Laity, J. E. Landforms, landscapes, and processes of aeolian erosion. in *Geomorphology of Desert Environments* (eds. Parsons, A. J. & Abrahams, A. D.) 597–627 (Springer Netherlands, 2009).

16. Livingstone, I. & Warren, A. *Aeolian geomorphology: an introduction*. (Longman, 1996).

This page titled Section 11.3: Desert Weathering and Erosion is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Chris Johnson, Matthew D. Affolter, Paul Inkenbrandt, & Cam Mosher (OpenGeology) via source content that was edited to the style and standards of the LibreTexts platform.

- **13.3: Desert Weathering and Erosion** by Chris Johnson, Matthew D. Affolter, Paul Inkenbrandt, & Cam Mosher is licensed CC BY-NC-SA 4.0. Original source: https://opengeology.org/textbook/.

Section 11.4: Desert Landforms

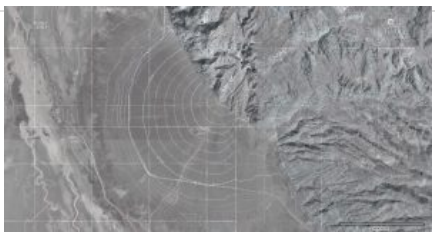


Figure *Section*11.4.1: Aerial image of an alluvial fan in Death Valley

In deserts like those of the American Southwest, streams draining mountains flow through canyons and emerge into adjacent valleys. As the stream emerges from the narrow canyon and spreads out, and with a lower slope angle and slower speeds [17] and no longer constrained by the canyon walls [18], it drops its coarser load. As the channel fills with this conglomeratic material, the stream is deflected around it. This process causes the stream to be deflected back and forth, developing a system of radial distributaries and constructing a fan-shaped feature call an **alluvial fan**, similar to a delta made by a river entering a body of water [18].



Figure *Section*11.4.1: Bajada along Frisco Peak in Utah. GerthMichael at German Wikipedia [GFDL, CC BY-SA 3.0 or CC BY-SA 3.0 de], via Wikimedia Commons" width="357px" height="238px"

Alluvial fans continue to grow and may eventually coalesce with neighboring fans to form an apron of alluvium along the mountain front called a **bajada** [19].



Figure *Section*11.4.1: Inselbergs in Mojave Desert

As the mountains erode away and the debris accumulates first in alluvial fans, then bajadas, the mountains eventually are buried in their own erosional debris. Such residual buried mountain remnants are called **inselbergs** [20], “island mountains,” as first described by the German geologist Wilhelm Bornhardt.



Figure *Section*11.4.1: Satellite image of desert playa surrounded by mountains

Where the desert valley is an enclosed basin, i.e. streams entering it do not drain out but the water is removed by evaporation, a dry lake bed is formed called a **playa.**



Figure *Section*11.4.1: Dry wash (or ephemeral stream). CC BY-SA 3.0 or GFDL], via Wikimedia Commons" width="318px" height="192px"

Playas are among the flattest of all landforms. Such a lake may cover a large area and be only a few inches deep, and that only after a heavy thunderstorm. Playa lakes and desert streams that flow only after rainstorms are called **intermittent** or **ephemeral**. Drainage basins of ephemeral streams gather water from large areas and ephemeral channels may suddenly fill with water from storms many miles away and not even visible at that location plus, lack of organic matter and soil structure in arid regions inhibits infiltration and adds to runoff.



Figure *Section*11.4.1: Flash flood in a dry wash

Such high-volume ephemeral lows may be non-channelized and move as sheet flows. Such **flash floods** are a major factor in desert deposition and a serious concern for desert travelers who need to pay attention to regional weather. Water is less able to infiltrate because the flow compacts the surface, plants are less common to slow flows, and soils in deserts can become more hydrophobic. Water typically runs off as **sheet wash** to stream channels called **arroyos** or a dry wash that may be dry part or most of the year. Dry ephemeral channels can fill quickly, creating a mass of water and debris that charges down the channel, possibly even overflowing the banks of the arroyo. People entering such channels or camping by them have been swept away by sudden flash floods.



Figure ***Section*11.4.1**: Sahara Desert erg

While deserts are defined by dryness, not sand, the popular conception of a typical desert is a sand sea called an **erg**. An erg is a broad area of desert covered by a sheet of fine-grained sand often blown by aeolian forces (wind) into dunes [21]. Probably the best-known erg is the Empty Quarter (Rub' al Khali) of Saudi Arabia, but other ergs exist in Colorado (Great Sand Dunes National Park), Utah (Little Sahara Recreation Area), New Mexico (White Sands National Monument), and California (parts of Death Valley National Park). It is not only deserts that form dunes; the high supply of sand can form ergs anywhere, even as far north as 60° in Saskatchewan at the Athabasca Sand Dunes Provincial Park. Coastal ergs on the shores of lakes and oceans also do exist and can be found in places like Oregon, Michigan, and Indiana.



The way dunes form creates an internal feature called **cross-bedding**. As the wind blows up the windward side of the dune, it carries sand to the dune crest depositing layers of sand parallel to the windward (or "stoss") side. The sand builds up the crest of the dune and pours over the top until the leeward (downwind or slip) face of the dune reaches the **angle of repose,** the maximum angle which will support the sand pile. Dunes are unstable features and move as the sand erodes from the stoss side and continues to drop down the leeward side covering previous stoss and slip-face layers and creating the cross-beds. Mostly, these are reworked over and over again, but occasionally, the features are preserved in a depression, then lithified. Shifting wind directions and abundant sand sources create chaotic patterns of cross-beds like those seen in the fossil ergs represented by the Navajo Sandstone and Zion National Park of Utah.



Figure ***Section*11.4.1**: Cross beds in the Navajo Sandstone at Zion National Park

In the Mesozoic, Utah was covered by a series of ergs, thickest in Southern Utah. Perhaps the best known of these sandstone formations is the Navajo Sandstone. The Navajo forms the dramatic cliffs and spires in Zion National Park and covers a large part of the Colorado Plateau. It is exposed beneath the Entrada Sandstone in Arches National Park, a later series of sand dunes in which the conditions of the lithified rock allowed the formation of arches.

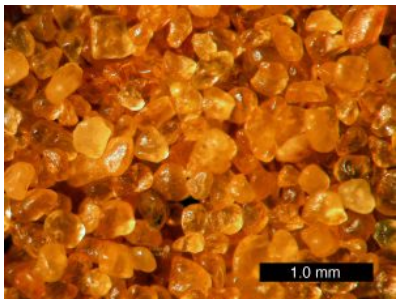


Figure *Section*11.4.1: Enlarged image of frosted and rounded windblown sand grains from Coral Pink Sand Dunes.

As the cement that holds the grains together in these modern sand cliffs disintegrates and the freed grains gather at the base of the cliffs and move down the washes, sand grains may be recycled and redeposited. These great sand ergs may represent ancient quartz sands recycled many times, just passing now through another cycle. One example of this is Coral Pink Sand Dunes State Park in Southwestern Utah, which is sand that is eroded from the Navajo Sandstone forming new dunes.

Section 11.4.1.1 Dune Types

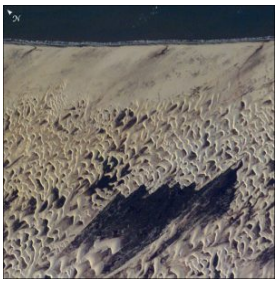


Figure *Section*11.4.1: NASA image of a barchan dune field in coastal Brazil

Dunes are complex features formed by a combination of wind direction and sand supply, in some cases interacting with vegetation. There are several types of dunes representing the variable of wind direction, sand supply, and vegetative anchoring. **Barchan dunes** or **crescent dunes** form where sand supply is limited and there is a fairly constant wind direction. Barchans move downwind and develop a crescent shape with wings on either side of a dune crest. Barchans are known to actually move over homes, even towns.



Figure *Section*11.4.1: Satellite image of longitudinal dunes in Egypt

Longitudinal dunes or **linear dunes** form where sand supply is greater and the wind is variable around a dominant direction, in a back-and-forth manner. They may form ridges tens of meters high lined up with the predominant wind directions.



Figure *Section*11.4.1: Parabolic dunes, Cape Cod

Parabolic dunes form where vegetation anchors parts of the sand and unanchored parts blowout. Parabolic dune shape is similar to barchan dunes but usually reversed, and it is determined more by the anchoring vegetation than a strict parabolic form.

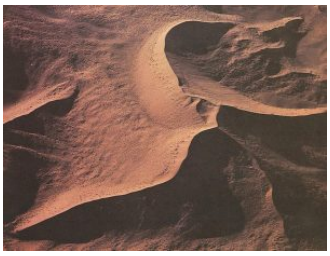


Figure *Section*11.4.1: Star dune in Sahara

Star dunes form where the wind direction is variable in all directions. Sand supply can range from limited to quite abundant. It is the variation in wind direction that forms the star.

Section 11.4.2 References

17. Hooke, R. L. Processes on arid-region alluvial fans. *J. Geol.* **75**, 438–460 (1967).

18. Boggs, S. J. *Principles of sedimentology and stratigraphy*. (Pearson, 2011).

19. Easterbrook, D. J. *Surface processes and landforms*. (Pearson College Division, 1999).

20. King, L. C. Canons of landscape evolution. *Geol. Soc. Am. Bull.* **64**, 721–752 (1953).

21. Wilson, I. G. Desert Sandflow Basins and a Model for the Development of Ergs. *Geogr. J.* **137**, 180–199 (1971).

This page titled Section 11.4: Desert Landforms is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Chris Johnson, Matthew D. Affolter, Paul Inkenbrandt, & Cam Mosher (OpenGeology) via source content that was edited to the style and standards of the LibreTexts platform.

- **13.4: Desert Landforms** by Chris Johnson, Matthew D. Affolter, Paul Inkenbrandt, & Cam Mosher is licensed CC BY-NC-SA 4.0. Original source: https://opengeology.org/textbook/.

CHAPTER OVERVIEW

Chapter 12: Energy and Mineral Resources

Learning Objectives

- Describe how a renewable resource is different from a nonrenewable resource.
- Compare the pros and cons of fossil fuel extraction and use, including unconventional resources.
- Describe the process of metallic mineral formation and extraction.
- Understand the use of nonmetallic mineral resources.

This text has discussed pioneers in the scientific study of geology like James Hutton and Charles Lyell, but the first "geologists" were the hominids who picked up stones, beginning the stone age. Maybe stones were first used as curiosity pieces, maybe as weapons, but ultimately, they were used as tools. This was the **Paleolithic Period**, the beginning of the study of geology and it goes back 2.6 million years ago to east Africa [1].



Figure *Chapter*12.1: A Mode 1 Oldowan tool used for chopping. (By Locutus Borg; public domain via Wikimedia Commons.)

In modern times, an important use of geologic knowledge is locating economically valuable materials for use in society. All items we use can come from only three sources: they can be farmed, hunted or fished, or they can be mined. At the turn of the twentieth century, speculation was rampant that food supplies would not keep pace with world demand, and artificial fertilizers would need to be developed [2]. The ingredients for fertilizers are mined: nitrogen from the atmosphere using the Haber process [3], potassium from the hydrosphere (lakes or oceans) by evaporation, and phosphorus from the lithosphere (minerals like apatite from phosphorite rock, found in Florida, North Carolina, Idaho, Utah, and around the world). Thus, without mining and processing of natural materials, modern civilization would not exist. Geologists are essential in the process of mining.

Section 12.1: Mining

Section 12.2: Fossil Fuels

Section 12.3: Mineral Resources

Section 12.S: Summary

Chapter 12.1 References

1. Semaw, S. *et al.* 2.6-Million-year-old stone tools and associated bones from OGS-6 and OGS-7, Gona, Afar, Ethiopia. *J. Hum. Evol.* **45**, 169–177 (2003).

2. Laylin, J. K. *Nobel Laureates in Chemistry, 1901-1992*. (Chemical Heritage Foundation, 1993).

3. Haber, F. The synthesis of ammonia from its elements Nobel Lecture, June 2, 1920. *Reson* **7**, 86–94 (2002).

This page titled Chapter 12: Energy and Mineral Resources is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Chris Johnson, Matthew D. Affolter, Paul Inkenbrandt, & Cam Mosher (OpenGeology) via source content that was edited to the style

and standards of the LibreTexts platform.

Section 12.1: Mining

Mining is defined as extracting valuable materials from the Earth for society's use. Usually, these include solid materials such as gold, iron, coal, diamond, sand, and gravel, but can also include fluid resources such as oil and natural gas. Modern mining has a long relationship with modern society. The oldest mine dates back 40,000 years to the Lion Cavern in Swaziland where there is evidence of concentrated digging into the Earth for hematite, an important iron ore used as red dye [4]. Resources extracted by mining are generally considered to be nonrenewable.

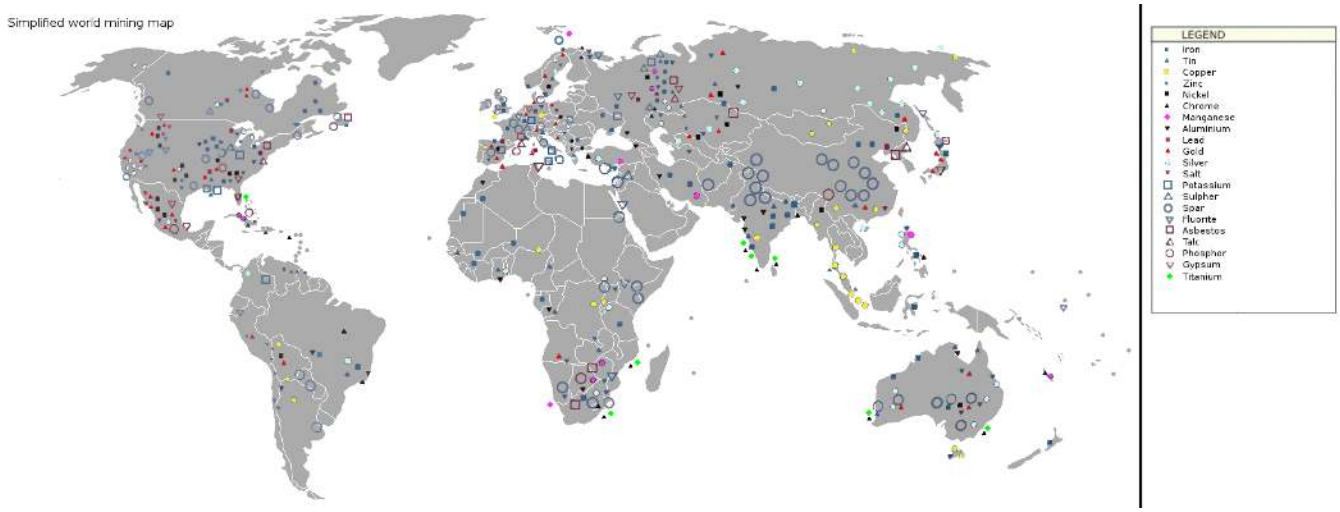


Figure ***Section*12.1.1**: Map of world mining areas.

Section 12.1.1 Renewable versus Nonrenewable Resources

Resources generally come in two major categories: renewable and nonrenewable. Renewable resources can be reused over and over or their availability replicated over a short human life span; nonrenewable resources cannot.

Renewable resources are materials present in our environment that can be exploited and replenished. Some common renewable energy sources are linked with **green energy sources** because they are associated with relatively small or easily remediated environmental impact. For example, **solar energy** comes from fusion within the Sun, which radiates electromagnetic energy. This energy reaches the Earth constantly and consistently and should continue to do so for about 5 billion more years [5]. **Wind energy**, also related to solar energy, is maybe the oldest form of renewable energy, and is used to sail ships and power windmills. Both solar and wind-generated energy are variable on the Earth's surface. These limitations are offset because we can use energy-storing devices, such as batteries or electricity exchanges between producing sites. The Earth's heat, known as **geothermal energy**, can be viable anywhere that geologists drill deeply enough. In practice, geothermal energy is more useful where heat flow is great, such as volcanic zones or regions with a thinner crust [6]. **Hydroelectric** dams provide energy by allowing water to fall through the dam under gravity, which activates turbines that produce energy. Ocean tides (**tidal energy**) can also be a reliable energy source. All of these renewable resources provide energy that powers society. Other renewable resources are plant and animal matter, which are used for food, clothing, and other necessities, but are being researched as possible energy sources.



Figure *Section*12.1.2: Hoover Dam provides hydroelectric energy and stores water for southern Nevada.

Nonrenewable resources cannot be replenished at a sustainable rate. They are finite within a human lifetime. Many nonrenewable resources come from planetary, tectonic, or long-term biologic processes, and include materials such as gold, lead, copper, diamonds, marble, sand, natural gas, oil, and coal. Most nonrenewable resources include specific concentrated elements listed on the periodic table; some are compounds of those elements. For example, if society needs iron (Fe) sources, then an exploration geologist will search for iron-rich deposits that can be economically extracted. Nonrenewable resources may be abandoned when other materials become cheaper or serve a better purpose. For example, coal is abundantly available in England and other nations, but because oil and natural gas are available at a lower cost and lower environmental impact, coal use has decreased. Economic competition among nonrenewable resources is shifting use away from coal in many developed countries.

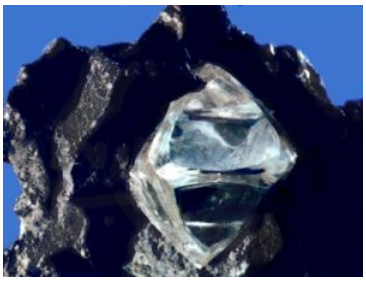


Figure *Section*12.1.3: Natural, octahedral shape of diamond.

Section 12.1.2 Ore

Earth's materials include the periodic table elements. However, it is rare that these elements are concentrated to the point where it is profitable to extract and process the material into usable products. Any place where a valuable material is concentrated is a geologic and geochemical anomaly. A body of material from which one or more valuable substances can be mined at a profit, is called an **ore deposit**. Typically, the term ore is used for only metal-bearing minerals, but it can be applied to valuable nonrenewable resource concentrations such as fossil fuels, building stones, and other nonmetal deposits, even groundwater. If a metal-bearing resource is not profitable to mine, it is referred to as a **mineral deposit**. The term **natural resource** is more common than the term ore for non-metal-bearing materials.

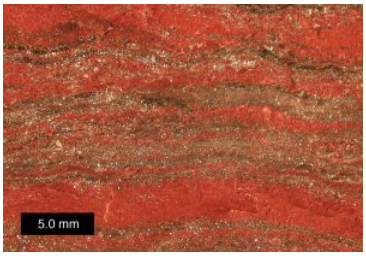


Figure *Section*12.1.4: Banded-iron formations are an important ore of iron (Fe).

It is implicit that the technology to mine is available, economic conditions are suitable, and political, social and environmental considerations are satisfied in order to classify a natural resource deposit as ore. Depending on the substance, it can be concentrated in a narrow vein or distributed over a large area as a low-concentration ore. Some materials are mined directly from bodies of water (e.g. sylvite for potassium; water through desalination) and the atmosphere (e.g. nitrogen for fertilizers). These differences lead to various methods of mining, and differences in terminology depending on the certainty. **Ore mineral resource** is used for an indication of ore that is potentially extractable, and the term **ore mineral reserve** is used for a well-defined (proven), profitable amount of extractable ore.

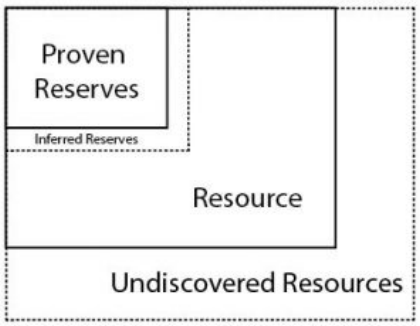


Figure *Section*12.1.5: Diagram illustrating the relative abundance of proven reserves, inferred reserves, resources, and undiscovered resources. (Source: Chris Johnson)

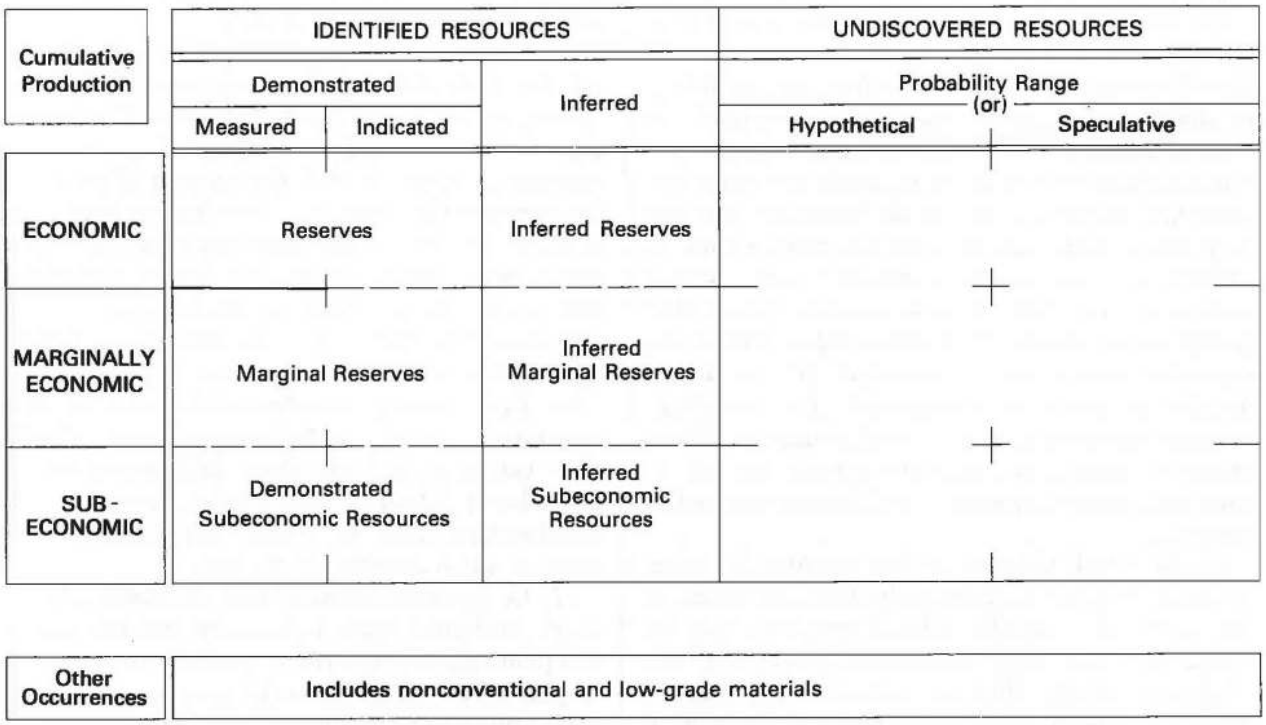


Figure *Section*12.1.6: McKelvey diagram showing different definitions for different degrees of concentration and understanding of mineral deposits.

Section 12.1.3 Mining Techniques

The mining style is determined by technology, social license, and economics. It is in the best interest of the company extracting the resources to do so in a cost-effective way. Fluid resources, such as oil and gas, are extracted by drilling wells and pumping. Over the years, drilling has evolved into a complex discipline in which directional drilling can produce multiple bifurcations and curves originating from a single drill collar at the surface. Using geophysical tools like seismic imaging, resources can be pinpointed and extracted efficiently.



Figure *Section*12.1.7: Bingham Canyon Mine, Utah. This open-pit mine is the largest man-made removal of rock in the world.

Solid resources are extracted by two principal methods, of which there are many variants. **Surface mining** is the practice of removing material from the outermost part of the Earth. **Open-pit mining** is used to target shallow, broadly disseminated resources. Open-pit mining requires careful study of the ore body through surface mapping and drilling exploratory cores. The pit is progressively deepened through additional mining cuts to extract the ore. Typically, the pit's walls are as steep as can safely be managed. Once the pit is deepened, widening the top is very expensive. A steep wall is thus an engineering balance between efficient and profitable mining (from the company's point of view) and mass wasting (angle of repose from a safety point of view) so that there is less waste to remove. The waste is called **non-valuable rock** or **overburden** and moving it is costly. Occasionally landslides do occur, such as the very large landslide in the Kennecott Bingham Canyon Mine, Utah, in 2013. These events are costly and dangerous. The job of engineering geologists is to carefully monitor the mine; when company management heeds their warnings, there is ample time and action to avoid or prepare for any slide.

Strip mining and **mountaintop mining** are surface mining techniques that are used to mine resources that cover large areas, especially layered resources like coal. In this method, an entire mountaintop or rock layer is removed to access to the ore below. The environmental impacts of surface mining are usually much greater due to the larger surface footprint that is disturbed [7].



Figure *Section*12.1.8: A surface coal mine in Wyoming.

Underground mining is often used for higher-grade, more localized, or very concentrated resources. For example, geologists mine some underground ore minerals by introducing chemical agents, which dissolve the target mineral. Then, they bring the solution to the surface where precipitation extracts the material. But more often, a mining shaft tunnel or a large network of these shafts and tunnels is dug to access the material. The decision to mine underground or from Earth's surface is dictated by the ore deposit's concentration, depth, geometry, land-use policies, economics, surrounding rock strength, and physical access to the ore. For example, to use surface mining techniques for deeper deposits might require removing too much material, or the necessary method may be too dangerous or impractical, or removing the entire overburden may be too expensive, or the mining footprint would be too large. These factors may prevent materials from being mined from the surface, and cause a project to be mined underground. The mining method and its feasibility depends on the price of the commodity and the cost of the technology needed to remove it and deliver it to market. Thus, mines and the towns that support them come and go as the commodity price varies. And conversely, technological advances and market demands may reopen mines and revive ghost towns.



Figure ***Section*12.1.9**: Underground mining in Estonia of oil shale.

Section 12.1.4 Concentrating and Refining

All ore minerals occur mixed with less desirable components called **gangue**. The process of physically separating gangue minerals from ore-bearing minerals is called **concentrating**. Separating the desired element from a host mineral by chemical means, including heating, is called **smelting**. Finally, taking a metal such as copper and removing other trace metals such as gold or silver is done through the process of **refining**. Typically, refining is done one of three ways:

1. Materials can either be mechanically separated and processed based on the unique physical properties of the ore mineral, like recovering placer gold based on its high density.
2. Materials can be heated to chemically separate desired components, such as refining crude oil into gasoline.
3. Materials can be smelted, in which controlled chemical reactions unbind metals from the minerals they are contained in, such as when copper is taken out of chalcopyrite ($CuFeS_2$).

Mining, concentrating, smelting and refining processes require enormous energy. Continual advances in metallurgy and mining practices strive to develop ever more energy-efficient and environmentally benign processes and practices.

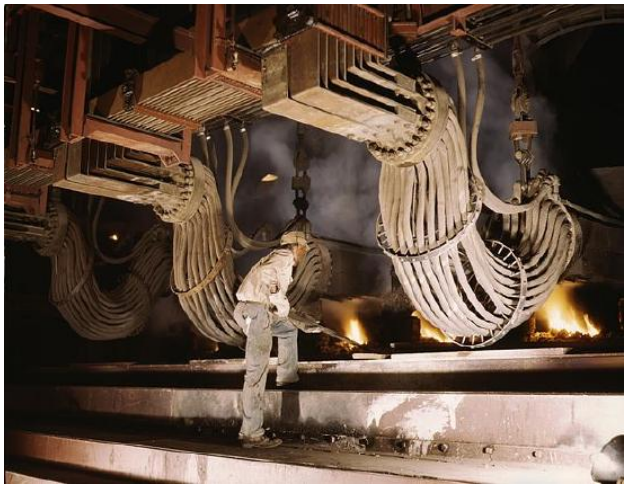


Figure ***Section*12.1.10**: A phosphate smelting operation in Alabama, 1942.

Section 12.1.5 References

4. Vogel, J. C. Groningen radiocarbon dates IX. *Radiocarbon* **12**, 444–471 (1970).

5. Schröder, K.-P. & Connon Smith, R. Distant future of the Sun and Earth revisited. *Mon. Not. R. Astron. Soc.* **386**, 155–163 (2008).

6. Duffield, W. A. Volcanoes, geothermal energy, and the environment. *Volcanoes and the Environment* 304 (2005).

7. Palmer, M. A. *et al.* Science and regulation. Mountaintop mining consequences. *Science* **327**, 148–149 (2010).

This page titled Section 12.1: Mining is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Chris Johnson, Matthew D. Affolter, Paul Inkenbrandt, & Cam Mosher (OpenGeology) via source content that was edited to the style and standards of the LibreTexts platform.

- **16.2: Mining** by Chris Johnson, Matthew D. Affolter, Paul Inkenbrandt, & Cam Mosher is licensed CC BY-NC-SA 4.0. Original source: https://opengeology.org/textbook/.

Section 12.2: Fossil Fuels

Fossils fuels are extractable sources of stored energy created by ancient ecosystems. The natural resources that typically fall under this category are coal, oil, petroleum, and natural gas. These resources were originally formed via photosynthesis by living organisms such as plants, phytoplankton, algae, and cyanobacteria. This energy is actually fossil solar energy, since the Sun's ancient energy was converted by ancient organisms into tissues that preserved the chemical energy within the fossil fuel. Of course, as the energy is used, just like respiration from photosynthesis that occurs today, carbon enters the atmosphere as CO_2, causing climate consequences. Today, fossil fuels account for a large portion of the energy used in the world.



Figure *Section*12.2.1: Coal power plant in Helper, Utah.

Converting solar energy by living organisms into hydrocarbon fossil fuels is a complex process. As organisms die, they decompose slowly, usually due to being buried rapidly, and the chemical energy stored within the organisms' tissues is buried within surrounding geologic materials. All fossil fuels contain carbon that was produced in an ancient environment. In environments rich with organic matter such as swamps, coral reefs, and planktonic blooms, there is a higher potential for fossil fuels to accumulate. Indeed, there is some evidence that over geologic time, organic hydrocarbon fossil fuel material was highly produced globally. [8]. Lack of oxygen and moderate temperatures in the environment seem to help preserve these organic substances [9; 10]. Also, the heat and pressure applied to organic material after it is buried contribute to transforming it into higher quality materials, such as brown coal to anthracite and oil to gas. Heat and pressure can also cause mobile materials to migrate to conditions suitable for extraction [11].



Figure *Section*12.2.2: Modern coral reefs and other highly-productive shallow marine environments are thought to be the sources of most petroleum resources.

Section 12.2.1 Oil and Gas

Petroleum is principally derived from organic-rich shallow marine sedimentary deposits where the remains of micro-organisms like plankton accumulated in fine-grained sediments. [12]. Petroleum's liquid component is commonly called **oil** and its gas component called **natural gas**, which is mostly made up of methane (CH_4). As rocks such as shale, mudstone, or limestone lithify, increasing pressure and temperature cause the oil and gas to be squeezed out and migrate from the **source rock** to a different rock unit higher in the rock column. Similar to the discussion of good aquifers, if the rock is sandstone, limestone, or other porous and permeable rock, and involved in a suitable stratigraphic or structural trapping process, then that rock can act as an oil and gas **reservoir**.

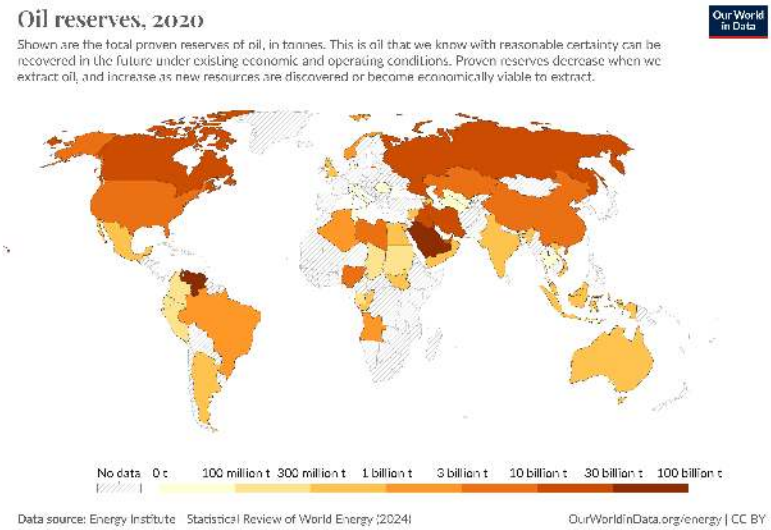


Figure ***Section*12.2.3**: World Oil Reserves in 2020. Scale in billions of tons. (By Our World in Data; CC BY via ourworldindata.org)

A **trap** is a combination of a subsurface geologic structure, a porous and permable rock, and an impervious layer that helps block the movement of oil and gas and concentrates it for later human extraction [13; 14]. The development of a trap could be a result of many different geologic situations. Common examples include an anticline or domal structure, an impermeable salt dome, or a fault-bounded stratigraphic block, which is porous rock next to non-porous rock. The different traps have one thing in common: they pool the fluid fossil fuels into a configuration in which extraction is more likely to be profitable. Oil or gas in strata outside of a trap renders it less viable to extract.

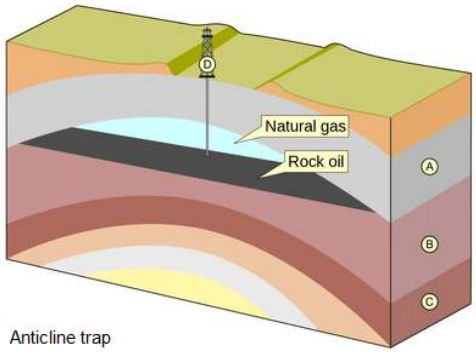


Figure ***Section*12.2.4**: A structural or anticline trap. Gas and oil can get trapped under an impermeable rock layer. (By MagentaGreen; CC BY-SA 4.0 via Wikimedia Commons.)

Sequence stratigraphy is a branch of geology that studies sedimentary facies both horizontally and vertically and is devoted to understanding how changing sea level creates organic-rich shallow marine muds, carbonates, and sands in areas that are close to each other [15]. For example, shoreline environments may have beaches, lagoons, reefs, nearshore and offshore deposits, all next to each other. Beach sand, lagoonal and nearshore muds, and coral reef layers accumulate into sediments that include sandstones—good reservoir rocks— next to mudstones, next to limestones, both of which are potential source rocks. As sea level either rises or falls, the location of the shoreline changes and the locations of sands, muds, and reefs with it. This places oil and gas producing rocks such as mudstones and limestones next to oil and gas reservoirs such as sandstones and some limestones. Understanding the lithology and the facies/stratigraphic relationships interplay is very important in finding new petroleum resources. Using sequence stratigraphy as a model allows geologists to predict favorable locations of source rocks and reservoirs.

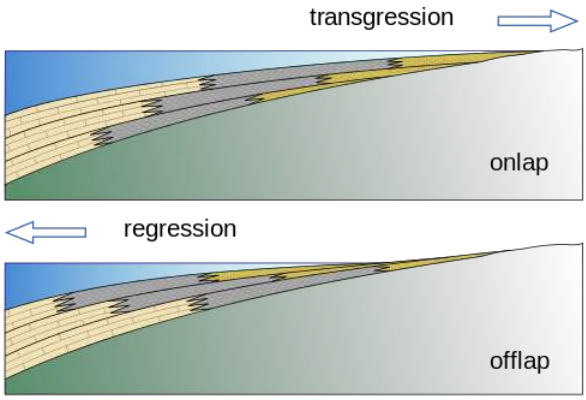


Figure *Section*12.2.5: The rising sea levels of transgressions create onlapping sediments, while regressions create offlapping.

Section 12.2.1.1 Tar Sands

Conventional oil and gas, which is pumped from a reservoir, are not the only way to obtain hydrocarbons. There are a few fuel sources known as **unconventional petroleum sources**. However, they are becoming more important as conventional sources become scarce. **Tar sands**, or **oil sands**, are sandstones that contain petroleum products that are highly viscous, like tar, and thus, cannot be drilled and pumped out of the ground readily like conventional oil. The unconventional fossil fuel is **bitumen**, which can be pumped as a fluid only at very low rates of recovery and only when heated or mixed with solvents. So, using injections of steam and solvents, or directly mining tar sands for later processing are ways to extract the tar from the sands. Alberta, Canada is known to have the largest reserves of tar sands in the world [16].



Figure *Section*12.2.6: Tar sandstone from the Miocene Monterey Formation of California.

An energy resource becomes **uneconomic** once the total extraction and processing costs exceed the extracted material's sales revenue. Environmental costs may also contribute to a resource becoming uneconomic.

Section 12.2.1.2 Oil Shale

Oil shale, or **tight oil,** is a fine-grained sedimentary rock that has a significant quantity of petroleum or natural gas locked tightly in the sediment. Shale is a common source of fossil fuels with high porosity but it has very low permeability. To extract the oil directly from the shale, the material has to be mined and heated, which, like with tar sands, is expensive and typically has a negative impact on the environment [17].

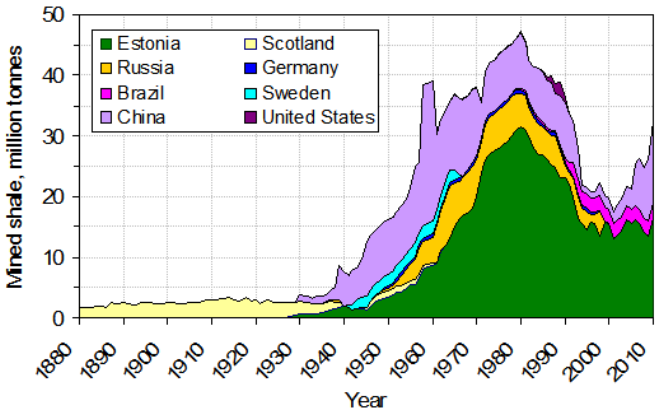


Figure *Section*12.2.7: Global production of oil shale, 1880-2010.

Section 12.2.1.3 Fracking

Another process which is used to extract the oil and gas from shale and other unconventional tight resources is called **hydraulic fracturing**, better known as **fracking** [18]. In this method, high-pressure injections of water, sand grains, and added chemicals are pumped underground. Under high pressure, this creates and holds open fractures in the rocks, which aids in the release of the hard-to-access fluids, mostly natural gas. Fracking is more useful in tighter sediments, especially shale, which has a high porosity to store the hydrocarbons but low permeability to transmit the hydrocarbons. Fracking has become controversial because its methods contaminate groundwater [19] and induce seismic activity [20]. This has created much controversy between public concerns, political concerns, and energy value.

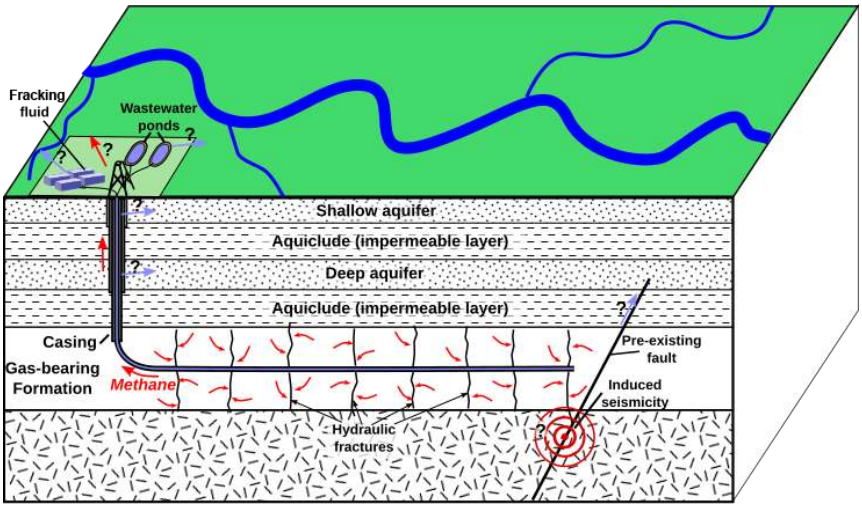


Figure *Section*12.2.8: Schematic diagram of fracking.

Section 12.2.2 Coal

Coal is the product of fossilized swamps [21], though some older coal deposits that predate terrestrial plants are presumed to come from algal buildups [22]. Coal is chiefly carbon, hydrogen, nitrogen, sulfur, and oxygen, with minor amounts of other elements [23]. As plant material is incorporated into sediments, heat and pressure cause several changes that concentrate the fixed carbon, which is the combustible portion of the coal. So, the more heat and pressure that coal undergoes, the greater its carbon concentration and fuel value, and the more desirable is the coal.

The general sequence of a swamp progressing through the various stages of coal formation and becoming more concentrated in carbon is:

$$\text{Swamp} \rightarrow \text{Peat} \rightarrow \text{Lignite} \rightarrow \text{Sub-bituminous Coal} \rightarrow \text{Bituminous Coal} \rightarrow \text{Anthracite} \rightarrow \text{Graphite}$$

As swamp materials collect on the swamp floor and are buried under accumulating materials, they first turn to **peat**. Peat itself is an economic fuel in some locations like the British Isles and Scandinavia. As lithification occurs, peat turns to **lignite**. With increasing heat and pressure, lignite turns to **sub-bituminous coal**, **bituminous coal**, and then, in a process like metamorphism, **anthracite**. Anthracite is the highest metamorphic grade and most desirable coal since it provides the highest energy output. With even more heat and pressure driving out all the volatiles and leaving pure carbon, anthracite can turn to **graphite**.

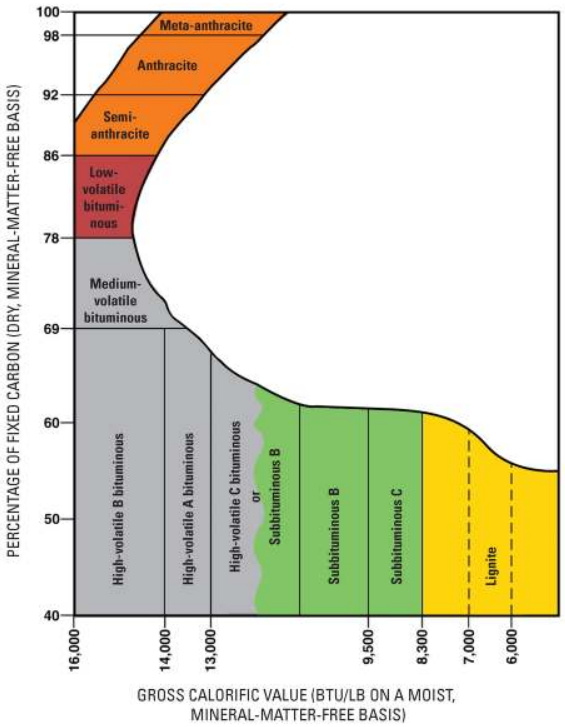


Figure *Section*12.2.9: USGS diagram of different coal rankings.

Humans have used coal for at least 6000 years [23], mainly as a fuel source. Coal resources in Wales are often cited as a primary reason for the rise of Britain, and later, the United States during the Industrial Revolution [24; 25; 26]. According to the US Energy Information Administration, the production of coal in the US has decreased due to cheaper prices of competing energy sources and due to society recognizing its negative environmental impacts, including increased very fine-grained particulate matter as an air pollutant, greenhouse gases [27], acid rain [28], and heavy metal pollution [29]. Seen from this point of view, the coal industry as a source of fossil energy is unlikely to revive.





Figure *Section*12.2.10: Left: Peat (also known as turf) consists of partially decayed organic matter. The Irish have long mined peat to be burned as fuel though this practice is now discouraged for environmental reasons. (By David Stanley; CC BY 2.0 via Wikimedia Commons.) Right: Anthracite coal, the highest grade of coal.

Section 12.2.3 References

8. Tappan, H. & Loeblich, A. R. Geobiologic Implications of Fossil Phytoplankton Evolution and Time-Space Distribution. *Geological Society of America Special Papers* **127**, 247–340 (1970).

9. Gordon, M., Jr, Tracey, J. I., Jr & Ellis, M. W. *Geology of the Arkansas bauxite region*. (1958).

10. Demaison, G. J. & Moore, G. T. Anoxic environments and oil source bed genesis. *Org. Geochem.* **2**, 9–31 (1980).

11. Tissot, B. Effects on prolific petroleum source rocks and major coal deposits caused by sea-level changes. *Nature* **277**, 463–465 (1979).

12. Pratt, W. E. *Oil in the Earth*. (University of Kansas Press, 1942).

13. Orton, E. *The Trenton Limestone as a Source of Petroleum and Inflammable Gas in Ohio and Indiana*. (U.S. Government Printing Office, 1889).

14. Dott, R. H. & Reynolds, M. J. Sourcebook for petroleum geology. (1969).

15. Vail, P. R. *et al.* Seismic stratigraphy and global sea level changes. *Seismic stratigraphy-applications to hydrocarbon exploration, edited by Payton, CE, Tulsa, American Association of Petroleum Geologists Memoir* **26**, 49–212 (1977).

16. Bauquis, P.-R. What future for extra heavy oil and bitumen: the Orinoco case. in **13**, 18 (1998).

17. Youngquist, W. Shale oil--The elusive energy. *Hubbert Center Newsletter* **4**, (1998).

18. Gandossi, L. An overview of hydraulic fracturing and other formation stimulation technologies for shale gas production. *Eur. Commisison Jt. Res. Cent. Tech. Reports* (2013).

19. Brown, V. J. Industry issues: Putting the heat on gas. *Environ. Health Perspect.* **115**, A76 (2007).

20. Kim, W.-Y. Induced seismicity associated with fluid injection into a deep well in Youngstown, Ohio. *J. Geophys. Res. [Solid Earth]* **118**, 3506–3518 (2013).

21. Taylor, E. L., Taylor, T. N. & Krings, M. *Paleobotany: The biology and evolution of fossil plants*. (Elsevier Science, 2009).

22. Mancuso, J. J. & Seavoy, R. E. Precambrian coal or anthraxolite; a source for graphite in high-grade schists and gneisses. *Econ. Geol.* **76**, 951–954 (1981).

23. Blander, M., Sinha, S., Pelton, A. & Eriksson, G. Calculations of the influence of additives on coal combustion deposits. *Argonne National Laboratory, Lemont, Illinois* 315 (2011).

24. Belloc, H. *The Servile State*. (T.N. Foulis, 1913).

25. McKenzie, H. & Moore, B. Social Origins of Dictatorship and Democracy. (1970).

26. Wrigley, E. A. *Continuity, Chance and Change: The Character of the Industrial Revolution in England*. (Cambridge University Press, 1990).

27. Quéré, C. L. *et al.* The global carbon budget 1959--2011. *Earth System Science Data* **5**, 165–185 (2013).

28. Barrie, L. A. & Hoff, R. M. The oxidation rate and residence time of sulphur dioxide in the Arctic atmosphere. *Atmos. Environ.* **18**, 2711–2722 (1984).

29. Crutzen, P. J. & Lelieveld, J. Human impacts on atmospheric chemistry. *Annu. Rev. Earth Planet. Sci.* **29**, 17–45 (2001).

This page titled Section 12.2: Fossil Fuels is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Chris Johnson, Matthew D. Affolter, Paul Inkenbrandt, & Cam Mosher (OpenGeology) via source content that was edited to the style and standards of the LibreTexts platform.

- **16.3: Fossil Fuels** by Chris Johnson, Matthew D. Affolter, Paul Inkenbrandt, & Cam Mosher is licensed CC BY-NC-SA 4.0. Original source: https://opengeology.org/textbook/.

Section 12.3: Mineral Resources

Mineral resources, while principally nonrenewable, are generally placed in two main categories: **metallic**, which contain metals, and **nonmetallic**, which contain other useful materials. Most mining has been traditionally focused on extracting metallic minerals. Human society has advanced significantly because we've developed the knowledge and technologies to yield metal from the Earth. This knowledge has allowed humans to build the machines, buildings, and monetary systems that dominate our world today. Locating and recovering these metals has been a key facet of the study of geology since its inception. Every element across the periodic table has specific applications in human civilization. Metallic mineral mining is the source of many of these elements.



Figure ***Section*12.3.1**: Gold-bearing quartz vein from California.

Section 12.3.1 Types of Metallic Mineral Deposits

The various ways in which minerals and their associated elements concentrate to form ore deposits are too complex and numerous to fully review in this text. However, entire careers are built around them. Some of the more common types of these deposits are described, along with their associated elemental concentrations and world-class occurrences.

Section 12.3.1.1 Magmatic Processes

When a magmatic body crystallizes and differentiates, it can cause certain minerals and elements to concentrate. **Layered intrusions**, typically ultramafic to mafic, can host deposits that contain copper, nickel, platinum, palladium, rhodium, and chromium. The Stillwater Complex in Montana is an example of economic quantities of a layered mafic intrusion [30]. Associated deposit types can contain chromium or titanium-vanadium. The largest magmatic deposits in the world are the chromite deposits in the Bushveld Igneous Complex in South Africa [31]. These rocks have an areal extent larger than the state of Utah. The chromite occurs in layers, which resemble sedimentary layers, except these layers occurred within a crystallizing magma chamber.



Figure ***Section*12.3.2**: Layered intrusion of dark chromium-bearing minerals, Bushveld Complex, South Africa.

Water and other volatiles that are not incorporated into mineral crystals when a magma crystallizes can become concentrated around the margins of these crystallizing magmas. Ions in these hot fluids are very mobile and can form exceptionally large crystals. Once crystallized, these large crystal masses are called **pegmatites**. They form from magma fluids that are expelled from solidifying magma when nearly the entire magma body has crystallized. In addition to minerals that are predominant in the main igneous mass, such as quartz, feldspar, and mica, pegmatite bodies may also contain very large crystals of unusual minerals that contain rare elements like beryllium, lithium, tantalum, niobium, and tin, as well as native elements like gold [32]. Such pegmatites are ores of these metals.

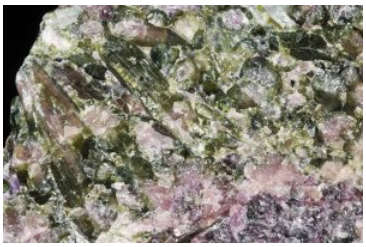


Figure ***Section*12.3.3**: This pegmatite from Brazil contains lithium-rich green elbaite (a tourmaline) and purple lepidolite (a mica).

An unusual magmatic formation is a **kimberlite pipe**, which is a volcanic conduit that transports ultramafic magma from depths in the mantle to the surface. Diamonds, which are formed at great temperatures and pressures of depth, are transported by a kimberlite pipe to locations where they can be mined. The process that created these kimberlite ultramafic rocks is no longer common on Earth. Most of the known deposits are from the Archean Eon [33].

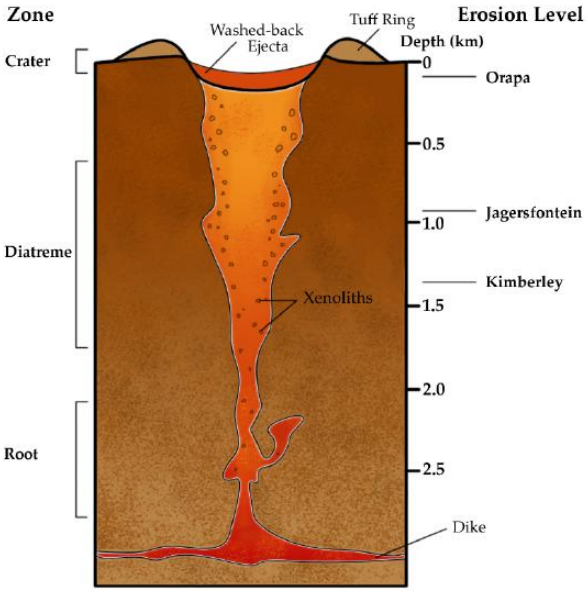


Figure ***Section*12.3.4**: Schematic diagram of a kimberlite pipe.

Section 12.3.1.2 Hydrothermal Processes

Fluids rising from crystallizing magmatic bodies or heated by the geothermal gradient cause many geochemical reactions that form various mineral deposits. The most active hydrothermal process today produces **volcanogenic massive sulfide** (VMS) **deposits**, which form from black smoker hydrothermal chimney activity near mid-ocean ridges all over the world. They commonly contain copper, zinc, lead, gold, and silver when found on the surface [34]. Evidence from around 7000 BCE in a period known as the Chalcolithic shows copper was among the earliest metals smelted by humans as means of obtaining higher temperatures were developed. The largest of these VMS deposits occur in Precambrian age rocks. The Jerome deposit in central Arizona is a good example.

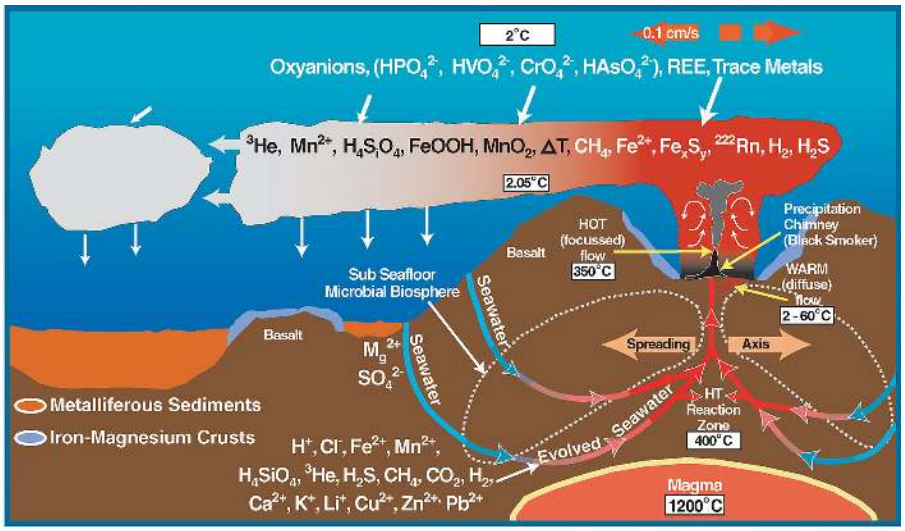


Figure *Section*12.3.5: The complex chemistry around mid-ocean ridges.

Another deposit type that is derived from magma-heated water is a **porphyry deposit**. This is not to be confused with the igneous texture porphyritic, although the name is derived from the porphyritic texture that is nearly always present in the igneous rocks associated with a porphyry deposit. Several types of porphyry deposits exist, such as porphyry copper, porphyry molybdenum, and porphyry tin. These deposits contain low-grade disseminated ore minerals closely associated with intermediate and felsic intrusive rocks that are present over a very large area [35]. Porphyry deposits are typically the largest mines on Earth. One of the largest, richest, and possibly best-studied mine in the world is Utah's Kennecott Bingham Canyon Mine. It is an open-pit mine, which, for over 100 years, has produced several elements including copper, gold, molybdenum, and silver. Underground carbonate replacement deposits produce lead, zinc, gold, silver, and copper [36]. In the mine's past, the open pit predominately produced copper and gold from chalcopyrite and bornite. Gold only occurs in minor quantities in the copper-bearing minerals, but because the Kennecott Bingham Canyon Mine produces on such a large scale, it is one of the largest gold mines in the U.S. In the future, this mine may produce more copper and molybdenum (molybdenite) from deeper underground mines.

Most porphyry copper deposits owe their high metal content, and hence, their economic value to weathering processes called **supergene enrichment** which occurs when the deposit is uplifted, eroded, and exposed to oxidation [37]. This process occurred millions of years after the initial igneous intrusion and hydrothermal expulsion ends. When the deposit's upper pyrite-rich portion is exposed to rain, pyrite in the oxidizing zone creates an extremely acid condition that dissolves copper out of copper minerals such as chalcopyrite, and converts the chalcopyrite to iron oxides, such as hematite or goethite. The copper minerals are carried downward in water until they arrive at the groundwater table and an environment where the primary copper minerals are converted into secondary higher-copper content minerals. Chalcopyrite (35% Cu) is converted to bornite (63% Cu) and ultimately, chalcocite (80% Cu). Without this enriched zone, which is 2 to 5 times higher in copper content than the main deposit, most porphyry copper deposits would not be economic to mine.



Figure *Section*12.3.6: The Morenci porphyry is oxidized toward its top (as seen as red rocks in the wall of the mine), creating supergene enrichment.

If limestone or other calcareous sedimentary rocks are present near the magmatic body, then another type of ore deposit called a **skarn** deposit forms. These metamorphic rocks form as magma-derived, highly saline metalliferous fluids react with carbonate rocks, creating calcium-magnesium-silicate minerals like pyroxene, amphibole, and garnet, as well as high-grade iron, copper, zinc

minerals and gold [38]. Intrusions that are genetically related to the intrusion that made the Kennecott Bingham Canyon deposit have also produced copper-gold skarns, which were mined by the early European settlers in Utah [39; 40]. When iron and/or sulfide deposits undergo metamorphism, the grain size commonly increases, which makes separating the gangue from the desired sulfide or oxide minerals much easier.

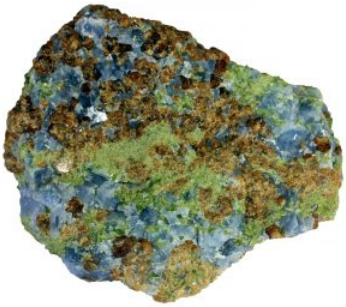


Figure *Section*12.3.7: Garnet-augite skarn from Italy.

Sediment-hosted disseminated gold deposits consist of low concentrations of microscopic gold as inclusions and disseminated atoms in pyrite crystals. These are formed via low-level hydrothermal reactions, generally in the realm of diagenesis, that occur in certain rock types, namely muddy carbonates and limey mudstones. This hydrothermal alteration is generally far-removed from a magma source but can be found in rocks situated with a high geothermal gradient. The Mercur deposit in Utah's Oquirrh Mountains was this type's earliest locally mined deposit. There, almost one million ounces of gold were recovered between 1890 and 1917. In the 1960s, a metallurgical process using cyanide was developed for these low-grade ore types. These deposits are also called **Carlin-type deposits** because the disseminated deposit near Carlin, Nevada is where the new technology was first applied and where the first definitive scientific studies were conducted [41]. Gold was introduced into these deposits by hydrothermal fluids that reacted with silty calcareous rocks, removing carbonate, creating additional permeability, and adding silica and gold-bearing pyrite in the pore space between grains. The Betze-Post mine and the Gold Quarry mine on the Carlin Trend are two of the largest of the disseminated gold deposits in Nevada. Similar deposits, but not as large, have been found in China, Iran, and Macedonia [42].



Figure *Section*12.3.8: In this rock, a pyrite cube has dissolved (as seen with the negative “corner” impression in the rock), leaving behind small specks of gold.

Section 12.3.1.3 Non-Magmatic Geochemical Processes

Geochemical processes that occur at or near the surface without the aid of magma also concentrate metals, but to a lesser degree than hydrothermal processes. One of the main reactions is **redox,** short for reduction/oxidation chemistry, which has to do with the amount of available oxygen in a system. Places where oxygen is plentiful, as in the atmosphere today, are considered **oxidizing** environments, while oxygen-poor places are considered **reducing** environments. Uranium deposits are an example of where redox concentrated the metal. Uranium is soluble in oxidizing groundwater environments and precipitates as uraninite when encountering reducing conditions. Many of the deposits across the Colorado Plateau, such as in Moab, Utah, were formed by this method [43].



Figure *Section*12.3.9: Underground uranium mine near Moab, Utah.

Redox reactions were also responsible for the creation of **banded iron formations** (BIFs), which are interbedded layers of iron oxide--hematite and magnetite, chert, and shale beds. These deposits formed early in the Earth's history as the atmosphere was becoming oxygenated. Cycles of oxygenating iron-rich waters initiated precipitation of the iron beds. Because BIFs are generally Precambrian in age, happening at the event of atmospheric oxygenation, they are only found in some of the older exposed rocks in the United States, such as in the upper peninsula of Michigan and northeastern Minnesota [44].

Deep, saline, **connate fluids** (trapped in the pore spaces), within sedimentary basins may be highly metalliferous. When expelled outward and upward as basin sediments compacted, these fluids formed lead and zinc deposits in limestone by replacing or filling open spaces, such as caves and faults, and in sandstone by filling pore spaces. The most famous are called **Mississippi Valley-type deposits** [44]. Also known as **carbonate-hosted replacement deposits**, they are large deposits of galena and sphalerite (lead and zinc ores respectively) that form from hot fluids ranging from 100°C to 200°C (212°F to 392°F). Although they are named for occurrences along the Mississippi River Valley in the United States, they are found worldwide.

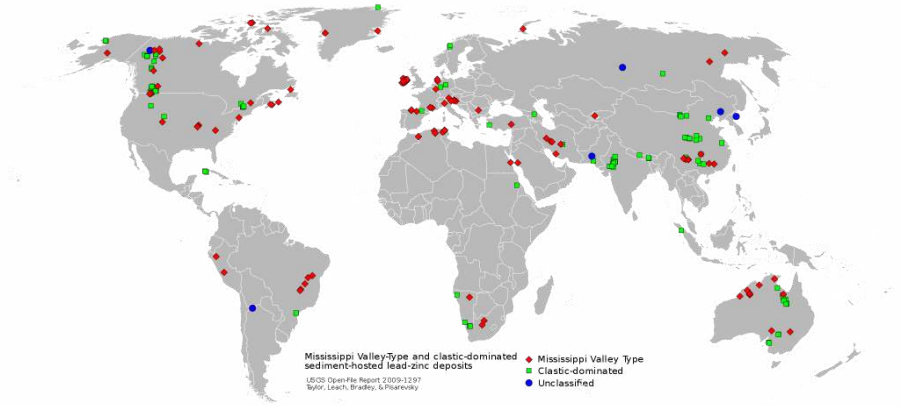


Figure *Section*12.3.10: Map of Mississippi-Valley type ore deposits.

Sediment-hosted copper deposits occurring in sandstones, shales, and marls are enormous in size and their contained resources are comparable to porphyry copper deposits. These were most likely formed diagenetically by groundwater fluids in highly-permeable rocks [45]. Well-known examples are the Kupferschiefer in Europe, which has an areal coverage of more than 500,000 km^2, and the Zambian Copper Belt in Africa.

Soils and mineral deposits that are exposed at the surface experience deep and intense weathering, which can form surficial deposits. **Bauxite**, an ore of aluminum, is preserved in karst topography and laterites, which are soils formed in wet tropical environments [46]. Soils containing aluminum concentrate minerals, such as feldspar, and ferromagnesian minerals in igneous and metamorphic rocks, undergo chemical weathering processes that concentrate the metals. Ultramafic rocks that undergo weathering form nickel-rich soils, and when the magnetite and hematite in banded iron formations undergo weathering, they form **goethite**, a friable mineral that is easily mined for its iron content.



Figure ***Section*12.3.11**: A sample of bauxite. Note the unweathered igneous rock in the center.

Section 12.3.1.4 Surficial Physical Processes

At the Earth's surface, mass wasting and moving water can cause **hydraulic sorting**, which forces high-density minerals to concentrate. When these minerals are concentrated in streams, rivers, and beaches, they are called **placer deposits**, and occur in modern sands and ancient lithified rocks [47]. Native gold, native platinum, zircon, ilmenite, rutile, magnetite, diamonds, and other gemstones can be found in placers. Humans have mimicked this natural process to recover gold manually by gold panning and by mechanized means such as dredging.



Figure ***Section*12.3.12**: Heavy mineral layers (dark) in a quartz sand beach deposit in India.

Section 12.3.2 Environmental Impacts of Metallic Mineral Mining

The primary impact of metallic mineral mining comes from the mining itself, including disturbing the land surface, covering landscapes with **tailing impoundments** (piles of waste rock material after processing mined rocks), and increasing mass wasting by accelerating erosion [48]. In addition, many metal deposits contain pyrite, an uneconomic sulfide mineral, that when placed on waste dumps, generates **acid rock drainage** (ARD) during weathering. In oxygenated water, sulfides such as pyrite react and undergo complex reactions to release metal ions and hydrogen ions, which lowers pH to highly acidic levels. Mining and processing of mined materials typically increase the surface area to volume ratio in the material, causing chemical reactions to occur even faster than would occur naturally. If not managed properly, these reactions may lead to acidification of streams and groundwater plumes that carry dissolved toxic metals. In mines where limestone is a waste rock or carbonate minerals like calcite or dolomite are present, their acid-neutralizing potential helps reduce acid rock drainage. Although this is a natural process too, it is very important to isolate mine dumps and tailings from oxygenated water, both to prevent the sulfides from dissolving and subsequently percolating the sulfate-rich water into waterways. Industry has taken great strides to prevent contamination in recent decades, but earlier mining projects are still causing problems with local ecosystems.



Figure ***Section*12.3.13**: Acid mine drainage in the Rio Tinto, Spain.

Section 12.3.3 Nonmetallic Mineral Deposits

While receiving much less attention, nonmetallic mineral resources (also known as **industrial minerals**) are just as vital to ancient and modern society as metallic minerals. The most basic of these is building stone. Limestone, travertine, granite, slate, and marble are common building stones and have been quarried for centuries. Even today, building stones from slate roof tiles to granite countertops are very popular. Especially pure limestone is ground up, processed, and reformed as plaster, cement, and concrete. Some nonmetallic mineral resources are not mineral specific; nearly any rock or mineral can be used. This is generally called **aggregate** and is used in concrete, roads, and foundations. **Gravel** is one of the more common aggregates.



Figure *Section*12.3.14: Carrara marble quarry in Italy, source to famous sculptures like Michelangelo's David.

Section 12.3.3.1 Evaporites

Evaporite deposits form in restricted basins, such as the Great Salt Lake in Utah or the Dead Sea along Israel and Jordan, where water evaporates faster than it recharges [49]. As the waters evaporate, soluble minerals are concentrated and become supersaturated, at which point they precipitate from the now highly-saline waters. If these conditions persist for long stretches of time, thick deposits of rock salt, rock gypsum and other minerals can accumulate.



Figure *Section*12.3.15: Salt-covered plain known as the Bonneville Salt Flats, Utah.

Evaporite minerals, such as **halite**, are used in our food as common table salt. Salt was a vitally important food preservative and economic resource before refrigeration was developed. While still used in food, halite is now mainly mined as a chemical agent, water softener, or a de-icer for roads. **Gypsum** is a common nonmetallic mineral used as a building material; it is the main component of drywall. It is also used as a fertilizer. Other evaporites include sylvite--potassium chloride, and bischofite--magnesium chloride, both of which are used in agriculture, medicine, food processing, and other applications. Potash, a group of highly soluble potassium-bearing evaporite minerals, is used as a fertilizer. In hyper-arid locations, even more rare and more complex evaporites, like borax, trona, ulexite, and hanksite, are mined. They can be found in places such as Searles Dry Lake and Death Valley, California, and in ancient evaporite deposits of the Green River Formation in Utah and Wyoming.



Figure *Section*12.3.16: Hanksite, $Na_{22}K(SO_4)_9(CO_3)_2Cl$, one of the few minerals that is considered a carbonate and a sulfate.

Section 12.3.3.2 Phosphorus

Phosphorus is an essential element that occurs in the mineral **apatite**, which is found in trace amounts in common igneous rocks. Phosphorite rock, which is formed in sedimentary environments in the ocean [50], contains abundant apatite and is mined to make fertilizer. Without phosphorus, life as we know it is not possible. Phosphorus is a major component of bone and a key component of DNA. Bone ash and guano are natural sources of phosphorus.



Figure ***Section*12.3.17**: Apatite from Mexico.

Section 12.3.4 References

30. Boudreau, A. E. The Stillwater Complex, Montana – Overview and the significance of volatiles. *Mineralogical Magazine* **80**, 585–637 (2016).

31. Willemse, J. The geology of the Bushveld Igneous Complex, the largest repository of magmatic ore deposits in the world. *Economic Geology Monograph* **4**, 1–22 (1969).

32. London, D. & Kontak, D. J. Granitic Pegmatites: Scientific Wonders and Economic Bonanzas. *Elements* **8**, 257–261 (2012).

33. Arndt, N. T. Chapter 1 Archean Komatiites. in *Developments in Precambrian Geology* (ed. K.C. Condie) **11**, 11–44 (Elsevier, 1994).

34. Barrie, C. T. Volcanic — associated massive sulfide deposits: processes and examples in modern and ancient settings. (1999). Available at: https://www.researchgate.net/profile/Michael_Perfit/publication/241276560_Geologic_petrologic_and_geochemical_relationships_between_magmatism_and_massive_sulfide_mineralization_along_the_eastern_Galapagos_Spreading_Center/links/02e7e51c8707bbfe9c000000.pdf. (Accessed: 2nd July 2016)

35. Richards, J. P. Tectono-Magmatic Precursors for Porphyry Cu-(Mo-Au) Deposit Formation. *Econ. Geol.* **98**, 1515–1533 (2003).

36. Hawley, C. C. *A Kennecott Story: Three Mines, Four Men, and One Hundred Years, 1887-1997*. (University of Utah Press, 2014).

37. Ague, J. J. & Brimhall, G. H. Geochemical modeling of steady state fluid flow and chemical reaction during supergene enrichment of porphyry copper deposits. *Econ. Geol.* **84**, 506–528 (1989).

38. Einaudi, M. T. & Burt, D. M. Introduction; terminology, classification, and composition of skarn deposits. *Econ. Geol.* **77**, 745–754 (1982).

39. Bromfield, C. S., Erickson, A. J., Haddadin, M. A. & Mehnert, H. H. Potassium-argon ages of intrusion, extrusion, and associated ore deposits, Park City mining district, Utah. *Econ. Geol.* **72**, 837–848 (1977).

40. James, L. P. *Geology, ore deposits, and history of the Big Cottonwood Mining District, Salt Lake County, Utah*. (Utah Geological and Mineral Survey, Utah Department of Natural Resources, 1979).

41. Hofstra, A. H. & Cline, J. S. Characteristics and models for Carlin-type gold deposits. *Reviews in Economic Geology* **13**, 163–220 (2000).

42. Rui-Zhong, H., Wen-Chao, S., Xian-Wu, B., Guang-Zhi, T. & Hofstra, A. H. Geology and geochemistry of Carlin-type gold deposits in China. *Miner. Deposita* **37**, 378–392 (2002).

43. Lehmann, I. P', Publ. *Bur. Centr. Seism. Internat. Serie A* **14**, 87–115 (1936).

44. Klein, C. Some Precambrian banded iron-formations (BIFs) from around the world: Their age, geologic setting, mineralogy, metamorphism, geochemistry, and origins. *Am. Mineral.* **90**, 1473–1499 (2005).

45. Hitzman, M., Kirkham, R., Broughton, D., Thorson, J. & Selley, D. The Sediment-Hosted Stratiform Copper Ore System. *Econ. Geol.* **100th**, (2005).

46. Bárdossy, G. & Aleva, G. J. J. *Lateritic bauxites*. **27**, (Elsevier Science Ltd, 1990).

47. Cabri, L. J., Harris, D. C. & Weiser, T. W. Mineralogy and distribution of platinum-group mineral (PGM) placer deposits of the world. *Explor. Min. Geol.* **2**, 73–167 (1996).

48. Nuss, P. & Eckelman, M. J. Life cycle assessment of metals: a scientific synthesis. *PLoS One* **9**, e101298 (2014).

49. Gordon, W. A. Distribution by latitude of Phanerozoic evaporite deposits. *J. Geol.* **83**, 671–684 (1975).

50. Delaney, M. L. Phosphorus accumulation in marine sediments and the oceanic phosphorus cycle. *Global Biogeochem. Cycles* **12**, 563–572 (1998).

This page titled Section 12.3: Mineral Resources is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Chris Johnson, Matthew D. Affolter, Paul Inkenbrandt, & Cam Mosher (OpenGeology) via source content that was edited to the style and standards of the LibreTexts platform.

- **16.4: Mineral Resources** by Chris Johnson, Matthew D. Affolter, Paul Inkenbrandt, & Cam Mosher is licensed CC BY-NC-SA 4.0. Original source: https://opengeology.org/textbook/.

Section 12.S: Summary

Section 12.S.1 Summary

Energy and mineral resources are vital to modern society, and it is the role of a geologist to locate these resources for human benefit. As environmental concerns have become more prominent, the value of the geologist has not decreased, as they are still vital in locating and identifying the least intrusive methods of extraction.

Energy resources are generally grouped as being renewable or nonrenewable. Geologists can aid in locating the best places to exploit renewable resources (e.g. locating a dam), but are commonly tasked with finding nonrenewable fossil fuels. Mineral resources are also grouped in two categories: metallic and nonmetallic. Minerals have a wide variety of processes that concentrate them to economic levels, and are usually mined via surface or underground methods.

Section 12.S: Summary is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

- **16.S: Summary** is licensed CC BY-NC-SA 4.0.

Index

1 A

alluvial fan
- Section 11.4: Desert Landforms

Archean Eon
- Section 7.5.4: Archean Eon

2 B

bedding planes
- Section 5.4: Sedimentary Structures

3 C

cementation
- Section 5.3: Sedimentary Rocks

4 D

diagenesis
- Section 5.3: Sedimentary Rocks

5 E

exfoliation
- Section 5.2: Weathering and Erosion

6 F

firn
- Section 10.5.3: Glacier Formation and Movement

foliation
- Section 6.2: Metamorphic Textures

7 G

glaciation
- Section 10.5.6: Ice Age Glaciations

Goldich Dissolution Series
- Section 5.2: Weathering and Erosion

graded bedding
- Section 5.4: Sedimentary Structures

Great Oxygenation Event
- Section 7.5.5: Proterozoic Eon

8 H

Hadean Eon
- Section 7.5.3: Hadean Eon

hoodoo
- Section 5.2: Weathering and Erosion

hornfels
- Section 6.2: Metamorphic Textures

hotspots (volcano)
- Section 4.4: Volcanism
- Section 4.5: Volcanic Structures
- Section 4.6: Volcanic Hazards and Monitoring

hydroxycarbonate apatite
- Section 3.2: Formation of Minerals

9 I

ice ages
- Section 10.5.6: Ice Age Glaciations

10 L

late heavy bombardment
- Section 7.5.4: Archean Eon

lithification
- Section 5.3: Sedimentary Rocks

11 M

Milankovitch cycles
- Section 10.5.6: Ice Age Glaciations

12 P

playa
- Section 11.4: Desert Landforms

precession
- Section 10.5.6: Ice Age Glaciations

Proterozoic Eon
- Section 7.5.5: Proterozoic Eon

13 R

Rodinia
- Section 7.5.5: Proterozoic Eon

14 S

science
- Section 1.1: What is Science?

scientific method
- Section 1.2: The Scientific Method

soil horizons
- Section 5.2: Weathering and Erosion

stratigraphy
- Section 5.4: Sedimentary Structures

stromatolites
- Section 7.5.4: Archean Eon

15 T

tafoni
- Section 5.2: Weathering and Erosion

16 V

volcanism
- Section 4.4: Volcanism
- Section 4.5: Volcanic Structures
- Section 4.6: Volcanic Hazards and Monitoring

volcano
- Section 4.4: Volcanism
- Section 4.5: Volcanic Structures
- Section 4.6: Volcanic Hazards and Monitoring

volcano hotspots
- Section 4.4: Volcanism
- Section 4.5: Volcanic Structures
- Section 4.6: Volcanic Hazards and Monitoring

17 W

Wilson Cycle
- Section 2.6: The Wilson Cycle

Glossary

Sample Word 1 | Sample Definition 1

Detailed Licensing

1 Overview

Title: GEOL 001: Intro to Physical Geology

Webpages: 113

Applicable Restrictions: Noncommercial

All licenses found:

- CC BY-NC-SA 4.0: 92.9% (105 pages)
- Undeclared: 5.3% (6 pages)
- CC BY-NC 4.0: 1.8% (2 pages)

2 By Page

- GEOL 001: Intro to Physical Geology - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
  - Front Matter - *Undeclared*
    - TitlePage - *Undeclared*
    - InfoPage - *Undeclared*
    - Table of Contents - *Undeclared*
    - Licensing - *Undeclared*
  - Chapter 1: Understanding Science - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
    - Section 1.1: What is Science? - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
    - Section 1.2: The Scientific Method - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
    - Section 1.3: Early Scientific Thought - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
    - Section 1.4: The Study of Geology - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
    - Section 1.5: Earth Systems Overview - *CC BY-NC 4.0*
    - Section 1.6: Science Denial and Evaluating Sources - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
    - Section 1.7: Components of the Earth System - *CC BY-NC 4.0*
    - Section 1.8: Components of Earth System-Relationships between human activities and Earth's spheres - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
    - Section 1.S: Summary - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
  - Chapter 2: Plate Tectonics - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
    - Section 2.1: Alfred Wegener's Continental Drift Hypothesis - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
    - Section 2.2: Layers of the Earth - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
    - Section 2.3: Convergent Boundaries - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
    - Section 2.4: Divergent Boundaries - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
    - Section 2.5: Transform Boundaries - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
    - Section 2.6: The Wilson Cycle - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
    - Section 2.7: Hotspots - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
    - Section 2.S: Summary - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
  - Chapter 3: Minerals - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
    - Section 3.1: Chemistry of Minerals - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
    - Section 3.2: Formation of Minerals - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
    - Section 3.3: Silicate Minerals - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
    - Section 3.4: Non-Silicate Minerals - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
    - Section 3.5: Identifying Minerals - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
    - Section 3.S: Summary - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
  - Chapter 4: Igneous Processes and Volcanoes - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
    - Section 4.1: Classification of Igneous Rocks - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
    - Section 4.2: Bowen's Reaction Series - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
    - Section 4.3: Magma Generation - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
    - Section 4.4: Volcanism - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
    - Section 4.5: Volcanic Structures - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
    - Section 4.6: Volcanic Hazards and Monitoring - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
    - Section 4.S: Summary - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
  - Chapter 5: Weathering, Erosion, and Sedimentary Rocks - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
    - Section 5.1: The Unique Properties of Water - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
    - Section 5.2: Weathering and Erosion - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
    - Section 5.3: Sedimentary Rocks - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
    - Section 5.4: Sedimentary Structures - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*

- Section 5.5: Depositional Environments - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
- Section 5.S: Summary - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*

- Chapter 6: Metamorphic Rocks - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
  - Section 6.1: Metamorphic Processes - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
  - Section 6.2: Metamorphic Textures - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
  - Section 6.3: Metamorphic Grade - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
  - Section 6.4: Metamorphic Environments - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
  - Section 6.S: Summary - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
- Chapter 7: Geologic Time - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
  - Section 7.1: Relative Dating - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
  - Section 7.2: Absolute Dating - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
  - Section 7.3: Fossils and Evolution - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
  - Section 7.4: Correlation - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
  - Section 7.5: Earth History - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
    - Section 7.5.1: Origin of the Universe - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
    - Section 7.5.2: Origin of the Solar System—The Nebular Hypothesis - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
    - Section 7.5.3: Hadean Eon - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
    - Section 7.5.4: Archean Eon - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
    - Section 7.5.5: Proterozoic Eon - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
    - Section 7.5.6: Paleozoic - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
    - Section 7.5.7: Mesozoic - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
    - Section 7.5.8: Cenozoic - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
- Chapter 8: Crustal Deformation and Earthquakes - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
  - Section 8.1: Stress and Strain - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
  - Section 8.2: Deformation - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
  - Section 8.3: Geological Maps - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
  - Section 8.4: Folds - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
  - Section 8.5: Faults - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
  - Section 8.6: Earthquake Essentials - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
  - Section 8.7: Measuring Earthquakes - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
  - Section 8.8: Earthquake Risk - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
  - Section 8.9: Case Studies - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
  - Section 8.S: Summary - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
- Chapter 9: Mass Wasting - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
  - Section 9.1: Slope Strength - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
  - Section 9.2: Mass-Wasting Triggers and Mitigation - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
  - Section 9.3: Landslide Classification and Identification - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
  - Section 9.4: Examples of Landslides - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
  - Section 9.S: Summary - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
- Chapter 10: Water - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
  - Section 10.1: Prelude to Water - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
  - Section 10.2: Properties of Water - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
  - Section 10.3: Surface Water - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
  - Section 10.4: Groundwater - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
  - Section 10.5: Glaciers - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
    - Section 10.5.1: Prelude to Galciers - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
    - Section 10.5.2: Types of Glaciers - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
    - Section 10.5.3: Glacier Formation and Movement - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
    - Section 10.5.4: Glacial Budget - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
    - Section 10.5.5: Glacial Landforms - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
    - Section 10.5.6: Ice Age Glaciations - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
  - Section 10.6: Waves and Wave Processes - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
  - Section 10.7: Shoreline Features - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
- Chapter 11: Deserts - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
  - Section 11.1: Prelude to Deserts - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
  - Section 11.2: The Origin of Deserts - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
  - Section 11.3: Desert Weathering and Erosion - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
  - Section 11.4: Desert Landforms - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
- Chapter 12: Energy and Mineral Resources - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
  - Section 12.1: Mining - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
  - Section 12.2: Fossil Fuels - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
  - Section 12.3: Mineral Resources - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
  - Section 12.S: Summary - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
- Back Matter - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
  - Index - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
  - Glossary - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
  - Detailed Licensing - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
  - Detailed Licensing - *Undeclared*

Detailed Licensing

Overview

Title: GEOL 001: Intro to Physical Geology

Webpages: 113

Applicable Restrictions: Noncommercial

All licenses found:

- CC BY-NC-SA 4.0: 92.9% (105 pages)
- Undeclared: 5.3% (6 pages)
- CC BY-NC 4.0: 1.8% (2 pages)

By Page

- GEOL 001: Intro to Physical Geology - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
  - Front Matter - *Undeclared*
    - TitlePage - *Undeclared*
    - InfoPage - *Undeclared*
    - Table of Contents - *Undeclared*
    - Licensing - *Undeclared*
  - Chapter 1: Understanding Science - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
    - Section 1.1: What is Science? - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
    - Section 1.2: The Scientific Method - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
    - Section 1.3: Early Scientific Thought - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
    - Section 1.4: The Study of Geology - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
    - Section 1.5: Earth Systems Overview - *CC BY-NC 4.0*
    - Section 1.6: Science Denial and Evaluating Sources - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
    - Section 1.7: Components of the Earth System - *CC BY-NC 4.0*
    - Section 1.8: Components of Earth System-Relationships between human activities and Earth's spheres - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
    - Section 1.S: Summary - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
  - Chapter 2: Plate Tectonics - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
    - Section 2.1: Alfred Wegener's Continental Drift Hypothesis - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
    - Section 2.2: Layers of the Earth - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
    - Section 2.3: Convergent Boundaries - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
    - Section 2.4: Divergent Boundaries - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
    - Section 2.5: Transform Boundaries - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
    - Section 2.6: The Wilson Cycle - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
    - Section 2.7: Hotspots - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
    - Section 2.S: Summary - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
  - Chapter 3: Minerals - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
    - Section 3.1: Chemistry of Minerals - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
    - Section 3.2: Formation of Minerals - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
    - Section 3.3: Silicate Minerals - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
    - Section 3.4: Non-Silicate Minerals - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
    - Section 3.5: Identifying Minerals - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
    - Section 3.S: Summary - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
  - Chapter 4: Igneous Processes and Volcanoes - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
    - Section 4.1: Classification of Igneous Rocks - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
    - Section 4.2: Bowen's Reaction Series - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
    - Section 4.3: Magma Generation - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
    - Section 4.4: Volcanism - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
    - Section 4.5: Volcanic Structures - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
    - Section 4.6: Volcanic Hazards and Monitoring - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
    - Section 4.S: Summary - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
  - Chapter 5: Weathering, Erosion, and Sedimentary Rocks - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
    - Section 5.1: The Unique Properties of Water - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
    - Section 5.2: Weathering and Erosion - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
    - Section 5.3: Sedimentary Rocks - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
    - Section 5.4: Sedimentary Structures - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*

- Section 5.5: Depositional Environments - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
- Section 5.S: Summary - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*

- Chapter 6: Metamorphic Rocks - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
  - Section 6.1: Metamorphic Processes - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
  - Section 6.2: Metamorphic Textures - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
  - Section 6.3: Metamorphic Grade - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
  - Section 6.4: Metamorphic Environments - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
  - Section 6.S: Summary - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
- Chapter 7: Geologic Time - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
  - Section 7.1: Relative Dating - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
  - Section 7.2: Absolute Dating - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
  - Section 7.3: Fossils and Evolution - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
  - Section 7.4: Correlation - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
  - Section 7.5: Earth History - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
    - Section 7.5.1: Origin of the Universe - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
    - Section 7.5.2: Origin of the Solar System—The Nebular Hypothesis - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
    - Section 7.5.3: Hadean Eon - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
    - Section 7.5.4: Archean Eon - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
    - Section 7.5.5: Proterozoic Eon - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
    - Section 7.5.6: Paleozoic - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
    - Section 7.5.7: Mesozoic - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
    - Section 7.5.8: Cenozoic - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
- Chapter 8: Crustal Deformation and Earthquakes - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
  - Section 8.1: Stress and Strain - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
  - Section 8.2: Deformation - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
  - Section 8.3: Geological Maps - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
  - Section 8.4: Folds - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
  - Section 8.5: Faults - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
  - Section 8.6: Earthquake Essentials - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
  - Section 8.7: Measuring Earthquakes - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
  - Section 8.8: Earthquake Risk - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
  - Section 8.9: Case Studies - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
  - Section 8.S: Summary - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
- Chapter 9: Mass Wasting - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
  - Section 9.1: Slope Strength - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
  - Section 9.2: Mass-Wasting Triggers and Mitigation - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
  - Section 9.3: Landslide Classification and Identification - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
  - Section 9.4: Examples of Landslides - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
  - Section 9.S: Summary - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
- Chapter 10: Water - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
  - Section 10.1: Prelude to Water - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
  - Section 10.2: Properties of Water - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
  - Section 10.3: Surface Water - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
  - Section 10.4: Groundwater - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
  - Section 10.5: Glaciers - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
    - Section 10.5.1: Prelude to Galciers - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
    - Section 10.5.2: Types of Glaciers - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
    - Section 10.5.3: Glacier Formation and Movement - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
    - Section 10.5.4: Glacial Budget - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
    - Section 10.5.5: Glacial Landforms - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
    - Section 10.5.6: Ice Age Glaciations - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
  - Section 10.6: Waves and Wave Processes - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
  - Section 10.7: Shoreline Features - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
- Chapter 11: Deserts - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
  - Section 11.1: Prelude to Deserts - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
  - Section 11.2: The Origin of Deserts - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
  - Section 11.3: Desert Weathering and Erosion - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
  - Section 11.4: Desert Landforms - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
- Chapter 12: Energy and Mineral Resources - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
  - Section 12.1: Mining - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
  - Section 12.2: Fossil Fuels - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
  - Section 12.3: Mineral Resources - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
  - Section 12.S: Summary - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
- Back Matter - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
  - Index - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
  - Glossary - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
  - Detailed Licensing - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
  - Detailed Licensing - *Undeclared*